

OXFORD

2

American English File

fourth edition

Teacher's Guide with Digital Pack

Includes photocopiable Grammar,
Communicative, and Vocabulary activities

Christina Latham-Koenig Clive Oxenden
Kate Chomacki Jerry Lambert Paul Seligson
with Sue Meri field



American English File

fourth edition

Teacher's Guide with Digital Pack

Includes photocopiable Grammar,
Communicative, and Vocabulary activities

Christina Latham-Koenig Clive Oxenden
Kate Chomacki Jerry Lambert Paul Seligson
with Sue Merifield

Paul Seligson and Clive Oxenden are the original co-authors
of *English File 1* (published 1996) and *English File 2* (1997)

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford, OX2 6DP, United Kingdom

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford.
It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship,
and education by publishing worldwide. Oxford is a registered trade
mark of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 2026

The moral rights of the author have been asserted

First published in 2026

2030 2029 2028 2027 2026

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored
in a retrieval system, transmitted, used for text and data mining, or used
for training artificial intelligence, in any form or by any means, without
the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly
permitted by law, by licence or under terms agreed with the appropriate
reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction
outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department,
Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this work in any other form and you must impose
this same condition on any acquirer

Links to third party websites are provided by Oxford in good faith and for
information only. Oxford disclaims any responsibility for the materials
contained in any third party website referenced in this work

The manufacturer's authorised representative in the EU for product safety is
Oxford University Press España S.A. of El Parque Empresarial San Fernando
de Henares, Avenida de Castilla, 2 – 28830 Madrid (www.oup.es/en or
product.safety@oup.com). Oxford University Press España S.A. also acts as
importer into Spain of products made by the manufacturer.

Photocopying

The Publisher grants permission for the photocopying of those pages
marked 'photocopiable' according to the following conditions. Individual
purchasers may make copies for their own use or for use by classes that they
teach. School purchasers may make copies for use by staff and students, but
this permission does not extend to additional schools or branches

Under no circumstances may any part of this book be photocopied for resale

ISBN: 978 0 19 417652 1	Teacher's Guide with Digital Pack
ISBN: 978 0 19 417675 0	Teacher's Guide
ISBN: 978 0 19 417653 8	Digital Pack
ISBN: 978 0 19 417041 3	Student Book Classroom Presentation Tool
ISBN: 978 0 19 417094 9	Workbook Classroom Presentation Tool
ISBN: 978 0 19 417023 9	Teacher's Skills Confidence
ISBN: 978 0 19 417676 7	Teacher's Online Resources

Printed in China

FSC logo placed
here by printer

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

*The publisher would like to thank the following for the permission to reproduce
photographs:* Alamy Stock Photo (Blulz60, Grant Rooney); Corbis (© Joe
Stevens ./Retna Ltd.); Getty Images (Blend Images – Don Mason, Corbis
Entertainment, Getty Images North America, Michael Ochs Archives);
Shutterstock (AJR_photo, Anna Grigorjeva, Bachkova, bergamont,
Dean Drobot, design56, dimbar76, Dragon Images, Elya Vatel, Ensuper,
GagliardiImages, Gregory June, Humpback Whale, Igor Kovalchuk, Inna
Vozhdaenko, Ionov Artem, Kalamurzing, karimpard, kavalekava, Kaya,
Krista Kennell, lev radin, LStockStudio, Matthew J Thomas, Mega Pixel,
Michael Brochstein/SOPA Images/REX/Shutterstock, Michael Kraus, Michal
Chmurski, Mila Supinskaya Glashchenko, Monkey Business Images, Nejron
Photo, nw10photography, Patrick Foto, pikselstock, Prasit Rodphan,
Prostock-studio, Radu Bercan, Ranta Images, Romolo Tavani, ronstik, Ruslan
Kudrin, Ruth Black, saginbay, Sean Hsu, seeyou, SeventyFour, stockfour,
T-Design, wavebreakmedia, Yulai Studio); WireImage.

Illustrations by: Bill Brown; Mark Bryan; Joanna Kerr/New Division; Kath
Walker; Mark Duffin; Oxford University Press; Q2A Media; Roger Penwill.

Pronunciation chart artwork by: Ellis Nadler



Contents

p.4 Student Book contents

p.8 Course overview

- Introduction
- What do Level 2 students need?

p.10 Print components

- For students
- For teachers

p.11 Digital components on *Oxford English Hub*

- For students
- For teachers

p.12 File overview

p.18 The role of video in language learning

p.19 Video in *American English File fourth edition*

p.20 How to exploit video in the classroom

p.22 Lesson plans

p.22	File 1 A–C	Practical English Episode 1
p.38	File 2 A–C	1&2 Review and Check
p.51	File 3 A–C	Practical English Episode 2
p.64	File 4 A–C	3&4 Review and Check
p.76	File 5 A–C	Practical English Episode 3
p.91	File 6 A–C	5&6 Review and Check
p.103	File 7 A–C	Practical English Episode 4
p.117	File 8 A–C	7&8 Review and Check
p.130	File 9 A–C	Practical English Episode 5
p.143	File 10 A–C	9&10 Review and Check
p.154	File 11 A–C	Practical English Episode 6
p.169	File 12 A–C	11&12 Review and Check

p.180 Photocopiable activities

p.180	Introduction
p.181	Grammar activity answers
p.184	Grammar activity worksheets
p.220	Communicative activity instructions
p.229	Communicative activity worksheets
p.265	Vocabulary activity instructions
p.269	Vocabulary activity worksheets

p.284 Workbook answer key

Student Book contents

	GRAMMAR	VOCABULARY	PRONUNCIATION
1			
8 A All about you	word order in questions	common verb phrases ➡	the alphabet ➡
10 B Looking good	simple present	describing people: appearance and personality ➡	final -s / -es ➡
12 C Remakes	present continuous	clothes ➡, prepositions of place	/ə/ and /ər/ ➡
2			
16 A Lost...and found?	simple past: regular and irregular verbs	vacations ➡	regular verbs: -ed endings ➡
18 B On top of the world	past continuous ➡	prepositions of time and place: <i>at, in, on</i>	weak forms: <i>was, were</i>
20 C One dark October evening	time sequencers and connectors	verb phrases	word stress
3			
24 A The waiting game	<i>be going to</i> (plans and predictions) ➡	airports	the letter <i>g</i> ➡
26 B Can we meet?	present continuous (future arrangements)	verbs + prepositions, e.g., <i>arrive in</i>	linking
28 C Word games	defining relative clauses	paraphrasing	silent <i>e</i>
4			
32 A Have you finished yet?	present perfect + <i>yet</i> and <i>already</i>	housework, <i>make</i> or <i>do</i> ?	the letters <i>y</i> and <i>j</i> ➡
34 B How we shop	present perfect or simple past? (1)	shopping	<i>c</i> and <i>ch</i>
36 C Weekendv	<i>something, anything, nothing</i> , etc.	adjectives ending -ed and -ing	/ɛ/, /oʊ/, and /ʌ/ ➡
5			
40 A Fast-forward	comparative adjectives and adverbs, <i>as...as</i>	types of numbers ➡	/ə/ and /ər/ in comparisons
42 B Superlative cities?	superlatives (+ <i>ever</i> + present perfect) ➡	describing a town or city ➡	sentence stress
44 C Too much or not enough?	quantifiers, <i>too</i> , (<i>not</i>) <i>enough</i> ➡	health and the body	/ʌ/
6			
48 A Optimist or pessimist?	<i>will</i> / <i>won't</i> (predictions)	opposite verbs ➡	'll / won't
50 B Love will find a way	<i>will</i> / <i>won't</i> (other uses)	verb + <i>back</i>	word stress: two-syllable verbs
52 C Sweet dreams?	review of verb forms: present, past, and future	modifiers	the letters <i>ea</i> and <i>ear</i>

READING & LISTENING

Listening recognizing names, places, and numbers, identifying situations from context

Reading using visual clues to identify main topic
Listening focusing on descriptive adjectives

Listening tuning in using existing knowledge

Reading understanding details
Listening listening for key points

Reading using visual clues to understand events and feelings
Listening understanding the order of events

Listening using evidence to predict the ending of a story 🔄

Reading using context to complete information
Listening understanding context

Reading making a personal response
Listening inferring mood, understanding relationships between people ➡

Reading understanding the rules of a game
Listening understanding definitions

Listening understanding advice

Reading identifying the main idea in a paragraph
Listening using visual clues to understand key points 🔍

Reading inferring from captions and visual clues
Listening understanding statistical and historical information 🔍

Reading scanning for information
Listening tuning in to an interview using topic-related vocabulary

Listening understanding the main points in a podcast

Reading responding to and assessing information according to personal opinion
Listening understanding numbers and quantities

Reading understanding a definition and examples
Listening taking notes

Reading understanding the events in a story
Listening understanding the events in a story

Listening interpreting from visual clues ➡; using visual clues to understand key topics ➡

SPEAKING & WRITING

Speaking exchanging personal information, returning questions; asking for personal information

Speaking summarizing main points in an article; describing a personal profile
Writing a personal profile

Speaking describing a painting ➡

Speaking showing interest

Speaking giving more information in a conversation
Writing describing a photo

Speaking retelling the ending of a story

Speaking assessing and comparing tips; proposing a tourist itinerary

Speaking comparing the results of a questionnaire; making arrangements
Writing an informal email

Speaking paraphrasing; defining words

Speaking comparing information (*yet* and *already*); talking about housework

Speaking asking follow-up questions
Writing an opinion essay

Speaking talking about the weekend; answering promptly

Speaking responding to ideas in an article; talking about changes, giving reasons

Speaking asking for more information
Writing describing your town or city

Speaking talking about habits; asking questions and giving reasons (*enough* and *too much/many*)

Speaking responding to predictions

Speaking asking and answering (verb + *back*)
Writing social media messages

Speaking giving additional information (past, present, future)

Practical English p.14

Pictures of you 🔄
Episode 1: *A visit from the USA*

Practical English calling reception
Social English

Review and Check p.22

Review and Check 1&2 ➡

Practical English p.30

Pictures of you 🔄
Episode 2: *A work dinner*

Practical English problems at a restaurant
Social English

Review and Check p.38

Review and Check 3&4 ➡

Practical English p.46

Pictures of you 🔄
Episode 3: *Working on a Saturday*

Practical English taking something back
Social English

Review and Check p.54

Review and Check 5&6 ➡

	GRAMMAR	VOCABULARY	PRONUNCIATION
7			
56 A I will survive!	uses of the infinitive	verbs + infinitive: <i>try to</i> , <i>forget to</i> , etc.	weak form of <i>to</i> , linking
58 B Happy days	uses of the gerund (verb + <i>-ing</i>)	verbs + gerund	/ŋ/, /ɪ/ + /k/ ➡
60 C Could you pass the test?	<i>have to</i> , <i>don't have to</i> , <i>must</i> , <i>must not</i> , <i>can't</i>	adjectives + prepositions: <i>afraid of</i> , etc.	stress on prepositions
8			
64 A Should I or shouldn't I?	<i>should</i>	get ➡	/ɒ/ and /ʊ/ ➡
66 B Absolutely typical!	<i>if</i> + present, <i>will</i> + base form (first conditional) ➡	confusing verbs	homophones
68 C Who is Vivienne?	possessive pronouns	adverbs of manner	reading aloud
9			
72 A Watch out!	<i>if</i> + past, <i>would</i> + base form (second conditional)	animals and insects ➡	word stress
74 B Don't panic!	present perfect + <i>for</i> and <i>since</i> ➡	words related to fear	sentence stress
76 C Born to be stars	present perfect or simple past? (2)	biographies	word stress, /ɪk/ ➡
10			
80 A Winners and losers	expressing movement ➡	sports, expressing movement ➡	word stress
82 B Larks and owls	word order of phrasal verbs	phrasal verbs	linking
84 C Inventions that changed the world	the passive	people from different countries	/ʃ/, /tʃ/, and /dʒ/ ➡
11			
88 A Live and learn	<i>used to</i>	school subjects	<i>used to</i> / <i>didn't use to</i>
90 B Make up your mind!	<i>might</i> ➡	word building: noun formation	diphthongs ➡
92 C Find your "twin"	<i>so</i> , <i>neither</i> + auxiliaries	similarities and differences	/ð/ and /θ/ ➡
12			
96 A Strange but true!	past perfect	time expressions	the letter <i>i</i>
98 B Don't tell anybody!	reported speech	<i>say</i> or <i>tell</i> ?	double consonants
100 C The American English File quiz	questions without auxiliaries	review of question words	/w/ and /h/ ➡
104 Communication	115 Writing Bank	127 Listening	134 Grammar Bank

READING & LISTENING

Reading reading on screen
Listening using visual clues and text to understand advice 🎧

Listening understanding expert advice and supporting detail

Reading identifying topic sentences
Listening listening to check hypotheses

Reading assessing advice
Listening understanding a problem, assessing advice

Reading identifying examples of behavior
Listening tuning in to a story using key words and phrases

Reading understanding a short story
Listening using visual clues to understand a story 🎧

Reading understanding reasons
Listening using visual clues to rank information 🎧

Reading understanding social media posts
Listening listening for key information

Reading understanding the order of life events
Listening using visual clues to understand biographical information 🎧

Reading reading and retelling key events

Reading taking notes for retelling
Listening categorizing information; identifying reasons 🎧

Listening using visual clues to understand specific information 🎧

Reading understanding and comparing specific information in short texts
Listening understanding attitude

Listening identifying the main points in a talk

Listening using visual clues to understand a human-interest story 🎧

Reading understanding the order of events in a story

Reading identifying text type, understanding the moral of a story
Listening using visual clues to understand a conversation 🎧

Listening understanding topic-based questions 🎧

SPEAKING & WRITING

Speaking asking and answering fluently
Writing an article giving tips

Speaking responding to tips; talking about behaviors and preferences

Speaking asking follow-up questions

Speaking assessing advice; asking and answering (phrases with *get*)

Speaking exchanging information and opinions (confusing verbs)

Writing a short story

Speaking relaying factual information; talking about imaginary situations

Speaking asking follow-up questions (present perfect)

Speaking talking about somebody's life
Writing a biography

Speaking talking about sports, giving extra information; retelling from memory
Writing an article

Speaking asking questions (phrasal verbs)

Speaking exchanging information (passives)

Speaking expressing an opinion, giving examples, returning questions
Writing a formal email

Speaking giving an opinion; asking and answering (noun formation)

Speaking saying how you are similar and different

Speaking retelling a news story

Speaking reporting what somebody said; supporting opinions with examples
Writing a review

Speaking asking factual questions (simple past)

Practical English p.62

Pictures of you 🎧
 Episode 4: *Running into trouble*

Practical English at the pharmacy
Social English

Review and Check p.70

Review and Check 7&8 🎧

Practical English p.78

Pictures of you 🎧
 Episode 5: *What's going on with Max?*

Practical English following directions
Social English

Review and Check p.86

Review and Check 9&10 🎧

Practical English p.94

Pictures of you 🎧
 Episode 6: *Is this the end?*

Practical English calling and leaving a message
Social English

Review and Check p.102

Review and Check 11&12 🎧

Course overview

Introduction

Our aim with *American English File fourth edition* has been to improve every lesson, and to make it more engaging, motivating, and relevant to today's students. New video content is integrated into the lessons, which helps students learn and practice Grammar, Vocabulary, and Pronunciation and develops listening, speaking, and viewing skills. In addition, the Practical English lessons include a brand new drama called *Pictures of you*. Please refer to page 19 for more information on the video offer in *American English File fourth edition*.

As well as the main A, B, C Student Book lessons, there is a range of material that you can use according to your students' needs, and the time and resources you have available:

- Workbook
- Teacher's Guide notes
- Exam Confidence
- Tests

The **Workbook** provides review, support, and practice for students outside the class. The **Teacher's Guide** suggests different ways of exploiting the Student Book depending on the level of your class.

Exam Confidence gives students access to bite-size Reading, Listening, Speaking, and Writing practice.

We hope you and your students enjoy using *American English File fourth edition*.

What do Level 2 students need?

Level 2 students are at a crucial stage in their learning. Students at this level need material that maintains their enthusiasm and confidence. They need to know how much they are learning and what they can now achieve. At the same time they need encouragement to push themselves to use the new language they are learning.

Grammar, Vocabulary, and Pronunciation

If we want students to speak English with confidence, we need to give them the tools they need – Grammar, Vocabulary, and Pronunciation (G, V, P). We believe that "G + V + P = confident speaking," and in *American English File Level 2* all three elements are given equal importance. Each lesson has clear G, V, P aims to keep lessons focused and give students concrete learning objectives and a sense of progress.

Grammar

- Clear and memorable presentations of new structures
- Fun and engaging grammar videos to introduce and practice grammar
- Regular and varied practice in useful and natural contexts
- Student-friendly reference material

We have tried to provide contexts for new language that will engage students, using real-life stories and situations, humor, and suspense. Grammar practice videos introduce or practice grammar in an engaging way. The **Grammar Banks** give students a single, easy-to-access grammar reference section, with example sentences with audio, clear rules, and common errors. There are at least two practice exercises for each grammar point. The **Workbook** provides a variety of practice exercises and the opportunity for students to use the new grammar to express their own ideas.

Vocabulary

- A focus on high-frequency words and phrases
- Opportunities to personalize new vocabulary
- Motivating and fun videos to present and practice vocabulary
- Tasks which encourage students to use new vocabulary
- Review and reactivation of previously learned vocabulary

Every lesson focuses on high frequency vocabulary and common lexical areas but keeps the amount realistic. All new vocabulary is given with the phonetic script alongside, to help students with the pronunciation of new words. Vocabulary practice videos present and practice vocabulary in a motivating and fun way.

Many lessons are linked to the **Vocabulary Banks** which help present and practice the vocabulary in class, give an audio model of each word, and provide a clear reference so students can review and test themselves in their own time. Students can find further practice in the **Workbook**.

Pronunciation

- A solid foundation in the sounds of English
- Targeted pronunciation development
- Awareness of rules and patterns
- Pronunciation videos

Level 2 learners are often frustrated by English pronunciation, particularly the sound–spelling relationships, silent letters, and weak forms. There is a pronunciation focus in every lesson, which integrates clear pronunciation into grammar and vocabulary practice. There is an emphasis on the sounds most useful for communication, on word stress, and on sentence rhythm. The Pronunciation videos show students the mouth positions to make English vowels and consonants. There is also a **Sound Bank** section on pages 174–175 of the Student Book and a full set of **Sound Bank** videos in the resources section on *Oxford English Hub*.

There is more practice of pronunciation in the **Workbook**.

Speaking

- Topics that will inspire students' interest
- Achievable, motivating tasks
- Regular opportunities to use new language

American English File motivates students to speak by providing varied and achievable tasks, and the language (G + V + P) that they need in order to communicate with confidence. In addition to the Speaking stage, students are encouraged to speak all through each lesson, responding to texts, videos, and listenings, and practicing grammar and vocabulary orally.

Listening and viewing

- A reason to listen
- Confidence-building tasks
- Help with connected speech
- Video listening tasks

The listenings in *American English File* are based on a variety of entertaining and realistic situations. The tasks focus on helping students get the gist on the first listen and understand more the second time. Many of these listenings are now presented as video listenings. These provide visual contexts to traditional audio and help develop students' viewing skills, such as focusing on body language.

There is a wide variety of video types in *American English File fourth edition*, including:

- Grammar presentation and practice
- Vocabulary presentation and practice
- Pronunciation and Sound Bank videos
- Documentaries
- Dramas
- Teacher-generated videos
- "On the street" interviews
- Practical English drama *Pictures of you*

Reading

- Engaging topics and stimulating texts
- Manageable tasks that help students read

Many students need to read in English for their work or studies, and reading is also important in helping build vocabulary and consolidate grammar. The key to encouraging students to read is to give them motivating but accessible material and tasks they can do. In *American English File Level 2* reading texts have been adapted from a variety of authentic sources and have been chosen for their intrinsic interest and ability to generate discussion.

Writing

- Clear models
- The nuts and bolts of writing at a word and sentence level

The growth of the internet and email means that people worldwide are writing in English more than ever before both for business and personal communication. *American English File fourth edition* has an enhanced writing syllabus, with a separate Writing Bank for every File, which provides guided writing tasks covering a range of writing types from a formal email to a social media post.

Practical English

- Understanding high-frequency phrases
- Knowing what to say in typical situations

The Practical English lessons give students practice in key language for situations such as calling reception or taking something back. To make these everyday situations come alive, there is a brand new drama called *Pictures of you* with an engaging storyline and following the story of the two main characters, Ben (from California) and Izzy (from London), and how their lives, careers, and relationships develop. There is a clear distinction between what students will hear and need to understand and what they need to say. The lessons also highlight other key "Social English" phrases. The **Workbook** provides practice of all the language from the Practical English lessons.

Review

- Regular review
- Motivating reference and practice material
- A sense of progress

Students will usually only assimilate and remember new language if they have the chance to see it and use it several times. Grammar, Vocabulary, and Pronunciation are recycled throughout the course. After every two Files there is a two-page Review and Check section. The left-hand page reviews the Grammar, Vocabulary, and Pronunciation of each File. The right-hand page provides a series of skills-based challenges, including street interviews, and helps students measure their progress in terms of competence. These pages are designed to be used flexibly according to the needs of your students. Every two Files, the Workbook contains a *Can you remember...?* page, which provides a cumulative review of language students have covered in the Student Book.

Print components

FOR STUDENTS

Student Book

The Student Book has 12 Files. Each File is organized like this:

A, B, and C lessons

Each File contains three two-page lessons which present and practice Grammar, Vocabulary, and Pronunciation as well as developing skills with a balance of reading and listening activities, and lots of opportunities for speaking. Video content is integrated throughout the lessons. All lessons have clear references to the Grammar Bank, Vocabulary Bank, and where relevant, to the Sound Bank at the back of the book. These banks support and extend the lesson material on the page.

Practical English

Every two Files (starting from File 1), there is a two-page lesson based on a new drama series for the fourth edition, *Pictures of you – Season 2*. This lesson teaches functional “survival English” (for example, following directions or calling Reception) and also “Social English” (useful phrases like *It’s nice to meet you*, *That sounds really nice*). The video is in the form of a drama, featuring the two main characters, Ben and Izzy. The lessons have a storyline that started in Level 1, runs through Level 2, and continues into Level 3 with *Pictures of you – Season 3*. There is a Season 1 recap at the beginning of the first lesson.

Review and Check

Every two Files (starting from File 2) there is a two-page section reviewing the Grammar, Vocabulary, and Pronunciation of each File and providing additional Reading, Listening, and Speaking. The *Can you...?* section challenges students with engaging reading texts and street interview videos, which give students exposure to real-life English.

The back of the Student Book

The lessons contain cross-references to these sections: Communication, Writing, Listening, Grammar Bank, Vocabulary Bank, and Sound Bank.

The Student Book is also available as an e-Book.

Workbook

For language practice after class.

- All the Grammar, Vocabulary, and Practical English
- Pronunciation exercises with audio
- *Can you remember...?* exercises for students to check their progress

The Workbook is also available as an e-Book.

FOR TEACHERS

Teacher’s Guide

Step-by-step procedural notes for all the lessons

These notes include an optional “books-closed” lead-in for every lesson.

Extra challenge suggestions for ways of exploiting the Student Book material in a more challenging way if you have a stronger class.

Extra support suggestions for ways of adapting activities or exercises to make them work for students who need an alternative approach.

Extra ideas for optional activities.

All lesson plans include answer keys and audio scripts.

Photocopiable materials

There are over 80 pages of Grammar, Communicative, and Vocabulary worksheets, which can be done before, during, or after a lesson by students working individually or together.

Grammar

see pp.181–219

An activity for every Grammar Bank, which can be used in class or for self-study extra practice

Communicative

see pp.220–264

Extra speaking practice for every A, B, C lesson

Vocabulary

see pp.265–283

An activity for every Vocabulary Bank, which can be used in class or for self-study extra practice

There is more information on page 180 of this Teacher’s Guide about the photocopiable worksheets and tips on how best to use them.

Digital components on Oxford English Hub

The digital materials and resources for this course can all be found at **oxfordenglishhub.com**

FOR STUDENTS

Student e-Book

- A digital version of the Student Book with audio and video

Workbook e-Book

- A digital version of the Workbook with audio

Course resources

- All course audio and video

Exam Confidence

- Students can develop their skills confidence in English with access to bite-size Reading, Listening, Speaking, and Writing practice that complements the course. They can access it from their mobile device and use it in their own time and at their own pace.



FOR TEACHERS

Classroom Presentation Tool

The Classroom Presentation Tool digital component is for use in conjunction with the Student Book and Workbook print materials. It is a valuable tool for classroom management, providing a clear focus in the classroom and strong visual support for students, as well as additional material.

- The complete Student Book and Workbook
- All class audio and video, with interactive scripts
- Answer keys for exercises in the Student Book and Workbook

Course assessment

- Tests and assessment material, including: an Entry Test; Progress Tests; an End-of-Course Test; a Quick Test for every File; and a complete test for every File. There are A and B versions of all the main tests and audio files for all the Listening tests.

Teacher resources

- Course audio and video
- Photocopiable materials
- Downloadable wordlists

Professional Development

- Video in ELT
- Multimodality
- Effective feedback

File overview

Clear lesson summaries

Grammar, Vocabulary, and Pronunciation in every lesson

Vocabulary Banks help present and practice vocabulary.

A range of Vocabulary and Grammar videos brings language learning to life

Reading tasks develop students' reading skills and provide the context for the language of the lesson.

Engaging texts and topics updated from the third edition

1B Looking good

What does she look like? She has gray hair and green eyes.

1 VOCABULARY describing people

a 1.8 Listen to two people describe a family member. Which man is Adam? Which woman is Mel? What words did you hear that helped you identify them? What are Adam and Mel like?




b **Vocabulary Bank** Describing people p.158

c **Video** Watch and say which person in the photo is described, A, B, or C. What are they like?

2 READING & SPEAKING

a Look at the photos of Sarah Harris and Bruno Mars. Then complete the headings with two adjectives from the list.

generous gold gray short shy slim

b Work in pairs, A and B. Each read your article. Find the answers to the questions.

A

- What did many older women do when their hair went gray?
- What are the two reasons why gray hair is more popular now?
- Why are young people dyeing their hair gray?
- What have *Vogue* journalists noticed?
- What are the advantages of stopping dyeing your hair?

B

- In which sport is it an advantage to be tall? Why?
- In which sports is it an advantage to be short? Why?
- What examples does the article give of a disadvantage of being tall?
- What are the health advantages of being short?
- What does the article say is what really matters?

c Tell your partner about your article. Use the answers to your questions to help you.

d Did either of the articles surprise you? Describe someone you know who you think looks good.

A is great!

G

In the past, some people, especially women, felt bad when their hair started to go gray, and even today some people continue to dye their hair until their 80s or even 90s. But in fact, now gray hair is in fashion for men and women, young and old. One reason for this is movies. Some movie stars, for example, Meryl Streep and Salma Hayek, look fantastic with gray hair. Another reason is that during the Covid-19 pandemic, hair salons were closed, so older people went back to their natural color, and then realized that it looked good. And now, younger people are also dyeing their hair gray. For them, it's a way of saying that they are independent people who want to look different. Fashion magazine *Vogue* reports that all over the world they are seeing more and more young men and women at fashion shows who are silver gray. For people who are naturally gray, there are other advantages of not dyeing your hair. You don't need to go to the hair salon every two or three months, and you save a lot of money!



Sarah Harris, deputy editor of *Vogue*

Adapted from NBC News

B is super!

S

Your height is a biological fact that you can't really change. Many people think it's an advantage to be tall. But is it really? Of course, in some sports, like basketball, you need to be tall. If you have long legs, you can run faster, and with long arms you can stretch further. But in some sports, being short can be a bonus. Short people often have quicker reactions and are more agile, which is important in, for example, martial arts and gymnastics. Tall people also often have more accidents and are more likely to get injured if they fall. And several studies also show that short people live longer – in one village in Sardinia, the very tall people live for about two years less than their shorter neighbors. Of course, there are always exceptions, but in the end, it's not how tall or short you are that matters, it's how you live your life.



Brandy and Bruno Mars, singer-songwriters

Adapted from the BBC website

Additional practice
of the grammar in
the Grammar Bank

3 GRAMMAR simple present

a Complete the chart.

I / you / we / they	he / she / it
☒ I have gray hair.	My mother _____ gray hair.
☒ I don't mind being bald.	My brother _____ being bald.
☒ _____ you like being tall?	_____ your sister like being tall?

b Check (✓) the correct sentences. Then check in article B.

- 1 ☐ a Short people often have quicker reactions.
☐ b Short people have often quicker reactions.
- 2 ☐ a There always are exceptions.
☐ b There are always exceptions.

c **Grammar Bank 1B p.134**

4 PRONUNCIATION

final -s / -es

a **Video** Watch and repeat the sounds and sentences.

 snake	She looks very serious. He likes all sports.
 zebra	He has long arms and legs. She's tall, with blue eyes.
 /iz/	She uses reading glasses. He watches a lot of tennis matches.

Pronunciation of final -s / -es: verbs and nouns

The final -s is pronounced /s/ or /z/. The difference is small.
The final -es is pronounced /iz/ after ch, c, g, sh, s, z, and x.

b **1.13** How do you say the *he / she / it* form of these verbs and the plural of these nouns? Listen and check.

verbs	choose cook go live stop teach
nouns	book boy class friend language parent

5 LISTENING



In *The Guardian* newspaper "Blind Date" feature, two strangers who are looking for a relationship meet at a restaurant. Then they report how it went, and give a score out of 10. Jemma, 31, a gardener, met Pietro, 25, a PhD student.

a Look at the photo and describe the people.

b Read about Jemma and Pietro. What is a blind date? Do you think they are going to get along?

c **1.14** Listen to them describe the date. What score do you think they gave?

Jemma ☐ /10 Pietro ☐ /10

d Listen again and circle the adjectives that Jemma uses to describe Pietro, and that Pietro uses to describe Jemma.

Jemma about Pietro

cheap extroverted funny hardworking
interesting kind polite talkative well-dressed

Pietro about Jemma

adventurous friendly generous interesting polite
serious shy talkative young

e **1.15** Now listen and check your answer to c. Have you ever been on a blind date? Would you like to?

6 SPEAKING

a Think of somebody you know well who would like to meet new people. Look at the list and make notes about him / her.

name age job appearance
personality ☐ / ☐ likes / doesn't like

b Work in pairs. **A**, describe your person to **B**. **B**, listen and ask for more information. Do you know anybody who would be a good friend for **A**'s person? Then change roles.

His name's Mario, and he's about 30 years old.

7 WRITING a personal profile

Writing Bank 1 p.115 Write your personal profile.

Tasks develop
listening skills.

Opportunities
for personalized
speaking
throughout the
lesson

Guided writing
tasks in the Writing
Bank cover a range
of writing types.

Pronunciation videos to
model and practice English
sounds

You hear / You say phrases focus on the key functional English phrases.

Part 3 continues the story and ends with a cliffhanger before the next episode.

b Watch again. Complete the **You hear** phrases.

You hear	You say
Conversation 1	
Hello, reception.	Hello, this is room 13.
How can I ¹ _____ you?	There's a problem with the air conditioning. It isn't working and it's very hot in my room.
I'm sorry. I'll ² _____ somebody up to ³ _____ at it right now.	
Conversation 2	
Good ⁴ _____, reception.	Hello. I'm sorry to bother you again. This is room 13.
How can I help?	I have another problem. I can't connect to the Wi-Fi.
I'm sorry. I'll ⁵ _____ you through to my colleague. She can help you.	Thank you very much.

c **Video** Watch and repeat the **You say** phrases. Copy the **rhythm**. Then practice the conversations with a partner.

Offers with I'll

I'll = I will. We use **I'll** + verb to offer to do something.

A There's a problem with the air conditioning.

B I'll send somebody up to look at it.

d **ROLE-PLAY** Work in pairs. Have conversations. Then change roles.

- A** You are the receptionist. **B** is a guest at the hotel. **B** calls you.
Begin: Good morning, reception. Can I help you?
- B** You are a guest (give your room number). Use your first name and last name. You have a problem in your room – explain your problem.
- A** Offer to do something about **B**'s problem.

3 IZZY AND EMMA MEET

a Look at the photo. Do you think the meeting between Emma and Izzy was a success? Why (not)?



b **Video** Watch Izzy and Emma meet and check. Was it a success? Why (not)?

c Watch again. Who says these things and who to? Write **B** (Ben), **E** (Emma), or **I** (Izzy).

- "Are you eating enough?" _____ to _____
- "Right now, I'm working on a really big project." _____ to _____
- "Wow, that's a really cool jacket!" _____ to _____
- "Are you going to come with us?" _____ to _____
- "I booked a table for three." _____ to _____
- "Everyone is going." _____ to _____
- "It's just you and me, then." _____ to _____
- "But you just got here." _____ to _____

4 SOCIAL ENGLISH

a Match a phrase from **A** with a response in **B**.

A	B
1 Are you free to go for a drink this evening?	☐ It's great.
2 It's nice to meet you.	☐ But you just got here.
3 How's the photography course going?	☐ It's nice to meet you, too.
4 I've heard a lot about you.	☐ Oh. I'm sorry, I can't.
5 Actually, I need to go now.	☐ Me too.

b **Video** Watch and check.

c In pairs, practice the phrases and responses. Then change roles.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

In pairs, talk about Izzy, Ben, and Emma. Why is the meeting important for Ben? Do you think that Izzy was right to go out with her co-workers? Do you think that Emma and Izzy are going to get along well?

Focus on key Social English phrases from the episode

Opportunities for students to respond personally and critically to the video

Pairwork for students to practice the key language

Review to be done individually or in pairs, in class, or at home

The left-hand page reviews the Grammar, Vocabulary, and Pronunciation of the previous Files.

The right-hand page provides a series of skills-based challenges.

1&2 Review and Check

GRAMMAR

Circle a, b, or c.

1. ... any brothers or sisters?
a Have you b Do you c Do you have
2. ... last night?
a Where you went b Where did you go c Where you did go
3. My boyfriend ... soccer.
a doesn't like b don't like c doesn't likes
4. Her parents ... a small business.
a has b have c have
5. I ... to music when I'm working.
a never listen b don't never listen c listen never
6. In the picture, the woman ... a blue skirt.
a wear b wearing c is wearing
7. A: What ... ? B: I'm looking for my keys.
a you are doing b do you do c are you doing
8. She's in college. She ... history.
a 's studying b 's studying c studying
9. We ... to Bangkok last August.
a were b went c did went
10. I saw the movie, but I ...
a didn't liked b don't liked c didn't like
11. When I got home, my parents ... on the sofa.
a were sitting b was sitting c were sitting
12. What ... at 11 p.m.? You didn't answer my call.
a you were doing b you was doing c were you doing
13. She couldn't read the menu because she ... her glasses.
a wasn't wearing b didn't wear c didn't wearing
14. We had lunch in a restaurant. ... we decided to go for a walk.
a After b Then c When
15. We had a great time. ... the weather wasn't very good.
a so b because c although

VOCABULARY

a. Complete the phrases with a verb from the list.

book do drive invite leave look play stay take wear

1. A: What do you ... ? B: I'm a doctor.
2. A: What does she ... (sue)? B: She's tall and slim.
3. She doesn't usually ... jewelry - only her wedding ring.
4. A: Did you ... any photos? B: No, I didn't.
5. A: Where did you ... ? B: In a small hotel.
6. Did you ... your flight online?
7. A: Let's ... your parents to dinner. B: Good idea.
8. Are you going to ... there?
9. B: We're going to take the train.
10. A: Go on! Ask the DJ to ... our song! B: OK.
11. A: What time do we need to ... home tomorrow?
B: About 7:00. Our flight is at 9:00.

Can you understand this text?

a. Read the article once. What countries can you see in the photos? Match the headings to the tips.

A. Adapt the situation
B. Get up early and stay out late
C. Think about the background

b. Read the article again. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).

1. One of the best times to take a photo is in the afternoon.
2. Your vacation photos will never be as good as the ones on travel websites.
3. It's important to notice everything before you take a photo.
4. Never take a nature photo when there are people in the background.
5. There were a lot of people everywhere when the writer was in India.
6. The writer took a photo of people taking photos.

Can you understand these people?

Video Watch and answer the questions.

1. Lewis looks like ...
a his father b his mother c his mother and his father
2. In the Dal painting that Susie likes, there are some dripping ...
a clocks b rocks c socks
3. Shoshanna went to Guyana because she wanted to learn ...
a about the animals and plants there b about her family history c the language
4. Awet doesn't usually take photos of ...
a mountains b flowers c buildings
5. Sam only likes watching ...
a movies with a happy ending b movies with a sad ending c good movies

Can you say this in English?

Check (✓) the box if you can do these things.

Can you ...?

1. ask and answer six questions about your home and family, work / studies, and free-time activities
2. describe the appearance and personality of a person you know well
3. describe a photo in this book and say what is happening, what the people are wearing, etc.
4. ask and answer three questions about a vacation
5. describe a favorite photo and say what was happening when you took it
6. say three true sentences using the connectors so, because, and although

How to take better vacation photos

Vacation time is the one time we all take photos. You're in a strange new place, the sun is shining, and you want to record your surroundings and happy memories. So how do you take the perfect vacation photos? Here are three useful tips.

1. The best times for travel photography are around sunrise and sunset, known as the "blue hour" and the "golden hour." They give you the prettiest light and the most interesting skies, but you also avoid the crowds and can get those gloriously empty images of your destination that you see on all the travel websites. I took this image of our campsite in the Sahara Desert, Morocco, at the blue hour. It was just after sunset, while the rest of my tour group was sitting around the campfire.

2. Think about the whole shot. Is there a parked car blocking the view? Did a tourist just get into the back of the photo? Ask yourself, "Does more perspective or wait until the person has moved away. In this image of the town of Mahaua (Falkland Islands), I included the people because I wanted to contrast the group with the birds. If you wanted this to just be a photo of the birds, you could move or zoom in."

3. When I was in India, I found everywhere was really crowded. So, instead of trying to take photos of buildings (very boring anyway), I decided to photograph the other people and came back with much more interesting travel images as a result. Here the temple was full of tourists, so I photographed them taking selfies.

Adapted from a travel website

"On the street" interviews with real people can be done in class or at home

Exam-type tasks

Speaking challenge to assess students' ability to use the language in the Files

Vocabulary sections in the Student Book are linked to the Vocabulary Bank section on pages 158–171 of the Student Book to provide further development of lexical sets.

Photos and illustrations give context to vocabulary items.

Phonetic transcriptions of new vocabulary and audio models of each word help students with pronunciation.

Describing people

1 Appearance What does he / she look like?

a. Match the sentences and photos.

She has curly dark hair.
 She has long straight hair.
 She has big brown eyes.
 She has short blonde hair.
 He has a beard and a mustache.
 He's bald.
 He's very tall and slim.
 He's average height and very thin.
 He's short and a little overweight.

b. 1.8 Listen and check.

c. Cover the phrases and look at the photos. Test yourself or a partner.

Using two or more adjectives together

We often use two or more adjectives together (without and) to describe hair or eyes, e.g., She has long straight blonde hair or he has big brown eyes. Adjectives usually go in this order:
 size → style → color → noun.

Vocabulary Bank

2 Personality What's he / she like?

a. Match the adjectives to the definitions.

Adjective	Opposite
extroverted / ˌɛkstrəˈvɜːrtəd	friendly / ˈfrendli
generous / ˈdʒenərəs	hardworking / ˈhɑːdˈwɜːkɪŋ
talkative / ˈtɔːkətɪv	warm / wɜːm

1. A person who behaves in a pleasant way and wants to help people is friendly.
2. A person who talks a lot is talkative.
3. A person who likes giving people things is generous.
4. A person who shows love and care for other people is warm.
5. A person who puts a lot of effort into their work is hardworking.
6. A person who makes people laugh is extroverted.
7. A person who is confident and likes talking to other people is talkative.

b. Complete the Opposite column with adjectives from the list.

cheap / ˈtʃiːp cold / kəʊld lazy / ˈleɪzi quiet / ˈkwaɪət
 serious / ˈsɪəriəs shy / ʃaɪ untidy / ʌnˈtɪdi

Negative adjectives

We often use not very + a positive adjective instead of a negative adjective, e.g., not very friendly instead of unfriendly, or not very hardworking instead of lazy.

c. 1.9 Listen and check.

d. Cover the adjectives and look at the definitions. Say the adjective and its opposite.

What does she look like? What is she like?

What does she look like? Tell me about her appearance. (Is she tall / short? What color hair does she have?)
 What is she like? Tell me about her personality. (Is she friendly? Is she shy?)

ACTIVATION In pairs, ask and answer questions about a member of your family or a good friend.

What does your sister look like?
 She's tall and she has short dark hair.
 What's she like?

Students can easily review and test their vocabulary.

Each Vocabulary Bank has an Activation activity that provides additional practice of the vocabulary.

The Grammar Banks provide a single, easy-to-access grammar reference section to provide further grammar explanation.

Extended grammar rules for every lesson in the Student Book

Additional grammar practice with at least two practice exercises for each grammar point

A focus on meaning, form, and use in each Grammar Bank section

Example sentences with audio provide context and focus on pronunciation.

1 Grammar Bank

1A word order in questions

questions with **do** and **can**

Are you hungry? Is there a bank near here? Can I see that poster? What were you doing?

Where were you born? What did you do last night? Where did you go last night? Where did you live when you were a child?

1B simple present

I / you / we / they he / she / it

I usually work at home. My brother works in the city. My parents don't live near here. I don't often talk to him. Do you speak French? Does she like pop music? Yes, we do. / No, we don't. Yes, she does. / No, she doesn't.

1C present continuous: be + verb + -ing

I / you / we / they he / she / it

I'm working. You're working. He's working. It's raining. They're working. She's working. It's raining.

Common errors are highlighted.

A one-page Writing Bank for every File provides guided writing tasks to develop students' writing skills, covering a range of writing genres.

A model text provides a clear context for writing.

Writing Bank

1 A personal profile

a Read Dani's profile. Are you similar to her in any way?

Dani
242 friends
Posts About Friends Photos Videos

Hi, my name's Dani. Well, it's really Daniela, but everyone calls me Dani. I'm 21 years old. I'm Mexican and I live in Mérida.

I'm going to tell you about myself. I'm in college. I'm studying engineering. I'm in my third year and I really like it. I live with my parents and my sister in an apartment downtown. I have a dog, a Yorkshire Terrier - her name is Susi.

As you can see from the photo, I have black hair and brown eyes. My mother says I look like her, but I think I look more like my father.

I think I'm a positive person. My friends say I'm funny. It's true, I like making people laugh, but I can be serious when I need to be!

I have exams soon, so I don't have much free time at the moment. But when I can, I like going hiking and I sometimes play tennis. I also like watching TV shows, especially crime dramas and comedies. I watch them with English subtitles because I want to improve my English.

b Read the profile again and answer the questions for each paragraph.

1 What's Dani's real name? How old is she? Where's she from?
2 What does she do? Who does she live with?
3 What does she look like?
4 What's she like?
5 What does she do in her free time?

c Look at the highlighted phrases in the profile. Then complete sentences 1-6 to make them true for you.

1 Everyone calls me _____.
2 As you can see from the photo, I have _____.
3 My mother / father says I'm _____.
4 I think I'm a _____ person.
5 My friends say I look _____.
6 When I can, I like _____.

d Read the information box. Then complete some personal information about Roberto with and, but, so, or because.

1 I'm from Brazil, _____ I live in the US.
2 I don't speak much Portuguese _____ we moved to San Francisco when I was two.
3 I live with my parents _____ my older sister.
4 My father says we can't have a dog _____ we don't have a yard.
5 I work in a cafe from 9:00 a.m. to 6:00 p.m. _____ I'm usually very tired in the evening.
6 I have brown hair _____ green eyes, like my mother.
7 I'm a little shy, _____ I also like meeting new people.
8 My friends and I love soccer _____ we often play together on the weekend.

e Plan your profile. Plan five paragraphs. Look at the questions in b and your ideas in c. Think about what you're going to write.

f Now write your profile. Use your notes in e and use and, but, so, or because to link your ideas. Try to use some of the highlighted phrases.

g Read your profile again and check your spelling, grammar, and punctuation.

Focus on key language needed for the writing task

A plan / write / review approach in each Writing Bank



The role of video in language learning

Introduction

Video viewing is increasingly becoming recognized as a “fifth skill” and is a hugely important part of the language learning classroom. It has become a predominant medium in how we receive information in today’s world.

Video is not new in language teaching, but it has been seen as primarily a listening skill, where students have often been asked to watch a video and complete a written task while they are watching the video, which checks their comprehension of what they have heard. While comprehension is still very important, the visual and viewing aspects of video in the classroom have not always been fully exploited.

The approach to video in the classroom nowadays is changing as we understand that students can benefit from engaging actively with it. It should be an integral part of teaching where students can participate in a multi-sensory way with a variety of information, have greater interaction with the content, and thus facilitate their language acquisition and confidence to communicate.

The benefits of using video in the classroom

Motivation and engagement

Most students respond well to video and can find it more engaging than text or audio as a medium of instruction, so video can help to keep students motivated and focused.

Providing a context for language input

Video helps contextualize new language, such as vocabulary and grammar, as well as more complex aspects of language, such as register and formality.

It’s also hugely beneficial for modeling nonverbal communication. Video can give us the opportunity to observe nonverbal communication: the way people use their hands, bodies, and facial expressions to communicate in different contexts, something that would otherwise be very challenging to teach in the classroom.

Language practice

Videos can provide us with models of the target language in conversation that students can follow and then personalize for their own practice, perhaps creating videos of themselves using the target language and sharing them with classmates.

Skills practice

Watching a video provides more information than simply listening to an audio. Providing a balance of video and audio allows students to improve their ability to understand what is being said in real situations. Similarly, watching people speak will allow students to improve their ability to communicate effectively.

It’s important that students are given the opportunity to develop their viewing skills, so material should provide activities that focus on what the students can see as well as hear.

Achieve learning goals

Videos are an important part of a lesson and provide variety to help learners achieve their learning goals. There should be a clear reason for using video in the classroom. It shouldn’t be used as a “reward” or an add-on at the end of the semester but must always have a clear purpose.

Multimodal learning

Many videos that learners encounter in real life are multimodal. Multimodality is where there is the use of more than one mode of communication in a visual text to create meaning. Including some video in the classroom that is multimodal helps students develop their English both inside and outside of the classroom.

Cultural aspects

As English is an international language spoken in different contexts around the world, each with their own cultural appropriacies, video is often rich in cultural information about the way people in different cultures live and interact.

Integrating videos into a lesson

In *American English File fourth edition*, the concept of integrating a range of videos into each lesson enhances the learning experience for students. When teachers incorporate viewing into their classroom practices, it is of vital importance that viewing does not seem radically different to their current teaching practices and that both teachers and learners are aware that understanding the viewing process is as important as understanding the listening and reading processes.

To encourage learners to become effective active viewers, teachers could use the following procedure:

- **Before Viewing:** learners prepare to view by activating the prior knowledge they bring to the study of a topic or theme (their schemata), anticipating a message, predicting, speculating, asking questions, and setting a purpose for viewing.
- **During Viewing:** learners view the multimodal text to understand the message by seeking and checking their understanding by making connections, confirming predictions and inferences, interpreting and summarizing, pausing and reviewing, and analyzing and evaluating. Learners should monitor their understanding by connecting to their background knowledge, questioning, and reflecting.
- **After Viewing:** learners should be given opportunities to respond personally, critically, and creatively to multimodal texts. Learners respond by reflecting, analyzing, evaluating, and creating.

Video in *American English File fourth edition*

American English File fourth edition takes the principles of using video in the classroom, as seen on the previous page, and embeds them into the lessons throughout the book.

Look out for the Video icons  **Video** in every File.

There is a lot of variety of video type and also of how and where the videos are used. The firm principle is that video is used to enhance a lesson in the natural place it works best, rather than sticking to a rigid formula with video tagged onto the end of a File.

The three key language elements of the course are Grammar, Vocabulary, and Pronunciation, and the video content sets out to help students learn and practice these elements as well as developing their listening and speaking skills.

The video content in *American English File fourth edition* also develops viewing skills, with tasks that focus on what they can see, body language, and other nonverbal communication.

Types of video in the course include:



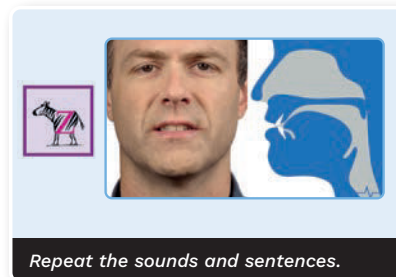
Grammar videos

The use of video brings situations to life and provides engaging practice. Students are exposed to real language in meaningful contexts that are used to present or practice target language through dramatized conversations, games, and quizzes.



Vocabulary videos

Video helps contextualize language through carefully selected images and clips that are visually engaging and motivating. The videos include clips and visual prompts, games, and animations.



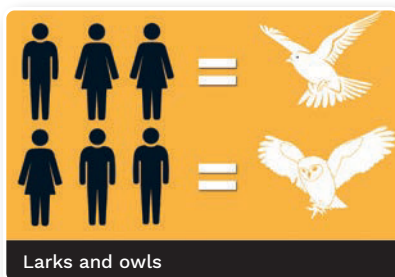
Pronunciation videos

These provide modeling and practice of English sounds, showing the mouth position to help students both make and recognize the sounds. Pronunciation videos are embedded within lessons and a full set of Sound Bank videos can be found in the resources section on *Oxford English Hub*.



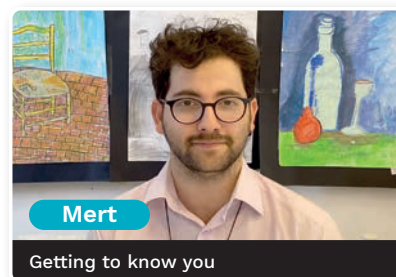
Dramas

Short dramas, dramatized conversations, and comedy shorts present or practice grammar and vocabulary and develop listening and viewing skills.



Documentaries

Information films, documentaries, and biopics in a range of styles, with videos from around the world, develop listening and viewing skills.



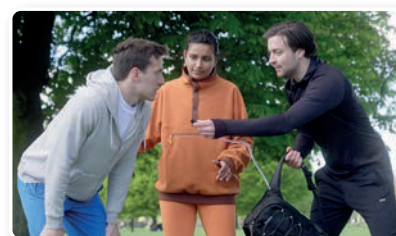
Interviews and teacher-generated content

Videos of street interviews expose students to authentic content from real people around the world and provide stimulating examples of language they can relate and aspire to. For this edition, we invited teachers to submit their own videos for use in the course.



Practical English videos

An exciting, new Netflix-style drama series for *American English File fourth edition*, *Pictures of you*, develops listening and viewing skills and provides valuable input and practice for functional language and social English.



How to exploit video in the classroom

American English File fourth edition has tasks and teaching notes for every video. For example, with grammar and vocabulary practice activities where the video contains visual prompts for words, phrases, or sentences, the Teacher's Guide gives instructions as to how to use them in class. However, many of them can be used in other ways, depending on class numbers and what kind of practice you want to focus on. The following are possible ways to ring the changes and get the most out of the video material in *American English File fourth edition*:

- Written and oral practice
- Using subtitles
- Alternative video suggestions

Written and oral practice

Written practice

- 1 Ask Sts to work individually, or put them into pairs or teams.
- 2 Play the video once the whole way through.
- 3 If the activity ends with a grid showing a still image of all of the clips within the video, pause the video there, and give Sts time to write the answers. You may want to set a time limit.
- 4 If the video does not end with a grid, the second time you play it, pause it after each clip, again giving Sts a time limit.
- 5 You may want to ask Sts to spell their answers.

Oral practice

- 1 Play the video once the whole way through.
- 2 Tell Sts they are going to watch it again. Pause the video toward the end of each clip and elicit the answers orally, either from the whole class, or individual Sts.
- 3 Make sure you correct any pronunciation errors.

Using subtitles

Subtitles are being increasingly used by native speakers globally even when what they are watching is in their language. Reading English subtitles while watching is something that will benefit Sts' reading and listening skills, so there may be occasions, especially where the video is a grammar presentation, where you may want to have them on for the second listen. Where the aim is improving their listening skills, having a third listen with subtitles is a way of allowing Sts to confirm what they understood, and also for dealing with new vocabulary or pronunciation they were not expecting.

With a listening where you feel that the speed or accent is making it especially challenging for your Sts, having the subtitles on is a way of helping them enjoy what they are watching, and to show them how watching with subtitles makes video that might otherwise be above level more accessible.

Alternative video suggestions

Once you are familiar with the way a video works in a lesson, you may want to try exploiting it in different ways, or even to reuse a video for a different purpose. The following list of tasks are things that you might choose to use with different videos. However, at lower levels make sure that you do not introduce an activity requiring language that Sts have not yet been taught.

Noticing sounds

- 1 Play the video with the picture off.
- 2 Ask Sts to write down the noises they can hear, e.g., a door opening, a person walking, a dog barking, etc.
- 3 Put the Sts into pairs to compare their ideas.
- 4 Play the video with the picture on and check their ideas.

Watching with the sound off 1

- 1 Play the video with the sound off.
- 2 Ask some questions while the video is playing to help Sts imagine / articulate what is happening.
- 3 Then ask Sts to discuss what they think the people in the video are saying or doing. Elicit some ideas.
- 4 Play the extract with the sound on and compare with the Sts' answers.

Watching with the sound off 2

- 1 Play the video with the sound off.
- 2 Put the Sts in pairs. Ask them to write five questions that they want to know the answer to, based on the visuals they have seen.
- 3 Elicit some ideas and write them on the board.
- 4 Play the video again with the sound on and see if the Sts can answer their own questions.
- 5 Ask the Sts to share the information from their questions and answers.

Screenshots

- 1 Before the lesson, watch the video and make five or six screenshots. Make a handout or a PowerPoint slide of the screenshots in a random order.
- 2 Distribute / Display the handout and ask Sts to discuss what the video is going to be about.
- 3 Ask Sts to put the screenshots in the order they expect to see them.
- 4 Compare their ideas as a group and then play the video to check them.
- 5 Extension: After you've done the exercises in the book, ask Sts to use the pictures to summarize the video in their own words.

Watching on fast-forward

- 1 Play the video on fast-forward.
- 2 Give Sts a few gist questions to predict what they think is happening, e.g., *Are they talking or arguing? Does it end well?*
- 3 Put the Sts into pairs to compare their ideas.
- 4 Play the video with the picture on and check their ideas.

Emotions

- 1 Play the video with the sound off. Ask the Sts to say how the people are feeling and why they think that.
- 2 Put the Sts into pairs and ask them to compare their ideas.
- 3 When doing the exercises in the book, the Sts can check their ideas.

“Thing” bingo

- 1 Before the lesson, watch the video and make a list of things you see. This works for a video of stills, clips, a short drama or documentary, etc.
- 2 In class, write the list of things on the board. Ask Sts to choose and write down five of the words.
- 3 Play the video, and Sts check off the items on their list as they see them.
- 4 When a student has checked off all the items on their list, they shout “Bingo!” Keep playing the video until all Sts have completed their lists.
- 5 Put Sts into pairs and ask them to discuss what they saw, when, and in what order.

Pause and predict

- 1 Prepare by reading the script and choosing a few places where you could pause and ask Sts what they think happens next?
- 2 Put the Sts in pairs. Play the video and pause on the first screen.
- 3 Ask them to predict what they think is happening and what is going to happen next.
- 4 Ask for ideas from a couple of pairs.
- 5 Play the clip and ask the Sts if their predictions were right.
- 6 Play the video and pause on the next screen. Ask the Sts in their pairs to discuss what they would like to happen and why.
- 7 Ask a couple of different pairs for their predictions.
- 8 Play the next clip and ask the class how many of their predictions were right, and so on.

Predicting images

- 1 Focus on the title of a video that Sts are going to watch.
- 2 Put Sts into pairs and ask them to predict five things they think they are going to see in the video.
- 3 Elicit their ideas and write them on the board.
- 4 Play the video and check or cross off their suggestions. See if any pairs predicted five correct images.

Colors

- 1 Ask Sts to write a list of eight colors.
- 2 Tell them that they need to try to find at least one thing in the video that is of each of the colors on their lists.
- 3 Play the video.
- 4 Put the Sts in pairs and ask them to compare their lists. What were the most / least common colors? Can they describe the things?

Memory / Observation

- 1 Play the video. Pause it at a specific point.
- 2 Tell the Sts they have 30 seconds to look at the image.
- 3 Turn off the video and ask Sts to write down what people are doing / what things are in the picture / what colors they can see (or other ideas depending on the video you have chosen).
- 4 Put the Sts in pairs and ask them to compare ideas.
- 5 Elicit feedback from the class.
- 6 Show the screen again and ask Sts how many of their observations were right. Did they miss anything?

One-sentence video review

- 1 Tell Sts to write a one-sentence review of the video. (You could set a word limit to add to the challenge.)
- 2 Ask Sts to work in pairs and compare their summary with a partner.

Memory test

- 1 After you’ve done the activities in the book with Sts, tell them you are going to do a “test.”
- 2 Ask Sts to work with a partner. Ask them 5–10 “observation” questions about the video, e.g., *What color was the girl’s blouse? How many animals were there?* etc. Sts should discuss the answers with their partner and write them down.
- 3 After you’ve asked your questions, play the video again, and ask Sts to check their answers or go through the answers with the Sts to see who were the “winners.”

- G** word order in questions
V common verb phrases: *get up, have lunch, speak languages*, etc.
P the alphabet

Lesson plan

This first lesson has three main objectives: to help you and Sts get to know each other, to give you a clear idea of the level of your class, and to provide some quick, efficient review of some Level 1 language points.

The lesson begins with a review of common verb phrases in the context of a *Getting to know you* questionnaire. Sts then watch a video where five people from different countries answer some of the questions as a model for them to then ask and answer them themselves. This is followed by the grammar focus which is on word order in questions. The pronunciation of the alphabet is reviewed, and the listening activity gives Sts the chance to review spelling. Sts then bring all the language together by interviewing each other and completing a form. There is an Entry Test on *Oxford English Hub*, which you can give Sts before starting the course.

Video material

Vocabulary & Speaking – common verb phrases
 Pronunciation – the alphabet

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar word order in questions p.184
Communicative Student profile p.229 (instructions p.220)

Oxford English Hub

Entry Test

For students

Workbook 1A

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Before the class, choose some party music.

Introduce yourself to the class. Say *Hello, I'm...*

Tell Sts to stand up. Divide the class into two groups, **A** and **B**. Ask both groups to make a circle, **A** inside **B**. Tell them to imagine that they're at a party. When you play the music, tell them to walk around in their circle, one clockwise and the other counterclockwise. Each time you stop the music, tell them to introduce themselves to the person standing across from them. Elicit that they can say *Hello, I'm...* or *Hi, I'm...*, or *My name's...*, and can respond *Nice to meet you*.

1 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING common verb phrases

Vocabulary notes

Sts at this level should be familiar with all these verb phrases. You may want to highlight the two meanings of *have*, as in *have brothers and sisters* and *have lunch*.

- a** If you didn't do the **Optional lead-in** and your Sts don't know each other, set a time limit of, for example, two minutes, and tell Sts to stand up and move around the room, introducing themselves to other Sts. Tell them to say *Hello / Hi, I'm...* and *Nice to meet you*, and to try to remember other Sts' names.

Books open. Focus on the questions in *Getting to know you*. Teach / Elicit the meaning of *occupation* (= a job or profession, i.e., what you do) and *routine* (= the normal order and way in which you regularly do things). Model and drill their pronunciation /ˌɒkʊpəˈpeɪʃn/ and /ruːtɪn/. Point out that the first two (*are, were*) have been done for them. Tell Sts to complete the other questions, individually or in pairs, with the correct verbs.

Check answers, making sure that Sts understand the whole question, not just the missing verb.

ANSWERS

3 speak 4 live 5 have 6 have 7 do 8 get 9 have
 10 do 11 go 12 study 13 listen 14 watch / like 15 play
 16 read / like 17 go 18 do

- b** In this video, five non-native speakers from different countries answer some of the questions from the questionnaire.

Focus on the instructions and then on the five photos. Point out that the first one has been done for them. Play the video for Sts to watch, pausing after each person. Check answers, eliciting the question number and the whole question.

EXTRA SUPPORT Read through the script and decide if you need to pre-teach any new lexis before Sts listen. You could do this with any video or audio script if you think your Sts need extra support.

ANSWERS

Gastón: 1, 2, 3, (4)
Kateřina: 5, 6
Ollie: 8, 11
Hellen: 13, 15
Mert: 17, 18



1 I = interviewer, G = Gastón

I Where are you from?

G I'm from Costa Rica, in Central America, but I live in Italy.

I Where were you born?

G I was born in San José, the capital of Costa Rica.

I What languages do you speak?

G I speak five languages: Spanish, which is my mother tongue; English, because I studied in a(n) English high school; French, which I learned at the high school; Italian, because I live in Italy; and German, because of my passion for German music.

2 I = interviewer, K = Kateřina

I Do you have any brothers or sisters?

K Yes, I have one sister that is two years younger than me, and I have a brother that is fifteen years younger than me.

I Do you have any pets?

K No, unfortunately no. My kids are allergic, but I used to have a dog when I was a kid.

3 I = interviewer, O = Ollie

I What time do you get up during the week?

O I usually get up at about eight-thirty in the morning.

I What time do you usually go to bed?

O It depends. During the week, um, at about eleven-thirty.

4 I = interviewer, H = Hellen

I What kind of music do you listen to?

H I like to listen to very different kinds of music. I like from new age to heavy metal, from K-pop to blues, so it varies.

I Do you exercise or play any sports?

H Yes, I do. I'm a black belt in aikido. It's a Japanese martial art, so I do it three times a week.

5 I = interviewer, M = Mert

I How often do you go to the movies?

M I sometimes go to the cinema, but I prefer watching at home.

I What did you do last weekend?

M Last weekend, on Saturday, I went to Istanbul, and on Sunday, I met my friends.

c Now tell Sts to focus on the answers. Play the video again. Pause after Gastón, and elicit answers by asking *Where is he from?*, etc. Repeat with the other four speakers. You may want to tell them that Kateřina is from the Czech Republic, Ollie is from Vietnam, Hellen is from Brazil, and Mert is from Türkiye.

Get Sts to compare what they remember with a partner.

Check answers. Make sure students understand that Mert says *the cinema*, which is British English for *the movies*.

ANSWERS

Gastón

- 1 Costa Rica, in Central America
- 2 San José, the capital of Costa Rica
- 3 Spanish, English, French, Italian, and German

Kateřina

- 5 One sister and a brother
- 6 No (though she had a dog when she was a child)

Ollie

- 8 8:30
- 11 About 11:30

Hellen

- 13 Different kinds, new age, heavy metal, K-pop, blues
- 15 Yes, aikido

Mert

- 17 Sometimes, but he prefers watching movies at home.
- 18 On Saturday, he went to Istanbul and on Sunday he met his friends.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

d Focus on the **"Returning" a question** box and go through it with the class.

Now focus on the instructions and the example.

Demonstrate the activity by getting Sts to ask you questions first. Give full answers, with extra information.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Encourage Sts to ask a follow-up question if their partner hasn't "returned" the question, e.g.:

A *Do you have any brothers and sisters?*

B *I have one brother.*

A *How old is he? / What's his name? / What does he do?*

! Point out that question 7 (*What do you do?*) can also be answered with, for example, *I'm unemployed / looking for a job / taking care of my children*, etc.

Put Sts in pairs. Remind them of *It depends* as a possible answer. Give them time to ask and answer all the questions. Monitor their conversations to give you an idea of their oral level.

Get feedback from several pairs to see what they have in common. At this point, you could teach them the word *both* and its position (before all verbs except *be* and modal verbs like *can*), e.g., *We both live downtown. We're both doctors. We can both speak Spanish.*

2 GRAMMAR word order in questions

a Focus on the instructions and point out that the first one has been done for them.

Give Sts time to read questions 2–6 and check or correct them.

Get Sts to compare with a partner.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 2 X Where does your sister work?
- 3 ✓
- 4 ✓
- 5 X Do you have coffee for breakfast?
- 6 X Where did you go for your last vacation?

EXTRA IDEA Put Sts in pairs and get them to ask and answer the six questions.

b Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 1A** on p.134. Explain that all the grammar rules and exercises are in this part of the book.

Grammar notes

In questions with the auxiliaries *do*, *does*, and *did*, Sts might leave out the auxiliary or get the word order wrong, e.g., *Do you live with your parents?* *Why didn't she like the movie?* NOT *You live with your parents? Why she didn't like the movie?*

In questions with *be* and *can*, Sts sometimes forget to invert the subject and verb, e.g., *Is Ana a student?* *Where can I sit?* NOT *Ana is a student? Where I can sit?*

If a verb is followed by a preposition (e.g., *talk about*, *listen to*), the preposition goes at the end of the question, e.g., *What did you talk about?*

Focus on the example sentences and play both audio

🔊 1.2 and 🔊 1.3 for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the exercises for **1A** on p.135. Sts do the exercises individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full questions.

ANSWERS

- a 1 Where **are** you from?
- 2 Does **the class** finish at 8:00?
- 3 Where **can** we park?
- 4 Where do your friends **live**?
- 5 **Did** you answer my email?
- 6 Do you often **go** to the movies?
- 7 What **does** this word mean?
- 8 What time did **your friends** arrive?
- 9 Who are you talking **to**?
- 10 Where were **you** last night?

- b 1 Do you have a car?
- 2 Where was your brother born?
- 3 How often does he call you?
- 4 What time does their flight arrive?
- 5 Is your girlfriend from Brazil?
- 6 How many languages can you speak?
- 7 How was the party?
- 8 Where did you go last summer?
- 9 Is there a doctor here?
- 10 Did you come to school by bus?

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **1A**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **1A Grammar** photocopiable activity.

- c Focus on the instructions, the questions, and the example. Demonstrate the activity by asking the first question (*Do you drink a lot of tea or coffee?*) until someone answers *Yes, I do*. Then ask the follow-up question (*How many cups do you drink a day?*).

Give Sts a few minutes to figure out how to form the questions.

Check answers.

EXTRA SUPPORT Put Sts in pairs to write the questions.

ANSWERS

PRESENT

What gym **do you go** to?

How many hours **do you sleep**?

What games **do you play**? / What games **do you like playing**?

What sports **do you like watching**? / What sports **do you watch**?

PAST

What time **did you go** to bed?

What **did you cook**?

Where **did you go**?

What movie **did you see**?

What **did you buy**?

- d Focus on the instructions and make sure Sts understand what they have to do.

Ask Sts to stand up and move around the class, asking each other the questions. If it's difficult to move around the class, do this in small groups.

Get some feedback from the class.

3 PRONUNCIATION the alphabet

Pronunciation notes

Emphasize the importance of being able to spell in English, particularly your name or email address. Point out that it is very useful to be able to recognize and write down letters correctly when people spell words to you.

If your Sts didn't use *American English File Level 1*, this will be the first time that they have seen the sound pictures (*train*, *tree*, etc.). Explain that the pictures will give Sts a clear example of the target sound and that they will help Sts remember the pronunciation of the phonetic symbol. This is very important if Sts want to check the pronunciation of a word in the dictionary. Even if they have a dictionary app, the phonetic symbol will help clarify which sound it is.

- a **1.4** Put Sts in pairs and get them to say the groups of letters to each other.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Elicit the alphabet from the class before playing the audio.

Now play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

1.4

See the alphabet in Student Book on p.9

Now play the audio again, pausing after each group of letters for Sts to listen and repeat.

- b Focus on the sound pictures and instructions.

Point out that the first one (*train*) has been done for them.

EXTRA SUPPORT If your Sts didn't use *American English File Level 1*, you may want to demonstrate the example or play the example on video. Get Sts to watch and repeat the picture word (*train*), then the sound (/eɪ/), and focus on the mouth position.

Give Sts time to write the words.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, then play the video for Sts to watch and check.

Check answers.



1 train /eɪ/

2 tree /i/

3 egg /ɛ/

4 bike /aɪ/

5 phone /oʊ/

6 boot /u/

7 car /ɑr/

Now play it again. Get Sts to watch and repeat the picture word, then the sound and focus on the mouth position. Pause after each one for Sts to repeat.

EXTRA IDEA Tell Sts to go to the **Sound Bank** on pp.174–175. If your Sts didn't use *American English File Level 1*, explain that this is a reference section of the book, where they can check the symbols and see common sound–spelling patterns. Look at the spelling rules for the seven sounds. Model and drill the example words for the vowels and elicit / explain their meaning.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

- c Tell Sts that the letters of the alphabet are pronounced with different vowel sounds, e.g., **s** = /ɛs/, like **egg**, but **c** = /si/, like **tree**.

Now focus on the letters in the list, but don't elicit their pronunciation yet. Tell Sts, in pairs, to write the letters in the correct place in the chart according to their sound. Tell Sts that this exercise is easier to do if they say the letters aloud. Point out that the first one (*J*) has been done for them.

- d **1.5** Play the audio for Sts to listen and check. Check answers.

1.5

1 train A H J K

2 tree B C D E G P T V Z

3 egg F L M N S X

4 bike I Y

5 phone O

6 boot Q U W

7 car R

Now play it again for Sts to listen and repeat.

Ask Sts which letters are difficult for them. Highlight the difference between pairs and groups of letters that are often confused, e.g., *a / e / i, g / j, k / q*, etc. You could tell Sts that *zee* is pronounced *zed* in British English and is the only letter of the alphabet that is different from American English.

In pairs, Sts practice saying the letters in each section of the chart.

- e Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**, and tell them to go to **Communication Alphabet quiz, A** on p.104, **B** on p.110.

Tell Sts to take turns asking and answering their questions. Point out that the answers are in italics after each question.

When they have finished, find out if any Sts got all the answers correct.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **1A**.

4 LISTENING & SPEAKING recognizing names, places, and numbers; identifying situations from context

- a **1.6** Focus on the instructions. Make sure Sts understand that they aren't going to listen to six complete conversations. They must listen to six people giving some information and write down the letters and numbers.

Go through the words in 1–6, making sure Sts know what they mean, e.g., *first name, zip code*, etc. Point out that the first one (*Wayne*) has been done for them.

Play the audio for Sts to listen and write the letters and numbers. Play again if necessary.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers by eliciting the information and writing it on the board.

EXTRA SUPPORT Before playing the audio, you might want to check that Sts know how to say an email address, e.g., that @ = *at* and . = *dot*.

ANSWERS

- 2 80222
- 3 914-555-7782
- 4 jvine64.zyx@oup.com
- 5 Rathbone
- 6 16 Russell Street

1.6

- 1 A How do you spell your first name?
B W-A-Y-N-E.
- 2 A What's the zip code?
B It's eight zero two two two.
- 3 B Nine one four, five five five, seven seven eight two.
- 4 A It's J-V-I-N-E-six-four dot Z-Y-X at O-U-P dot com.
B Can you repeat that, please?
A Yes, that's J-V-I-N-E-six-four dot Z-Y-X at O-U-P dot com.
- 5 B Ann Rathbone. R-A-T-H-B-O-N-E.
- 6 A It's sixteen Russell Street. That's R-U-S-S-E-L-L. Let me show you on your phone.

- b **1.7** Focus on the instructions and make sure Sts understand what they have to do. Go through situations A–F and point out that the first one (*1B*) has been done for them.

Play the audio, pausing after each conversation to give Sts time to number A–F. Play again if necessary.

Now play the audio again, pausing after each conversation, and check the answer.

ANSWERS

- 2 A 3 C 4 E 5 F 6 D

1.7

(script in Student Book on p.127)

- 1 A Good afternoon. How can I help you?
B I have a reservation for five nights.
A What's your name?
B Wayne Roberts.
A How do you spell your first name?
B W-A-Y-N-E.
A Just a moment.
- 2 A So, the sofa is eight hundred and ninety-nine dollars and ninety-nine cents in total. What's the address for delivery? Is it a Denver address?
B Yes, it's in south Denver.
A What's the zip code?
B It's eight zero two two two.
A And the address is...?
B Two six zero two Leyden Street. That's near the athletic club.
- 3 A Welcome to our cell phone helpline. Please say the number of the cell phone you have a problem with.
B Nine one four, five five five, seven seven eight two.
- 4 A Now, every Friday I'm going to give you some writing to do for homework on the weekend. You can either give it to me in class on the following Monday, or you can send it to me by email. I'm going to give you my email address and I'd like you to write it down. OK? It's J-V-I-N-E-six-four dot Z-Y-X at O-U-P dot com.
B Can you repeat that, please?
A Yes, J-V-I-N-E-six-four dot Z-Y-X at O-U-P dot com. OK, now I'm going to write it on the board for you. Did you get it right?
... Good job. Remember: this symbol is called *at* in English, and this one is *dot*.
- 5 A Good evening.
B Hi. We have a table booked for seven thirty.
A Yes, madam. What name, please?
B Ann Rathbone. R-A-T-H-B-O-N-E.
A Ah, yes, here we are. Can you come this way, please?
- 6 A OK, Dan, that's great. Here's your student card. Your classes start on Monday at nine a.m. Now, the classes are not here in the main school, but in a different building.
B Oh?
A But it's nearby, just a five-minute walk from here, on Russell Street.
B Sorry, what's the address?
A It's sixteen Russell Street. That's R-U-S-S-E-L-L. Let me show you on your phone.
B Thank you.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to listen again with the script on p.127, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

- c Focus on the instructions and the form.

Put Sts in pairs and get them to interview each other. If Sts don't want to give their real address and phone number, tell them to invent one. Remind Sts that when we say phone numbers in English, we say the individual digits, and that *0* can be *oh* or *zero*. Elicit how to say an email address, e.g., that @ = *at* and . = *dot*.

When they have finished, get Sts to show each other their forms to check the information.

Get some feedback.

- G** simple present
V describing people: appearance and personality
P final -s / -es

Lesson plan

In this lesson, the context is describing people. Sts begin by listening to two people describing family members, and then go to the **Vocabulary Bank** where they learn basic language to describe people's appearance and personality. The language is then practiced with a video activity. They then do a jigsaw reading activity, each reading an article about an aspect of appearance that has more advantages than they may previously have thought, which they then tell their partner about. This is followed by the grammar focus on the simple present. After practicing the grammar, Sts have a pronunciation focus where they fine-tune their pronunciation of the final -s and -es endings in verbs and nouns. In Listening, Sts listen to two people, Jemma and Pietro, talking about the blind date they went on (adapted from a feature in *The Guardian* newspaper). The lesson ends with Sts describing a person – a member of their family, or a friend – in detail, and finally they go to the **Writing Bank** and write a personal profile.

Video material

Vocabulary – describing people
 Pronunciation – final -s / -es

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar simple present p.185
Vocabulary Describing people p.269 (instructions p.265)
Communicative Ask me some questions... p.230 (instructions p.220)

For students

Workbook 1B

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Write on the board:

Direct family	mother
Other relatives	grandmother
Husband / wife's family	mother-in-law

Put Sts in pairs. Give them a minute to add more words to each category.
 Get feedback and write the words on the board. Remind Sts of the pronunciation of difficult words like *daughter*.
 Then ask a few Sts *Do you have any brothers or sisters?* Elicit a few adjectives of description, like *He's good-looking / tall*, etc. There should be no focus on personality as Sts have not learned any of these adjectives in *American English File Level 1*.

1 VOCABULARY describing people

Vocabulary notes

Sts are often confused by the difference between the questions *What does he look like?* and *What's he like?* *What does he look like?* only refers to appearance, but *What's he like?* can refer to both appearance and personality.

You may want to highlight the following information:

- thin* and *slim* are both the opposite of *fat*, but *slim* is a positive way to describe someone who is thin.
- fat* is not very polite. It is more polite to say someone is *big*, *(a little) overweight*, or *well-built*.

- a** **1.8** Books open. Focus on the instructions and the two photos. Explain that the last question *What are Adam and Mel like?* refers not only to appearance, but also to personality.

Tell Sts that the first time they listen they should just try to identify which man (1, 2, or 3) is Adam and which woman (4, 5, or 6) is Mel. Get Sts to write down the words they hear that help identify each person.

Get Sts to compare with a partner. Then play the audio again for them to focus on anything they understood about Adam and Mel's personalities.

Check answers. Elicit words that identified Adam in the photo, and any adjectives of personality they heard. Write them on the board. Do the same for Mel.

Check the meaning and pronunciation of any new words, e.g., *bald*, *serious*, etc.

ANSWERS

Adam is 1. Mel is 5.

Adam: very tall, well-built, bald, smile; He is very warm and friendly.
 Mel: not very tall, slim, long blond hair, green eyes; She is very quiet and serious, but can be very funny.

1.8

(script in Student Book on p.127)

A Do you have any brothers or sisters?

B I have one sister.

A I have one brother, Adam.

B Oh cool, tell me about him. Is he like you?

A No, he's very different. He's a little bit older than me, he's thirty-one.

B What does he look like?

A Well, he's very tall. He's not overweight, but I'd say he's well-built – he goes to the gym a lot. He had dark curly hair when he was younger, but now he doesn't really have any hair, he's bald. I think he's good-looking. He has big dark eyes, and he's very warm and friendly – he always has a smile on his face. What about your sister? What's her name?

B Her name's Melanie, but we all call her Mel.

A Does she look like you?

B A little. She's not very tall, I guess about five feet five inches, and she's average weight, not thin, but slim. She has very long hair, blond, and she has green eyes.

A What's she like? I mean, as a person?

- B She's very quiet and serious, but when you get to know her, she's actually very funny.
 A Do you think she and Adam would get along?
 B Maybe... Let's all have dinner together one day, you, me, and Adam and Mel.
 A Good idea.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to listen again with the script on p.127, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

- b Tell Sts to go to **Vocabulary Bank Describing people** on p.158. Focus on **1 Appearance**. Focus on the question *What does he / she look like?* and elicit that it refers to a person's physical appearance.

Get Sts to do **a** individually or in pairs. Point out that the first one has been done for them.

- 🔊 **1.9** Now do **b**. Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers. Make sure Sts understand the individual words in the descriptions.

🔊 1.9

Describing people

1 Appearance What does he look like? What does she look like?

- 2 She has curly dark hair.
- 3 She has long straight hair.
- 1 She has big brown eyes.
- 6 She has short blond hair.
- 5 He has a beard and a mustache.
- 4 He's bald.
- 8 He's very tall and slim.
- 7 He's average height and very thin.
- 9 He's short and a little overweight.

Now either use the audio to drill the pronunciation of the sentences, or model and drill them yourself. Give further practice of any words your Sts find difficult to pronounce, e.g., *curly, straight, beard*, etc. Highlight the different pronunciations of *height /haɪt/* and *weight /weɪt/*.

Focus on the **Using two or more adjectives together** box and go through it with the class. You might also want to elicit from Sts typical colors for hair, i.e., *fair / blond, red, gray, light / dark brown, black, white*.

Finally, focus on **c**. Get Sts to cover the sentences and use the photos to test themselves or their partner. If they are testing a partner, encourage them to use the question *What does he / she look like?*

Focus on **2 Personality** and get Sts to do **a** individually or in pairs. Point out that the first one (*friendly*) has been done for them.

Check answers to **a** before moving on to **b**.

ANSWERS

- 2 talkative 3 generous 4 warm 5 hardworking
 6 funny 7 extroverted

Now Sts do **b** by putting the adjectives from the list into the **Opposite** column in **a**.

- 🔊 **1.10** Now do **c**. Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers and make sure Sts understand the individual words in the descriptions. Focus on the **Negative adjectives** box and go through it with the class.

🔊 1.10

2 Personality What is he like? What is she like?

- | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| 1 friendly, unfriendly | 5 hardworking, lazy |
| 2 talkative, quiet | 6 funny, serious |
| 3 generous, cheap | 7 extroverted, shy |
| 4 warm, cold | |

Now either use the audio to drill the pronunciation of the adjectives, or model and drill them yourself. Give further practice of any words your Sts find difficult to pronounce.

You could tell Sts that in British English, people say *mean* instead of *cheap*. In American English, *mean* has a different meaning (= *unkind*). You could also tell Sts that an alternative word for *talkative* is *chatty*.

Focus on the **What does she look like? What is she like?** box and go through it with the class to remind them of the difference between the two questions.

Focus on **d**. Get Sts to cover the adjectives and look at the definitions to test themselves or their partner.

Finally, for **Activation**, put Sts in pairs and get them to ask and answer questions about a member of their family or a good friend. Get some feedback from a few individual Sts.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **1B**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **1B Vocabulary** photocopiable activity.

EXTRA IDEA Focus again on the photos in **a**. Put Sts in pairs to describe the other two men and two women in the photos. Elicit some descriptions and get other Sts in the class to identify which man or woman it is.

- c 🔊 In this video, Sts see a series of photos of three people and listen to one of them being described. They identify the correct person in each photo.

Focus on the instructions.

Play the video and when you see the pause symbol, pause and give Sts time to agree with a partner which person is being described, and what they are like.

Check answers, eliciting all the adjectives, and then continue with the next photo.

EXTRA SUPPORT You may want to play the video once the whole way through first, and then play it again, pausing after each photo.

ANSWERS

- 1 A She's very shy.
- 2 C He's a really nice guy, very kind.
- 3 C She's very talkative and funny.
- 4 A He's a great colleague – he's really hardworking.
- 5 B She's very extroverted and friendly.
- 6 A He's really warm and open.
- 7 C She's a lovely person, very generous to her friends.
- 8 C He's OK. He's a little bit cheap.

🔊

- 1 She has medium-length brown hair, and she's very tall and slim. She's very shy.
- 2 He has very short wavy hair, it's sort of red, and he has a small beard and a mustache. He's a really nice guy, very kind.
- 3 She's very talkative and funny. She has curly gray hair, and she wears glasses.
- 4 He has short blond hair and blue eyes. He's a big man, well-built, and he's very tall. He's a great colleague – he's really hardworking.
- 5 She's very extroverted and friendly. She has very curly hair, not short, but not very long, and she has a beautiful smile.

- 6 My grandad looks just like my dad. He's very short, and he has short white hair and a little bit of a beard – he doesn't shave very often. He's really warm and open and has lots of friends.
- 7 She's really attractive, and she's a lovely person, very generous to her friends. She's medium height. She has fantastic hair, long and dark and braided.
- 8 He isn't very tall – in fact, he's very short – and he has a beard and a mustache and wavy brown hair. He's OK, but to be honest, I think he's a little bit cheap. He never pays when we go out!

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

2 READING & SPEAKING using visual clues to identify main topic

- a Focus on the instructions, and on the photos and the two headings. Point out that the photos illustrate the headings and that the first letter of each heading is given. Give Sts a minute to do the task. Get them to compare with a partner and then check answers.

ANSWERS

A Gray B Short

- b Elicit / Teach the meaning of *advantage* (= a quality of something that makes it better or more useful) and elicit the meaning of *disadvantage*. Model and drill the pronunciation /əd'væntɪdʒ/ and /,dɪsəd'væntɪdʒ/. Put Sts in pairs **A** and **B**. Tell **A** to read text A and answer the questions, and **B** text B. They only need to read and answer the questions for that article.

EXTRA SUPPORT Before Sts read the article the first time, check whether you need to pre-teach any vocabulary.

ANSWERS

- A** 1 They felt bad and they dyed their hair.
2 Movies, Covid-19 pandemic
3 It's a way of saying they're independent and want to look different.
4 More and more young men and women are silver-gray.
5 You don't need to go to the hair salon and you save money.
- B** 1 Basketball, because you can run faster and stretch further.
2 Martial arts and gymnastics, because short people have quicker reactions and are more agile.
3 Tall people often have more accidents and are more likely to get injured if they fall.
4 Short people live longer.
5 How you live your life
- c Make sure Sts have had time to answer their questions. Then tell the **As** to tell the **Bs** about their article. Encourage them to cover the articles so that they only use their answers to the questions to tell each other what they read. Monitor to make sure Sts are not simply repeating what is in the text.
- When they have both finished, deal with any new vocabulary in the two texts, and model and drill the pronunciation of any tricky words.
- d Do the question as a whole-class activity. You may want to tell Sts that on the positive side, research suggests that tall people earn more money and enjoy life more! Then elicit descriptions from individual Sts of either someone they know or a celebrity who they think looks good.

3 GRAMMAR simple present

- a Focus on the instructions. Give Sts a few minutes to complete the chart. Check answers.

ANSWERS

	I / you / we / they	he / she / it
+		has
-		doesn't mind
?	Do	Does

- b Tell Sts to read the four sentences and check the ones that are correct. Highlight that the correct answer depends on the position of the adverbs of frequency *often* and *always*. Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 a 2 b

EXTRA CHALLENGE Ask Sts why the other sentences are wrong and elicit the rules for word order.

ANSWER

Adverbs of frequency go before main verbs, but after the verb *be*.

- c Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 1B** on p.134.

Grammar notes

Simple present

Remind Sts:

- of the difference in pronunciation between *do* /du/, *don't* /dəʊnt/, and *does* /dʌz/
- of the pronunciation of *goes* /gəʊz/ and *has* /hæz/
- that the contracted forms *don't* and *doesn't* are always used in conversation

Adverbs and expressions of frequency

You may want to point out that *usually* / *normally* and *sometimes* can also be used at the beginning of a simple present sentence, e.g., *Sometimes I get up late on Saturday*, but they are much more common in mid-position, before the main verb or after *be*.

Other common expressions of frequency using *every* are *every week*, *every month*, and *every year*.

In expressions like *once a month*, *twice a day*, etc., remind Sts that *once* and *twice* are irregular (NOT ~~one time~~, ~~two times~~); *times* is used with all other numbers, e.g., *ten times*, *thirty times* (a year).

Focus on the example sentences and play both audio 1.11 and 1.12 for Sts to listen and repeat.

Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the exercises for **1B** on p.135. Sts do the exercises individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

- a 1 Does Anna like music?
2 My sister has a lot of hobbies.
3 I don't get along very well with my parents.
4 My nephew studies English in school.
5 My neighbors don't have any children.
6 What time does the movie start?
7 He goes out twice a week.
8 We don't often talk about politics.
9 How often do you see your brother?
10 Sally doesn't go on social media very much.

- b 1** I always go to bed before 11:00.
2 Kate hardly ever sees her family.
3 We never go shopping on Saturdays.
4 I go to the dentist twice a year.
5 They sometimes have breakfast in bed. / Sometimes they have breakfast in bed.
6 I usually listen to the radio in the car.
7 Anton runs in the park every day.
8 Laila is often late for work.
9 Ivan doesn't often go to the theater.
10 I visit my mom once a month.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **1B**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **1B Grammar** photocopyable activity.

4 PRONUNCIATION final -s / -es

Pronunciation notes

The pronunciation rules for adding an -s (or -es) to verbs (e.g., *likes*) and nouns (e.g., *books*) are the same.

The difference between the /s/ and /z/ sounds is very small and only occasionally causes communication problems. The most important thing is for Sts to learn when to pronounce -es as /ɪz/.

You may want to give Sts these rules:

The s is pronounced /s/ after these unvoiced* sounds: /k/, /p/, /f/, and /t/, e.g., *walks, stops, laughs, eats*.

In all other cases, the final s is voiced and pronounced /z/, e.g., *plays, parties*.

*Voiced and unvoiced consonants

Voiced consonant sounds are made by vibrating the vocal cords, e.g., /b/, /l/, /m/, /v/, etc. Unvoiced consonant sounds are made without vibration in the vocal cords, e.g., /k/, /p/, /t/, /s/, etc.

You can demonstrate this to Sts by getting them to hold their hands against their throats. For voiced sounds, they should feel a vibration in their throat, but not for unvoiced sounds.

- a** Explain that the final -s and -es in the third person of the simple present and in plurals can be pronounced in three different ways.

Focus on the sound pictures.

Play the video for Sts to watch and repeat the sounds: *snake* /s/, *zebra* /z/, and /ɪz/ and the full sentences. Tell them to focus on the mouth position for /s/ and /z/.

- !** Sts may have problems distinguishing between the /s/ and /z/ sounds. Tell them that the /s/ is like the sound made by a snake and the /z/ is a bee or fly.



See sounds and sentences in Student Book on p. 11

Play the video again getting Sts to repeat the words, sounds, and sentences. Encourage them to try to copy the mouth position when they make the sounds.

Now focus on the **Pronunciation of final -s / -es: verbs and nouns** box and go through it with the class.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

- b** **1.13** Write the three phonetic symbols, /s/, /z/, and /ɪz/ on the board. Elicit the third person pronunciation of the first verb in the list (*chooses*) and ask Sts which group it belongs to (group 3). Write it on the board under the correct heading. Get Sts to continue with the other verbs. Then tell them to do the same thing with the plural form of the nouns.

Play the audio once the whole way through for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

	/s/	/z/	/ɪz/
verbs	cooks stops	goes lives	chooses teaches
nouns	books parents	boys friends	classes languages

1.13

chooses, cooks, goes, lives, stops, teaches
books, boys, classes, friends, languages, parents

Highlight that the most important thing to get correct is that *lives* and *goes* are pronounced /lɪvz/ and /ɡoʊz/, NOT /lɪvɪz/ and /ɡoʊɪz/, but that in *chooses, teaches, classes, and languages* the -es is pronounced /ɪz/.

Now play the audio, pausing after each group of words for Sts to repeat.

Then repeat the activity, eliciting responses from individual Sts.

5 LISTENING focusing on descriptive adjectives

- a** Focus on the photo. Elicit from individual Sts some sentences to describe Jemma and Pietro.
b Focus on the instruction and the questions. Elicit / Teach the meaning of *get along* (= have a friendly relationship with somebody).

Elicit the meaning of any new lexis, e.g., *a PhD student* (= someone who is studying for a doctorate). Give Sts time to read about Jemma and Pietro and answer the questions.

Elicit answers to the questions. You could ask Sts if they think blind dates are a good idea and why (not).

ANSWER

A "blind date" is a date where two strangers who are looking for a relationship meet.

- c** **1.14** Focus on the instructions, and explain that for scores like this, you say *out of*, e.g., 6/10 = *six out of ten*.

You may want to pre-teach the meaning of *on fire* (= burning) and *catch fire* (= start burning).

Play the audio once the whole way through.

Elicit some answers, but don't tell Sts if they are right or not.

1.14

(script in Student Book on p.127)

Jemma I arrive on time. I'm hoping to have an interesting fun time with someone new. I see Pietro. My first impressions are good. He's well-dressed and polite. We talk about all kinds of things: our travels, food, animals, places we've lived in, TV shows. He's really interesting and funny, and I really enjoy talking to him. The only problem is, we

are talking so much that I don't notice that my shirt is on fire – from the candle on the table! The waiters run to the table to put it out! I'm not sure what he thinks of me – probably that I'm very talkative! We don't have time to go anywhere after dinner, because I need to catch a train home, but I feel that we need more time together. We don't kiss goodbye, but when I'm waiting for my train, he runs up and gives me a cake from the restaurant to eat on the train! Perhaps we can meet again and continue our conversation.

Pietro I arrive hoping to meet someone interesting. My first impressions are that she's friendly and talkative, perhaps a bit nervous. But it's very easy to chat. We talk about climate change, travel, TV shows, future plans. She has good manners, and she politely asks the waiter if we can move to a quieter table. I think she loves life, and is very adventurous, and has had a lot of experiences. I'm not sure what she thinks of me, maybe that I'm a bit young, but I hope she thinks I'm interesting. I'm sad that we can't go somewhere for a drink after dinner, but she needs to get her train home. It's an unforgettable evening. In fact, truly unforgettable, because during the dinner her shirt catches fire! I'd really like to meet again.

d Focus on the instructions and the lists of adjectives.

EXTRA SUPPORT Go through the list, checking Sts know the meanings. Get them to teach each other where possible.

Play the audio again for Sts to listen and circle the adjectives. Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

Jemma about Pietro: funny, interesting, polite, well-dressed

Pietro about Jemma: adventurous, friendly, polite, talkative

e  **1.15** Remind Sts of the scores they wrote in **c**. Play the audio for Sts to listen and check their answers in **c**.

Check answers. Find out if any Sts got the correct scores.

ANSWERS

Jemma: 8/10 **Pietro:** 9/10

1.15

(script in Student Book on p.127)

Jemma ...We don't kiss goodbye, but when I'm waiting for my train, he runs up and gives me a cake from the restaurant to eat on the train! Perhaps we can meet again and continue our conversation. I give the date eight out of ten.

Pietro ...It's an unforgettable evening. In fact, truly unforgettable, because during the dinner her shirt catches fire! I'd really like to meet again. I give the date nine out of ten.

Put Sts in pairs to ask and answer the questions.

Then do whole-class feedback.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to listen again with the scripts on p.127, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

6 SPEAKING

a Give Sts five minutes to read the list and make notes about a person they know well who would like to meet new people. Monitor and help with vocabulary.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Tell Sts to make a note of other important information about their person which is not included in the list.

b Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**. **A** describes their person and **B** listens and asks for more information.

Sts change roles and **B** describes their person to **A**.

Do they know someone who would be a good friend for this person?

Get feedback from various pairs.

7 WRITING a personal profile

This is the first time Sts are sent to the **Writing Bank** at the back of the Student Book. In this section, Sts will find model texts, with exercises and language notes, and then a writing task. We suggest that you go through the model and do the exercise(s) in class, but assign the actual writing (the last activity) for homework.

Tell Sts to go to **Writing Bank 1** on p.115.

a Get Sts to read Dani's profile and answer the question.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, then elicit any ways Sts think they are similar to Dani.

b Tell Sts to read the profile again and answer the questions.

Get Sts to compare with a partner.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 Dani's real name is Daniela. She's 21. She's from Mérida in Mexico.

2 She studies engineering. / She's a college student. She lives with her parents and her sister.

3 She has black hair and brown eyes.

4 She's positive and funny, but she can be serious when she needs to be.

5 She likes going hiking and sometimes plays tennis. She likes watching TV shows, especially crime dramas and comedies.

c Now get Sts to look at the highlighted phrases. Go through them with the class.

You could answer the sentences about yourself to model the activity.

Give Sts time to complete the sentences about themselves.

Elicit some sentences from the class.

d Focus on the **and, but, because, so** box and go through it with the class.

Give Sts time to use these four linking words to complete sentences 1–8.

Get Sts to check answers in pairs.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 but **2** because **3** and **4** because **5** so **6** and **7** but **8** and / so

e Tell Sts they are going to plan their own personal profile. They should plan to write five paragraphs.

Give Sts time to plan what to write. Monitor and deal with any difficulties.

f When Sts are ready, assign the writing task for homework.

g Sts check their work for mistakes before turning it in.

G present continuous

V clothes: *boots, skirt*, etc., prepositions of place: *under, next to*, etc.

P /ə/ and /ər/

Lesson plan

The context for this lesson is the Remake Project, in which modern photographers recreate famous paintings. The images from one example, a painting by Vermeer called *The Milkmaid* and its corresponding photo, are used to present clothes vocabulary, and this is followed by a pronunciation focus on two common vowel sounds, /ə/ and /ər/. Sts then focus again on the images and answer questions, and this leads them to the Grammar section, which is on using the present continuous for things that are happening now, or around now, and for describing what is happening in a picture. The present continuous is also contrasted with the simple present for habitual actions or permanent situations. When Sts come back from the **Grammar Bank**, they have a listening activity where they hear an art expert talking about Vermeer and the painting. They then review prepositions of place. In Speaking, they first watch a video where someone describes a remake of another famous painting. This provides a model for Sts to describe two more examples of paintings and their remakes to each other in order to find the similarities and differences.

Video material

Vocabulary – things you wear

Pronunciation – /ə/ and /ər/

Speaking – *American Gothic* remake

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar simple present or present continuous? p.186

Vocabulary Things you wear p.270 (instructions p.265)

Communicative What are they doing? p.231 (instructions p.220)

For students

Workbook 1C

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Play ten chances with the word *clothes*:

- Draw a line on the board for each letter of the word and the numbers 1–10 below:

1	2	3	4	5
6	7	8	9	10

- Sts call out letters one at a time. If the letter is in the word (e.g., T), fill it in each time it occurs, e.g.,
 _ _ _ _ T _ _ _ _

Only accept correctly pronounced letters. If the letter is not in the word, write the letter next to the number 1 on the board. Write the next wrong letter next to number 2, then number 3, and so on.

- The object of the game is to guess the word before they have used up all ten chances.
- Students can guess the word at any time, but each wrong guess is punished with “wrong guess” written to the next available number.

Then ask Sts how to pronounce the word (/kloʊðz/) and if it is singular or plural (plural). Explain that there is no singular form, and that if they want to talk about an item of clothing, they should refer to it by name, e.g., *a sweater*. Now draw a line before *clothes* on the board, i.e., _____ *clothes*, and ask Sts what verbs they can use before it. They should be able to produce *wear, buy, try on*, and possibly *put on* and *take off*.

N.B. You can continue the game with other words; the student who correctly guesses the word comes to the board and chooses a new word. Sts can also play in pairs / groups, writing on a piece of paper.

1 VOCABULARY clothes

- a** Books open. Focus on the instructions and then give Sts time to look at the painting and photo. You may want to tell Sts about the Remake Project, which inspired this lesson. It was the idea of Canadian artist Jeff Hamada. He asked readers of his website to remake a famous work of art as a photo. Hundreds of people sent photos to the project and the photos appeared in blogs, in newspapers, and in a book. Since then, many people have created their own remakes of famous paintings and have posted them online. This was a very popular activity during the Covid-19 pandemic. Do the questions as a whole-class activity. You could also tell Sts what you think.

- b** Tell Sts to look at both the painting and the photo and look for the items of clothing. Elicit 1 from the class and explain the meaning of *apron*. Sts then continue to say who is wearing the other items. Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 W 2 M 3 W 4 W 5 M 6 W

- c** Tell Sts to go to **Vocabulary Bank Things you wear** on p.159. Focus on the four sections (*Clothes, Footwear, Accessories, and Jewelry*) and make sure Sts know what they mean and how to pronounce them (/kloʊðz/, /'fʊtweɪ/, /æk'sesəri/, /'dʒuəlri/).

Vocabulary notes

Some clothes words only exist in the plural, e.g., *jeans, leggings, pajamas, shorts, pants, tights*. These words cannot be used with *a*, e.g., NOT *a pajamas*. If Sts want to use an indefinite article, they should use *some*, e.g., *I bought some pajamas / some shoes*.

You could also teach *a pair of*, which is often used with plural clothes words, e.g., *a pair of pants*. Other words for clothes, e.g., *footwear* (e.g., *shoes, boots, and socks*) and *gloves*, are usually plural, but can be used in the singular.

Now get Sts to do **a** individually or in pairs.

🔊 **1.16** Now do **b**. Play the audio for Sts to listen and check. Check answers.

🔊 1.16

Things you wear

Clothes

11 blouse	21 socks	22 sneakers
14 cardigan	7 suit	Accessories
3 coat	17 sweater	27 belt
2 dress	20 tights	31 cap
12 hoodie	4 top	29 gloves
9 jacket	10 tracksuit	32 hat
5 jeans	16 T-shirt	30 scarf
15 leggings	18 underwear	28 tie
19 pajamas	Footwear	Jewelry
13 pants	25 boots	34 bracelet
8 shirt	26 flip-flops	33 earrings
1 shorts	23 sandals	36 necklace
6 skirt	24 shoes	35 ring

Now either use the audio to drill the pronunciation of the words, or model and drill them yourself. Give further practice of any words your Sts find difficult to pronounce.

Focus on **c**. Give Sts a minute to cover the words and look at the photos to test themselves or each other.

Focus on the **wear, carry, or dress?** and **a pair** box and go through it with the class.

Finally, focus on **Activation** and put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**.

A starts by telling their partner what someone is wearing and **B** has to guess who it is. They then change roles.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **1C**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **1C Vocabulary photocopyable activity**.

d 🎥 In this video, Sts see clips of different people and have to remember three things (clothes or jewelry) that each person is wearing.

Focus on the instructions. Play the video the whole way through and pause when the symbol appears at 01:10. The grid shows a part of each person to help Sts remember. Put Sts in pairs and tell them to try to remember three things that each person was wearing. Set a time limit.

Elicit answers for clip 1. Then continue playing the video. Pause when the man in clip 1 appears and see if Sts were right and if they can add any more items. Elicit full sentences so Sts practice using the present continuous. Now elicit answers for the woman in clip 2 and repeat the process, and for the other four people.

ANSWERS

- 1 He's wearing a suit, tie, shirt, coat, and shoes.
- 2 She's wearing a skirt, boots, a top / sweater, a bag, and earrings.
- 3 He's wearing a hat, gloves, a scarf, and a coat.
- 4 She's wearing a dress, a necklace, a bracelet, rings, and earrings.
- 5 She's wearing leggings, socks, sneakers, and a T-shirt.
- 6 He's wearing shorts, a T-shirt, a cap, and flip-flops.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

2 PRONUNCIATION /ə/ and /ər/

Pronunciation notes

The schwa /ə/ is the most common sound in English. It is a short sound, and always occurs in an unstressed syllable, e.g., **address** /ə'dres/.

You may want to point out to Sts that **-tion** is always pronounced /ʃən/.

/ər/ can be spelled with *er*, *ir*, or *ur*, e.g., **her** /hər/, **first** /fɜrst/, or **nurse** /nɜrs/, and also *or* when it comes after a *w*, e.g., **work** /wɜrk/.

You could also tell Sts that another spelling for /ər/ = "ear" (e.g., **heard**), but this is unusual.

- a** 🎥 Focus on the instructions and the question. Point out the underlined syllables in the words in the list. Play the video once for Sts just to watch. Tell them to focus on the different mouth positions (the mouth is open wider for the /ər/ sound).



See sounds and words in Student Book on p.12

Then play the video again, pausing for Sts to repeat the words and sounds.

Ask Sts which sound is only in unstressed syllables.

ANSWER

The schwa sound /ə/ is only in unstressed syllables.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit pronunciation videos in the classroom.

- b** Focus on the instructions and make sure Sts understand that they have to underline the stressed syllable in the words in the list and then decide if the highlighted sounds in pink belong to 1 or 2 in **a**. Point out that the first one (**painter**) has been done for them.

Put Sts in pairs and give them time to complete the task.

- c** 🔊 **1.17** Play the audio for Sts to listen and check. Check answers by writing the words on the board in the two groups and underlining the stressed syllable.

🔊 1.17

painter 2	picture 2	occasion 1
her 2	prefer 2	work 2
first 2	curly 2	university 2
photograph 1	attractive 1	

Play the audio again, stopping after each word for Sts to repeat.

EXTRA IDEA Get Sts to think of more words with the /ər/ sound. Do whole-class feedback and get them to underline the stressed syllables in the words (which will be the syllables containing the /ər/ sound). Examples:
er: person, German, nervous
ir: circle, girlfriend, thirty
ur: return, Thursday, purple

- d** Put Sts in pairs and get them to ask and answer the questions. You could get Sts to ask you a couple of questions first. Get some feedback from the class.

3 GRAMMAR present continuous

- a** Focus on the instructions and sentences 1–6. Make sure Sts know the meaning of **pour** /pɔr/ – use the painting to explain if necessary. Model and drill pronunciation. Now tell Sts to look at both the Vermeer painting and the photo, and fill in blanks 1–6.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 They're 2 She's 3 He's 4 She's 5 They're 6 They're

- b Focus on the sentences and give Sts time to choose the correct form. Point out that the first one (*isn't wearing*) has been done for them.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

2 wear 3 are you doing, I'm doing 4 does your sister do

- c Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 1C** on p.134.

Grammar notes

Some languages do not have an equivalent to the present continuous and may always use the simple present.

Typical mistakes are: *The man in the picture wears a hat. We live with friends at the moment because builders work on our house.*

The present continuous is used to describe what is happening in a painting because it is as if we were looking at a scene through a window.

The future use of the present continuous (*I'm leaving tomorrow*) is presented in **3B**.

Focus on the example sentences and play both audio

🔊 **1.18** and 🔊 **1.19** for Sts to listen and repeat.

Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the exercises for **1C** on p.135. Sts do the exercises individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

- a 1 Oliver is wearing a suit today!
2 It's hot. Why are you wearing a coat?
3 Aisha isn't sitting in her usual place today.
4 Hey! You're standing on my foot!
5 What book are you reading?
6 We're renting a small apartment right now.
7 Is she wearing make-up?
8 I'm planning a trip to the US.
9 Is your boyfriend working in London this week?
10 They aren't getting along very well right now.
b 1 doesn't bite 2 are...wearing, 's raining 3 'm not listening
4 need 5 's putting 6 Do...cook, eat 7 are...doing, 'm waiting 8 drink, want 9 works 10 lives, 's working

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **1C**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **1C Grammar** photocopiable activity.

4 LISTENING

 tuning in using existing knowledge

- a Tell Sts that they are going to find out more about the painter Vermeer and *The Milkmaid*. Go through questions 1–6, making sure Sts understand all the lexis, e.g., *a pudding* (= a cold dessert like a sweet cream). Put Sts in pairs and get them to discuss the questions. Elicit some answers, but don't tell them if they are right or not.
- b 🔊 **1.20** Now tell Sts to listen and check their answers to a. Play the audio once the whole way through. Get Sts to compare with a partner.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 b 2 a 3 a 4 c 5 b 6 b

🔊 1.20

(script in Student Book on p.127)

Johannes Vermeer was a seventeenth-century painter from the city of Delft in Holland. He mainly painted the people and things he saw around him: the rooms in his house, the people who lived or worked there (usually women), and the things they did every day. For example, in his work you will see women who are playing music, reading or writing letters, or working in the kitchen. Vermeer was especially good at painting light coming into a room through windows. Partly for this reason, people often describe his work as being like photography or film – his paintings can seem very “real.” This painting, *The Milkmaid*, is one of these very “photographic” images. The woman, a maid or a servant, is pouring milk into a bowl. Perhaps she's making a bread and milk pudding because there are pieces of broken bread on the table. Nobody knows if the woman he painted was a real servant or a model. However, most people think Vermeer usually painted his wife, his daughter, and his servant, not models. A famous book and movie, called *Girl with a Pearl Earring*, is an imaginary story about Vermeer and his relationship with his young servant, inspired by one of his best-known paintings. People admired Vermeer's paintings a lot in his lifetime, but he was never rich. There are two reasons for this. First, because he painted very slowly. Today there are only about thirty-four paintings that we can be sure are by him. Second, because he used very expensive paints. The blue paint he used for the milkmaid's apron was made of lapis lazuli, which was a very expensive stone. People loved this painting from the very beginning, and although it is very small, only eighteen by sixteen inches, twenty years after Vermeer died, somebody bought the painting for a hundred seventy-five Dutch guilders. That was an enormous amount of money for the time.

- c Tell Sts to look at 1–6 and focus on the example for 1. Play the audio again for Sts to make notes.

EXTRA SUPPORT Pause the audio after each paragraph to give Sts time to take in the information.

Then play it again, pausing if necessary.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

- 2 Vermeer was especially good at painting this.
3 Most people think they are the women in Vermeer's paintings.
4 It's a book and a movie about Vermeer's relationship with a young servant, inspired by one of his paintings.
5 The blue paint Vermeer used for this was very expensive (made from lapis lazuli, a very expensive stone).
6 What someone paid for *The Milkmaid* 20 years after Vermeer's death. It was a lot of money then.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to listen again with the script on p.127, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

5 VOCABULARY

 prepositions of place

- a Tell Sts that when you are describing a picture, it's important to use the correct prepositions to say where things are. Focus on the prepositions and phrases in the list. Tell Sts to fill in each blank with a word or phrase from the list. Point out that the first one (*in*) has been done for them. Get Sts to compare with a partner.

EXTRA SUPPORT If Sts don't remember the prepositions very well, you could spend a bit more time recycling them, using things in the classroom, e.g., *Where's the TV? It's on a shelf behind the table, etc.*

- b**  **1.21** Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.
Check answers.

** 1.21**

- 1 The young man is **in** the kitchen.
- 2 There's a table **in front of** him.
- 3 **On** the table, there are some eggs, some bread, and some strawberries.
- 4 The bread is **in the middle of** the table. It's **between** the eggs and the strawberries.
- 5 There's a board **under** the bread.
- 6 **Behind** the man, there's an old washing machine.
- 7 There's a window **on the left of** the photo.
- 8 **In the corner** of the room, there's a sink and some cleaning products.
- 9 There's a flower **on** the wall **above** the sink.
- 10 The sink is **next to** the window.

Now put Sts in pairs. Get them to look at the painting and ask each other where the things are.

Get some feedback from the class.

6 SPEAKING

- a**  In this video, Sts see a remake of another painting and listen to someone describing it. At the end, they can see the remake and the painting side by side.

Tell Sts they are going to see another remake, like *The Milkmaid*, but of a different painting. Focus on the photo and tell Sts that it is a remake of a painting called *American Gothic*. Ask Sts if anyone has seen the original painting. Focus on the instructions and make sure Sts know what they have to do.

Play the video for Sts to watch. Pause at the end, where the painting and the remake appear together, and give Sts a few minutes to notice similarities and differences. Then switch off the video and put Sts in pairs to try to remember three similarities and three differences between the painting and the remake.

Elicit ideas. Then play the video again and pause in the same place, and check answers.

ANSWERS

Things that are the same

There is one man and one woman.
They are standing together outside.
The man is holding a garden fork.
It is daytime.

Things that are different

In the remake the man and woman are much younger than in the painting.
They are wearing different clothes.
In the remake, they are smiling and holding hands. In the painting, they are serious and not touching each other.
In the remake, they are probably boyfriend and girlfriend or husband and wife. The painting is of a farmer and his daughter.
In the remake, they are standing in a garden on the roof of a tall building, with a city behind them. In the painting, they are just standing in front of a house.



This photo is a remake of a popular painting by Grant Wood called *American Gothic*. In the photo, two people are standing on the balcony of an apartment, or perhaps on the roof of a building.

On the right of the photo, there's a man. He's probably about thirty. He's wearing jeans, an orange top, and black boots. He's holding a garden fork in his hand.

Next to him, there's a woman. She's a little bit younger, about twenty-five.

She's probably his girlfriend, or maybe his wife, because they're holding hands. She has wavy brown hair. It's medium length, not long, but not really short. She's wearing a light blue hoodie, jeans, and boots. She's also wearing a bag around her waist. In her hand, she's holding a watering can.

The couple looks happy. They're both smiling.

In the front of the photo, there are some pink flowers and some other green plants. In the background, you can see the city, with many big modern buildings. Perhaps they're offices, or apartment buildings.

This is the original painting. It was painted in nineteen thirty, and it shows an old farmer and his daughter in front of their house.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit documentary videos in the classroom.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

- b** Focus on the sentences and explain they are from the video script and are about the *American Gothic* remake. Elicit the meaning of the word *background* (= the part of a picture behind the main objects, people, etc.) and teach the word *foreground* (= the part of a picture that is closest to you when you look at it).

Give Sts time to complete the sentences and check answers. Remind Sts that when we describe a picture (a painting or photo) we usually use:

- *there is / there are* to say what is in the picture
- the present continuous to say what the people are doing

Sometimes we combine *There is* and the present continuous, e.g., *There is a woman standing next to the table.*

We also use phrases with prepositions to describe where things are in the picture: *In the background; On the right / left, you can see...*

ANSWERS

1 there's 2 is wearing 3 is holding 4 can see

- c** Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**, and get them to sit face-to-face if possible. Then tell them to go to **Communication Remakes**, **A** on p.104, **B** on p.110.

Go through the instructions with them carefully and make sure Sts are clear what they have to do. Stress that they have to find the similarities and differences between the original painting and the modern photo.

Give Sts a few minutes to look at their pictures and think about how they are going to describe them. Remind them to use the present continuous to say what the people are doing.

A starts by describing their painting. When they have finished, they should change roles.

When Sts have finished, they must look at the paintings and photos together.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **1C**.

- d** Go through the questions and make sure Sts know the meaning of *posters* (= large pictures put on the wall as decoration). Put Sts in small groups to discuss the questions. Get some feedback from the class for each question. Tell them what you think for the first question, too.



A visit from the USA

Practical English calling reception

Lesson plan

This is the first in a series of six Practical English lessons (one episode after every other File) which teach Sts functional language to help them “survive” in English in travel and social situations. All the content for these lessons is on video.

The functional language is embedded within a video drama called *Pictures of you*, which started with Season 1 in *American English File Level 1*. This has a storyline based on two characters, Ben Fischer, an American who goes to London to study for his Masters in Photography, and Izzy Silva, who works as a bike courier in London. Both Ben and Izzy have a passion for photography.

If your Sts did *American English File Level 1*, they will already be familiar with the characters. Sts who didn't do *American English File Level 1* will get an idea of what happened in Season 1 when they watch the recap at the beginning of Episode 1. Sts are then updated on what has happened in the main characters' lives in the last six months. The second part of the lesson introduces the functional language, and the final video moves the story on again.

Apart from teaching Sts functional language, the skills focus throughout these lessons is on training Sts to follow and enjoy video in English. Each part of the video has two watch tasks. The first is usually a simple heads-up task so that Sts focus on watching and understanding the story. The second task is generally a longer comprehension task, usually done after Sts have seen the video and not while they are watching. The lesson ends with a focus on useful Social English phrases which have come up during the episode.

Pictures of you continues with Season 3 in Level 3.

Sts can find the video and extra activities on *Oxford English Hub*.

Video material

Pictures of you Episode 1

More materials

For teachers

Oxford English Hub

Quick Test 1

File 1 Test

For students

Workbook Practical English 1

Can you remember...? 1

THE STORY SO FAR

▶ This first part of the video is a recap of what happened in Season 1 of *Pictures of you*, with brief information about each of the main characters.

Focus on the photos and the question. If your Sts did *American English File Level 1*, elicit what they remember about the people. If they didn't, tell them that they will find out who they are.

Play the video once the whole way through.

Get Sts to compare what they found out about the people with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

Ben is American. He's a photography student. He's Izzy's boyfriend. Izzy is British. She works as a bike courier in London. She was a student at Ben's photography school, but she left the course. She had an interview for a job as a photo editor. She's Ben's girlfriend. Andre is Ben's photography teacher. He was Izzy's teacher when she studied at the school.

Carla is a barista in the coffee shop that Ben and Izzy go to. She's Izzy's friend.

Pamela is Izzy's friend (and her landlady).

1 SIX MONTHS LATER

- a Focus on the heading and elicit that six months have passed since Season 1.

Focus on the instruction and question. Give Sts time to read and discuss the answer in pairs. Elicit some ideas, but don't tell Sts if they are right or not.

- b ▶ In this first scene, we catch up with Ben, who is working part-time in the café, and Izzy, who is in her new job. We find out that Ben's twin sister Emma is visiting from the US.

Focus on the questions. Play the video all the way through, pausing if necessary from 00:42 to 00:52 to give Sts time to read about Ben and Izzy.

Check answers.

EXTRA IDEA Pause the video at 00:40 after the introductory sequence, and ask *What do we see Ben and Izzy doing?* (taking photos of London, taking selfies, riding bikes, buying ice cream).

ANSWERS

Ben is working in the coffee shop where Carla works. Izzy is working as a photo editor for *Light on London*, an online magazine. Emma is Ben's sister. She's going to meet Izzy this evening.



C = Carla, B = Ben, M = Max, I = Izzy, O = Ola

C So, your sister is visiting from the US?

B Yeah, she arrived late last night.

C Is she staying with you?

B No, she's in a hotel. My apartment's too small.

C Oh, OK. She's your twin, right? That's so cool.

B Yeah...she's going to meet Izzy this evening.

C Cool! Are you nervous?

B Nervous? Why?

C I don't know. Your girlfriend is going to meet your family for the first time.

B Well, it's not all my family, just my sister.

C Oh, well, fine.

B Yeah, I mean...they're very different, but I'm sure they're going to get on well.

C Where are you going to meet?

B Here, after Izzy finishes work. Emma's at the hotel now.

C Oh, well, I look forward to meeting her!

M Hey Izzy, come and look at the new design.

I Sure!

M Listen, Izzy, Are you free to go for a drink this evening?

I Oh, I...um...I'm sorry, I can't.
M Oh no, it's not just me – it's everybody. It's a good chance to get to know the team.
O Yeah, come on, Izzy. We always have a great time.
I Thank you, Ola, but I can't. I'm meeting Ben and his sister this evening.
O I think the Managing Director is going to be there.
I Really?
O Yeah, have you met him?
I No, I haven't...Maybe I can come later.
M Great. We're meeting at the Red Lion. Come when you can.

c Focus on the task. Go through the questions with Sts.
Play the video again.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Get Sts to try to mark the sentences T or F before playing the video again. Then play the video for Sts to check.

Get Sts to compare answers with a partner.

Check answers.

Ask Sts to correct the false sentences. Ask Sts if they think Emma and Izzy are going to get along.

ANSWERS

- 1 F (Emma is staying in a hotel.)
- 2 T
- 3 T
- 4 F (Ben thinks they're very different.)
- 5 T
- 6 T

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

2 CALLING RECEPTION

a In this functional language scene Emma calls hotel reception twice with different problems.

Focus on the photos and the title and elicit who they think the two people are.

Focus on the task. Go through the list of problems and make sure Sts understand them.

Play the video once the whole way through for Sts to check Emma's problems.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

The air conditioning isn't working,
She can't connect to the Wi-Fi.



R = receptionist, E = Emma

R Hello, reception.

E Hello, this is room thirteen.

R How can I help you?

E There's a problem with the air conditioning. It isn't working and it's very hot in my room.

R I'm sorry. I'll send somebody up to look at it right now.

R Good morning, reception.

E Hello. I'm sorry to bother you again. This is room thirteen.

R How can I help?

E I have another problem. I can't connect to the Wi-Fi.

R I'm sorry. I'll put you through to my colleague. She can help you.

E Thank you very much.

b Now focus on the conversation in the chart. Ask *Who says the **You hear** sentences?* and elicit that it is the receptionist. Then ask *Who says the **You say** sentences?* and elicit that here it is Emma. These phrases will be useful for Sts if they have a problem in a hotel.

Give Sts a minute to read through the conversation and think what the missing words might be. Then play the video again, and get Sts to fill in the blanks.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

1 help 2 send 3 look 4 morning 5 put

You might want to model and drill the pronunciation of *Wi-Fi* /'waɪ faɪ/. Elicit / Explain what *put someone through* means.

Go through the conversation line by line with Sts, helping them with any words or expressions they don't understand.

c Now focus on the **You say** phrases and tell Sts they're going to watch the conversation again. They should repeat the phrases when the video pauses. Encourage them to copy the rhythm and intonation.

Play the video for Sts to watch and repeat the phrases.

Now focus on the **Offers with I'll** box and go through it with the class.

Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**. **A** is the receptionist. Get Sts to read the conversation aloud, and then change roles.



Same as previous video with repeat pauses

d Focus on the role-play. Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**. Tell them to read their instructions carefully, and help them understand exactly what they have to do.

Sts **A** are receptionists. They read the **You hear** part with the new information.

Sts **B** are the guests. They should read the **You say** phrases again and think about what they are going to say. Remind Sts **B** that they should use their own first name and last name.

EXTRA SUPPORT Demonstrate the activity by taking the role of the hotel guest yourself and getting a confident student to be the receptionist.

A starts the role-play: *Good morning, reception. Can I help you?* Monitor and help.

Now tell Sts to change roles in their pairs and have a new conversation.

When they have finished, you could get a few pairs to perform in front of the class.

EXTRA IDEA Before Sts start the role-play, elicit some other problems they could have in a hotel room, e.g., the TV doesn't work, there aren't any towels, the room is dirty, etc.

3 IZZY AND EMMA MEET

a In this last scene, Izzy comes to the café and meets Emma for the first time.

Focus on the photo and the question, and ask Sts how they think each person is feeling.

Elicit answers from the class, but don't confirm anything yet.

- b** ▶ Play the video for Sts to check their answers.

POSSIBLE ANSWER

It wasn't a success. (Because Ben wants Izzy to spend the evening with him and Emma, but Izzy says she can't because she has to go to a work event. She leaves the café very quickly.)



E = Emma, B = Ben, C = Carla, I = Izzy

E Hello, stranger!
B Emma!
E Sorry I'm late.
B Don't worry, it's fine. How are you?
E Great! It's so nice to see you... You look a bit thin. Are you eating enough?
B Yes, I am. You sound like Mom. Anyway, this is Carla.
C Hi. It's nice to meet you.
E It's nice to meet you, too.
E How's the photography course going?
B It's great. Right now, I'm working on a really big project. It's going well, but it's hard work.
B Hi, Izzy. This is Emma. Emma, Izzy.
I Hi, Emma. It's really nice to meet you.
E It's so good to meet you, too.
I I've heard a lot about you.
E Me too. Wow, that's a really cool jacket!
I Oh, thanks.
B Coffee?
I Yeah. A flat white, please.
I So, have you seen much of London yet?
E Just the hotel room. I only arrived last night. But we're going to go out for dinner later. Are you going to come with us?
I Um...no, sorry, I can't. I'm going out for drinks with the people from my office...Um, team building...
E Oh...team building...
I ...So yeah, I work long hours, but I love it.
E That's great. Ben, Izzy can't come with us. She needs to meet some people from work, or something?
B Really, Izzy? Emma just got here. I booked a table for three. We could see some sights on the way.
I I'd love to...I'd really love to. But it's a work thing. Everyone is going. It's really important that I'm there.
B Well...if it's important.
E It's fine, Ben. You can't expect Izzy to change her plans just because I'm here. It's just you and me, then.
B Do you really need to go to this work thing?
I Yes. I'm sorry...Actually, I need to go now.
B But you just got here.
I I know...I just...I'm sorry. Nice to meet you, Emma. Let's do something really soon – maybe tomorrow – the three of us?
E Sure.

- c** Focus on the instructions and on sentences 1–8.
Give Sts time to read them, and tell Sts to listen out for them when they watch the video again. Now play the video again.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Get Sts to try to mark the sentences with the people's initials before playing the video again. Then play the video for Sts to check.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

1 E to B 2 B to E 3 E to I 4 E to I 5 B to I 6 I to B
7 E to B 8 B to I

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

4 SOCIAL ENGLISH

- a** Focus on the phrases in the chart and highlight that they are all from the video.
Now give Sts time to match a phrase in **A** with a response in **B**. They can do this individually or in pairs.
- b** ▶ Play the video for Sts to watch and check.
Check answers. If you know your Sts' L1, you could get them to translate the phrases.

ANSWERS

- 1 Oh, I'm sorry. I can't.
- 2 It's nice to meet you, too.
- 3 It's great.
- 4 Me too.
- 5 But you just got here.

Now play the video again, pausing as necessary, for Sts to watch and repeat.

- c** Focus on the instructions and put Sts in pairs, making sure they understand what they have to do.
Monitor and help. Make sure they change roles. If there's time, you could get Sts **B** to close their books and respond from memory, and then change roles.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

This regular exercise gives Sts a chance to give their opinion on what is happening or going to happen in *Pictures of you*. You can decide if Sts should answer the questions briefly or have a more elaborate class discussion about them. Sts may want to use their L1 here and say more than they have the language for, which is positive as it means they are engaging with the video.

Focus on the **What do you think?** box and go through it with the class.

Put Sts in pairs and get them to discuss their answers to the questions.

Elicit some feedback from the class.

- G** simple past: regular and irregular verbs
V vacations
P regular verbs: -ed endings

Lesson plan

The simple past (regular and irregular verbs) is reviewed in detail in this lesson through the context of vacations, with two stories about people who lost something important when they were traveling. Sts begin by reading about Sam, who went on vacation with a group of friends and misplaced his phone. Sts then thoroughly review the simple past of both regular and irregular verbs. They then listen to another story about Marta and her lost ID card, which is followed by a pronunciation focus that reviews -ed endings in regular verbs. Sts then watch a video that reviews vacation vocabulary they already know, and then go to the **Vocabulary Bank** to learn new expressions. In the final Speaking they first listen to four short conversations which focus on showing interest and using "interested" intonation. Then Sts interview each other about their last vacation using a short questionnaire, and respond to what their partner says.

Video material

Pronunciation – regular verbs: -ed endings
 Vocabulary – vacations

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar simple past: regular and irregular verbs p.187
Vocabulary Vacations p.271 (instructions p.265)
Communicative Truth or lie? p.232 (instructions p.220)

For students

Workbook 2A

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Write *My last vacation* on the board and tell Sts they have two minutes to find out from you as much as possible about your last vacation. Elicit questions in the simple past, e.g., *Where did you go?*, etc.

1 READING understanding details

- a** Books open. Focus on the instructions and make sure Sts realize that the "four things" refers to the title of the article. Either put Sts in pairs or do it as a whole-class activity. If Sts worked in pairs, get some feedback.
- b** Give Sts time to read the story and answer the questions. Get Sts to compare with a partner. Then check answers.

ANSWERS

He lost his phone.
 Yes, he did.

- c** Focus on the instructions and make sure Sts know what they have to do. Point out that the first one has been done for them. Now tell Sts to read the story again. When they have finished reading the story, they should cover it, look at 2–11, and correct the bold information.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 2 One day, they **went for a long walk**.
- 3 It took **about two hours** to get to the top of the mountain.
- 4 They had **lunch** at the top of the mountain.
- 5 The view **was amazing**.
- 6 Sam wanted to take another photo, but he couldn't find **his phone**.
- 7 He went back up the mountain with **all his friends**.
- 8 They spent **about half an hour** looking for the phone.
- 9 It started to get **colder**.
- 10 He found his phone in his **jacket pocket**.
- 11 His friends were **very nice** about it.

Deal with any other new vocabulary. Model and drill the pronunciation of any tricky words.

- d** Do this as an open class question, or put Sts in pairs and then get feedback. Tell them about any of your own experiences if you have them.

2 GRAMMAR simple past: regular and irregular verbs

- a** Focus on the verbs and tell Sts that some are regular and some are irregular. Make sure Sts know what they mean, but don't spend too much time on the pronunciation, as Sts will be focusing on this later. Elicit the simple past of the first one (*went*) and then get Sts to do the others in pairs. Encourage them to do as many as they can without looking back at the story and then check their answers in Sam's story.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

go – went I	want – wanted R
climb – climbed R	think – thought I
be – was / were I	decide – decided R
take – took I	say – said I
get – got I	spend – spent I
have – had I	start – started R
can – could I	feel – felt I
sit – sat I	let – let I

- b** Tell Sts to fill in the blanks in 1–3 with negative simple past verbs.

They then check their answers in Sam's story.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 wasn't 2 couldn't 3 didn't

- c** Put Sts in pairs or do this as a whole-class activity. Give them a minute to remember how to make negatives and questions. If Sts worked in pairs, check answers.

ANSWERS

with was / were:

- ☐ wasn't or weren't, e.g., *It wasn't cold.*
☒ Were (you, etc.)?, Was (he, etc.)?, e.g., *Was it nice?*

with could:

- ☐ couldn't, e.g., *We couldn't stay very long.*
☒ Could (I, you, etc.)?, e.g., *Could you swim there?*

with other verbs:

[-] *didn't* + base form, e.g., *I didn't show them, I didn't want it.*

[?] *Did* (you, etc.) + base form?, e.g., *Did you go...?*

d Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 2A** on p.136.

Grammar notes

You may also want to remind Sts:

- that irregular forms (*went, had*, etc.) are only used in positive sentences
- that the vast majority of verbs are regular. The irregular verbs need to be learned, but Sts already know the most common ones.

Tell Sts to go to **Irregular verbs** on p.172 and explain that this is their reference list. Get Sts to go through the list quickly in pairs, checking that they know what the verbs mean. Encourage them to highlight verbs they didn't know or had forgotten the past form of.

Let Sts test each other, or test around the class.

Focus on the example sentences and play audio 2.1 for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the exercises for **2A** on p.137. Sts do the exercises individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

- a 1 drove 2 broke 3 spent 4 got 5 went 6 couldn't
7 were 8 didn't know 9 found 10 stayed 11 saw
12 bought 13 wanted 14 didn't have 15 was 16 wasn't
17 started 18 left 19 stopped
b 1 Did you have 2 Who did you go 3 Where did you stay
4 How much did, cost 5 What was 6 What did you do

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **2A**.

EXTRA IDEA Remind Sts that a very good way of learning irregular verbs is through reading stories. Show them a few Graded Readers if you can, and if you have a class library, encourage them to take out a book to read at home.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **2A Grammar** photocopiable activity.

3 LISTENING & PRONUNCIATION

listening for key points; regular verbs: -ed endings

- a 2.2 Focus on the photo of Marta. Tell Sts they are going to listen to another story about someone losing something, and they must answer the two questions. You could write the two questions on the board and get Sts to close their books.

Play the audio once the whole way through.

Get Sts to compare answers, and then play the audio again if necessary.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

Marta lost her ID card.
No, she didn't.

2.2

(script in Student Book on p.128)

This happened two years ago. I'm Spanish, but I was in Ireland at the time because I had a job in Dublin. Some friends of mine who lived in Lyon, in France, invited me to come and stay, so I decided to take a short vacation, a long weekend, from Friday to Tuesday. I looked for cheap flights, but I couldn't find any direct ones. The only thing I could find was Ryanair from Dublin to Brussels, and then Air France from Brussels to Lyon.

Anyway, the flight to Brussels was fine, and when I arrived, I went to the gate for my next flight to Lyon, but then, when I needed to show my boarding pass and my ID, I couldn't find my ID card. I looked everywhere – in my bag, in my suitcase – but it wasn't there. The people at the gate were very nice and they made some phone calls, but nobody could find it. So they told me to wait in a small room and I sat there for more than an hour, and my flight to Lyon left without me.

It was awful – I cried – I was so stressed and unhappy. In the end, a police officer came and he said that I couldn't go to France because I didn't have any ID – the only place I could go was to Spain to get a new ID card! I waited another five or six hours for the flight to Madrid, feeling very depressed.

So I never took my vacation! I spent the weekend in Madrid getting my new ID card!

- b Tell Sts they are going to listen to Marta again. Give them time to read questions 1–7.

Play the audio again and get Sts to answer the questions.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 Two years ago.
- 2 Lyon. Her friends invited her to come and stay.
- 3 There were no cheap direct flights.
- 4 She couldn't find her ID card.
- 5 She felt stressed and unhappy.
- 6 He said that she couldn't go to France because she didn't have any ID.
- 7 Madrid. She got a new ID card. / She spent the weekend getting a new ID card.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to listen again with the script on p.128, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

Pronunciation notes

The regular simple past ending -ed can be pronounced in three different ways:

- 1 -ed is pronounced /t/ after verbs ending in these unvoiced* sounds: /k/, /p/, /f/, /s/, /ʃ/, and /tʃ/, e.g., *looked, hoped, laughed, passed, washed, watched*.
- 2 After voiced endings, -ed is pronounced /d/, e.g., *arrived, changed, showed*. This group is the largest.
- 3 After verbs ending in /t/ or /d/, the pronunciation of -ed is /ɪd/, e.g., *hated, decided*.

The difference between 1 and 2 is very small and rarely causes communication problems. The most important thing is for Sts to be clear about rule 3.

*For information on **Voiced and unvoiced consonants**, see **Pronunciation notes 1B** on p.29.

- c 2.3 Focus on the task and play the audio for Sts to listen to the three sentences from Marta's story.

Check answers.

2.3

- 1 I **looked** everywhere – in my bag, in my suitcase – but it wasn't there.
- 2 This **happened** two years ago.
- 3 I **waited** another five or six hours.

d  Focus on the sound pictures. Elicit and drill the words and sounds: *tie* /t/, *dog* /d/, and /ɪd/.

Play the video once for Sts just to listen to the sounds and sentences and see the mouth position.



See sounds and sentences in Student Book on p.17

Then play the video again for Sts to listen and repeat.

Now focus on the **Regular simple past verbs** box and go through it with the class.

e Give Sts a minute to practice saying the verbs in the list in the past and to decide which ones have /ɪd/ endings.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Draw three columns on the board for the sounds. Get Sts to write the verbs in the correct column.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

f  **2.4** Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers. Remind Sts that you only pronounce the *e* in *-ed* endings when verbs finish in a /t/ or /d/ sound, and then the *-ed* ending is pronounced /ɪd/.

ANSWERS

decided, rented, started, wanted

2.4

argued, asked, checked, decided, happened, lived, rented, started, stopped, thanked, wanted

EXTRA SUPPORT Play the audio again, pausing after each verb for Sts to listen and repeat.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Elicit whether the other verbs are /t/ or /d/.

ANSWERS

/t/: asked, checked, stopped, thanked
/d/: argued, happened, lived

4 VOCABULARY

 vacations

a  In this video, Sts watch clips of people doing different vacation activities.

Focus on the photo and elicit the vacation activity (*sightseeing*). Focus on the instructions and questions. Play the video once for Sts to watch.

Then play it again, pausing after each clip for Sts to say the activities, and write them on the board. Model and drill any tricky words, e.g., *sightseeing*, *souvenirs*. You may want to point out that:

- You can use *sightsee* as a verb on its own, e.g., *They're sightseeing*, or with the verb *go*, e.g., *go sightseeing*.
- We use *bike* as a verb for the form of transportation, e.g., *He bikes to work*, but we use *go biking* or *riding bikes* for the free-time activity.

Finally, get Sts to say which of these activities they like doing on vacation.

ANSWERS

- 1 Sightseeing
- 2 Buying souvenirs
- 3 Taking photographs
- 4 Biking
- 5 Walking / going for a walk
- 6 Going out

EXTRA IDEA Put Sts in small groups to make a list of other vacation activities they like doing. Conduct whole-class feedback.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

b Tell Sts to go to **Vocabulary Bank Vacations** on p.160.

Vocabulary notes

Highlight:

- the difference between *go out (at night)* = leave your house / hotel, e.g., go to a restaurant, a club, etc., and *go away (for the weekend)* = leave your town, e.g., go to the country, to another town, etc.
- the difference between *swim* and *go swimming* (which applies to all the other expressions, e.g., *go sailing*, *surfing*, etc.). We use *go + swimming*, etc. when we refer to it as an activity rather than an ability or way of moving. Compare *I go swimming every day* and *I can swim very well*, and *We went walking in the hills* and *We walked to the store*.

Focus on **1 Phrases with go** and get Sts to do **a** individually or in pairs. Some of these phrases should already be familiar to them.

 **2.5** Now do **b**. Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers.

2.5

Vacations, 1 Phrases with go

- | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------|
| 7 go abroad | 1 go on vacation |
| 10 go away for the weekend | 3 go out at night |
| 4 go by bus | 5 go sightseeing |
| 8 go camping | 6 go skiing |
| 9 go for a walk | 2 go swimming |

Now either use the audio to drill the pronunciation of the phrases, or model and drill them yourself. Give further practice of any words and phrases your Sts find difficult to pronounce.

Focus on **c** and get Sts to cover the phrases and look at the photos. They can test themselves or their partner.

Focus on **2 Other vacation phrases** and get Sts to do **a** individually or in pairs.

 **2.6** Now do **b**. Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers.

2.6

2 Other vacation phrases

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| stay in a hotel | spend money |
| take photos | rent an apartment |
| buy souvenirs | book a flight online |
| sunbathe on the beach | |
| have a good time | |

Now either use the audio to drill the pronunciation of the phrases, or model and drill them yourself. Give further practice of any words and phrases your Sts find difficult to pronounce.

Now focus on **c**. Get Sts to test themselves by covering the verbs and remembering the phrases.

Focus on **3 Adjectives**. Elicit the meaning of the *What was the...like?* questions. Then give Sts a minute to match the questions and answers.

🔊 **2.7** Now do **b**. Play the audio for Sts to listen and check. Check answers.

🔊 2.7

3 Adjectives

1 What was the weather like?

It was warm.
It was sunny.
It was very windy.
It was foggy.
It was cloudy.

2 What was the hotel like?

It was comfortable.
It was luxurious.
It was basic.
It was dirty.
It was uncomfortable.

3 What was the town like?

It was beautiful.
It was lovely.
It was noisy.
It was crowded.

4 What were the people like?

They were friendly.
They were helpful.
They were unfriendly.
They were unhelpful.

Now either use the audio to drill the pronunciation of the sentences (*It was warm, It was sunny, etc.*), or model and drill the adjectives (*warm, sunny, etc.*) yourself. Give further practice of any words or phrases your Sts find difficult to pronounce.

Focus on the **General positive and negative adjectives** box and go through it with the class.

Finally, focus on **Activation**. Put Sts in pairs to discuss which alternatives they prefer.

Get some feedback.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **2A**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **2A Vocabulary** photocopiable activity.

5 SPEAKING

a 🔊 **2.8** Focus on the task and make sure Sts understand what they have to do.

Play the audio once the whole way through.

Now play it again, pausing after each extract if necessary, and get Sts to fill in the blanks.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 Wow 2 no, bad 3 Fantastic 4 Really, awful

🔊 2.8

See script in Student Book on p.17 and answer key

b Now play the audio again, pausing after **B**'s responses for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy **B**'s intonation. Remind Sts that we use:

- *Wow / (How) fantastic!* after good or positive news
- *Oh no! / Too bad! / How awful!* after bad or sad news
- *Really?* after surprising news

EXTRA IDEA Say some positive or negative things that have happened to you recently, and elicit responses from Sts.

c Focus on the questions and elicit what the missing words are (*did you* in most questions and *was / were* in others).

ANSWERS

- 1 Where did you go?
- 2 When did you go?
- 3 Who did you go with?
- 4 Where did you stay? What was it like?
- 5 What was the weather like?
- 6 What did you do during the day?
- 7 What did you do in the evening?
- 8 Did you have a good time?
- 9 Did you have any problems?

Drill the complete questions quickly around the class.

d Give Sts time to think about their answers to the questions. Tell them that they can talk about another vacation they remember well, not necessarily their last vacation.

EXTRA SUPPORT Give Sts enough time to make notes or write full answers to the questions.

Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**. **A** answers **B**'s questions. **B** must try to show interest and ask for more information. Monitor and correct.

Sts change roles.

Get some feedback from the class.

EXTRA SUPPORT You could get Sts to interview you first. Make sure they ask you for extra information, and then give as much information as you can.

- G** past continuous
V prepositions of time and place: *at, in, on*
P weak forms: *was, were*

Lesson plan

This lesson starts with a photo from a feature in *The Guardian* called "That's me in the picture." Sts read an article in which the man in the photo tells the story behind it. They then focus on vocabulary and the correct use of the prepositions *at, in, and on*, both for time (review) and place. The story behind the photo also provides the context for the presentation of a new tense, the past continuous. After going to the **Grammar Bank** they then practice the new language with a video. Sts then listen to a woman describing six photos on her social media page and focus on the weak forms of *was* and *were* in the past continuous. The lesson ends with Sts talking about their own favorite photos, and then writing about one of them.

Video material

Grammar – past continuous

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar past continuous p.188

Vocabulary Prepositions *at, in, on* p.272 (instructions p.265)

Communicative Who did it? p.233 (instructions p.221)

For students

Workbook 2B

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Write *photo* on the board. Ask Sts what it is short for (*photograph*) and elicit the verb we use with it (*take*). Elicit / Teach the words for a person who takes photos (*photographer*) and the subject (*photography*). Write them on the board and model the pronunciation. Ask Sts how the word stress changes and underline it on the board:
photograph photographer photography

1 READING using visual clues to understand events and feelings

- a** Books open. Focus on the photo and questions 1–3. Put Sts in pairs and give them time to discuss the questions. Elicit ideas, encouraging Sts to say why, but don't tell Sts if they are correct or not yet.
- b** Get Sts to read the article to check their answers to **a**. At the same time, Sts find the highlighted items in the photo. Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 It was in Ecuador (in a place called Baños).
- 2 Smoke was coming from the volcano.
- 3 He was terrified.

- c** Focus on questions 1–5 and go through them with the class. Give Sts time to read the article again and answer the questions.
 Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 He was taking a Spanish course. He wanted to visit the "Swing at the end of the world" and see the views.
- 2 They rented quad bikes. That the volcano was active that day.
- 3 Because it's just two old ropes and a wooden seat. They all took turns.
- 4 A cloud of ash started to cover the sky. He asked his friend to take a photo of him.
- 5 He saw it in a *National Geographic* magazine.

Deal with any other new vocabulary. Model and drill the pronunciation of any tricky words.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Ask *Would you have gone on that swing?*

- d** Do this as a whole-class activity. You could also tell the class if you have a photo with you in it that you really love.

2 VOCABULARY *at, in, on*

- a** Focus on the instructions and give Sts time to complete the sentences.
 Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 In, at, in 2 on 3 in

- b** Tell Sts to go to **Vocabulary Bank Prepositions** on p.161 and focus on **1 at / in / on**.

Vocabulary notes

Place

Sts are often confused about the difference between *at* and *in* + places, as they often encounter both. At this level, it is probably better to simplify the rules, and to point out that with stores and buildings, e.g., *the grocery store* or *the theater*, you can use *at* or *in* when you answer the question *Where were you?* With *airport* and *train station*, we normally use *at*. We can use both *at* and *in* before *college* and *school*. *At* is used when these are considered places, but *in* is often used when talking about subjects or degrees. Compare *He was at school all day yesterday* and *He's studying Spanish in school*.

Time

Remind Sts that years from 2000 to 2010 are usually *two thousand and one*, etc. From 2011 onward, we usually say *twenty eleven*, *twenty twelve*, etc.

Point out to Sts that we say *in the morning / afternoon / evening*, but *at night*.

Focus on **a** and get Sts to complete the left-hand column of the chart.

- 🎧 **2.9** Now do **b**. Play the audio for Sts to listen and check. Track **2.9** is quite long, so you might want to check answers without playing the audio.

2.9

Prepositions 1 at / in / on

1 in

countries and cities: in Peru, in Lima

rooms: in the kitchen

buildings: in a store, in a museum

closed spaces: in a park, in a yard, in a car

months: in February, in June

seasons: in the winter

years: in twenty twenty-five

times of day: in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening

2 on

transportation: on a bike, on a bus, on a train, on a plane, on a ship

a surface: on the floor, on a table, on a shelf, on the balcony, on the roof, on the wall

dates: on March first

days: on Tuesday, on the weekend, on New Year's Day, on Valentine's Day

3 at

places: at school, at home, at work, at the airport, at the train station, at a bus stop, at the door

times: at six o'clock, at half past two, at quarter to eight, at noon, at midnight, at lunch, at night

Now either use the audio to drill the pronunciation of the phrases, or model and drill them yourself. Give further practice of any words your Sts find difficult to pronounce.

Focus on **Activation**. Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**. **A** (book open) tests **B** (book closed) for two minutes. Then they change roles. Allow at least five minutes for Sts to test each other. Then get Sts to close their books, and test them around the class, saying a word, e.g., *home*, for Sts to say the preposition *at*.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **2B**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the 2B Vocabulary photocopiable activity.

- c Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**, and tell them to go to **Communication at, in, on, A** on p.104, **B** on p.110.

Go through the instructions with them carefully. Sit **A** and **B** face-to-face. **A** asks their questions to **B**, who replies using a preposition and then asks *What about you?* **B** then asks **A** their questions.

When they have finished, get some feedback from the class.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **2B**.

3 GRAMMAR past continuous

- a Focus on the highlighted verbs in the two sentences and do the questions as a whole-class activity.

ANSWERS

1 were riding 2 was studying

- b Focus on the instructions. Give Sts time to read the article again and find more examples.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

we were swinging on the swing and [were] watching the smoke; One part of me was thinking, "This is so cool," but the other part was thinking, "Are we in danger?" I was looking through a *National Geographic* magazine when I saw the photo.

- c Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 2B** on p.136.

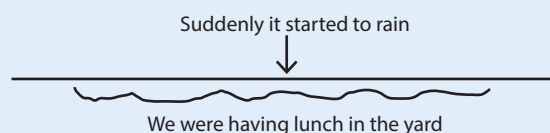
Grammar notes

If Sts have an equivalent of the past continuous in their L1, then it doesn't normally cause problems. If they don't, it's important to make the use very clear.

We often use the past continuous at the beginning of a story, to set the scene and to say what was happening, e.g., *On April 1st, I was staying with some friends in the country. It was a sunny day and we were having lunch in the backyard.*

Very often these "actions in progress" (past continuous) are "interrupted" by a short, completed action (simple past), e.g., *We were having lunch in the yard when suddenly it started to rain.*

You could draw a time line on the board to clarify.



Highlight the similarity in form with the present continuous. It is identical except for using *was / were* instead of *am / is / are*.

You may also want to remind Sts of the spelling rules for the *-ing* form (see **Grammar Bank 1C**).

when or while?

We can connect two actions with *when* or *while*: *when* + simple past, *while* / *when* + past continuous.

Focus on the example sentences and play both audio **2.10** and **2.11** for Sts to listen and repeat.

Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the exercises for **2B** on p.137. Sts do the exercises individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

a 1 were traveling 2 was living 3 Was she wearing
4 was shining 5 were...doing 6 wasn't listening
7 weren't watching

b 1 broke, was playing 2 Were...driving, stopped
3 was snowing, left 4 didn't see, was working 5 called, was talking
6 were studying, met 7 Were...living, had

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **2B**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the 2B Grammar photocopiable activity.

- d In this video, there are six items. Each is a combination of two clips to illustrate sentences where a past continuous action is interrupted by a simple past action.

Focus on the photo and the example, and elicit the complete sentence before writing it on the board. Make sure Sts understand they must write a sentence using the past continuous and the simple past. Put Sts in pairs.

Play the video once the whole way through. Then play it again and pause when the grid appears at 01:41. Put Sts in pairs and give them time to write their sentences for 2-6.

EXTRA SUPPORT Do the first one together as an example.

Check answers and write the sentences on the board.
Accept any correct possibilities.

ANSWERS

- 1 She was surfing when she saw a shark.
- 2 They were playing tennis when it started to rain / started raining / began to rain.
- 3 He was driving when his mother called him.
- 4 They were having a party when the police came / arrived.
- 5 They were sleeping when the baby started to cry / started crying / began to cry / woke up.
- 6 She was walking her dog / taking her dog for a walk when she met a friend.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

4 LISTENING & PRONUNCIATION

understanding the order of events; weak forms: *was*, *were*

Pronunciation notes

Native speakers use two different pronunciations of *was* and *were*, depending on whether the words are stressed or not, i.e., they can have a strong or weak pronunciation.

Was and *were* always have a strong pronunciation in short answers and negatives, and can have a strong pronunciation in *yes / no* questions, e.g., *Was he working when you called him?* The strong pronunciation is /wʌz/ and /wɜːr/.

Was and *were* tend to have a weak pronunciation in positive sentences and are pronounced /wəz/ and /wər/, e.g., *He was a teacher* /wəz/, *They were walking in the park* /wər/.

It is useful for Sts at this level to be aware of these differences, but it is unrealistic to expect them to be able to pronounce *was* and *were* properly. Sts will probably use mostly strong forms of *was* and *were*.

However, it's important for Sts to be able to recognize *was* and *were* when they hear them in speech, and **d** and **e** are designed to help them with this.

- a** Focus on the instructions and make sure Sts know the phrase *social media* – you could elicit examples of popular social media sites in their country. Do this as a whole-class activity and elicit Sts' ideas.
- b** **2.12** Tell Sts they are now going to listen to Anya talking about her photos. They must number them 1–6 in the order she describes them.
- Play the audio once the whole way through for Sts to listen and complete the task.
- Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

A 3 B 5 C 6 D 2 E 1 F 4

2.12

(script in Student Book on p.128)

A = Anya, F = friend

- 1 **A** This is me and my mom in York. It was my first semester at college, and she came to visit me, and I took her on a tour around the city.
F Is that, uh, the cathedral there?
A Yes – well, it's called York Minster, but it's really a cathedral.
- 2 **A** And this one's on the beach with my boyfriend, Ollie. I was staying with him on spring break, and he took me to the beach and we went for a walk.
F It looks windy!
A Yes, it was really windy and cold. I think we were the only people on the beach!
- 3 **F** Nice photo! I like the mustache.
A Yeah, that's me and my friend Maisie. We were taking a music class – I take it twice a year – and this was at the party at the end of the class.
F Why the mustaches and the picture frame?
A There was this corner that the teachers made where people could take funny photos with the big frame, and hats and mustaches and things.
- 4 **A** OK, this one is me and two of my best friends – we were at school together. One of them, Libby, the one on my right, has a house by the river, and we went there in September before we all went to college.
- 5 **F** That's a nice photo. In Rome, I guess?
A Yes, I was there for a vacation with my mom the summer before I went to college. She took this when we were visiting the Colosseum – as you can see.
- 6 **F** That's your mom again, isn't it?
A Yes, that's her and her partner, and my sister Roz. It was Christmas and Roz and I were staying with Mom and David, and we decided to go for a walk. It was nice weather for December, cold but it wasn't raining, and it was good exercise after an enormous Christmas lunch.

- c** Play the audio again, pausing after each photo has been mentioned, to check answers and elicit any more information Sts can remember about each photo.

POSSIBLE ANSWERS

- 1 **E**, The photo was taken in York, where Anya is / was at college. She took her mother on a tour of the city. In the background is York Minster (cathedral).
- 2 **D**, The photo was taken at the beach. It was really windy and cold. Anya and her boyfriend were the only people on the beach.
- 3 **A**, The photo was taken at a party on the last day of a music class, which Anya takes twice a year. The teachers had put the big frame in a corner, as well as hats and mustaches, etc., for people to take funny photos.
- 4 **F**, The photo was taken at a friend's house in September, before they went to college. It shows Anya with her two best friends. She went to school with them.
- 5 **B**, The photo was taken in Rome. She went there for a vacation with her mother the summer before she went to college. Her mother took the photo when they were visiting the Colosseum.
- 6 **C**, The photo was taken at Christmas. It shows her sister, her mother, and her mother's partner. They were taking a walk. It was cold, but it wasn't raining.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to listen again with the script on p.128, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

- d** ④ **2.13** Tell Sts they are going to hear six sentences from the listening and they must write the missing words.
Play the audio, pausing after each sentence to give Sts time to write.
Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 It was
- 2 was staying
- 3 were taking
- 4 We were
- 5 were visiting
- 6 were staying

④ 2.13

See sentences in Student Book on p.19 and answer key

- e** Now play the audio again for Sts to answer the question.
Check the answer.

ANSWER

unstressed

5 SPEAKING

Most Sts will have photos on their phones which they can show each other during this activity. Focus on the four questions. Make sure Sts understand all the vocabulary. Demonstrate the activity by getting Sts to ask you the questions.

Get Sts to discuss the questions in pairs. Encourage them to give more information if they can.

Get feedback from a few pairs.

6 WRITING describing a photo

Tell Sts to go to **Writing Bank 2** on p.116.

- a** Focus on the information at the top of the image and establish that this is for an online photo competition.
Get Sts to fill in the blanks in the description.
Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

1 of 2 in 3 with 4 in 5 like 6 of 7 at 8 away 9 on

- b** Get Sts to match the questions to paragraphs 1–3.
Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 When did you take the photo? Where were you?
- 1 What's your favorite photo?
- 3 Why do you like the photo?
- 1 Who were you with? What were you doing?
- 2 Was it easy or difficult to take the photo? Why?
- 3 Where do you keep it?

- c** Focus on the **Avoiding repetition** box and go through it with the class. Point out that in the first example sentence the pronoun *they* refers back to *storks*. Elicit the words that the pronouns refer back to in the other example sentences.

Give Sts time to complete sentences 1–5. Get them to compare with a partner.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 it 2 there 3 She 4 They 5 there

- d** Give Sts time to plan their description. They should use the questions in **b** to help them.
- e** Assign the writing in class or for homework, and ask Sts to include the photo if they can. Tell Sts to answer the questions in **b** in the correct order and not as they appear on the page, so the first question they write about is *What's your favorite photo?* They should also try to include the highlighted phrases if they can.
- f** Sts check their writing for mistakes.

EXTRA IDEA You could use the corrected homework and photos for extra reading practice. Display all the photos. Give each student one description to read and match with the correct photo. Sts could read out the description they have for the class to guess who wrote it or you could elicit one thing they like about the description and why.

- G** time sequencers and connectors: *suddenly, when, so, etc.*
V verb phrases: *invite sb to dinner, have a great time, etc.*
P word stress

Lesson plan

In this lesson Sts learn to use time sequencers, e.g., *after that, later, etc.* and the connectors *so, because, but, and although*. They also review the simple past and past continuous. The context is a short story with a twist. After Sts have read most of the story and worked on the grammar, they have a pronunciation focus on word stress in two-syllable words, and then in Vocabulary they expand their knowledge of verb phrases. In the listening section, Sts decide as a class whether they want to see a happy or a sad ending to the story, and then watch the one they have chosen. Finally, in the speaking activity, Sts answer some questions in pairs about the ending they watched.

Video material

Listening – Happy ending; Sad ending

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar time sequencers and connectors p.189
Communicative Sentence race p.234 (instructions p.221)

For students

Workbook 2C

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Write the names of these bands / performers on the board and ask Sts if they can complete them with colors:

G_____ Day
 B_____ Sabbath
 R_____ Hot Chili Peppers
 B_____ Eyed Peas
 The W_____ Stripes
 Deep P_____
 P_____

ANSWERS

Green Day
Black Sabbath
Red Hot Chili Peppers
Black Eyed Peas
 The **White** Stripes
 Deep **Purple**
Pink

Then tell Sts that they are going to read a short story in which a song by Pink plays a part.

1 GRAMMAR time sequencers and connectors

- a** Books open. Focus on the story and tell Sts that they are going to read it, but first they should look at the title and photos and guess what it is about.

Elicit ideas from the class.

- b** **2.14** Tell Sts to read the story and fill in the blanks.

Tell them that the end of the story is on video, so the last paragraph here is not the end of the story. Point out that the first one (*Two minutes later*) has been done for them.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then play the audio for Sts to listen to the story and check.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 2** When **3** The next day **4** After that
5 One evening in October **6** Suddenly

2.14

See script in Student Book on p.20 and answer key

- c** Now give Sts time to read the story again.

Then put them in pairs to answer the questions. They can answer orally or in writing.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1** Because she didn't like the music.
2 Because it's by Pink, and Hannah was wearing a pink dress.
3 Jamie was waiting at the door and asked to see Hannah again.
4 It was very romantic, but the food wasn't very good.
5 To a coffee shop on Bridge Street.
6 It was dark and raining.
7 Because she was in a hurry.
8 Because he was wearing a dark coat.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Tell Sts to try to answer questions 1–8 from memory.

- d** Focus on the three sentences. Tell Sts not to look back at the story, but to try and complete the sentences from memory.

Check answers, and elicit / explain the meaning of the missing words or ask Sts how to say them in their L1. Model and drill the pronunciation of *so, because, and although*. Write them on the board and underline the stressed syllable, or write them up in phonetics (/soʊ/, /bɪ'kæz/, and /ə'lðəʊ/).

ANSWERS

- 1** because **2** Although **3** so

- e** Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 2C** on p.136.

Grammar notes

Time sequencers

Sts will have met some of these before, especially when reading or writing. The main error to look out for is Sts using *after* on its own rather than *then*, e.g., *He put on his coat and hat. Then he opened the door and went out.* NOT *He put on his coat and hat. After he opened the door and went out.*

Connectors

We usually put a comma before *so*, *although*, and *but*, e.g., *She was tired, so she went to bed.*

Sts may also ask you about *though*, which is an abbreviated form of *although*. *Though* is not usually used at the beginning of a sentence. It is probably best at this level if Sts just learn *although*.

! *So* has another completely different meaning, which is to intensify adjectives, e.g., *He was so tired that he went to bed at 9:00.* You may want to point out this meaning too, in case Sts get confused.

Focus on the example sentences and play audio

🔊 2.15, 🔊 2.16, and 🔊 2.17 for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Focus on the **then, after that** box and go through it with the class.

Now focus on the exercises for **2C** on p.137. Sts do the exercises individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

a 2 G 3 B 4 E 5 A 6 F 7 H 8 D

b 1 Although 2 because 3 but 4 Although 5 so
6 because 7 but 8 so 9 Although

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **2C**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **2C Grammar** photocopiable activity.

f Tell Sts to look at the six sentence beginnings and to complete them with their own ideas.

When Sts have finished, get them to compare their sentences with a partner.

Get some feedback from the class. You could write some of the sentences on the board.

EXTRA CHALLENGE You could ask Sts to come up with sentence endings they think none of their classmates will think of and praise any particularly original ones in feedback.

2 PRONUNCIATION word stress

a Focus on the **Stress in two-syllable words** box and go through it with the class.

Now focus on the task and give Sts time, in pairs, to underline the stressed syllable in the words.

b 🔊 2.18 Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Pause the audio after each word, elicit the answer, and write the word on the board with the stressed syllable underlined.

2.18

across, after, again, along, although, awful
because, birthday, evening, invite, perfect, quickly

Play the audio again, pausing after each word for Sts to repeat.

Put Sts in pairs and get them to practice saying the words.

c Focus on the instructions and the example.

In pairs, Sts write a sentence using two or more of the words in a.

Get a few pairs to read their sentence to the class.

3 VOCABULARY verb phrases

a Focus on the two boxes and the example. Tell Sts that by combining a verb from **1** with a phrase from **2**, they will make verb phrases from the story.

Put Sts in pairs and give them a few minutes to match the verbs and phrases. Tell them that sometimes two verbs may be possible with a phrase, but to try to remember the phrases from the story. Point out that the first one (*invite somebody to dinner*) has been done for them.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

have a great time
drive along Bridge Street
meet in a coffee shop
give somebody your phone number
take somebody to a restaurant
wait for somebody
be in a hurry
play a song
leave the club (very late)
run across the road

b Get Sts to test themselves by covering list **1** and remembering the verbs for each phrase.

EXTRA IDEA After Sts have done a and b, you could get them to listen to the story of Hannah and Jamie again, then work in A / B pairs and use the photos on p.20 to retell the story. Encourage them to use connectors and the verb phrases in 3a. Student A is Jamie and tells the story for photos A–C. Student B is Hannah and tells the story for photos D–F.

4 LISTENING using evidence to predict the ending of a story

a Tell Sts they are now going to watch the end of the story. There are two videos, each with a different version of how the story ends. First, Sts have to vote with a show of hands on whether they want to watch a happy ending or a sad ending.

b 🔊 Before playing the ending chosen by Sts, elicit ideas from the class about what they think happens, but don't tell them if they are right or wrong, to help build suspense.

Play the happy ending or sad ending video (as chosen by the Sts) once the whole way through for Sts to watch.

At the end of the story, get Sts to tell you what happened.

EXTRA IDEA Sts may want to watch both endings, in which case get them to explain what happened in each version, and ask them which ending they preferred.



H = Hannah, J = Jamie, W = waiter

H Don't you usually look before you cross the road? I nearly hit you. I didn't see you until the last moment.

J Hey, Hannah, it's me. It's Jamie.

H Jamie! What are you doing here? I nearly killed you!

J I was buying something. I was in a hurry, and I crossed the road without looking.

H Come on. Get in!

W Here you are. Two cappuccinos.

H and J Thanks.

H What an evening! I nearly killed you.

J Well, you didn't kill me, so what's the problem?

H But what were you doing there? I thought you were here, in the café, waiting for me.

J I went to the theater to buy these tickets for the Pink concert. I know you wanted to go. And it's on the fifteenth of October – next Saturday. Our anniversary.

H Our anniversary?

J Yeah. Three months since we first met. We met on Saturday the fifteenth of July. Remember?

H Gosh, Jamie. I can't believe you remember the exact day! What a romantic! It's lucky I didn't hit you on the street...



H = Hannah, P = police officer

P Good evening, Madam. Are you Hannah Davis?

H Yes, yes, I am.

P I'd like to speak to you. Can I come in?

P Are you a friend of Jamie Dixon?

H Uh, yes.

P Well, I'm afraid I have some bad news for you.

H What? What's happened?

P Jamie had an accident this evening.

H Oh no. What kind of accident?

P He was crossing the road and a car hit him.

H When...when did this happen? And where?

P This evening at twenty-five past five. He was crossing the road, near the theater.

H Oh no! How is he?

P He's in hospital. He's got a bad injury to his head and two broken legs.

H But is he going to be OK?

P We don't know. He's in intensive care.

H Oh no. And the driver of the car?

P She didn't stop.

H She?

P Yes, it was a woman in a black car. Somebody saw the number of the car. You have a black car outside, don't you, Madam? Is your number plate G-Y five six, R-Z-R?

H Yes...yes, it is.

P Can you tell me where you were at twenty-five past five this evening?

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

5 SPEAKING

If Sts chose the happy ending, tell them to go to

Communication Happy ending on p.105.

If Sts chose the sad ending, tell them to go to

Communication Sad ending on p.106.

Set a time limit for Sts to answer questions 1–8 in pairs.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

Happy ending

1 Because he was wearing a dark coat

2 Jamie

3 He was in a hurry.

4 To a coffee shop

5 Two cappuccinos

6 He was buying tickets for a concert.

7 It was the Pink concert on October 15th.

8 It was their three-month anniversary.

Sad ending

1 Because he was wearing a dark coat

2 She hit him.

3 She went to the coffee shop and called Jamie.

4 Home / A police officer

5 That Jamie was in a car accident

6 He had a bad injury to his head and two broken legs. He's in intensive care.

7 The car was black and the driver was a woman.

8 She asked Hannah about the license plate / number plate of her car and where she was at 5:25 p.m.

Explain that the British police officer says, "He's in hospital," but an American would say, "He's in the hospital." Also explain that in question 8 in the sad ending, either *number plate* (British English) or *license plate* (American English) is acceptable. The police officer in the video is British, so she uses the British term: *number plate*. Finally, explain that in American English the letter Z is pronounced /zi/, not /zed/.

EXTRA IDEA Ask Sts if they want to watch / listen to the ending they didn't choose (they almost always do). You could let them watch / listen to the other ending for pleasure, without doing the tasks.

There are two pages of review and consolidation after every two Files. These exercises can be done individually or in pairs, in class or at home, depending on the needs of your Sts and the class time available.

The first page reviews the Grammar, Vocabulary, and Pronunciation of the two Files. The exercises add up to 50 points (grammar = 15, vocabulary = 25, pronunciation = 10), so you can use the first page as a mini-test on Files 1 and 2. The pronunciation section sends Sts to the Sound Bank on pp.174–175. Explain that this is a reference section of the book, where they can check the symbols and see common sound–spelling patterns for each of the sounds. Highlight the video showing the mouth position for each sound. If you don't want to use this in class, tell Sts to look at it at home, and to practice making the sounds and saying the words.

The second page presents Sts with a series of skills-based challenges. First, in *Can you understand this text?*, there is a reading text that is of a slightly higher level than those in the Files, but that reviews grammar and vocabulary Sts have already learned. In the listening in *Can you understand these people?*, there is a video of some unscripted street interviews, where people are asked questions related to the topics in the Files. You can find the video on *Oxford English Hub* and *Classroom Presentation Tool*. Alternatively, you could assign these sections / activities as homework. Sts can find the video on *Oxford English Hub*. Finally, in *Can you say this in English?*, there is a speaking challenge which assesses Sts' ability to use the language of the Files orally. You could get Sts to do these activities in pairs, or Sts can check the boxes if they feel confident that they can do them.

Video material

Can you understand these people? 1&2

More materials

For teachers

Oxford English Hub

Quick Test 2

File 2 Test

GRAMMAR

ANSWERS

1 c 2 b 3 a 4 c 5 a 6 c 7 c 8 b 9 b 10 c 11 a
12 c 13 a 14 b 15 c

VOCABULARY

ANSWERS

a 1 do 2 look 3 wear 4 take 5 stay 6 book 7 invite
8 drive 9 play 10 leave
b 1 on 2 in 3 in 4 on 5 at 6 at 7 in
c 1 beard (the others are adjectives to describe hair)
2 lazy (the others are positive adjectives)
3 talkative (the others are negative adjectives)

- 4 earrings (the others are clothes)
5 gloves (the others are worn on your feet)
6 scarf (the others are pieces of jewelry)
7 noisy (the others are weather adjectives)
8 luxurious (the others are negative adjectives)

PRONUNCIATION

ANSWERS

c 1 quiet /aɪ/ 2 skiing /i/ 3 booked /t/ 4 listened /d/
5 noisy /z/
d 1 extroverted 2 cardigan 3 bracelet 4 online
5 comfortable

CAN YOU understand this text?

ANSWERS

a Morocco, the Islas Malvinas (Falkland Islands), India
1 B 2 C 3 A
b 1 F 2 F 3 T 4 F 5 T 6 T

▶ CAN YOU understand these people?

ANSWERS

1 a 2 a 3 b 4 c 5 c



1 Lewis

I = interviewer, L = Lewis

I Who do you look like in your family?

L Uh, well, people say I often look like my dad a lot. We've got the same sort of nose and the same face shape, but I've got my mum's hair color and my mum's eyes.

I Do you have a similar personality?

L Uh, again there is, there are quite a lot of similarities between me and my dad. We're both into German and speaking German, and also into architecture, which is why I'm here.

2 Susie

I = interviewer, S = Susie

I Do you have a favorite painting?

S Um, I think so. I'm not sure of the name of the painting, but I like Salvador Dalí. I really like the painting with the dripping clocks.

I Can you describe it?

S Uh, yes, like I said, there are dripping clocks. It's very, um, it's an interesting style. It's not something you see all the time, and it's very colorful.

3 Shoshanna

I = interviewer, S = Shoshanna

I Where did you go for your last vacation?

S My last vacation I went to Guyana, which is my parents' country in South America.

I Did you have a good time?

S I did. It was actually one of the best vacations I had. It was really educational, and I was able to see how my parents grew up, which was interesting.

4 Awet

I = interviewer, A = Awet

I Do you take a lot of photos?

A I take a lot of photos.

I What do you usually take photos of?

A I mostly take a lot of photos of nature.

5 Sam

I = interviewer, S = Sam

I Do you prefer movies with a happy or a sad ending?

S Um, it just has to be a good film. I don't mind if it's a happy ending or a sad ending.

G *be going to* (plans and predictions)

V airports

P the letter *g*

Lesson plan

In this lesson Sts review *be going to*, which they learned in Level 1, to talk about plans and predictions. The context is airports. The lesson begins with vocabulary, and Sts learn useful vocabulary related to airports. They then focus on the pronunciation of the letter *g*. Sts then read an article, called "Bored at the airport?," about things to do when you have to wait at an airport for some time. The grammar is then presented through a video where two men get into conversation while waiting at an airport. The lesson ends with a speaking activity in pairs, in which Sts plan a day visit to their town / city for two friends on a layover at their nearest airport.

Video material

Pronunciation – the letter *g*

Grammar – *be going to* (plans and predictions)

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar *be going to* (plans and predictions) p.190

Communicative A day in... p.235 (instructions p.221)

For students

Workbook 3A

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Write *airport* on the board. Put Sts in pairs and give them two minutes to think of five things people do at an airport, e.g., *catch a plane, leave, arrive, meet somebody, check in, board, fly, etc.* Elicit answers and write some of their suggestions on the board.

1 VOCABULARY & LISTENING airports; understanding context

- a** Books open. Focus on the questions, making sure Sts know the meaning of *pick someone up* (= collect someone in a car) and *drop someone off* (= drive someone, e.g., to an airport and stop for them to get out). Sts can answer them in pairs or do it as a whole-class activity.
If Sts worked in pairs, get some feedback.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Tell Sts to ask for more information if possible. For example, if their partner says they were traveling somewhere, they should find out where, etc. If their partner says they were picking up or dropping off someone, they should find out who, etc.

- b** Focus on the instructions and tell Sts to look at the 12 signs and to match them to the words and phrases. Point out that the first one has been done for them. Get Sts to compare their answers with a partner.

- c** **3.1** Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers and make sure Sts know the meaning of all the words and phrases.

3.1

3 arrivals	2 departures
7 bag drop	5 elevators
1 baggage claim	11 gates
6 cart	10 passport control
9 check-in	12 security check
8 customs	4 terminal

EXTRA SUPPORT Use the audio to drill the pronunciation of the words and phrases, or model and drill them yourself.

Then tell Sts to cover the words and look at the signs, and try to remember the words and phrases.

- d** **3.2** Focus on the task and make sure Sts understand what they have to do.

Play the audio once the whole way through.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and play the audio again if necessary.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 elevator 2 baggage claim 3 security check 4 gates
5 passport control 6 check-in 7 arrivals 8 baggage claim

3.2

- 1 Doors opening. Second floor. Departures. Check-in and Bag Drop.
2 **A** Excuse me. My suitcase hasn't arrived. Do you know where I can go to report it?
B Yes, madam. Lost Luggage is that window over there.
3 **A** Can you take your boots off, please?
B Sorry?
A Your boots. Take them off and put them on the belt, please.
4 Boarding for JetBlue flight twenty-three to Los Angeles will begin in a few minutes. Passengers in rows fifteen to thirty are invited to board first. Please have your passport and boarding pass ready.
5 **A** Are you here on vacation?
B Uh, yes, I am.
A How long are you staying?
B Two weeks.
6 Passport and boarding pass, please. Thanks. How many bags are you checking in?
7 **A** Hi, honey. So good to see you!
B You too.
A How was your flight?
B Not too bad. Just a fifteen-minute delay.
8 **A** Excuse me, are you sure that's your suitcase? It looks exactly like mine.
B Well, I think it's mine. Let's take a look. Oh gosh, I'm so sorry, it's not mine.
A Look, there's another similar one coming. That's probably yours.

2 PRONUNCIATION the letter g

Pronunciation notes

The letter *g* can be pronounced in two different ways, /g/ or /dʒ/.

g before *a, o, u*, and a consonant is pronounced /g/, e.g., *gas, go, gun, great*.

gu + vowel is also pronounced /g/, e.g., *guard*.

g is also always pronounced /g/ when it comes after a vowel at the end of a word, e.g., *bag, dog*.

ge and *gi* can be pronounced /g/ or /dʒ/, e.g., *get, give*, but also *generous, page, giraffe*.

gg is usually pronounced /g/, e.g., *bigger*, but there are two exceptions where it is pronounced /dʒ/: *suggest* and *exaggerate*.

You could also tell Sts that the letter *g* is sometimes silent, e.g., *foreign, sign*, etc.

- a** Do this as a whole-class activity.

ANSWERS

gg = /g/, *ge* = /dʒ/

- b** Focus on the chart. Elicit the two sound-picture words (*girl* and *jazz*) and the sounds /g/ and /dʒ/.
Now tell Sts to put the words in the list in the correct row. Remind Sts that this kind of exercise is easier to do if they say the words aloud.
Get Sts to compare with a partner.
- c** ▶ Play the video for Sts to watch and check. Tell them to focus on the different mouth positions.



girl /g/ *gate, foggy, forget, guide, guest, begin, gift, guarantee, organize*

jazz /dʒ/ *large, village, engineer, agent, region, emergency, general*

Put Sts in pairs and get them to practice saying the words.
Finally, ask *When can g be pronounced /dʒ/?*

ANSWER

When it is followed by the letter *e* or *i*.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

3 READING & SPEAKING using context to complete information

- a** Do this as an open class question, and elicit Sts' stories. You will probably need to elicit / teach *be delayed*. Tell Sts about any experiences you may have had.
- b** Focus on the instruction and questions. Elicit / Teach the meaning of *tip* (= a small piece of advice about something practical). Give Sts time to read the article. Tell them not to worry about the blanks for the moment.
Elicit answers from the class.
- c** Focus on the instructions. Tell Sts to read the article again and fill in the blanks with phrases A–E.
Give Sts time to read the article and complete the task.
Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

1 E 2 A 3 D 4 B 5 C

- d** Focus on the task. Put Sts into pairs and tell them to cover the article and try to remember the suggestions.
Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 learn to make a cake or sushi, learn a new language
- 2 have a chat or a long conversation on the phone
- 3 meditate, go for a walk around the airport
- 4 chess, Scrabble, a role-play game; a movie, a TV show
- 5 say hello to somebody you don't know

Deal with any new vocabulary. Model and drill the pronunciation of any tricky words.

- e** Focus on the task and go through the instructions with the class.
Give Sts time to read the tips.
Get Sts to work with a partner to share their opinions about the tips. Remind them for each tip to say why it is something they would or would not do.
Get some feedback from the class.
- f** Focus on the instructions. Give Sts time to think what the words and phrases mean. Encourage them to use the context to help them work out the meaning.
Check answers, either explaining in English, translating into Sts' L1, or getting Sts to check in their dictionaries. Model and drill pronunciation.

ANSWERS

duty-free shop /ˌdʊti ˈfri ʃɑːp/ = a shop in an airport or on a ship, etc. that sells things like candy, perfume, etc., without tax on them

destination /ˌdestəˈneɪʃn/ = a place where someone or something is going or being sent

massage chair /məˈsɑːʒ tʃeɪr/ = a chair with electronic devices that massage your muscles

airport lounge /ˈeɪpɔːrt laʊndʒ/ = a place in an airport where passengers wait for their plane, usually containing seats, restrooms, and food

layover /ˈleɪ, ɒvər/ = a short stay somewhere between two parts of a journey

Deal with any other new vocabulary. Model and drill the pronunciation of any tricky words.

4 GRAMMAR be going to (plans and predictions)

- a** Focus on the photo and questions. Get Sts to discuss in pairs. Elicit ideas from the class.
- b** ▶ Tell Sts they are now going to watch the video which the photo in **a** is from. Two men get into conversation at an airport and discover they are both on the same flight. Play the video once to check answers.

ANSWERS

They are at an airport. They don't know each other.

Now give Sts time to read the instruction and sentences 1–9. Teach / Elicit the meaning and drill the pronunciation of *conference* /ˈkɒnfrəns/ (= a large official meeting).
Play the video again. Then tell Sts to try to complete as many of the sentences as they can with *J* or *A*. Get them to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

1 J 2 J 3 A 4 A 5 A 6 A, J 7 J 8 J, A 9 A, J



An = Announcer, J = Jake, A = Alex

An Attention, all passengers for London Heathrow Flight BA seven-seven-eight-seven. This flight is delayed. Further information in one hour.

J Another hour!

A Are you also on the London flight?

J Yes, unfortunately. Another delay. Who knows when we'll take off...

A Is there someone waiting for you at the airport?

J No, ...That's probably a good thing.

A No, me neither. I'm Alex, by the way. You're British, right? Do you live in London?

J I'm Jake. No, I don't live in the UK, I live in Chicago now. I work at Chicago State University.

A Oh, cool. So why are you going to London?

J I'm going to give a talk at a conference in Oxford, actually.

A So, do you like living in Chicago?

J Oh, I love it. I'm going to stay there for at least another two years – they've extended my contract.

A Yeah, Chicago's a great city. I'm not working, I'm on holiday. I'm going to do a tour of the UK. And I'm going to visit Oxford!

J Oh right. That's uh, that's nice.

A I'm really excited. It's my first trip to England.

J Well, I'm sure you're going to have a great time. May's a great month to be in the UK.

A I hope so. Hey, maybe you could show me around Oxford University? Are you going to be there all week?

J Oh, well...I'm going to be very busy, but maybe...

A So your trip is all work, no fun?

J Yeah – though, well, I'm going to meet up with a friend, well, my ex-girlfriend really, who I was with when I was a student. She lives in Oxford now.

A That's great!

J Yeah...We broke up when I got the job in Chicago, but, well...I'm really looking forward to seeing her.

A Hey, we're probably not going to leave for some time. Let's have a drink somewhere.

J Um, OK, yeah, why not? Let's check the Departures screen first.

A Oh – Jake – is this yours?

J My phone! Thanks. Typical me, I always lose things when I'm traveling.

A So, text me your number, now, so you don't forget...

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

c ④ 3.3 Focus on the instructions and give Sts time to fill in the blanks with the correct form of *be going to*.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, then play the audio for them to listen and check.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1 I'm going to give | 4 Are...going to be |
| 2 I'm going to do | 5 not going to leave |
| 3 I'm going to have | |

④ 3.3

See script in Student Book on p.25 and answer key

d First, make sure that Sts are clear about what the difference is between *a plan* (=something you intend to do) and *a prediction* (=something that you think is going to happen).

Now, in pairs, Sts focus on whether sentences 1–5 in **c** are plans (Pl) or predictions (Pr).

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 Pl 2 Pl 3 Pr 4 Pl 5 Pr

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

e Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 3A** on p.138.

Grammar notes

Be going to is reviewed here with its two main uses: plans (*I'm going to stay for six months.*) and predictions (*It's going to be a big surprise for him.*).

You may want to point out that when people speak fast, *going to* often sounds like *gonna*, and it is even sometimes written like that, for example, in song lyrics.

Focus on the example sentences and play audio ④ 3.4 for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the exercises for **3A** on p.139. Sts do the exercises individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

- a** 1 Is...going to learn 2 aren't going to go, 're going to stay
3 're going to be 4 's going to get 5 'm going to cook
6 'm not going to listen 7 are, going to do
b 1 's going to win 2 're going to be 3 're going to break

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **3A**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **3A Grammar** photocopiable activity.

EXTRA IDEA Give Sts some extra oral grammar practice. Write the following time expressions on the board.

after class
this evening
tomorrow
next weekend
next summer

Put Sts in pairs and tell them to ask each other *What are you going to do + a time expression*. Tell them to ask for more information where possible.

Get some feedback from different pairs.

5 SPEAKING

Put Sts in pairs. Tell them to go to **Communication What are we going to do?** on p.105.

a Focus on the scenario which explains the task. Make sure Sts understand what they have to do.

Put Sts in pairs and get them to discuss the questions.

Monitor and help, correcting any errors they make with *be going to*.

EXTRA IDEA In a large class, you may prefer Sts to do the activity in groups of three or four.

b When Sts are ready, get each pair to present their day to the class.

With a show of hands, get Sts to vote for the best one.

- G** present continuous (future arrangements)
V verbs + prepositions, e.g., *arrive in*
P linking

Lesson plan

In this lesson Sts learn a new use of the present continuous: to talk about fixed arrangements. The context is the continuation of the story of Jake, the man from the video in **3A**, who was going to a conference and hoping to meet up with an ex-girlfriend. Sts begin this lesson by taking a quiz to see how organized they are. They answer the questions individually, compare answers in pairs, calculate the score of their quiz, and then discuss the results. The lesson continues with a vocabulary focus on verbs which are normally followed by prepositions, and then there is a pronunciation focus on linking, to help Sts understand connected speech. Sts then listen to a conversation between Jake and Sarah, his ex-girlfriend, in which they make contact – Sts complete a planner with Jake's appointments – and arrange to see each other. Finally, they watch a video of the meeting to find out how it went. This is followed by the Grammar focus on the present continuous for future arrangements. Sts then practice the grammar in a speaking activity where they try to make arrangements to go out with other Sts in the class. The lesson ends with Writing, where Sts use both the grammar and the vocabulary to write an email about travel arrangements.

Video material

Listening – *The meeting*

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar present continuous (future arrangements) p.191

Vocabulary What's the preposition? p.273 (instructions p.266)

Communicative Come fly with me! p.236 (instructions p.222)

For students

Workbook 3B

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Write *Are you organized?* on the board. Elicit the meaning of *organized* (= able to plan your work and life well and efficiently) and model and drill the pronunciation. Then put Sts in pairs and tell them to tell each other if they think they are very organized, fairly organized, or not very organized, and give some examples of why. You could also tell them how organized you are.

1 READING & SPEAKING making a personal response

- a** Books open. Focus on the quiz and give Sts time to read it and choose their answers. You may want to check that they know the meaning of some of the lexis, e.g., *sticky note*, *list*, *pack*, etc.
 Get Sts to compare their answers with a partner.

- b** Tell Sts to go to **Communication** How organized are you? on p.105.

Give Sts time to calculate their score and then read the result.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **3B**.

- c** Back in their same pairs, Sts compare their results and discuss whether or not they agree with them.
 Get some feedback from various pairs.

2 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION

verbs + prepositions; linking

Vocabulary notes

Certain verbs are often followed by a particular preposition, which may well be different in Sts' L1. When Sts learn these verbs, they should make a note of the preposition that follows each verb.

- a** Focus on the two extracts from the quiz and explain that in each sentence there is a preposition missing. Highlight the fact that certain verbs are often followed by a particular preposition, e.g., *It depends on the weather*. Get Sts to complete the sentences, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

1 at 2 for

- b** Tell Sts to go to **Vocabulary Bank Prepositions** on p.161 and do **2 Verbs + prepositions**.

Focus on **a** and get Sts to complete the **Prepositions** column individually or in pairs.

Now do **b**. Play audio **3.5** for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers. When looking at 13 and 14, you might want to highlight the difference between *think about* and *think of*: *think about* = action verb, e.g., "Why are you so happy?" "I'm thinking about my vacation," and *think of* = nonaction verb, to have an opinion, e.g., "What do you think of Coldplay?" "I don't like them."

3.5

Prepositions, 2 Verbs + prepositions

- 1 I arrived **in** New York City on Friday night.
- 2 I was very tired when I arrived **at** the hotel.
- 3 I hate waiting **for** people who are late.
- 4 A What are you going to do on the weekend?
 B I don't know. It depends **on** the weather.
- 5 I'm sorry, but I really don't agree **with** you.
- 6 I asked **for** a chicken sandwich, but this is tuna!
- 7 Please listen **to** what I'm saying!
- 8 Who's going to pay **for** the meal?
- 9 I need to speak **to** Martin **about** the meeting.
- 10 I don't spend much money **on** food.
- 11 Don't worry **about** the exam. It isn't very hard.
- 12 Do you believe **in** ghosts?
- 13 You're not listening! What are you thinking **about**?
- 14 A What do you think **of** this painting?
 B I really like it. I think it's beautiful.
- 15 Who does this bag belong **to**?

Now either use the audio to drill the pronunciation of the sentences, or model and drill them yourself. Give further practice of any words your Sts find difficult to pronounce.

Focus on the **arrive in or arrive at?** box and go through it with the class.

Focus on **a** in **Activation** and get Sts to cover the **Prepositions** column and say the sentences.

Finally, in **b**, get Sts to fill in the blanks with a preposition, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

1 on 2 about, to 3 in 4 to 5 for 6 for

EXTRA SUPPORT Write the prepositions on the board in random order to help Sts.

Make sure Sts understand all the lexis, e.g., *love at first sight*, etc.

Put Sts in pairs and get them to ask and answer the questions.

Get some feedback from various pairs.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **3B**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **3B Vocabulary** photocopiable activity.

- c **3.6** Here Sts practice deciphering connected speech. Focus on the **Linking** box and go through it with the class. Highlight that this is an aspect of pronunciation that is particularly important to help them understand spoken English.

Tell Sts they are going to hear six sentences said at normal speed. The first time, tell them just to listen, not to write.

Play the audio once the whole way through.

3.6

- 1 We arrived at the airport.
- 2 It depends on the time.
- 3 Let's talk about it.
- 4 What does she think of it?
- 5 Don't think about the past.
- 6 How much did you spend on food?

Now play the audio again, pausing after each sentence to give Sts time to write.

Check answers, eliciting the sentences and writing them on the board.

Finally, play the audio again, pausing after each sentence for Sts to repeat and copy the rhythm.

EXTRA SUPPORT Repeat the activity, eliciting responses from individual Sts.

- d Put Sts in pairs and get them to practice saying the sentences in c.

3 LISTENING

inferring mood; understanding relationships between people

- a **3.7** Ask Sts if they can remember Jake from the video in **3A**. If not, play the video again to remind them that he is the man who is going to a conference in Oxford, in the UK.

Now focus on the instructions and questions.

Play the audio for Sts to listen and answer the questions. Get Sts to compare answers with a partner. Then check answers to the first two questions, and elicit ideas for the third.

ANSWERS

a tired b excited

3.7

(script in Student Book on p.128)

S = Sarah, J = Jake

S Hello?

J Sarah?

S Hi, Jake.

J Hi. Great to hear your voice! How are things?

S Oh fine, fine. When did you arrive in the UK?

J Last night.

S And how was the journey?

J Not great. The flight was delayed for three hours.

S Oh, poor thing. Could you do some work while you were waiting?

J No, I couldn't because there was this American guy called Alex who was sitting next to me at the airport, and he kept talking to me.

S Oh dear. Never mind, you're here now.

J So, when can we meet?

S I'm afraid I'm really busy this week. The only possible day for me is Tuesday. I'm going to London from Wednesday to Friday...

J Tuesday. Let me look at my calendar.

S Wow, Jake, you put things in your calendar! You're much more organized than when we were going out.

J Well, I'm better than I was. Although I nearly lost my phone at the airport yesterday! OK, Tuesday. I'm not free in the evening. I'm having dinner with Mark Taylor, my old professor. Do you remember him? It's at seven thirty. I can't change that. How about lunch?

S It depends on the time. A late lunch would be OK, around one forty-five?

J The problem is I'm giving my talk at two o'clock. And I'm having a breakfast meeting at eight fifteen with some colleagues.

S Well, morning coffee? Or tea in the afternoon, then. What are you doing then?

J Let's see...I'm going to a talk about climate change at four. So I think maybe morning coffee is best. And then we can try to arrange another time.

S OK. There's a nice new coffee bar in the High Street called Espresso. Meet there at eleven?

J Perfect. I'm really looking forward to it.

S Me too. Bye.

- b Focus on the task and the calendar, and give Sts time to read all the appointments in the list. Make sure Sts realize that there are two appointments they do not need to use. Play the audio again the whole way through.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then play the audio again if necessary.

Check answers. You may want to point out that Sarah suggested meeting at a coffee bar *in the High Street*. She is British and using the preposition *in* with *High Street* is British English. It is more common in American English to say *on the High Street*.

ANSWERS

8:15 breakfast meeting	4:00 climate change talk
11:00 meet Sarah	7:30 dinner with Mark Taylor
2:00 my talk	

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to listen again with the script on p.128, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

- c **3.7** This video shows what happens when Jake and Sarah meet. Focus on the photos and elicit who the people are, where they are, and how they look. Tell Sts they are now going to watch a video to see how Jake and Sarah's meeting went. Play the video once the whole way through. Focus on the questions and get Sts to answer with a partner.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

Sarah is getting married on Saturday. Alex appears in the café.
Jake feels awful.



J = Jake, S = Sarah, A = Alex

J Sarah! Sorry I'm late!

S Same old Jake. You were always late for everything. Good to see you. You look well.

J You look fantastic.

S Thank you. What would you like? I'm having a flat white.

J Oh uh, the same for me. And a croissant or something. It's really great to see you, Sarah. Just like old times. You haven't changed. And... I miss you... We need to meet again, before I go back to the States. Are you doing anything on Saturday?

S Well, actually I'm...

J Lunch? Dinner? Breakfast?

S Jake, there's something I need to tell you. I'm not single now. In fact, um...in fact, I'm seeing someone. He's called Mike, and... we're getting married this Saturday. That's why I'm so busy all this week...

J Wow! That's... That's great news! I wish you all the best.

S Thanks, Jake.

A Jake! It's you! How's the conference? You didn't pick up my messages. Oh, is this...?

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

4 GRAMMAR present continuous (future arrangements)

a **3.8** Focus on the instructions. Tell Sts the first time they listen they must fill in the blanks in 1–5.

Play the audio, pausing after each extract to give Sts time to write.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

3.8

- 1 I'm **going** to London from Wednesday to Friday.
- 2 I'm **having** dinner with Mark Taylor.
- 3 I'm **giving** my talk at two o'clock.
- 4 Are you **doing** anything on Saturday?
- 5 We're **getting married** on Saturday.

Now ask Sts whether they refer to the present or the future.

ANSWER

They all refer to b) the future.

b Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 3B** on p.138.

Grammar notes

Sts already know how to use the present continuous to talk about things happening now, but may find this future use (*What are you doing this evening?*) quite strange. They may find it more natural to use the simple present for this because of L1 interference, e.g., *What are you doing this evening? I'm going to the movies.* NOT *What do you do this evening? I go to the movies.*

The difference between using *be going to* and the present continuous is quite subtle, so it is probably worth stressing that they can often be used as alternative forms when we talk about plans and arrangements, e.g., *What are you going to do tonight?* / *What are you doing tonight?*

You may want to point out that whereas it is very common to use the present continuous with verbs such as *leave*, *arrive*, *go*, and *come* because these often refer to previously-made travel arrangements, *be going to* is more common with actions for which you don't usually make special arrangements, e.g., *I'm going to wash my hair tonight* is more common than *I'm washing my hair tonight*. It is also important to highlight that the present continuous is not used for predictions, e.g., *I'm sure you're going to find a job.* NOT *I'm sure you're finding a job.*

Focus on the example sentences and play audio **3.9** for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the **be going to or present continuous?** box and go through it with the class.

Focus on the exercises for **3B** on p.139. Sts do the exercises individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

- a 1 N 2 F 3 F 4 N 5 N 6 F 7 F 8 N
b 1 'm packing 2 'm flying 3 are you going 4 'm meeting
5 are you seeing 6 's working

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **3B**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **3B Grammar photocopiable activity**.

c Focus on Jake's calendar and the example.
Put Sts in pairs and get them to ask and answer questions about Jake's phone calendar.

5 SPEAKING

a **3.10** Focus on the task and tell Sts that the first time you play the audio, they should just listen and read at the same time. They should pay attention to **B's** intonation, which helps show how she is feeling, e.g., enthusiastic, apologetic.

Play the audio once the whole way through.

3.10

See the conversation in Student Book on p.27

Now tell Sts they must listen and repeat the conversation. Play the audio again, pausing after each line for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the intonation.

b Now put Sts in pairs and get them to practice the conversation.

You could get a few pairs to perform in front of the class.

c Focus on the instructions and give Sts time to complete their calendar with different activities for three evenings next week. Encourage them to write the activities with the verb in the base form, or without the verb, as this is how people normally put things in a planner, e.g., (*go to*) *movies with friends* NOT *I'm going to the movies with friends*.

EXTRA SUPPORT Elicit some activities Sts could do in the evening and write them on the board, e.g., *study, do homework / housework, go to the movies / a concert, go to a restaurant, cook dinner, watch a movie at home, etc.*

- d** Focus on the instructions and make sure Sts know what they have to do. Read the example with a student.
Tell Sts to mingle and try to make arrangements with a different person for every free evening they have.
If it's difficult to move around freely, put Sts in small groups to do the task.
When time is up, find out who is doing what when.
Remind Sts to use present continuous to talk about their arrangements, if necessary.

6 WRITING an informal email

Tell Sts to go to **Writing Bank 3** on p.117.

- a** Focus on the question and three possible answers. Get Sts to read the email. Tell them not to worry about the blanks.
Check the answer.
Help Sts with any vocabulary, e.g., *share a room, attaching, etc.*

ANSWER

b

- b** Now get Sts to read the email again and answer questions 1–4.
Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 She stayed with his family last year.
- 2 Her flight number and arrival time, and the date when she's going back.
- 3 He asks which bedroom she prefers and what she'd like to do while she's visiting this time.
- 4 His daughter Ava is taller than last year.

- c** Focus on the phrases in the list and give Sts a few minutes in pairs to fill in the blanks in the email.
Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 Hi
- 2 Thanks for your email
- 3 Looking forward to hearing from you
- 4 Best wishes
- 5 PS

- d** Focus on the **Informal language** box and go through it with the class. Check Sts understand the sub-headings *contractions, informal requests, informal beginnings, and endings*. Give them time to fill in the blanks in the information box.
Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 're 2 'd 3 're 4 Don't forget to tell me 5 Best wishes

- e** Go through the layout of the email with the class, pointing out the three different paragraphs.
Put Sts in pairs to plan their reply to Owen and make notes.
- f** Assign the writing in class or for homework.
- g** Make sure Sts check their emails for mistakes before turning them in.

- G** defining relative clauses (*a person who...*, *a thing that...*)
V paraphrasing: *like*, *for example*, etc.
P silent e

Lesson plan

The topic of this lesson is word games. First, Sts read about and listen to a TV game show where contestants have to complete the alphabet wheel by saying the correct word for definitions for each letter of the alphabet. These definitions present the grammar of simple, defining relative clauses. After focusing on the grammar, Sts move on to Vocabulary and Speaking, where they learn how relative clauses can help them with the essential language skill of paraphrasing, and learn other useful phrases that will help them keep going in a conversation when they don't know the exact word for something. Sts then play the game with letters A–E only. The pronunciation focus is on how the silent letter e at the end of words, e.g., *site*, *fate*, etc., changes the preceding vowel sound. Finally, Sts define words to each other in order to complete a crossword.

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar defining relative clauses p.192

Communicative Can you explain the word? p.237 (instructions p.222)

For students

Workbook 3C

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Tell Sts you are going to play a word game. Play ten chances with the word *dictionary* (see p.31 for instructions on how to play). Tell Sts that the lesson is going to be about word games.

1 READING & LISTENING understanding the rules of a game, understanding definitions

- a** Books open. Focus on the questions. Do the first one as a whole-class activity and tell Sts if you like word games. Elicit any word games Sts like playing, including online or app-based games.

Now give Sts, in pairs, three minutes to find as many words as possible of four letters or more (not including the letters in the circle).

Get some possible answers.

POSSIBLE ANSWERS

fear, children, joke, learn, angel, danger, etc.

EXTRA CHALLENGE You could play other word games with these letters, e.g., give Sts three minutes to try to make the longest word they can.

- b** Focus on the photo of the game show. Use it to elicit the word *wheel*, and ask Sts if any of them recognize the show. If necessary, explain the meaning of *pass (on a question)* (= to not answer a question, in this case so that you can come back to it later). Then give Sts time to read the text.

Elicit answers. You could also ask Sts if they like this kind of TV show. The original show on TV in the UK was called *The Alphabet Game*, and it has been adapted in many countries around the world, e.g., in Spain, where it is called *Pasapalabra* and in 2023 a contestant won over two million euros!

- c** Tell Sts to read the text again and then cover it. Put Sts in pairs and get them to answer questions 1–5. Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 To complete the wheel by saying the correct word for each letter
- 2 Two minutes
- 3 The place where you catch a plane, airport
- 4 They say "Pass," and the host goes on to the next letter.
- 5 They get all 25 words correct.

Deal with any other new vocabulary. Model and drill the pronunciation of any tricky words.

- d** **3.11** Focus on the instructions and make sure Sts understand the situation. Explain that they are going to listen to the end of the show and they should try to write down the last six words the contestant needs to guess. The words will begin with the six letters that are still in gold on the wheel, i.e., B, C, G, K, L, and T. Tell Sts not to call out the answers.

Play the audio, pausing after each "ping" to give Sts time to write their answer.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, but don't check answers yet.

3.11

(script in Student Book on p.128)

H = host, V = Victoria

H OK. It begins with **B**. It's an adjective for a man who has no hair on his head!

V (ping)

H Right. It begins with **C**. It's an adjective. It describes a place where there are a lot of people, for example, a restaurant or a beach in the summer.

V (ping)

H Right. It begins with **G**. They're things that people wear on their hands.

V (ping)

H Right. It begins with **K**. It's the room where people cook.

V (ping)

H Right. It begins with **L**. It's an adjective for someone who doesn't like studying or working, for example. It's the opposite of *hardworking*.

V (ping)

H Right. It begins with **T**. It's a thing with a screen that you can watch shows and movies on. Just three seconds left...

V (ping)

- e** **3.12** Tell Sts that they are going to listen to Victoria again, but this time they will hear her answers. They must compare their answers to hers.

Play the audio the whole way through for Sts to compare their answers.

Check answers.

Find out with a show of hands how many Sts got all six answers correct.

ANSWERS

- 1 bald 2 crowded 3 gloves 4 kitchen 5 lazy
6 television / TV

3.12

H OK. It begins with **B**. It's an adjective for a man who has no hair on his head!

V Bald.

H Right. It begins with **C**. It's an adjective. It describes a place where there are a lot of people, for example, a restaurant or a beach in the summer.

V Crowded.

H Right. It begins with **G**. They're things that people wear on their hands.

V Gloves.

H Right. It begins with **K**. It's the room where people cook.

V Kitchen.

H Right. It begins with **L**. It's an adjective for someone who doesn't like studying or working, for example. It's the opposite of *hardworking*.

V Lazy.

H Right. It begins with **T**. It's a thing with a screen that you can watch shows and movies on. Just three seconds left...

V Television.

H Congratulations, Victoria! You did it!

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to listen again with the script on p.128, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

2 GRAMMAR defining relative clauses

- a Focus on the three sentences from the game show and get Sts to fill in the blanks.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 where 2 who 3 that

EXTRA CHALLENGE Get Sts to focus on the three sentences in **a** and elicit when the words *who*, *that*, and *where* are used.

ANSWERS

We use *who* with people, *that* with things, and *where* with places.

- b Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 3C** on p.138.

Grammar notes

The relative pronoun can be omitted in sentences like *This is the book I told you about*, where the subject of the relative clause changes. This is not actively focused on at this level, but is probably worth pointing out, as its omission sometimes causes comprehension problems when Sts are reading or listening, especially when they cannot leave it out in their L1.

Focus on the example sentences and play audio 3.13 for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the **that** box and go through it with the class.

Focus on the exercises for **3C** on p.139. Sts do the exercises individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

- a 1 that 2 that 3 who 4 where 5 who 6 that 7 where

- b 1 That's the dog that always barks at night.

2 That's the store where I bought my wedding dress.

3 He's the actor who was in the last James Bond movie.

4 They're the children who live next door to me.

5 This is the restaurant where they make great pizza.

6 That's the switch that controls the air conditioning.

7 He's the teacher who teaches my niece.

8 That's the room where we have our meetings.

9 This is the light that is broken.

EXTRA CHALLENGE After checking the answers to **a**, you could tell Sts to close their books and then ask *What's an octopus? What's a lawnmower?*, etc., and see if they can remember the definitions.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **3C**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **3C Grammar** photocopiable activity.

3 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING paraphrasing

Vocabulary notes

Native speakers often paraphrase when they can't think of the word they want. This is an essential skill for Sts at any level. Encourage Sts to get into the habit of paraphrasing whenever they need to. You can help them with this by giving definitions when they ask what a word means.

- a Focus on the question and go through the possible answers a–c, making sure Sts understand them. Elicit answers and try to get a mini discussion going about the relative merits of each one.

You may want to point out to Sts that the word to describe option c is *paraphrasing* (the subheading of this section).

- b 3.14 Tell Sts that they are going to learn some useful expressions to help them explain words they don't know. In pairs, Sts complete the eight expressions with the words in the list.

Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 somebody 2 something 3 somewhere 4 kind
5 opposite 6 like 7 similar 8 example

3.14

See sentences in Student Book on p.29 and answer key

- c Play the audio again, pausing after each sentence, and elicit the word being defined. You could point out that after *somewhere*, you can leave out the relative pronoun *where*.

EXTRA SUPPORT Give Sts time, in pairs, to read the expressions again and work out the word being defined.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 guide 2 credit / debit / bank card / phone 3 post office
4 banana 5 cheap 6 cardigan 7 blond / fair 8 turn off

d Focus on the six words and give Sts time in pairs to write definitions.

Elicit some of their answers and write them on the board.

POSSIBLE ANSWERS

1 who plays music on the radio or in a club.
2 (where) you can see paintings.
3 (that) you use to take photos.
4 machine that takes people up and down in a building.
5 when you are on the beach.
6 of *straight*.

e Focus on the instructions. Elicit / Remind Sts of the rules for the game A–Z if necessary.

Make sure Sts only write five definitions – one for each letter from A to E.

EXTRA SUPPORT Put Sts in pairs to write their definitions. If they can't think of words, you could give them words to use, e.g.:

actor	apple	armchair	abroad
bag	builder	breakfast	bathroom
charger	cold	cook	cousin
dictionary	dangerous	dirty	drive
empty	easy	extrovert	earrings

Monitor and help Sts, correcting any errors with relative clauses.

When Sts are ready, put them in groups of three or four. If Sts wrote their definitions in pairs, then put two pairs together.

Sts read their definitions for their teammates to guess.

When they have finished, you could get a few Sts to read their definitions to the class.

4 PRONUNCIATION silent e

Pronunciation notes

Sts learn how a final *e* at the end of a word with a vowel often changes the pronunciation of this vowel. This will help Sts to predict the pronunciation of new words.

You may want to point out to Sts that a few common words are exceptions, e.g., *have*, *give*, and *live*, and that with two-syllable words the rule is usually true when the syllable with the silent *e* is stressed, e.g., *decide* and *arrive*, but not *practice*.

a Focus on the **Silent e** box and go through it with the class.

Now focus on the two definitions and elicit the words.

ANSWERS

1 hat 2 hate

Ask the class how the pronunciation of the first word changes when you add the *e*.

ANSWER

It changes from /æ/ to /eɪ/ (from short to a diphthong). With a final *e*, it's the same sound as the letter *a*.

b Put Sts in pairs and get them to practice saying the words.

Check answers and make sure Sts know the meaning of the words. Model and drill pronunciation.

ANSWERS

bit /bɪt/ – bite /baɪt/
not /nɒt/ – note /nəʊt/
cut /kʌt/ – cute /kyut/
plan /plæn/ – plane /pleɪn/

EXTRA SUPPORT Write the words and phonetic scripts on the board to help Sts.

c **3.15** Focus on the instructions, and then play the audio for Sts to listen to the definitions and write the pairs of words.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then play the audio again if necessary.

Now play the audio again, pausing after each definition, and elicit the words.

ANSWERS

1 Tim – b time 2 a pet – b Pete 3 a mad – b made

3.15

- 1 a It's the short form of the name *Timothy*.
b What is measured in minutes, hours, or days?
- 2 a It's an animal that people have in their house, for example a cat.
b It's the short form of the name *Peter*.
- 3 a It's an adjective similar to *angry*.
b It's the past tense of the verb *make*.

d Put Sts in pairs and get them to say the words to each other.

e **3.16** Play the audio for Sts to listen and check. Check answers.

ANSWERS

kite /kaɪt/	tap /tæp/
bin /bɪn/	grapes /greɪps/
stone /stəʊn/	mug /mʌg/

3.16

See words in Student Book on p.29

5 SPEAKING

Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**, and tell them to go to

Communication Split crossword, **A** on p.105, **B** on p.111.

Go through the instructions carefully and make sure Sts understand what they have to do. Before Sts start, check they understand the meaning of *down* and *across* when asking for the crossword clues.

EXTRA SUPPORT Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**. Then put two Sts **A** and two Sts **B** together. Get them to look at the words in their crossword and make sure they know the meanings. Now put Sts back in their original pairs to do the activity.

Sit **A** and **B** face-to-face. **A** asks **B** to define their missing words. Then **B** does the same, and they continue taking turns to ask for and give definitions.

When they have finished, Sts compare crosswords.

A work dinner

Practical English problems at a restaurant

Lesson plan

In this episode the functional language is restaurant problems. The *Pictures of you* story continues with Episode 2 *A work dinner*. After a recap of what happened in Episode 1, Episode 2 begins with Izzy visiting Ben early in the morning to remind him about their meal with some of her work friends that evening. In the second scene, Ben arrives at the restaurant late, and Max, Izzy's boss, is in charge of ordering, but there are some problems with the food and with the check. In the last scene the meal continues. Izzy enjoys the meal with her colleagues, but Max makes fun of Ben, who does not have a good time.

Video material

Pictures of you Episode 2

More materials

For teachers

Oxford English Hub

Quick Test 3

File 3 Test

For students

Workbook Practical English 2
Can you remember...? 1–3

THE STORY SO FAR (books closed)

▶ Play the first part of the video – the recap of Episode 1 (*Previously*) – and pause. Elicit who the characters are and what happened in the first episode of *Pictures of you*. Make sure Sts understand the meaning of *previously* (= before, in the last episode). Stop the video at 00:45.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Put Sts in pairs or small groups to remember what happened in Episode 1 of *Pictures of you*. Then play the recap for them to check what they remembered.

1 AN EARLY MORNING VISIT

a Books open. Focus on the photos and elicit answers to the question, but don't confirm anything yet.

b ▶ In this scene Ben is still in bed when Izzy arrives to pick up her charger. There is a clear contrast between their lifestyles; Ben is still a student and Izzy has a more high-powered job.

Focus on the instructions and on the questions.

Now play the video once for Sts to watch, check their answers to **a**, and answer the questions.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

- a** Ben is in bed; Izzy is on her way to work.
- b 1** Because his first class isn't until 10:00.
- 2** Because she has an important meeting.



I = Izzy, B = Ben

I Morning!

B Morning. Turn off the light!

I I think I left my phone charger here!

B Yeah. It's there. What time is it?

I It's ten past seven.

B You're up early today.

I Actually, I'm late. Don't forget we're having dinner with some people from work this evening.

B I know.

I Do you remember where it is?

B Les Amis, seven p.m. Get there early. Dress nicely.

I Thanks for coming this evening.

B No problem. Now...I'm going to go back to sleep. My first class isn't until ten today. Hey! Where's your helmet?

I I don't need it. I'm getting a taxi today. I'm meeting an important client and I can't be late.

c Focus on the list of things, and make sure Sts understand what they have to do.

Play the video again, so Sts can watch a second time and catch why each thing is mentioned.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

a phone charger: Izzy left it in Ben's room.

7:10 a.m.: It's the time now.

Les Amis 7 p.m.: It's the place and time they're meeting this evening.

a bike helmet: Izzy doesn't need it, because she's getting a taxi today.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

2 PROBLEMS AT A RESTAURANT

a ▶ In this scene, Izzy, her boss, her colleagues, and Ben have a meal together. Sts don't see what everyone orders, but just focus on Max and Izzy's food.

Tell Sts to look at the photo and ask *Where are they?* (at a restaurant). Focus on the task. You could write the questions on the board.

Play the video once the whole way through.

Check answers. Go through the **American and British English** box with Sts. Point out the glossary box on the next page and go through the words *rare*, *medium*, and *well done* for the different ways that steak can be cooked.

ANSWERS

1 Max orders tuna with salad, Izzy orders steak (rare).

2 Max gets chips, not salad. Izzy's steak is medium, not rare. There is a mistake on the bill / check.



B = Ben, M = Max, W = waiter, I = Izzy

B Sorry I'm late.

M Don't worry, Ben. We haven't ordered yet. We were waiting for you. You have something on your tie.

B I do? Oh. It's from work. Thanks.

W Are you ready to order?

M Yes, please.

W Can I get you something to start with?

M OK. Do we want starters? No, thank you. I'd like the tuna.

W Would you like that with salad or chips?

M Salad, please.

W And for you?

I I'll have the steak, please.

W How would you like your steak? Rare, medium, or well done?

I Rare.

W And for you? The tuna for you, the steak for you. The other dishes are coming.

M Excuse me. I asked for salad, not chips.

W Oh, I'm sorry. No problem, I'll change it.

M Thank you.

I Excuse me.

W Yes?

I I asked for my steak rare, and this is medium.

W I'm really sorry. I'll take it back to the kitchen.

M Can we have the bill, please?

W Of course.

M I think there's a mistake here. I had the salad, not chips. And Izzy had the steak.

W I'm very sorry. I'll change that.

- b** Focus on the conversation in the chart. Elicit who says the **You hear** phrases (the waiter) and who says the **You say** phrases (the customer, or here, Max and Izzy). These phrases will be useful for Sts if they need to order food / a drink, and if they then have problems.

Give Sts a minute to read through the conversation and to think about what the missing words might be. Then play the video again, and get Sts to fill in the blanks.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Get Sts to try to fill in the blanks in the conversation before they watch the video for the second time. Then play it again for them to watch and check.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

1 order 2 start 3 chips 4 done 5 dishes 6 change
7 take 8 sorry

Go through the conversation line by line with Sts, helping them with any words or expressions they don't understand.

- c** Now focus on the **You say** phrases and tell Sts they're going to watch the conversation again. They should repeat the phrases when the video pauses. Play the video for Sts to watch and repeat the phrases. Encourage them to copy the rhythm and intonation. Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**. **A** is the waiter, and **B** is the customer. Get Sts to read the conversation aloud and then change roles.



Same as previous video with repeat pauses

- d** Focus on the role-play. Go through the menu with the Sts. Elicit the meaning of *starters* and *mains*. Check Sts know what the dishes on the menu are. You could ask them

which dishes they like best and find out if any Sts are vegetarian or vegan.

Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**. Tell them to read their instructions, and help them understand exactly what they have to do.

A is the waiter. **B** should decide what to eat and then respond when **A** starts with *Are you ready to order?* Give Sts some time to think / prepare before they start the role-play.

EXTRA SUPPORT Demonstrate the activity by taking the role of the waiter yourself and getting a confident student to be the customer.

Sts now role-play the conversation.

When they have finished, they should change roles.

You could get a few pairs to perform in front of the class.

3 A REAL JOB?

- a** In this scene, the dinner continues. Max asks Ben some questions about his work and the atmosphere in the restaurant is uncomfortable. Later, Ben speaks to his sister on the phone and we learn that Izzy, Max, and the other colleagues went for a drink after the meal, but Ben did not want to join them.

Focus on the photos. Elicit how Sts think Max, Izzy, and Ben are feeling from looking at their expressions (and from what they've seen in the video so far). Give Sts time to read the other questions.

Play the video once the whole way through, and then check answers. You may want to highlight that when Ben reaches for his wallet when the waiter brings the bill / check, Max says *I've got this*, which is an expression to mean *I'll pay*.

ANSWERS

Max is enjoying himself. Izzy feels a bit uncomfortable. Ben feels uncomfortable and maybe angry with Max. Ben didn't enjoy the meal – he doesn't like Izzy's work colleagues. Max paid for the meal.



M = Max, B = Ben, I = Izzy, E = Emma

M So Ben, what do you do?

B I'm a student.

M Nice. What do you study?

I He studies photography. His photos are amazing!

M Cool. Maybe you can work for us in a few years.

B Yeah, maybe.

I Ben's very artistic.

M Artistic? That's great. Do you have a real job?

B A real job?

M Yeah. Do you have a job with a salary?

B Yeah. Um... Well, I work at a café.

M Perfect. If you can't earn enough money as a photographer, people always need coffee.

B Yeah. I guess you're right.

W Here you are. Sorry about the mistake.

M Oh, don't worry Ben, I've got this.

E How was your evening?

B I didn't enjoy it much.

E Are you still out with them?

B No, they all went to have a drink. I didn't want to go, so I said I was tired... I really don't like these people. They're too... confident for me.

E There's nothing wrong with being confident, Ben.

B Well, they're just a bit fake, that's all.

- E Did Izzy go with them?
 B Yeah.
 E She likes these people, right?
 B Yeah. She does. She's...changing.
 E Things change, Ben, and people change too. That's life.

- b Give Sts time to read the sentences, which come from the video conversations. Focus on the instructions. Make sure they understand the task. Elicit / Explain *fake* (= not genuine, pretending to be something you are not).
 Now play the video again, so Sts can watch a second time and label each sentence with the initial of the person who said it.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Get Sts in pairs to try to remember which person said each sentence. Then play the video again for them to watch and check.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

1 I 2 M 3 M 4 B 5 E 6 B

- c Focus on the bold pronouns in the sentences. Put Sts in pairs to decide who the words refer to.

EXTRA SUPPORT You could do the first sentence together as an example.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 Ben 2 Max's team of people at *Light on London* magazine
 3 Ben 4 Izzy's work colleagues 5 Izzy 6 Izzy

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

4 SOCIAL ENGLISH

- a Focus on the phrases in the chart and go through them with the class.
 Now give Sts time to match a phrase in **A** with a response in **B**. They can do this individually or in pairs.
 b ▶ Play the video for Sts to watch and check.
 Check answers. If you know your Sts' L1, you could get them to translate the phrases.

ANSWERS

1 Actually, I'm late.
 2 No problem.
 3 Don't worry, Ben. We haven't ordered yet.
 4 Yes, I guess you're right.
 5 I didn't enjoy it much.

Now play the video again, pausing as necessary, for Sts to watch and repeat.

- c Focus on the instructions and put Sts in pairs, making sure they understand what they have to do.
 Monitor and help. Make sure they change roles. If there's time, you could get Sts **B** to close their books and respond from memory, and then change roles.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Focus on the **What do you think?** box and go through it with the class.

Put Sts in pairs and get them to discuss their answers to the questions. You can decide if Sts should answer the questions briefly or have a more elaborate class discussion about them.

Elicit some feedback from various pairs. You could also give your own answers to the questions.

- G** present perfect + *yet* and *already*
V housework, *make* or *do*?
P the letters *y* and *j*

Lesson plan

The context of this lesson is housework. The lesson presents the present perfect to talk about the recent past, and Sts also learn to use it with *yet* and *already*. Sts who completed *American English File Level 1* will have seen the present perfect (though not *yet* and *already*), and learned the difference between *been* and *gone*, but for other Sts this will be completely new.

Sts begin by reading an article about housework. There is then a vocabulary focus on common verb phrases for housework, and collocations with *make* and *do*. The grammar is then presented through three short conversations about housework that Sts watch on video. The pronunciation focus is on the letters *y* and *j*, as in *yet* and *just*. Sts then listen to a podcast that gives tips about how to clean quickly and efficiently.

In a final speaking activity, Sts ask and answer questions about their housework habits and opinions.

Video material

Grammar – present perfect + *yet* and *already*
 Pronunciation – the letters *y* and *j*

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar present perfect + *yet* and *already* p.193
Vocabulary Housework, *make* or *do*? p.274 (instructions p.266)
Communicative Find the response p.238 (instructions p.222)

For students

Workbook 4A

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Write these countries on the board: *Canada Türkiye Japan Spain Mexico*. Ask Sts to rank them 1–5, with 1 = men do the most housework, and 5 = men do the least housework. Now tell them the real order according to a 2016 survey.

- 1 Canada
- 2 Spain
- 3 Mexico
- 4 Japan
- 5 Türkiye

Ask Sts if they're surprised by the order.

1 VOCABULARY housework, *make* or *do*?

- a** Books open. Focus on the task and give Sts time to read the article quickly.
 Elicit what the missing word is.

ANSWER
 housework

- b** Now get Sts to read the article again to find which verbs go before *the housework*, *the bathroom*, and *the dishwasher*.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

do the housework, clean the bathroom, load the dishwasher

If necessary elicit / teach the meaning and pronunciation of *argue* /'ɑrgyʊ/ (= speak angrily to somebody because you don't agree with them), *disagreement* /,dɪsə'grɪmənt/ (= a situation where people have different opinions about something), and *reward* /rɪ'wɜːd/ (= a nice thing you get because you have done something well, worked hard, etc.).

- c** Tell Sts to go to **Vocabulary Bank Housework, *make* or *do*?** on p.162.

Vocabulary notes

make or *do*

You could suggest that when Sts aren't sure whether to use *make* or *do*, to bear in mind that *make* often has the meaning of "creating" something that wasn't there before, e.g., *make dinner*, *make a noise*, *make a cake*, etc., whereas *do* has the meaning of fulfilling a task that already exists, e.g., *do an exercise*, *do housework*, *do a crossword*, etc. This rule of thumb is generally true, although there are a few exceptions, e.g., *make the bed*.

Focus on **1 Housework** and get Sts to do **a** individually or in pairs.

- 🔊 **4.1** Now do **b**. Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers.

🔊 4.1

Housework, *make* or *do*?, 1 Housework

- 7 clean the floor
- 1 clean up your room
- 8 do the dishes
- 6 do the ironing
- 2 do the laundry
- 3 do the shopping
- 10 do the vacuuming
- 13 dust the furniture
- 15 load the dishwasher
- 14 make lunch
- 4 make the bed
- 11 pick up dirty clothes
- 5 put away your clothes
- 9 set the table
- 12 take out the garbage

Now either use the audio to drill the pronunciation of the verb phrases, or model and drill them yourself. Give further practice of any words and phrases your Sts find difficult to pronounce.

Finally, do **c** and get Sts to cover the phrases and look at the photos. They can test themselves or a partner.

Now focus on **2 *make* or *do*** and get Sts to do **a** individually or in pairs.

🔊 4.2 Now do **b**. Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers.

🔊 4.2

2 **make or do**

1 **do** a crossword

2 **make** a mistake

3 **do** an exercise

4 **make** a noise

5 **make** a phone call

6 **do** housework

7 **make** friends

8 **do** gardening

9 **make** plans

10 **make** an excuse

Now either use the audio to drill the pronunciation of the phrases, or model and drill them yourself. Give further practice of any words and phrases your Sts find difficult to pronounce.

Finally, do **c** and get Sts to cover the phrases and look at the photos. They can test themselves or a partner.

Focus on **Activation** and put Sts in pairs to test each other. **A** (book open) says a noun and **B** (book closed) says the verb. Make sure they change roles.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **4A**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **4A Vocabulary photocopyable activity**.

d Focus on the question. Put Sts into pairs or small groups to answer it.

EXTRA SUPPORT Get Sts to ask you the question so you can model an answer for them before they do the task.

Get feedback from some Sts. Find out what kinds of housework cause the most disagreements and why.

2 GRAMMAR present perfect + *yet* and *already*

a 🔊 4.3 Sts listen to three short conversations about housework that present the new language.

Focus on the photos and question. Play the audio for Sts to listen and answer the question. Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 doing the dishes

2 making dinner

3 taking the garbage out

🔊 4.3

See conversations in Student Book on p.32 and answer key for **b**

b Now focus on the conversations and get Sts to read them. They should complete them with the verbs from the list. Elicit that these are past participles, and what the base form is of these verbs. Point out that the first one (*finished*) has been done for them.

! You may want to remind Sts here that *been* is the past participle of *be*, but in the present perfect *been* = go and come back, e.g., *Have you ever been to Japan?* *We haven't been to the supermarket this week.* *Gone* = go and not come back, e.g., *Where has he gone?* This will be focused on specifically in **4B**.

EXTRA SUPPORT If your Sts haven't seen the present perfect before, or they've seen it only very briefly, tell them that the past participles are of regular and irregular verbs, and elicit which verbs they are.

Give Sts time to complete the three conversations. Play the audio again for Sts to check their answers.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 started, broken

2 made, been

3 done, put

c Focus on the instructions and then give Sts time to match sentences 1–2 to meanings a–b.

Check answers. If you know your Sts' L1, you could elicit the translations of *already* and *yet*. Elicit / Explain that the verbs are in the present perfect.

ANSWERS

1 b 2 a

d Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 4A** on p.140.

Grammar notes

For some Sts the present perfect may be new. They may have something similar in their L1 or they may not, but even if they do, the use is likely to be different. It takes time for Sts to learn and use the present perfect correctly, but this use (for things that have happened recently, with no time mentioned) is probably the simplest to understand, and Sts will probably already be used to you asking them, e.g., *Have you finished?*, etc.

Yet / already may not have an exact equivalent in Sts' L1, and the meaning is not that easy to explain, as they are words which simply add emphasis. There is not much difference between *I haven't finished* and *I haven't finished yet*, but adding *yet* implies that you are going to finish.

4B focuses on the present perfect for past experience with *ever / never*, and contrasts it with the simple past. Later in the course (**9B**) Sts are introduced to the present perfect with *for* and *since* for unfinished actions, and this is again contrasted with the simple past in **9C**.

Focus on the example sentences and play both audio

🔊 4.4 and 🔊 4.5 for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

If your Sts are new to the present perfect, when you go to the **Irregular verbs** list on p.172, get them to underline or highlight the verbs where the past participle is different from the simple past, e.g., *be, become*, etc.

EXTRA IDEA Get Sts to close their books, and test them on participles that are different from the simple past.

Focus on the exercises for **4A** on p.141. Sts do the exercises individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

a 1 She's bought a new jacket.

2 He hasn't made the bed.

3 Have you spoken to Mr. Jackson?

4 We've found a fantastic hotel.

5 They haven't finished eating.

6 Have you seen Ava recently?

- 7 Have you put away your clothes?
- 8 We haven't unloaded the dishwasher.
- b** 1 I've already had breakfast.
- 2 Have you cleaned up your room yet?
- 3 The movie has already started.
- 4 I haven't met his girlfriend yet.
- 5 Have they gotten married yet?
- 6 You're too late. He's already gone home.
- 7 We've already spoken to him.
- 8 I haven't done the ironing yet.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **4A**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **4A Grammar** photocopiable activity.

3 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING the letters y and j

Pronunciation notes

Remind Sts that:

- the letter *y* at the beginning of a word is always pronounced /y/
- the letter *j* is always pronounced /dʒ/

- a**  Focus on the sound pictures and elicit the words and sounds: *yacht* /yat/ and *jazz* /dʒæz/.
- Play the video for Sts to watch and repeat the sounds. Encourage them to copy the mouth position.



See sounds and words in Student Book on p.33

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

- b**  **4.6** Before playing the audio, make sure Sts know the meaning of all the words, especially *jaw* (= the parts of your face that move when you talk or eat) and *Jess* (= a first name).

Now play the audio once for Sts just to listen.

4.6

See words in Student Book on p.33

Play the audio again, pausing after each word or group of words for Sts to repeat.

Now ask Sts how the letters *y* and *j* are pronounced at the beginning of words.

ANSWER

At the beginning of a word, *y* = /y/ and *j* = /dʒ/.

- c**  **4.7** Tell Sts they are going to hear three words from **a**. Play the audio, pausing after each word to check the answer.

4.7

- 1 yet
- 2 Jess
- 3 yours

EXTRA IDEA Tell Sts they are going to hear five sentences and they must write them down.

Dictate the following sentences for Sts to write down. Read each one at least twice.

- 1 I bought some jeans and a jacket.
- 2 Have you used your new computer yet?
- 3 Jane's really enjoying her Japanese classes.
- 4 Do you usually argue about homework?
- 5 Is John's birthday in June or July?

Elicit the sentences and write them on the board. You may want to point out the hidden /y/ sound in *computer* and *argue*. Finally, get Sts to practice saying the sentences in pairs.

- d**  **4.8** Tell Sts they are going to listen to six things that have recently happened. Point out the example. Put Sts in pairs and tell them first to listen only.
- Play the audio once the whole way through.

4.8

- 1 **A** Oh no, my jar!
- 2 **A** Something smells good. What is it?
B Strawberry jam.
- 3 **A** Namaste.
B I love our yoga classes. I feel so relaxed now...
- 4 **A** Ah! Thanks for the juice. I was thirsty!
- 5 **A** Mmm. The yogurt was delicious!
- 6 **A** Look! What's that flying across the sky?
B It's a jet.

Now play the audio again, pausing after each item for Sts to say a sentence with the present perfect.

ANSWERS

- 2 She's made strawberry jam.
- 3 He's taken a yoga class.
- 4 He's drunk some juice.
- 5 She's eaten (some) yogurt.
- 6 They've seen a jet.

EXTRA SUPPORT When Sts listen the first time, tell them to make notes only. Then play the audio again, pausing after each item for Sts, in pairs, to write their sentences.

- e** Tell Sts to go to **Communication Has he done it yet?** on p.106. Give them one minute to look at and remember the picture.

Now tell Sts to go to p.108. Go through the instructions and point out the example. They should write their seven sentences with either *already* or *yet*.

When Sts have written their sentences, put them into pairs. They read their sentences aloud to each other to see if they have written the same. Monitor to check they are forming the present perfect correctly and are putting *already* and *yet* in the correct place.

Finally, Sts check with the picture to see how many of their sentences were correct.

Get feedback.

ANSWERS

Things Max has already done

He's already made the bed.
He's already had breakfast.
He's already taken a shower.

Things Max hasn't done yet

He hasn't cleaned his desk yet.
He hasn't taken the dog for a walk yet.
He hasn't put away his clothes yet.
He hasn't turned off his computer yet.

You could do **c** as a whole-class activity.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **4A**.

4 LISTENING understanding advice

- a** Focus on the task and make sure Sts understand all the lexis in the title of the podcast.

Put Sts in pairs and give them time to guess what the missing words in tips 1–7 are.

- b**  **4.9** Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Get Sts to compare with their partner, and play the audio again if necessary.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 often 2 right 3 microwave 4 dishwasher 5 their shoes
6 floor 7 to music

4.9

(script in Student Book on pp.128–129)

The lazy person's guide to a clean and neat home

I'm lazy, but I like living in a clean, neat home. Maybe you're the same. It doesn't matter if you live by yourself, with a partner, or with a group of friends. You're always going to have to do some housework. Learn a few cleaning tricks and you can have a clean home – and still have plenty of time to relax and do nothing.

Tip one. Clean quickly, but often.

Clean for just ten minutes twice a day. This gives you time to, for example, load the dishwasher and do one other thing, like vacuuming. Set an alarm on your phone to motivate yourself.

Tip two. Keep cleaning products in the right place.

Put cleaning products near the place where you need them. Keep bathroom cleaners in the bathroom, keep garbage bags by the can, and keep dishwasher detergent on top of the dishwasher.

Sometimes you don't clean if you can't immediately see what you need, and you don't want to look for it.

Tip three. Clean the microwave regularly.

You probably use this every day and it gets dirty quickly, believe me.

But cleaning it is super easy. All you need to do is pour a little water into a microwave-safe bowl, slice a lemon in half, and squeeze the juice into the water. Then, put the two halves of the lemon in the bowl and microwave on high for three minutes. Leave the door closed for another five minutes, and then clean the inside with a cloth.

Tip four. Use your dishwasher to clean other things.

If you have a dishwasher, it's probably already your best friend. But did you know that it can clean much more than just kitchen things? You can use it to clean all kinds of things made of plastic, like toys, or even flip-flops or other plastic shoes, and also for things made of metal, like tools or keys.

Tip five. Tell people to take off their shoes when they come in.

If you hate vacuuming, but you also hate the floor because you don't do the vacuuming, there's an easy solution – tell your housemates and guests to take off their shoes at the front door. And if they forget or refuse, give them the vacuum cleaner.

Tip six. Use your socks to clean the floor.

If you have a hard floor, like wood or stone, for example, make your socks work for you. Take your shoes off, and slide across a different part of your floor each time you move across it. It'll soon be completely clean. Then, just throw your socks in the washing machine.

And finally, tip seven. Listen to music while you clean.

Sometimes you really need to do some housework that you hate, like ironing or cleaning the bathroom. Put on your favorite playlist and focus on the music, not the boring housework.

And one last word. Many people say that lazy people are often the best employees because they find the most efficient way to complete a task. That's the way you need to think when you're cleaning. Good luck!

- c** Now tell Sts they are going to listen again and they need to answer questions 1–7. Tell them that each question is linked to a tip in **b**.

Give Sts time to read the questions and make sure they understand all the lexis, e.g., *flip-flops*, *tools*, etc.

Play the audio again, pausing after each tip to give Sts time to answer the question.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then play the audio again if necessary.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 For ten minutes twice a day. Set an alarm on your phone to motivate yourself.
- 2 Near the place where you need them. If you don't know where the product is, you don't want to look for it.
- 3 Pour a little water into a microwave-safe bowl, slice a lemon in half, and squeeze the juice into the water. Then, put the two halves of the lemon in the bowl and microwave on high for three minutes. Leave the door closed for another five minutes, and then clean the inside with a cloth.
- 4 Because you can clean them in the dishwasher.
- 5 Give them the vacuum cleaner.
- 6 Hard floors, like wood or stone. Throw your socks in the washing machine when you finish.
- 7 Housework that you hate doing, like ironing or cleaning the bathroom.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to listen again with the script on pp.128–129, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

- d** Do this as a whole-class activity and answer the questions yourself.

5 SPEAKING

Books closed. Write on the board *Do you do any housework?* Tell Sts to raise their hand if the answer is *yes*. Pair Sts who answered *yes*. Put Sts who answered *no* in pairs.

Focus on the questionnaire. Tell them to answer the questions relating to their answer.

Monitor and help with any new words or phrases.

Get some feedback from various pairs.

- G** present perfect or simple past? (1)
V shopping
P c and ch

Lesson plan

In this lesson Sts look at the present perfect for past experience with *ever / never*, and contrast it with the simple past. The context of the lesson is shopping. Sts begin with a speaking activity about global chain stores, and a vocabulary focus on shopping. This is followed by a pronunciation focus on different ways of pronouncing the letters *c* and *ch*. Sts then listen to three people answering questions about shopping, and through this the grammar is presented. Then in Speaking, Sts have a mingle activity where they ask other Sts some shopping-related *Have you ever...?* questions, which they then follow up with simple past questions. Sts then read an article about the common practice of buying things online and then returning them, and how bad this is for the environment. The lesson ends with Sts writing an opinion essay about online shopping.

Video material

Listening – *Global chain stores*

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar present perfect or simple past? (1) p.194
Vocabulary Shopping p.275 (instructions p.266)
Communicative Have you ever...? p.239 (instructions p.222)

For students

Workbook 4B

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Quickly review vocabulary for clothes. Tell Sts to describe what other Sts are wearing or to test each other using the **Vocabulary Bank Things you wear** on p.159.

1 LISTENING & VOCABULARY

using visual clues to understand key points; shopping

- a**  This video is a short documentary about some different chain stores, including a “fun fact” for each, which Sts read on screen.

Focus on the photo and task. Make sure Sts understand a *global chain store* (= one of a number of stores owned by the same company that are all over the world) and *brand* (= a type of product made by a particular company under a particular name).

Play the video for Sts to watch.

Check answers. Although the video only mentions that they sell clothes, Sts may point out that chains like Zara and H&M also sell accessories and shoes, and that they also sell homeware like lamps, cushions, etc.

ANSWERS

- 1 Zara, clothes, Spain
- 2 H&M, clothes, Sweden
- 3 Uniqlo, clothes, Japan
- 4 Nike, sports clothes and shoes, US
- 5 Body Shop, products for body, face, hair, home, England / UK
- 6 Apple, technology (phones, tablets, laptops, etc.), US



In most towns and cities around the world, main streets are full of chain stores. Here are some of the most popular global chain stores on our main streets now.

Zara is a Spanish fashion chain. It is now one of the biggest clothes companies in the world.

Fun fact! Zara can create and distribute a new design in less than two weeks.

H&M is a Swedish clothes chain. It sells quality clothes at a very good price.

Fun fact! H&M employees always celebrate the opening of a new store with a dance.

A lot of people think that Uniqlo is a new clothing chain, but it actually started in Japan in nineteen forty-nine.

Fun fact! Uniqlo sells fifty different colors of socks.

Nike is an American chain that sells sports clothes and shoes. It sells more than nine hundred million items every year.

Fun fact! The Nike symbol has its own name. It's called the “Swoosh.” The first Body Shop opened in Brighton, England, in nineteen seventy-six. It sells environmentally friendly products for the body, face, hair, and home.

Fun fact! The first Body Shop was painted dark green, not to be more eco-friendly, but because the store had a lot of mold and dark green was the only color that could cover it.

Apple is an American technology company, selling phones, tablets, and computers.

Fun fact! Apple launched a clothing line in nineteen eighty-six, which didn't have much success.

Chains are popular because they are familiar. If we go to a new town or even to a different country, we know that we can find our favorite products in these stores.

- b** Focus on the task, and also on the **Glossary**. Put Sts in pairs to discuss what facts they can remember.

Play the video again for Sts to watch and check.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

Zara can create and distribute a new design in less than two weeks.

H&M employees always celebrate the opening of a new store with a dance.

Uniqlo sells 50 different colors of socks.

The Nike symbol has its own name – it's called the “Swoosh.”

The first Body Shop was painted dark green, not to be more eco-friendly, but because the store had a lot of mold and dark green was the only color that could cover it.

Apple launched a clothing line in 1986, which didn't have much success.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

c Sts can discuss the questions in pairs before whole-class feedback.

d Tell Sts to go to **Vocabulary Bank Shopping** on p.163 and do **1 In a shop or store**.

Vocabulary notes

In a shop or store

Highlight:

- that *shop* is British English for *store*, but now in the UK people use both *shop* and *store*.
- the difference between *fit* and *suit*. If clothes don't fit you, it means they're the wrong size (e.g., too big, too small, too tight, too loose). If clothes don't suit you, it means they don't look good on you.

Online

Some of this vocabulary will be more useful for Sts to understand than to actively use, e.g., *proceed to checkout*, but with the growth of online shopping worldwide, it is useful for them to learn the typical expressions they may see.

Focus on **a** and get Sts to do it individually or in pairs.

4.10 Now do **b**. Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers.

4.10

Shopping 1, In a shop or store

- | | |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 3 basket | 2 sale |
| 10 checkout | 7 salesperson |
| 5 customer | 9 shelves |
| 1 fitting room | 4 shopping bag |
| 11 receipt | 8 shopping cart |
| 6 register | |

Now either use the audio to drill the pronunciation of the words, or model and drill them yourself. Point out to Sts that the *p* in *receipt* is silent. Give further practice of any words your Sts find difficult to pronounce.

EXTRA SUPPORT Get Sts to cover the words and look at the photos. They can test themselves or each other.

Focus on **c** and get Sts to match the sentences.

4.11 Now do **d**. Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers. Model and drill the pronunciation of *suit* /sut/.

ANSWERS

1 d 2 e 3 a 4 b 5 c 6 f

4.11

See script in Student Book on p.163

Now do **2 Online**. Focus on **a** and get Sts to read the text and fill in the blanks.

4.12 Now do **b**. Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers. Give further practice of any words your Sts find difficult to pronounce.

ANSWERS

2 account 3 password 4 item 5 cart 6 checkout
7 delivery 8 next-day 9 order 10 credit 11 card 12 place

4.12

See script in Student Book on p.163 and answer key

Finally, focus on **Activation**. Put Sts in pairs to answer the questions. Explain that Sts should think about the actual steps of the purchase, e.g., *First, I went to the website. I chose a pair of jeans. I clicked on the item to add it to my cart.*, etc.

Get some feedback from various pairs.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **4B**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **4B Vocabulary photocopyable activity**.

2 PRONUNCIATION c and ch

a Write on the board *cut* and *cent* and elicit their pronunciations. Highlight that *c* can be pronounced /k/ or /s/.

Focus on the two sound pictures and elicit the words and sounds: *key* /ki/ and *snake* /sneik/. Give Sts a few minutes to put the words in the correct group. Encourage them to say the words aloud as they do this.

Get Sts to compare with a partner.

b **4.13** Play the audio for Sts to listen and check. Check answers.

4.13

key /k/ account, card, click, clothes, create, customer
snake /s/ city, decide, place, receipt

Play the audio again, pausing after each word or group of words for Sts to repeat.

Then focus on the question and check the answer.

ANSWER

c is usually /s/ before *e* and *i*, e.g., *place*, *city*, etc.

c **4.14** Focus on the first question and elicit the answer.

ANSWER

The letters *ch* are usually pronounced /tʃ/.

Now play the audio for Sts to listen to the words and circle the ones that are pronounced differently.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

Chemistry and *machine* are pronounced differently. In *chemistry* the letters *ch* are pronounced /k/ and in *machine* they are pronounced /ʃ/.

4.14

See words in Student Book on p.34

EXTRA CHALLENGE Elicit some more words where *ch* is pronounced /k/ or /ʃ/. Sts should know, e.g., *architect*, *mechanic* (*ch* = /k/), and *chef*, *mustache* (*ch* = /ʃ/). You may want to tell them that words where *ch* is pronounced /ʃ/ are mostly of French origin.

d Get Sts to practice saying all the words in **a** and **c**.

3 GRAMMAR present perfect or simple past? (1)

a ④ 4.15 Tell Sts that they're going to listen to three people being interviewed about shopping. Tell them the first time they listen they just need to write down the names of stores in **1a** that the people mention.

Play the audio once the whole way through.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

Grace: H&M

Emilia: Zara and Apple

Leo: Uniqlo

④ 4.15

(script in Student Book on p.129)

I = interviewer, G = Grace

I Have you bought anything from a chain store recently?

G Yes, I have. I went to H&M three weeks ago.

I And what did you buy?

G I bought a skirt. It's a long black skirt.

I Are you happy with it?

G Yes, yes, and, uh...it was very cheap because it was on sale. And it suits me.

I = Interviewer, E = Emilia

I Have you been shopping for clothes recently?

E Yes, I went shopping last weekend with my friends.

I Where did you go?

E We went downtown, to Colorado Boulevard, that's where we always go.

I Did you buy anything?

E I tried on a few things in Zara, but there wasn't anything I liked.

The only thing I bought was a new case for my phone in the Apple store. I really like it.

I = Interviewer, L = Leo

I Have you ever bought anything from Uniqlo?

L Sure, I often buy stuff on their website.

I What was the last thing you bought from them?

L I got some T-shirts a few weeks ago. I always get them there.

I How many did you get?

L Three...or was it four? No, it was three.

I And are you happy with them?

L Yes. I like their T-shirts and they were good value – about fifteen dollars each.

b Before playing the audio again, get Sts, in pairs, to talk about what they can remember for the two questions. Play the audio again. Pause it after each speaker to give Sts time to answer the questions. Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

Grace: a skirt; yes

Emilia: a phone case; yes

Leo: three T-shirts; yes

c ④ 4.16 Tell Sts to look at the beginning of Grace's interview and think what the missing verbs might be. Play the audio for Sts to listen and complete the task.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 Have 2 bought 3 have 4 went 5 did 6 buy
7 bought

④ 4.16

See script in Student Book on p.34 and answer key

d Do this as a whole-class activity.

ANSWERS

present perfect; simple past

e Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 4B** on p.140.

Grammar notes

This use of the present perfect, to talk about past experiences when we don't mention a time, is usually quite easy for Sts to understand. However, they may have problems with the switch to the simple past to talk about the specific experience / time, as in some Sts' L1, they may be able to continue with the present perfect.

If this is your Sts' first exposure to the contrast, don't expect too much oral accuracy yet. The contrast between present perfect and simple past for unfinished and finished actions is also studied in **9C**.

Focus on the example sentences and play both audio

④ 4.17 and ④ 4.18 for Sts to listen and repeat.

Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the **been and gone** box and go through it with the class.

Then focus on the exercises for **4B** on p.141. Sts do the exercises individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

a 1 Have...bought 2 've...wanted 3 haven't read
4 haven't been 5 Has...lived 6 've been 7 hasn't flown
8 hasn't met 9 Have...eaten 10 has...told
b 1 went 2 was 3 Did...buy 4 got 5 Were
6 Have...bought 7 gave
c 1 gone 2 been 3 been 4 gone 5 been

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **4B**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **4B Grammar photocopyable activity**.

f Tell Sts they are now going to have similar conversations to the people in the interview in **3a**.

Put Sts in pairs and get them to interview each other, using the questions.

Get some feedback from various pairs.

4 SPEAKING

a Focus on the instructions. Do question 1 with the whole class and elicit the missing past participles (*bought* and *sold*). Sts should complete questions 2–5 with the missing participles.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 bought, sold 2 bought 3 not received 4 lost 5 tried

- b** Focus on the follow-up question(s) after each present perfect question in **a** and point out that they are in the simple past.
Get Sts to interview you with the first two or three questions.
Finally, get Sts to stand up and move around the class. When somebody answers *Yes, I have* to the present perfect question, Sts should ask the follow-up questions.
If it's difficult to move around freely, put Sts in small groups to do the task.
Get some feedback from the class.

5 READING identifying the main idea in a paragraph

- a** Do this as an open-class question, or put Sts in pairs to discuss and then get feedback from different pairs.
- b** Focus on the instructions. Check Sts understand *trend* (= a general direction in which a situation is changing or developing).
Give Sts time to read just the first paragraph of the article. Then focus on the highlighted phrases and get Sts to answer questions 1 and 2.
Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 Free online returns means that you can send things back without having to pay for shipping.
- 2 send (it) back

- c** Give Sts time to read the whole article and match the paragraphs to items A–D.
Deal with any new vocabulary. Model and drill the pronunciation of any tricky words.
Students compare answers in pairs before a whole-class check.

ANSWERS

A 2 B 4 C 3 D 1

- d** Get Sts to read paragraph 2 again and answer the question.
Elicit the answer.

ANSWER

re = (do) again

EXTRA CHALLENGE Put Sts in pairs or small groups to think of any other words they know with the prefix *re*. Elicit words and write them on the board. Suggestions: *replay, rewrite, reread, repaint, reuse, redo, reheat*.

- e** Do this as a whole-class activity.
Alternatively, put Sts in pairs to discuss the questions. Then elicit feedback from some pairs.

6 WRITING an opinion essay

Tell Sts to go to **Writing Bank 4** on p.118.

- a** Elicit / Teach the word *local* /'ləʊkl/ (= belonging to or connected with the place where you live). Give Sts time to read the title and the essay and answer the question.
Check the answer.

ANSWER

The writer prefers shopping at small local stores.

- b** Go through the sections with the class. Point out that there is a section heading for each paragraph.
Get Sts to reread the opinion essay and do the matching task.
Get them to compare with a partner.
Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 3 Good things about going to a shopping mall
- 1 Introduction: a general comment about the topic
- 2 Good things about shopping locally
- 4 Your opinion: which is better and why

- c** Make sure Sts understand how to use the chart to make notes.
Monitor and check that Sts are making good notes.

ANSWERS

small local stores

friendly salespeople
sell interesting and unusual things, including local products

a shopping mall

shop in one place
a lot of choice
cheaper
indoor stores

- d** Do this as a whole-class activity.
Elicit the answer.

ANSWER

On the other hand

- e** Focus on the **Expressing opinions** box and go through it with the class. Point out that many of these expressions are followed by a comma.
Focus on the instructions. You could do the first one together as an example.
Sts write the sentences individually. Remind them to check their use of commas. Tell Sts to look at the highlighted phrases in the opinion essay if they are not sure.
Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 In my opinion, small local stores are more expensive.
- 2 Personally, I think large shopping malls are better / I prefer large shopping malls.
- 3 I feel that small stores help the local community.
- 4 For me, shopping online is very convenient.

- f** Get Sts to read the title of the opinion essay. Check they understand the phrase *physical store*.
Put Sts in pairs to discuss their opinions on this topic and make notes in the table. Monitor and assist.
Elicit some ideas from the class.
- g** Tell Sts they are going to plan their own opinion essay. They should use the introduction given in **f** and plan to write three more paragraphs. Remind them of the sections in **b**.
Tell Sts that when we are explaining our opinions, we can add information using *In addition* at the beginning of a sentence, or *too* at the end of a sentence.
Give Sts time to plan what to write. Monitor and deal with any difficulties.
- h** When Sts are ready, assign the writing task for homework.
- i** Sts check their work for mistakes before turning it in.

G *something, anything, nothing, etc.*

V adjectives ending *-ed* and *-ing*: *bored, boring, etc.*

P /ɛ/, /oʊ/, and /ʌ/

Lesson plan

The context of this lesson is the weekend, and Sts learn how to use *something, anything, nothing, etc.* These words will be familiar to Sts by this stage, but here their grammar is focused on in detail. The lesson begins with Sts reading an article about the fact that many people on social media invent what they did on the weekend in order to make it sound more exciting. Then in Vocabulary, Sts focus on the difference between *-ed* and *-ing* adjectives. This is followed by the grammar focus, and then Sts focus on three vowel sounds in order to be able to pronounce the key grammar expressions correctly. Sts then answer questions about their own weekends, with one of their answers being invented. The lesson ends with a video about the history and possible future of the weekend.

Video material

Pronunciation – /ɛ/, /oʊ/, and /ʌ/

Listening – *The American weekend*

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar *something, anything, nothing, etc.* p.195

Communicative The same or different? p.240 (instructions p.223)

For students

Workbook 4C

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Tell Sts that you're going to describe your last weekend, but that one detail will be false, and that they have to guess which detail it is. The detail can be as easy or hard to spot as you like. (Sts do this themselves later in the lesson, so don't ask them to do it now.)

1 READING & SPEAKING inferring from captions and visual clues

a Books open. Focus on the instructions.

Give Sts time to read the four social media posts and then ask them the question as a whole class. You could also ask *Which one do you think not many people would post?*

b Focus on the word *envy* and the definition. Explain that *envy* (v.) can also mean *having the feeling of wanting something that somebody else has*. Tell Sts to read the title of the article, and explain that *weekendvy* is an invented word.

Elicit answers to the question, but don't tell them yet if they are right or not, because Sts will find out by reading the article.

c Give Sts time to read the whole article, up to the top ten lies section. Then check the meaning of *weekendvy*.

ANSWER

Weekendvy means feeling envious of what other people do on the weekend. It's an invented word.

You could point out the use of quotation marks, which are often used to highlight a word – in this case because it is not a word found in a standard dictionary. This is a good opportunity to introduce the concept of “portmanteau” words like *weekendvy* (weekend / envy), e.g., *motel* = motor / hotel.

Now focus on the top ten lies, and tell Sts to read them, and then re-read the social media posts, and look back at their answers to **a**. Elicit feedback from the class.

d Elicit / Teach the meaning of the word *summary* (= a short statement that gives the main point(s), not the details).

Get Sts to read the article again and choose the best summary.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Ask Sts to cover the three summaries and finish the sentence in their own words. Then they can see if their summary is similar to one of the three given.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWER

2

Deal with any other new vocabulary. Model and drill the pronunciation of any tricky words.

e Put Sts in pairs and get them to discuss the questions.

Get some feedback from various pairs.

2 VOCABULARY adjectives ending *-ed* and *-ing*

Vocabulary notes

Many common adjectives in English have two forms with different meanings, e.g., *tired* and *tiring*. The *-ed* form has a passive meaning, and describes a person who feels this way. The *-ing* form has an active meaning and describes the person or thing that produces the feeling.

It is important to highlight that we use *-ed* adjectives mainly for people because they refer to feelings, e.g., *I'm tired*. We use *-ing* adjectives for things (and sometimes people) which produce the feeling, e.g., *Driving at night is tiring*.

It is also useful to point out that although the majority of adjectives that end in *-ed* also exist ending in *-ing*, there are some that don't, e.g., *I'm feeling stressed*. *My job is very stressful*. NOT *My job is very stressing*.

a Focus on the two highlighted words in the article and elicit the answers to the questions. You could tell Sts that a person can also be boring, e.g., *My neighbor is a very boring man*.

ANSWERS

1 bored 2 boring

b 4.19 Get Sts to read questions 1–6 and circle the correct adjective.

Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers, making sure that Sts understand the meaning of all the adjectives.

! Be careful with *excited* / *exciting*. It is a false friend in some languages.

ANSWERS

- 1 a boring b bored
2 a depressed b depressing
3 a relaxing b relaxed
4 a interesting b interested
5 a excited b exciting
6 a frightened b frightening

4.19

See script in Student Book on p.37 and answer key

Drill the pronunciation of the adjectives. Remind Sts that the *-ed* is pronounced in the same way as regular past verbs, i.e., /t/, /d/, or /ɪd/. So *frightened* is /'fraɪtnd/ NOT /'fraɪtɛnd/.

EXTRA CHALLENGE You could elicit / teach some more *-ed / -ing* adjectives, e.g., *surprised / surprising, disappointed / disappointing, etc.*

- c Now put Sts in pairs and get them to ask and answer the questions in **b**, giving extra information when possible. Get some feedback from the class.

3 GRAMMAR *something, anything, nothing, etc.*

- a Focus on the instructions and make sure Sts know what a *hashtag* is (= a word or phrase with the symbol # in front of it, included in some posts and messages on social media so that you can search for all messages with the same subject). You might want to point out that in messages and posts, words like articles, prepositions, and subjects are often left out.

Give Sts time to complete the hashtags.
Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 badweekend 2 goodweekend 3 badweekend

- b Focus on the instructions and give Sts a few moments to complete the rules.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 things 2 places 3 people

- c Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 4C** on p.140.

Grammar notes

Sts may have problems with the negative forms of the target grammar. The typical mistakes are:

- using *nobody / nothing / nowhere* with a negative verb, e.g., *I didn't see anybody*. NOT ~~*I didn't see nobody*~~. Highlight that you cannot use a "double negative" in English.
- using *anybody / anything / anywhere* in one-word answers to convey a negative meaning, e.g., *Who did you see? Nobody*. NOT ~~*Anybody*~~.
- using *anybody / anything / anywhere* as the subject of a negative verb, e.g., *Nobody invited him*. NOT ~~*Anybody didn't invite him*~~.

To talk about people there are two alternative forms: *-body* and *-one*, e.g., *somebody / someone*. They are identical in meaning. You could point out that *no one* is usually written as two words.

Something (like *some*) is also used in questions to make an offer or request, e.g., *Would you like something to drink? Could you ask somebody to help me?* To avoid overloading Sts, it may be best to focus on this rule only if Sts ask.

Focus on the example sentences and play audio 4.20 for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the **any, anything, etc., + affirmative verb** box and go through it with the class.

Then focus on the exercises for **4C** on p.141. Sts do the exercises individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read full sentences in **a** and **c**.

ANSWERS

- a 1 anybody / anyone 2 Somebody / Someone 3 somewhere
4 nothing 5 anybody / anyone 6 anywhere 7 something
8 nobody / no one 9 Anything 10 nowhere
b 1 Nothing 2 Nowhere 3 Nobody
c 1 anything
2 I didn't go anywhere
3 I didn't see anybody

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **4C**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **4C Grammar** photocopiable activity.

4 PRONUNCIATION /ɛ/, /oʊ/, and /ʌ/

- a Focus on the three sound pictures and elicit the words and sounds: *egg* /ɛ/, *phone* /oʊ/, and *up* /ʌ/.

Focus on sentences 1–6 and the pink letters. Give Sts, in pairs, a few minutes to say them out loud to each other and decide which sound they are (a, b, or c). You could do the first one as a class.

- b Play the video for Sts to watch and check. Tell Sts that the sentences will be in a different order in the video. Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 b 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 a 6 b



See sounds and sentences in Student Book on p.37

Play the video again, pausing after each sentence for Sts to listen and repeat.

Give Sts time to practice saying the sentences.

Finally, get individual Sts to say them out loud.

EXTRA IDEA Write *nothing, nobody, and nowhere* on the board. Tell Sts you are going to ask them a question and they must answer it first with a one-word negative answer with *No-*, and then with a full sentence using a negative verb. Write the first question on the board with the correct response: *What did you buy? Nothing. I didn't buy anything.* Ask Sts questions 2–8 and elicit answers from individual Sts. Then write the bold words on the board. Put Sts in pairs and get them to recreate the questions and take turns asking and answering as before, using a negative each time.

- 1 **What** did you **buy**? (pause) Nothing. I didn't buy anything.
2 **Where** did you **go**? (pause) Nowhere. I didn't go anywhere.
3 **Who** did you **see**? (pause) Nobody. I didn't see anybody.

- 4 **What** did you **eat**? (pause) Nothing. I didn't eat anything.
 5 **Who** did you **speak to**? (pause) Nobody. I didn't speak to anybody.
 6 **Where** did you **walk**? (pause) Nowhere. I didn't walk anywhere.
 7 **Who** did you **meet**? (pause) Nobody. I didn't meet anybody.
 8 **What** did you **say**? (pause) Nothing. I didn't say anything.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

5 SPEAKING

Tell Sts to go to **Communication Did you have a good weekend?** on p.111.

- a Tell Sts to look at all the questions in *Did you have a good weekend?* They must think about their answers, and they must tell the truth when answering all the questions except for one. This "lie" must make their weekend sound very exciting.
- b Now put Sts in pairs and get them to interview each other. Monitor and help when necessary. Before Sts change roles, the Sts asking the questions should try to guess the lie.
 Get feedback from the class.
 Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **4C**.

6 LISTENING understanding facts

- a  Tell Sts they are going to watch a documentary called *The American weekend*.
 Give Sts time to read sentences and answer choices 1–10, making sure they understand all the vocabulary.
 Tell Sts they will watch twice. The first time they need to circle the correct options to complete the sentences.
 Now play the video once the whole way through.
 Get Sts to compare with a partner. Then play the video again for Sts to check any answers they disagreed on.

ANSWERS

- 1 40 2 Saturday 3 Sleeping 4 seven 5 eating meals
 6 don't usually 7 two 8 sports events 9 month
 10 days a week



N = Narrator, M = Mom, D = Dad, S1 = big sister, S2 = little sister

N: The weekend is here, and like most Americans, the Fried family from New Jersey looks forward to Saturday and Sunday. In the United States, most Americans work from nine to five on Monday to Friday. That's about eight hours a day for a total of forty hours a week. The weekend is when most Americans have forty-eight hours to themselves!

Having the weekend off from work didn't become official in the United States until nineteen thirty-eight, when the government passed the Fair Labor Standards Act. Before then, many Americans worked six days a week, with only Sunday off. Most Americans today can't imagine not having Saturday and Sunday to do anything they want.

So, what do most Americans do on the weekend? Not surprisingly, the number one activity is sleeping. The average American spends about nineteen hours out of each weekend catching up on their sleep.

S1: I like to just really rest in my bed and just listen to music, or just watch videos, and basically, that's it.

N: Coming in at number two is watching TV. Around eighty percent of Americans watch about seven hours of TV on the weekend. This includes watching sports, movies, and streaming services like Netflix.

M: Uh, we like to watch a lot of, uh, good shows on the weekends for fun. We like to watch shows as a family, maybe watch a movie.

N: The third most popular activity that Americans do on the weekend is eat. Nearly ninety-five percent of Americans spend about three hours each weekend eating meals at home with family, at restaurants with friends, and even on the couch by themselves.
S1: We usually like to go out to dinner and eat some nice food.

N: The weekend is also a time for Americans to catch up on the things they don't usually have time for during the workweek. Around forty-four percent of Americans spend about five and a half hours each weekend doing housework, including doing the dishes, cleaning up their rooms, doing the vacuuming, taking out the garbage, and doing the laundry.

M: On the weekends, we usually do chores around the house, um, such as laundry, emptying the dishwasher, vacuuming, making beds, putting things away.

D: For me, it's maybe doing some house chores, you know, painting, fixing things around the house, or catching up on some work emails and things that I need to do.

N: In addition, about forty-five percent of Americans use about two hours each weekend to shop for food, clothes, and home goods. Don't forget to add on the extra hour that a lot of Americans need to drive their cars to the stores!

M: I do like to shop...Um, it's fun to look for things. It's fun to see the different items. Um, it's nice to be out.

D: We'll go to the stores that are local or we'll go to the mall, uh, to pick up things that we might need around the house.

N: Many Americans with children, like the Frieds, have extra responsibilities on the weekend. The average American family spends about four hours each weekend taking their kids to sports games and practices.

M: We usually have events that we may need to go to, like a birthday party, or a soccer game, or cheerleading practice, or visiting family.

S2: I play soccer and I also like to dance and sing and act.

N: The weekend isn't only about doing chores or housework. It's also about having fun. Like many American families, the Frieds enjoy playing games together on the weekend.

They also enjoy playing with their pet dog, Bella. Sixteen percent of Americans spend about one and a half hours each weekend with their animals and pets.

And of course, they spend time with their family, like their grandparents. Many Americans wish they had more free time on the weekend to spend with their friends and family.

D: We never feel bored on the weekend. We wish it was longer.

M: I do think the weekend should be longer because it would give us more time together as a family, and more time to do chores, and more time to have fun.

N: Some American companies are changing their work hours by introducing a nine / eighty work schedule. Over a two-week period, employees work for nine hours each day from Monday through Thursday. Then on Fridays, they work eight hours one week and get Friday off the next week, which gives them a three-day weekend. This gives employees two extra days a month of free time.

Another idea is a four-day workweek. According to a recent poll, fifty-three percent of Americans would like to work ten hours a day four days a week instead of a traditional five-day workweek. Until that happens for all American workers, have a good weekend – a good two-day weekend!

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

- b Put Sts in pairs or small groups to discuss the questions.
 Make sure they understand what a "four-day week" is.
 Monitor and help if necessary.
 Get some feedback.

EXTRA IDEA Do the last question as a whole-class activity.

For instructions on how to use these pages, see p.49.

Video material

Can you understand these people? 3&4

More materials

For teachers

Oxford English Hub

Quick Test 4

File 4 Test

For students

Workbook Exam skills 3 Reading
Exam skills 4 Listening

GRAMMAR

ANSWERS

1 b 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 c 6 a 7 b 8 a 9 a 10 c 11 a
12 c 13 b 14 b 15 b

VOCABULARY

ANSWERS

a 1 in 2 for 3 for 4 on 5 for
b 1 do 2 make 3 do 4 do 5 make
c 1 set 2 dishes 3 try on 4 receipt 5 fit 6 Gate
7 cart 8 check-in 9 Terminal 10 elevators
d 1 boring 2 relaxed 3 exciting 4 depressed 5 interested

PRONUNCIATION

ANSWERS

c
1 shop /ɑ/ 2 guide /g/ 3 who /h/ 4 clothes /ou/
5 create /ei/
d
1 departures 2 arrive 3 opposite 4 somebody 5 exciting

CAN YOU understand this text?

ANSWERS

a
seven ways:
1 combining two words
2 putting words together in a new way
3 nouns change into verbs
4 verbs change into nouns
5 adopting from foreign languages
6 brands or companies
7 new technology or gadgets
b
1 Because the English language is constantly changing
2 It's a combination of *video* and *blog*.
3 It started to be used as a verb as well as a noun.
4 Italian
5 To describe new technology
6 newspaper

▶ CAN YOU understand these people?

ANSWERS

1 b 2 c 3 c 4 a 5 c



1 Sean

I = interviewer, S = Sean

I When was the last time you were at an airport?

S Um, about a month ago.

I Were you going somewhere or meeting someone?

S I was meeting, um, my mother, who was, uh, she arrived at midnight, coming back from Tenerife.

2 Sam

I = interviewer, S = Sam

I Do you have any plans for tonight?

S My plans for tonight... I have class until nine p.m. and then I will probably have dinner and do homework.

3 Caroline

I = interviewer, C = Caroline

I What housework do you hate doing?

C I hate cleaning the bathroom, that's my least favorite job around the house.

I Is there anything you don't mind doing?

C I don't mind cleaning the kitchen, because there's usually a lot of food to eat.

4 Albert

I = interviewer, A = Albert

I Have you ever bought something online and had a problem?

A I, I bought clothes online that didn't fit, but that's about it.

5 Mick

I = interviewer, M = Mick

I How organized are you?

M Uh, not very. Um, I tend to be fairly disorganized, but still get things done.

I Have you ever missed a train or a flight?

M Yes, yes. I was flying to Poland and didn't wake up in the morning, and got to the gate as the flight was leaving.

G comparative adjectives and adverbs, *as...as*

V types of numbers

P /ə/ and /ər/ in comparisons

Lesson plan

The context of this lesson is some new information based on recent research that shows how fast the pace of life has become in recent years, and in the Grammar section Sts review comparative adjectives, and learn to use comparative adverbs and the structure (*not*) *as...as* to compare things. Sts start by answering a questionnaire about how fast their life is and then read an article about the effect on us of the increase in the pace of life. This is followed by Vocabulary, which focuses on types of numbers, such as fractions, dates, percentages, etc., which Sts then practice in a video quiz. The grammar is then presented and practiced, and there is a pronunciation focus on /ə/ and /ər/ in comparisons. Sts then listen to a young journalist talking about how her generation lives life faster. Finally, Sts ask and answer questions to find out how the way they spend their time has changed over the last three years.

Video material

Vocabulary – types of numbers

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar comparative adjectives and adverbs, *as...as* p.196

Communicative Which do you prefer? Why? p.241 (instructions p.223)

For students

Workbook 5A

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Write on the board: *working / studying eating sleeping relaxing*
In pairs, Sts say how long they spend doing these things in a typical day.
Get feedback and ask Sts if they think they have enough free time.

1 READING & SPEAKING scanning for information

- a** Books open. Focus on the questionnaire and make sure Sts understand the title. Then go through the questions and check that Sts understand all the lexis, e.g., *impatient, frustrated, irritable*.

Focus on the task. Tell Sts to answer with *often, sometimes, or never*. and then explain why, or give examples if they can. They should also make a note of their partner's answers, as they will need them later.

Put Sts in pairs and get them to ask and answer the questions. Get some feedback from various pairs.

EXTRA SUPPORT Get Sts to interview you first, so you can model how you want them to answer.

- b** Tell Sts to go to **Communication** How fast is your life? on p.109.

Sts calculate their partner's score and then tell them what it is.

Sts then read the meaning of their own result. While they read, go around monitoring and helping with any vocabulary problems, e.g., *in the slow lane, pace of life, in a hurry, in the fast lane, multitasking*, etc.

EXTRA SUPPORT Pre-teach the phrases above to help Sts understand their results.

When Sts have read their result, they tell their partner if they agree with it.

Get some feedback from various pairs.

Finally, with a show of hands, find out how many people belong to each category (slow, medium, and fast).

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **5A**.

- c** Focus on the article and the task.

Give Sts time to read the article and guess the missing statistic.

You may want to first elicit the meaning of *patience is a virtue*, i.e., that being patient is a good thing.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check the answer. You could ask Sts if they think patience is a virtue to check whether the statistic is true for the class.

ANSWER

95

- d** Focus on the instructions and stress that Sts have exactly two minutes to complete the task.

EXTRA SUPPORT Go through 1–5 together to check Sts know all the vocabulary before you start the timer.

When the two minutes are up, get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

- waiting for 30 seconds in a line that isn't moving
- looking for a pen
- waiting to order a drink
- waiting for a TV show to start streaming
- waiting for someone to reply to an important email

Deal with any new vocabulary. Model and drill the pronunciation of any tricky words.

- e** Give Sts time to find three phrases that are similar to *get angry* in the article.

Get Sts to compare with a partner.

Check answers and drill pronunciation of the phrases.

ANSWERS

get frustrated
lose their temper
get annoyed

- f** Focus on the three questions.

Put Sts in small groups and give them time to discuss the questions.

Get feedback from various groups. You could also give your own answers to the questions.

2 VOCABULARY types of numbers

Vocabulary notes

You might want to highlight that:

- we can use the article *a* or the number *one* when saying numbers, e.g., *a hundred / one hundred*
- the same is true with fractions, e.g., you can say *a third* or *one third*. All fractions are expressed with ordinal numbers, except *a half* and *a quarter* (not a *second* or a *fourth*)
- we don't add an -s to *hundred*, *thousand*, or *million*
- with decimals, e.g., 3.14, we use *point*, not *dot* (unlike with email addresses)
- there are several ways of talking about approximate numbers, e.g., **about** 500, **at least** 12 a day, or **between** 2,000 **and** 3,000

- a Focus on the instructions. Put Sts in pairs to talk about how to say the red numbers.

Remind Sts of the difference between *thirty* /'θɜːti/ (stressed on the first syllable) and *thirteen* /ˌθɜː'tin/, (usually stressed on the second syllable).

- b 5.1 Tell Sts they will now hear the whole sentence, not just the numbers. Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers by eliciting the numbers.

ANSWERS

two thousand	forty-five percent
twenty-five	thirty
a third	

5.1

According to a new survey of two thousand British adults, most people are incredibly impatient in nearly every aspect of their lives. People get frustrated after twenty-five seconds of waiting for a traffic light to change.

Just over a third of people become impatient while trying to take notes and follow a speaker during a class or work meeting. Forty-five percent of people admit they lose their temper after waiting for thirty seconds in a line that isn't moving.

- c Focus on the numbers and dates, and get Sts, in pairs, to decide how they think you say them.

- d 5.2 Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers, making sure Sts also know how to say \$ (dollar), % (percent), and . (point).

5.2

a hundred and eighty-four	six million dollars
three thousand and twenty-five	seventy-five percent
two thousand five hundred	two thirds
May twenty-fifth	nine point two

EXTRA IDEA As an alternative to just getting Sts to say the numbers in c, copy the following on the board and ask Sts to identify a typical mistake in each one:

- 1 *hundred and eighty-four* (184)
- 2 *three thousand twenty-five* (3,025)
- 3 *two thousand and five hundred* (2,500)
- 4 *May twenty-five* (May 25th)
- 5 *six millions dollars* (\$6,000,000)
- 6 *seventy-five porcent* (75%)
- 7 *two third* ($\frac{2}{3}$)
- 8 *nine dot two* (9.2)

ANSWERS

- 1 ~~a~~ hundred and eighty-four
- 2 three thousand ~~and~~ twenty-five
- 3 two thousand ~~and~~ five hundred
- 4 May ~~twenty-five~~ **twenty-fifth**
- 5 six ~~millions~~ **million** dollars
- 6 seventy-five ~~por~~ **percent**
- 7 two ~~third~~ **thirds**
- 8 nine ~~dot~~ **point** two

EXTRA SUPPORT If you think your Sts need more practice, write some more numbers and dates on the board for them to say.

- e 5.3 Tell Sts they are going to hear six conversations in which some numbers are mentioned. They need to write the numbers only. Point out that the first one (213) has been done for them.

Play the audio the whole way through for Sts just to listen.

Now play it again, pausing after each conversation to give Sts time to write their answers.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then play the audio again if necessary.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

2 20th 3 120,000 4 \$795,000 5 $\frac{1}{3}$ 6 60–70%

5.3

- 1 A What's your address?
B Two thirteen Station Road.
- 2 A When's your birthday?
B June twentieth.
- 3 A So, how many people live here?
B About a hundred and twenty thousand, I think.
- 4 A How much did the house cost?
B A lot. Seven hundred and ninety-five thousand.
A Is that in pounds or dollars?
B Dollars.
- 5 A How much of your salary do you spend on rent?
B Uh, at least a third, I think.
- 6 A What percentage of your day do you spend working or studying?
B I'm not sure. Between sixty and seventy percent maybe?

EXTRA IDEA For more personalized practice of types of numbers, dictate the following questions or write them on the board. Put Sts in pairs to ask and answer them. Monitor and assist if necessary. You could elicit answers to questions 4 and 5 from the class. It is a good chance to use approximate numbers.

- 1 When's your birthday?
- 2 What's your house or apartment number?
- 3 What's the population of your town or city?
- 4 What's the average price of buying or renting a two-bedroom apartment there?
- 5 What percentage of the day do you usually spend working or studying?
- f In this video, Sts will see ten pieces of information, each of which has a missing number that they must guess. Tell Sts they are going to watch a numbers quiz. Put Sts in pairs or small teams. Highlight that Sts are not expected to know the answers, but they must try to make an intelligent guess, and the pair or team who guesses closest to the right answer gets a point.

Play the video. As soon as the pause symbol appears in question 1, pause it. Set a time limit, and tell the pairs or teams to agree on their answers. Elicit answers and write them on the board, making sure that Sts say the numbers correctly. Then continue to play the video so that the answer comes up. Pause again and award a point to the team with the closest answer. Repeat for the remaining questions, and announce the winning pair or team.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

3 GRAMMAR & PRONUNCIATION

comparative adjectives and adverbs, *as...as*, /ə/ and /ər/ in comparisons

- a Tell Sts to look at the highlighted words in the sentences and decide if they are adjectives or adverbs.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 busy, stressed = adjectives
- 2 quickly = adverb
- 3 fast = adjective
- 4 fast = adverb, impatient = adjective
- 5 bad = adjective
- 6 well = adverb

- b Focus on the instructions. Give Sts a few minutes to read sentences 1–6 and circle the correct forms.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 faster 2 worse 3 busier 4 more stressed 5 more quickly
- 6 as patient as

- c Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 5A** on p.142.

Grammar notes

Although Level 2 Sts will usually have studied comparative adjectives before, they will probably need to be reminded of the rules, especially for one-syllable adjectives and two-syllable adjectives ending in -y.

Typical mistakes are *more big*, *more easy*, or *more bigger*, *more easier*.

Point out that the rules for adverbs are very similar. The only difference is that whereas two-syllable adjectives ending in y make the comparative with -ier, e.g., *heavy–heavier*, two-syllable adverbs ending in y form the comparative with *more*, e.g., *more slowly* NOT *slowlier*.

The structure *as...as* is more common in the negative, but can also be used in the affirmative, e.g., *She's as tall as I am*. It is also very common with *much* and *many*, e.g., *I don't eat as much as you*.

You may also want to teach *the same as...*, e.g., *Your book is the same as mine*.

Focus on the example sentences and play both audio ⑤ 5.4 and ⑤ 5.5 for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the **Comparatives with pronouns** box and go through it with the class.

Then focus on the exercises for **5A** on p.143. Sts do the exercises individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

- a 1 faster than 2 shorter than 3 easier than 4 further / farther, than 5 worse than 6 better than 7 more stressed, than 8 harder, than 9 bigger than 10 more carefully
- b 1 as short as 2 as nice as 3 as big as 4 as popular as 5 learn languages as fast as 6 work as hard as 7 play as well as

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **5A**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **5A Grammar** photocopiable activity.

Pronunciation notes

At this level it is important to focus on the weak forms of *as* and *than* more for comprehension than production. However, if you encourage Sts to get the stress correct both in words and sentences, then this will help them produce the /ə/ sound in these words.

- d ⑤ 5.6 Focus on the task.

Play the audio the whole way though for Sts to listen and read the sentences in b.

Check answers. Remind Sts that the schwa is the most common sound in English.

ANSWER

- 1 /ər/
- 2 /ə/

⑤ 5.6

See sentences in Student Book on p.41

- e Now play the audio again, pausing after each sentence for Sts to repeat and copy the rhythm.

Then repeat the activity, eliciting responses from individual Sts.

4 LISTENING tuning in to an interview using topic-related vocabulary

- a Do this as a whole-class question. Explain that we use *fast-forward* to describe the symbol, but also as a verb. Ask Sts what kind of things they fast-forward.

ANSWER

c

- b ⑤ 5.7 Focus on the instructions and tell Sts to read extracts 1–5, paying attention to the highlighted words and phrases.

Play the audio for Sts to listen and read and decide what the highlighted vocabulary means.

Get Sts to compare with a partner.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 click – press a button on a computer screen
- 2 voice notes – a recording of a spoken message
- 3 double speed – twice as fast
- 4 faster pace – faster speed
- 5 attention span – the length of time that you can concentrate on something

5.7

See extracts in Student Book on p.41

- c  **5.8** Tell Sts that they are now going to hear all of Georgina's talk.
Focus on the questions and give Sts time to read them.
Elicit that *Gen Z* refers to a specific generation that Georgina belongs to.
Tell Sts to first just listen, and play the audio the whole way through.
Get Sts to compare answers with a partner to see how much they understood between them, and which questions they remember the answers to. Then play the audio again for them to make notes, pausing if necessary after each answer to give them time to write.
Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 Between the 1990s and the 2010s
- 2 a She gets three quarters of the way through the book and then looks at the last page.
b She fast-forwards to the middle of the song to hear the chorus.
c She clicks to the middle of the movie and watches a few minutes to see if she really wants to watch it.
d She doesn't listen to the whole recording.
- 3 She says it's because of social media.
- 4 Her mother tells her to slow down.
- 5 They live life at double speed.

5.8

(script in Student Book on p. 129)

I'm twenty-six, so that means I'm Gen Z, that is, the generation that was born between the nineteen nineties and the two thousand tens. I haven't read a book from the beginning to the end for years. I get three quarters of the way through, and then I look at the last page. I don't want to wait to find out how the story ends – I want to know now. It's not just books. I fast-forward to the middle of a song to hear the chorus – I don't wait to hear the verses. Or I click to the middle of a movie and watch a few minutes to see if I really want to spend two hours of my life watching it.
I think it's a Generation Z thing. My friends are just as bad as me. We send voice notes to each other because it's quicker than texting, but we don't actually listen to the whole recording. It's easy to understand why – it's because of social media. First, it was photos that disappeared after three seconds on Snapchat. Then it was Instagram stories with a fifteen-second time limit. Then, during the pandemic, it was TikTok – the videos are only a few seconds long, and the songs they feature are often played at double speed. My mum is always telling me to slow down, and yes, it's true that my friends and I live life at a faster pace compared to our parents. But it's nothing compared to the younger generation – their attention span is even shorter. Today's teenagers really do live life at double speed. They just watch and listen to pretty much everything on fast-forward.

- d Focus on the questions. With a class of a similar age group, do this as a whole-class activity. Alternatively, put Sts in small groups to discuss the questions.
Get feedback from individual Sts.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to listen again with the script on p.129, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

5 SPEAKING

- a Focus on the task and the example. Elicit / Teach the meaning of *nowadays* /'naʊə,deɪz/ (= at the present time, in contrast to the past).
Put Sts in small groups and give them time to discuss the three questions.
Get some feedback from each group.

- G** superlatives (+ ever + present perfect)
V describing a town or city
P sentence stress

Lesson plan

The context of this lesson is cities around the world. In Grammar, Sts move from comparatives to superlatives. Sts who did not use *American English File Level 1* may not have studied superlatives before, in which case you will probably need to spend more time on them. The present perfect is also recycled in expressions like *the most beautiful place I've ever been to*.

The lesson begins with a short documentary video about the city of Valencia in Spain, which introduces the vocabulary focus on language used to describe a town or city. The grammar is then presented through a Tripadvisor survey of cities around the world. This is followed by a listening, where Sts hear a podcast about life in a big city. The podcast makes suggestions as to how to make it a friendlier place. In Pronunciation and Speaking, Sts look at sentence stress in superlative questions and then ask and answer some superlative questions. Finally, the lesson ends with Sts writing a description of where they live.

Video material

Vocabulary – describing a town or city
 Grammar – superlatives

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar superlatives (+ ever + present perfect) p.197
Vocabulary Describing a town or city p.276 (instructions p.266)
Communicative Superlative questions p.242 (instructions p.223)

For students

Workbook 5B

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Ask *What are the three biggest cities in your country?* and write them on the board. Then get Sts to ask each other in pairs *Have you been to ___? When did you go there? Did you like it? Why (not)?*

1 VOCABULARY describing a town or city

Vocabulary notes

Sts are sometimes confused about whether to describe the place where they live as a town or a city. A city is a large town, and a town can be small or medium-sized. In some places, cities and towns are defined by the type of government they have (a city has a mayor; a town has a town council or other group as the head of government). In the UK, a village is a very small town located in a country area, but most areas like this in the US are still referred to as towns. You may want to explain the difference between *crowded* and *full* (*crowded* = full of people), and *polluted* and *dirty* (*polluted* = dirty because of contamination).

- a** ▶ Books open. This video is a short documentary about the Spanish city Valencia. Focus on the task and ask Sts what they think they can see in the photo (they will find out when they watch the video).

Play the video once. Then elicit opinions from various Sts.

EXTRA IDEA Ask Sts if any of them have ever been to Valencia. If any of them say yes, ask them if they visited any of the places in the video.



Valencia – the best city in the world

According to recent surveys, Valencia, in Spain, was voted the best city to live in. Valencia is situated on the east coast of Spain, about two hundred and twenty miles south of Barcelona. It is a large city, the third biggest city in Spain after Madrid and Barcelona, with a population of eight hundred and thirty-seven thousand people. Valencia is famous for its beautiful beaches and also for its historic city center. In the old city, there's a thirteenth-century cathedral, and many other impressive buildings, for example, the wonderful central market...and the town hall. Valencia also has some famous modern buildings designed by architect Santiago Calatrava, which include the opera house,... the science museum,... and the aquarium. It's also famous for the *Fallas* celebrations, which take place in March every year. Come and see why it's such a good place to visit!

- b** Focus on the text about Valencia.
 Give Sts time to choose the correct options.
 Get Sts to compare their answers with a partner.
 Play the video again to check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 east 2 south 3 large 4 beaches 5 cathedral
 6 science museum

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

- c** Tell Sts to go to **Vocabulary Bank Describing a town or city** on p.164.

Focus on **1 What is there to see?** Focus attention on the photos in **a**. Give Sts time to match the words and pictures. Get Sts to compare answers with a partner.

- ▶ **5.9** Then do **b**. Play the audio for Sts to listen and check. Check answers.



5.9

Describing a town or city, 1 What is there to see?

- | | |
|--------------|-----------|
| 4 bridge | 2 lake |
| 9 canal | 10 ruins |
| 7 city walls | 3 square |
| 1 harbor | 6 stadium |
| 8 hill | 5 statue |

Tell Sts to do **c** individually or in pairs. Point out that one answer has already been done for them.

- ▶ **5.10** Then do **d**. Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers.

5.10

Religious buildings

cathedral
chapel
mosque
synagogue
temple

Places where you can buy things

antiques center
department store
shopping mall

Other important buildings

art gallery
concert hall
opera house
palace
tower
town hall

Now either use the audio to drill the pronunciation of the words, or model and drill them yourself. Give further practice of any words your Sts find difficult to pronounce.

Now focus on **2 What's it like?** Remind Sts what the question means and then focus on **a**, where Sts match the adjectives and sentences. Point out that the first one has been done for them.

EXTRA SUPPORT Check Sts' answers to **a** before they match the opposites in **b**.

Now do **b** and get Sts to match the adjectives in the list to their opposites in **a**. Tell Sts that one of the adjectives in **a** has two opposites in the list.

5.11 Then do **c**. Play the audio for Sts to listen and check answers to **a** and **b**.

Check answers.

5.11

2 What's it like?

- 5 boring, exciting, interesting
- 3 crowded, empty
- 6 dangerous, safe
- 4 modern, historic
- 1 noisy, quiet
- 2 polluted, clean

Now either use the audio to drill the pronunciation of the adjectives, or model and drill them yourself. Give further practice of any words your Sts find difficult to pronounce.

Focus on **d** and get Sts to cover the words and look at sentences 1–6. They can test themselves or each other.

Finally, get Sts to do **Activation** in pairs.

Then get some feedback from individual Sts.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **5B**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **5B Vocabulary** photocopyable activity.

EXTRA IDEA If the majority of your Sts are not from the same place, you could write these questions on the board and get them to ask and answer in pairs.

Do you live in a town or a city?

Where is it?

How big is it? What's the population?

What's it like?

What's it famous for?

2 GRAMMAR superlatives (+ ever + present perfect)

a Do this as a whole-class activity.

ANSWERS

Dubai is in the United Arab Emirates.

Vienna is in Austria.

Tokyo is in Japan.

Dubrovnik is in Croatia.

New York is in the US.

Stockholm is in Sweden.

Rome is in Italy.

Then ask Sts what they know about each city and if anyone has been there. You could then tell Sts what you know about these places, and if you've been to any of them.

b Focus on the text and the instructions.

Before Sts read the text, ask them if they know the website Tripadvisor, and if so, what they think of it.

Read the text with the class and go through the seven different categories.

Put Sts in pairs and get them to guess which city was the winner in each category. Tell them the photos will help them answer.

Elicit opinions and then tell Sts the answers. If your Sts have been to any of these cities, ask them if they agree with the survey. You could ask if they found any of the answers surprising.

ANSWERS

- 1 Tokyo 2 Vienna 3 Dubai 4 Dubrovnik 5 New York
- 6 Stockholm 7 Rome

c Tell Sts to look at the categories in **b** and think about their city. Would it do well in any of the categories?

Get some feedback from the class, and tell them what you think.

d Focus on the instructions. Get Sts to figure out the rules. Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 add *-est*
- 2 change the *y* to *i* and add *-est*
- 3 put *most* before the adjective
- 4 *best*

e Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 5B** on p.142.

Grammar notes

Remind Sts that the rules for making superlatives are similar to comparatives, but adding *-est* instead of *-er*, or using *most* instead of *more*. Remind them to use *the* before superlatives.

Sts sometimes use comparatives where they should use superlatives: *the most expensive city in Europe* NOT *the more expensive city in Europe*, etc.

Highlight that Sts must always think if they are comparing two things (comparative), or more than two (superlative) when deciding which form to use, e.g., *the most beautiful city I've ever been to*.

Some languages use *never* (not *ever*) in this structure.

A typical mistake is: *the most beautiful city I've never been to*.

Adverbs can also be used in the superlative, e.g., *He drives the fastest*.

Focus on the example sentences and play audio 5.12 for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the exercises for 5B on p.143. Sts do the exercises individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

- a 1 the most generous 2 the hottest 3 the worst
4 the friendliest 5 the most important 6 The best
7 the most populated 8 The furthest / The farthest
9 the funniest 10 the smartest
b 1 It's the windiest place I've ever been to.
2 She's the nicest woman I've ever met.
3 It's the easiest exam we've ever taken.
4 They're the most expensive pants I've ever bought.
5 This is the longest book I've ever read.
6 He's the most hardworking person I've ever seen.
7 It's the worst meal I've ever eaten.
8 He's the most interesting teacher we've ever had.
9 It's the most exciting job I've ever done.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson 5B.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the 5B Vocabulary photocopiable activity.

- f This video gives Sts extra grammar practice in the form of a quiz. They will see images of three roads, mountains, etc. with an adjective, and have to decide which is, e.g., the longest of the three, and then compare the other two.

Focus on the task. Play the video, pausing when the pause symbol appears on the first set of three photos. Then focus on the example, and explain that this is what they need to do. Continue playing for Sts to see how the answers appear as in the example on the page. Pause again at that point, and elicit the three numbers.

EXTRA SUPPORT You could do the second set of photos with the whole class as a further example. Play the video and pause for Sts to write down one superlative sentence and then a further comparative sentence.

Now put Sts in pairs. Continue playing the video, pausing after each group of photos to give Sts time to agree about their sentences. At the end, check which pair got the most correct answers.



- 1 The Pan-American Highway is the longest. Highway 1 in Australia is longer than the Trans-Siberian Highway.
- 2 K2 is the highest. Aconcagua is higher than Kilimanjaro.
- 3 Tokyo is the most crowded. Delhi is more crowded than Shanghai.
- 4 Atlanta airport is the busiest. Istanbul airport is busier than Mexico City airport.
- 5 The Louvre is the most popular. The British Museum is more popular than the Metropolitan Museum of Art.
- 6 Dhaka is the noisiest. Ho Chi Minh City is noisier than New York.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

3 LISTENING understanding the main points in a podcast

- a Do this task as a whole-class activity. Give Sts time to read the questions, then get responses from individual Sts. Get them to ask you the questions, too.

You may want to remind Sts that although they end with *-ly*, *friendly* and *unfriendly* are adjectives, not adverbs.

- b Focus on the task. Give Sts time to read the text and look at the photos.

Put Sts in pairs to talk about where the people are in each photo and how their behavior is unfriendly.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- A people biking on sidewalks
B people blocking the escalator
C someone getting angry with another driver

- c Focus on the different groups of people in the list and elicit / explain the meaning of any Sts are not sure about, e.g., *residents* and *commuters*.

Focus on the task and headings 1–6, and elicit / explain any other new vocabulary. Get Sts to do the task individually or in pairs. Elicit answers, but don't tell Sts yet if they are right or not.

- d 5.13 Play the audio the whole way through for Sts to listen and complete the headings.

EXTRA SUPPORT Pause where necessary to make sure Sts can identify and complete the headings.

Check answers and find out if Sts had guessed correctly in b.

ANSWERS

- 1 Commuters 2 Local people 3 Car drivers 4 Bike riders
5 Residents 6 Tourists

5.13

(script in Student Book on p.129)

How to make a city more friendly

Our city is the least friendly city in our country, or that's what a recent survey says. I've lived in this city all my life, and I love it, but it's true that in a big city, people aren't always as friendly as they could be. So what can we do to get a better reputation? Here are my six tips.

The first tip is for commuters on public transportation, and it is: be understanding of other people. Not everybody uses the subway every day to go to work, so not everybody knows the rules. For example, on an escalator, stand on the right, but walk up or down on the left. Some people take public transportation because they're tourists who want to go downtown to visit the modern art museum. So be understanding! Don't make a face at them – smile!

My second tip is for local people like me, or anybody who knows our city well. If a tourist asks you for directions, be patient. You're very lucky that they are making an effort to speak to you in English. Most of us, native English speakers, can't speak any language other than our own. When we're abroad, we expect other people to understand us, and most of the time, they'll give it a try. So when they ask you for help, be patient and help them. Repeat the directions, if necessary. Maybe even try to learn another language!

My third tip is for car drivers. Try to relax. Yes, you are stuck in a traffic jam. We know it's frustrating. But honking your horn doesn't help anyone. It just makes people feel worse. Relax... Maybe even listen to a podcast!

Tip number four is for bike riders. Please stop riding on the sidewalk. Also, stop doing all the other things you do that annoy people, like not stopping at red traffic lights. Yes, we know you're saving the planet, and that's great. But you still need to obey the rules. Oh, and this goes for e-scooters, too!

Tip number five is for residents – that's all the people who actually live in our city. Talk to your neighbors! We are famous for not getting to know the people who live near us. But many of us started talking to strangers during the Covid nineteen pandemic, and even got to know our neighbors for the first time. It's one of the things that helped everyone feel better, so don't forget about it now!

My final tip is for tourists. We're very happy to have you, but please think about the people who live and work here. Help make their lives easier. Don't walk on busy streets with enormous suitcases or take selfies at the entrances of busy train stations just when commuters are trying to catch their train. Don't walk in big groups

along crowded sidewalks. You'll soon see that local people will be more friendly!

- e Tell Sts they are going to listen to the podcast again, and listen for more details this time.
Give Sts time to read the questions and deal with any new vocabulary.
Play the audio again.

EXTRA SUPPORT Pause after each tip to give Sts time to write answers.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then play it again if necessary.
Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 Stand on the right, but walk up or down on the left.
- 2 Because they're making an effort to speak to you in English
- 3 They feel worse.
- 4 They don't stop at red traffic lights.
- 5 During the Covid-19 pandemic
- 6 They walk in busy streets with big suitcases, they take selfies at the entrance of busy stations, they walk in big groups on crowded sidewalks.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to listen again with the script on p.129, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

- f **5.14** Focus on the instructions.
Play the audio, pausing after each definition for Sts to write the words.

EXTRA SUPPORT Pause after the first definition to elicit the answer from the class as an example.

Get Sts to compare with a partner and then play it again if necessary.
Check answers. Model and drill pronunciation.

ANSWERS

- 1 commuters 2 escalator 3 traffic jam 4 sidewalk
- 5 traffic lights 6 residents

5.14

- 1 People who have to travel a long way to get to work.
 - 2 A mechanical staircase that moves up and down, for example, in a subway station or a department store.
 - 3 When cars, trucks, etc., stop moving because there are so many of them.
 - 4 The raised part of the street where people walk.
 - 5 The red, orange, and green lights that show when cars must stop and when they can go.
 - 6 The people who live in a town or city.
- g If Sts have the same capital city, put them in pairs or small groups for this task. If not, Sts do the task individually, then share their answers with a partner.
Get some feedback from the class.

4 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING sentence stress

Pronunciation notes

Remind Sts that information words are the ones which are usually stressed in a sentence. These are the words that you hear more clearly when somebody speaks to you. The unstressed words are heard much less clearly, or sometimes hardly at all.

You may want to tell Sts that when native speakers use superlatives with *most*, they often link the two words together and don't pronounce the final *t* in *most*.

- a **5.15** Focus on the task and give Sts time to look at questions 1–8. Point out that the first one (*most beautiful*) has been done for them.
Play the audio for Sts to listen and complete the questions.
Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 2 most relaxing 3 most frightening 4 most exciting
- 5 most expensive 6 most generous 7 most dangerous
- 8 most difficult

5.15

See questions in Student Book on p.43 and answer key

EXTRA CHALLENGE Get Sts to guess what the missing superlatives are before playing the audio. Tell them that all the adjectives are three syllables or more.

- b Play the audio again for Sts to listen to the questions and hear which words are stressed. You might want to highlight in question 1 that the preposition *to*, which is not normally stressed, is stressed here because it comes at the end of the question.
Now play the audio again, pausing after each question for Sts to copy the rhythm.
Then repeat the activity, eliciting responses from individual Sts.

EXTRA SUPPORT Write the questions on the board. Play the audio, pausing after each question, and elicit which words are stressed.

ANSWERS

- 1 What's the most beautiful city you've ever been to?
- 2 What's the most relaxing vacation you've ever had?
- 3 What's the most frightening movie you've ever seen?
- 4 What's the most exciting sporting event you've ever watched?
- 5 What's the most expensive thing you've ever bought?
- 6 Who's the most generous person you've ever met?
- 7 What's the most dangerous sport you've ever played?
- 8 What's the most difficult subject you've ever studied?

- c Focus on the instructions and speech bubbles. Do 1 yourself with Sts as an example, and elicit follow-up questions. Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**. Tell **A** to answer 1 with a full sentence, and **B** to ask extra questions. Then they change roles before moving on to 2.
Get some feedback from the class.

5 WRITING describing your town or city

Tell Sts to go to **Writing Bank 5** on p.119.

- a** Give Sts time to read the whole description.

Ask them what Fatma particularly likes about Kayseri.

ANSWER

Fatma likes being close to nature.

- b** Now tell Sts to match the questions to paragraphs 1–5.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

4 A 3 B 2 C 5 D 1 E

- c** Focus on the **Giving examples** box and go through it with the class.

Then give Sts time to complete the sentences.

Get them to compare answers with a partner, then elicit some answers from the class.

- d** Sts do the task individually, then check in pairs.

Check answers.

Focus on the highlighted phrases and check they understand all the words, e.g., *typical*, *symbol*, *specialties*.

ANSWERS

1 important, rich 2 historic, modern 3 cold, snowy
4 hot, dry 5 local, delicious

- e** Tell Sts they are now going to plan a description of where they live. They should look at the questions in **b** and make notes of their answers. Remind them to choose some adjectives to use.

- f** You may like to get Sts to do the writing in class or you could assign it for homework. Make sure they write five paragraphs by answering the questions in **b** in the correct order and tell them to use phrases for giving examples and use some highlighted phrases, too.

- g** Sts should check for mistakes, and if they can, attach a photo or photos of the city they have described.

EXTRA IDEA If Sts are from different places, they could exchange their pieces of writing and decide which places they would like to visit.

G quantifiers, *too*, (*not*) *enough*

V health and the body

P /ʌ/

Lesson plan

In this lesson Sts review quantifiers and learn to use *too much / many*, and (*not*) *enough*. The context is a magazine article about the latest medical research into drinks. The lesson begins with a questionnaire focusing on drinks, and what Sts drink and when. Sts then go on to listen to a nutritionist talking about what kind of liquids we should drink. In Reading, the topic of the article is confusing health advice regarding drinks. There is also a vocabulary focus on health and the body. Sts then work on the grammar, followed by a pronunciation focus on the /ʌ/ sound. The lesson ends with a speaking activity where Sts discuss more general lifestyle habits using the new quantifiers. Depending on the level of your class, you may want to do more or less review of countability and basic quantifiers (see **Optional lead-in**).

Video material

Grammar – quantifiers, *too*, (*not*) *enough*

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar quantifiers, *too*, (*not*) *enough* p.198
Communicative How much / How many...? p.243
(instructions p.223)

For students

Workbook 5C

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Review countability.

Write on the board in two columns:

1	2
water	vegetables
bread	cookies
chocolate	bananas

Ask *What's the difference between the words in columns 1 and 2?* and elicit that the words in column 1 are uncountable, and normally used in the singular, but the words in column 2 are countable and can be used in singular and plural. Elicit a few more words for each column, e.g., *coffee, rice, apples*, etc.

Ask *When do we use a, some, and any?* and elicit that you use *a* with singular countable nouns and *some / any* with plural countable nouns and uncountable nouns – *some* in affirmative sentences and *any* in negatives and questions, e.g., *I ate a cookie and some bread. I didn't eat any vegetables or any fruit.*

1 SPEAKING & LISTENING

understanding numbers and quantities

- a** Books open. Focus on the questionnaire and its title. Make sure Sts know what *a can* is.
Put Sts in pairs and give them time to answer the questions. Get some feedback.

EXTRA SUPPORT Get Sts to interview you first.

- b** **5.16** Focus on the drawing of the jug. Go through the instructions, making sure Sts know the meaning of *a nutritionist, a liquid, a jug, sports drinks*, and *low-fat*. Model and drill pronunciation.

Play the audio once the whole way through for Sts to listen and complete the task. Point out that one (*fruit juice*) has been done for them.

Play it again if necessary.

Check answers.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Get Sts, in pairs, to predict which liquid goes where before they listen.

ANSWERS

1 water 2 coffee and tea 3 low-fat milk 4 diet soda / sports drinks 5 sports drinks / diet soda 6 fruit juice
We should never drink soft drinks like soda or sugary iced tea.

5.16

(script in Student Book on p.129)

At least half of your daily liquids should come from water. About one third (or three to four cups) can come from coffee or tea – but with no sugar. Low-fat milk can make up another twenty percent. If you drink less milk, just try to get your calcium from another type of food or drink, for example, green vegetables. You can have one small glass of fruit juice a day. Sports drinks are for athletes who exercise more than an hour a day. You can drink a glass or two if you exercise a lot. Diet drinks that use artificial sweeteners are not good for you, but up to one to two glasses a day is OK. But try not to have any drinks with a lot of sugar, for example, soft drinks like soda or sugary iced tea.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Get Sts to listen for the recommended quantities of each drink.

ANSWERS

water: half of daily liquids
tea and coffee: 3 to 4 cups
low-fat milk: 20% of daily liquids
fruit juice: 1 small glass
sports drinks: 1 or 2 glasses if you exercise
diet soda: 1 or 2 glasses

- c** Do this as a whole-class activity.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to listen again with the script on p.129, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

2 READING & VOCABULARY

health and the body; responding to and assessing information according to personal opinion

- a** Do this as a whole-class activity.
b Focus on the task and make sure Sts understand what the article is about. Pre-teach the verbs *contain, improve, reduce*, and *cause*.

EXTRA SUPPORT Get Sts to read just the first paragraph of the text. Elicit / Teach the meaning of *contradict*. Ask Sts what the problem is when trying to know what to drink and what not to drink.

ANSWER

New research comes out frequently that suggests different advice or the opposite advice from previous research.

Now get Sts to read the article and match the highlighted words to the pictures and definitions.

Get Sts to compare their answers with a partner.

EXTRA SUPPORT Apart from the highlighted words, this article contains other medical vocabulary. Before Sts read it, check whether you need to pre-teach any other items, e.g., *heart disease, arthritis, diabetes, etc.*, or whether you think Sts will be able to guess their meaning. In many languages they are similar words, but pronounced differently.

- c 5.17 Play the audio for Sts to listen and check their answers to b.

Check answers.

5.17

- | | |
|-----------|-----------------|
| 1 heart | 5 blood |
| 2 muscles | 6 disease |
| 3 teeth | 7 immune system |
| 4 bones | |

Then play it again, pausing after each word for Sts to listen and repeat.

Now get Sts to practice saying the words.

Finally, ask Sts what they think *blood pressure* /'blʌd prɛʃər/ means. Model and drill pronunciation.

ANSWERS

blood pressure = the pressure of blood as it travels around the body

Deal with any other new vocabulary. Model and drill the pronunciation of any tricky words.

- d Give Sts time to read the article again and make some notes to answer the two questions.
Get them to compare answers with a partner.
Get some feedback from the class. Encourage Sts to try to say why they feel a fact is important. You could give your own opinions, too.
- e Focus on the instructions and put Sts in pairs. Tell them to read about each drink again and answer the two questions.
Get some feedback. Sts might have a different opinion, but if so, ask them to justify it.

POSSIBLE ANSWERS

- a tea, water b coffee, juice, milk, sports drinks

- f Do this as a whole-class activity.

3 GRAMMAR quantifiers, too, (not) enough

EXTRA SUPPORT If you didn't do the **Optional lead-in**, you could do it here.

- a This exercise reviews what Sts should already know. Focus on the instructions and give Sts time to decide if the words are countable or uncountable.
Check answers.

ANSWERS

countable: bottle, can, carton, cup, glass
uncountable: juice, milk, soda, water

- b Focus on the instructions and get Sts, in pairs, to circle the correct word or phrase and say why the other one is wrong.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 many (you can't use *much* with plural countable nouns)
- 2 much (you can't use *many* with uncountable nouns)
- 3 a lot of (you can't use *many* with uncountable nouns)
- 4 a little (you can't use *a few* with uncountable nouns)
- 5 a few (you can't use *a little* with countable nouns)
- 6 a lot (you can't use *a lot of* without a noun)

- c Here the new language of the lesson is introduced. Tell Sts to look at the paragraphs about water in the article, and to focus on words or phrases that mean *the right amount* and *more than you need*.

Check answers.

If necessary, model and drill pronunciation of *enough* /ɪ'naʊf/.

You could point out that there are two other words where *-ough* sounds like /ʌf/: *rough* and *tough*.

ANSWERS

- 1 enough 2 too much

- d Now tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 5C** on p.142.

Grammar notes

too much, too many, too

Some Sts use *too much* + adjective, which is incorrect. *It's too big.* NOT *It's too much big.*

It is also important to highlight the difference between *too* and *very*:

It's very big. (= a statement of fact, neither good nor bad)

It's too big. (= more than it should be / more than you want)

(not) enough

The main problem here is the pronunciation of *enough* /ɪ'naʊf/ and the different positions: before nouns, but after adjectives. Some Sts may confuse *quite* and *enough* because of L1 interference.

Focus on the example sentences and play both audio

5.18 and 5.19 for Sts to listen and repeat.

Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the exercises for **5C** on p.143. Sts do them individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

- a 1 too much 2 too many 3 enough water 4 too busy
5 big enough 6 too much 7 go out enough 8 enough vegetables
b 1 enough 2 too 3 too many 4 too much 5 enough
6 too 7 too many 8 enough

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **5C**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **5C Grammar photocopiable activity**.

- e This video consists of nine photos and beginnings of sentences that Sts hear, and then have to complete with phrases using the grammar they have learned.
Focus on the instructions.

Do the first one as an example. Play the video, and pause after the sentence beginning. Elicit the end of the sentence from the class. Then continue with the video so that they realize that they will hear the complete sentence. You may want to point out that they could also complete the sentence with *because they have too much luggage*.

Repeat this process with the other photos, pausing and eliciting answers from different Sts. Finally play the video again, eliciting the answers from the whole class.



- 1 She can't close the car trunk because there are (pause) She can't close the car trunk because there are too many suitcases.
- 2 He can't reach the laptop because he isn't (pause) He can't reach the laptop because he isn't tall enough.
- 3 The sofa doesn't fit because it's (pause) The sofa doesn't fit because it's too long.
- 4 She can't pay the bill because she doesn't have (pause) She can't pay the bill because she doesn't have enough money.
- 5 She has problems sleeping because she drinks (pause) She has problems sleeping because she drinks too much coffee.
- 6 She didn't want to swim because the water wasn't (pause) She didn't want to swim because the water wasn't warm enough.
- 7 She didn't buy the sunglasses because they were (pause) She didn't buy the sunglasses because they were too expensive.
- 8 He couldn't make the cake because he didn't have (pause) He couldn't make the cake because he didn't have enough eggs.
- 9 They didn't like the beach because there were (pause) They didn't like the beach because there were too many people.

EXTRA SUPPORT Put Sts in pairs for them to write their sentence endings together.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Repeat the video without the sound and see if Sts can say the full sentence for each picture.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

4 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING /ʌ/

- a **5.20** This exercise helps Sts with the pronunciation of some of the words from the lesson.

Focus on the sound picture and elicit the word, and sound: *up* /ʌ/.

Give Sts time to read the spelling rules chart. Make sure they know the meaning of *rare* (= not seen very often).

Play the audio once the whole way through for Sts just to listen.

5.20

See sound and words in Student Book on p.45

Now play the audio again, pausing after each word for Sts to repeat.

- b **5.21** Tell Sts they are going to hear ten sentences and they must write just the last word in each one.

Play the audio, pausing after each item to give Sts time to write.

Check answers by playing the audio again and pausing after each item to elicit the word and write it on the board.

5.21

- 1 Can you pass me the **butter**?
- 2 Do you work or **study**?
- 3 Your sister's very **young**!
- 4 I don't have any **money**.
- 5 Is today going to be **sunny**?
- 6 The weather's going to be **lovely**.
- 7 Two single ice-cream vanilla cones, and one **double**.
- 8 What do you want for **lunch**?
- 9 What's the biggest city in your **country**?
- 10 She's usually serious, but she can be very **funny**.

EXTRA SUPPORT Elicit the whole sentences / questions, not just the last word, and write them on the board.

EXTRA IDEA Some Sts have a problem pronouncing *money* and tend to say /mʌnei/. To help them, you could tell them that *money* rhymes with *funny* and *sunny*.

- c Play the audio again, pausing after each item for Sts to listen and repeat. Make sure they repeat the whole sentence and not just the last word.
- d Focus on the speech bubbles, and then demonstrate the activity yourself by answering a couple of questions and explaining your reasons.

Now put Sts in pairs and get them to answer the questions, giving their reasons, too.

Get some feedback from various pairs.



Working on a Saturday

Practical English taking something back

Lesson plan

In Episode 3 of *Pictures of you*, the functional language is key phrases for returning something you bought in a store. The story develops: Ben and Emma have a walk together where they discuss his relationship with Izzy, who is working from home and doesn't have time to join them. Emma is worried about Ben. They go to a clothing store, the same one that Ben went to with Izzy in season 1, and Ben buys some sneakers that he then has to return as he bought the wrong size.

In the last scene, Ben calls Izzy and they arrange to have dinner together that evening. Unfortunately, Izzy never arrives at the restaurant and in the last frame of the video, we see that this is because she had been working so hard that she fell asleep.

Video material

Pictures of you Episode 3

More materials

For teachers

Oxford English Hub

Quick Test 5

File 5 Test

THE STORY SO FAR (books closed)

▶ Play the first part of the video – the recap of Episode 2 (*Previously*) – and elicit from Sts what happened in the previous episode of *Pictures of you*.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Put Sts in pairs or small groups to remember what happened in the previous episode of *Pictures of you*. Then play the recap for them to check what they remembered.

1 EMMA AND BEN TALK

a ▶ In this scene Ben and Emma go for a walk together and she tells him her worries about his relationship with Izzy.

Focus on the photo of Ben and Emma and the task.

Give Sts time to read the three reasons to choose from. Check they know all the vocabulary, e.g., *stressful*, *break up with*.

Play the video. You could pause briefly at 01:38 to elicit that Ben is remembering the previous night's dinner.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, then check the answer.

ANSWER

She thinks Izzy doesn't have enough time for Ben.



E = Emma, B = Ben

E Nice shirt. But I'm not sure about those sneakers.

B Hey, Izzy! Yeah, I'm with Emma. We're going for a walk... Yeah... Yeah... So do you want to come and meet us? Oh. OK. OK. See you later. Izzy's working from home today.

E On a Saturday?

B Yeah.

E What a surprise. Anyway... How are things with you?

B Izzy's doing really well at the new job. I think they're going to give her a promotion. And she's looking at new apartments, too.

E OK, that's how Izzy's doing. I asked about you.

B Well, I'm fine.

E Yeah, sure you are.

B What do you mean by that?

E It's just... everything seems to be about Izzy right now. Her new job. Her new apartment. Her new life. Make sure there's enough room for you, too.

B There is enough room for me. We're OK. I mean, I'm OK. She's just busy right now.

E You don't spend enough time together.

B Well, we're going to go away for a weekend soon. Just the two of us. When she's less busy.

E And when she gets this promotion, is she going to be less busy and have more time for you?

B Wait. I know where we are. Just around the corner. Come on.

E Ben. What a cute store.

B Yeah, it's great. I came here once with Izzy. Do you want to go in?

E Sure. But you haven't answered my question.

b Focus on statements 1–7 and give Sts time to read them. Check Sts understand the task.

Play the video again for Sts to watch and circle the correct answers.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Ask Sts to circle the correct answers before watching again. They then watch and check their answers.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers. When checking the answer to 3, point out that Emma is being sarcastic when she says, *What a surprise!* Sts might find it interesting to listen again and note her intonation.

ANSWERS

1 bad 2 isn't 3 isn't 4 is 5 doesn't believe
6 doesn't think 7 doesn't answer

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

2 TAKING SOMETHING BACK

a ▶ This scene presents the functional language, and shows Ben buying some sneakers that he then has to return.

Focus on the photo. Elicit that it is inside the store and that the person talking to Ben is a salesperson. Focus on the instruction and get Sts to look carefully at the four pictures of sneakers.

Play the video once all the way through for Sts to watch and check the correct photo. (This will be the pair of sneakers that Ben finally leaves the store with, after exchanging the ones that were the wrong size.)
Check the answer.

ANSWER

3. The trainers are £80.



S = salesperson, B = Ben

- S** Can I help you?
B Yes. Do you have these in an eleven?
S Just a minute. I'll go and check.
B Thank you.
S Here you are. These are an eleven. Do you want to try them on?
B No, thanks. I'm sure they'll be fine.
S That will be eighty pounds.
B Oh, it says ninety-five ninety-nine.
S Yes, they're on sale.
B Oh. Great!
B Thank you.
S Thank you
B Bye.
S Bye bye, now. Can I help you?
B Yes, I just bought these.
S I remember. Is there a problem?
B Yes, they're too big.
S What size are they?
B They're an eleven. I take a US eleven.
S Oh, right. American sizes are always one size larger. You need a UK ten. Just a minute...I'm sorry, but we don't have those in a ten. But we do have these and they're the same price, or you can have a refund.
B I'll take this pair, then.
S Oh, do you have the receipt?
B Sure. Here you go.
S Great.
B Thank you.

- b** Focus on the conversation in the chart. Elicit who says the **You hear** phrases (the salesperson) and who says the **You say** phrases (the customer, here Ben). These phrases will be useful for Sts if they need to buy something and then take it back if they have a problem.

Give Sts a minute to read through the conversation and think what the missing words might be. Then play the video again and get Sts to fill in the blanks.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

1 check 2 try 3 sale 4 problem 5 size 6 larger
 7 price 8 receipt

Go through the conversation line by line with Sts, helping them with any words or expressions they don't understand. Remind Sts of the pronunciation of *receipt*, which Sts learned in Lesson 4B. Check Sts understand a *refund*. Model and drill the pronunciation /'rifand/.

You may want to highlight that *Here you go* is an expression we use when we give something to someone. *Here you are*, *there you are*, and *there you go* can all be used in the same way with no change in meaning.

- c** Now focus on the **You say** phrases and tell Sts they're going to hear the conversations again. They should repeat

the phrases when the video pauses. Encourage them to copy the rhythm and intonation.

Play the video for Sts to watch and repeat the phrases.

Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**. **A** is the salesperson, and **B** is the customer. Get Sts to read the conversations aloud and then change roles.



Same as previous video with repeat pauses

- d** Now focus on role-play 1. Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**. **A** is the salesperson. Get Sts to read their instructions carefully and think about what they are going to say. Sts now role-play the conversation. Student **A** (the salesperson) begins with *Hello. Can I help you?* Monitor and help.

EXTRA SUPPORT Demonstrate the activity by taking the role of the salesperson yourself and getting a confident student to be the customer.

Now focus on role-play 2. Give Sts time to read their instructions and think about what to say. Elicit that **A** can use either *I'll have...* or *I'd like to ask for the refund*.

Sts role-play the conversation. Monitor and help.

When they have finished, you could get a few pairs to perform in front of the class.

3 GOING OUT FOR PIZZA

- a** In this final scene Ben goes to the restaurant to meet Izzy, but sadly she doesn't turn up.

Focus on the four photos and the instruction. Put Sts in pairs to discuss what they can see in each photo and predict what happens in the scene.

Elicit ideas, but don't tell them if they are right or not.

Then play the video once the whole way through for Sts to see what happens.



I = Izzy, B = Ben, E = Emma, W = waiter

- I** Hi, Ben.
B Hi, Izzy. How's work?
I It's OK. I'm really tired.
B I'm sure. What time are you finishing?
I Well, hopefully about six.
B Cool, do you want to meet for a pizza at Pomodora? I can book a table.
I Just the two of us?
B Yeah. Emma's meeting some old friends from California this evening.
I Yes! That sounds really nice. We haven't been out together on our own for a long time.
B Awesome. Let's say seven?
I Yeah!
B Perfect. See you then.
I Great. Can't wait.
B She says she can't wait.
E That's cool.
B Yep. We're really happy.
E Just...be careful, Ben. I worry about you.
B You don't need to worry about me.
E Of course I do! I'm your sister. That's my job.
W Are you ready to order?
B I'm waiting for somebody. She's coming soon.
W Of course. Could I take this chair? I need it for another table.
B Yeah, sure.

b Focus on questions 1–3.

Play the video again for Sts to watch and then answer the questions.

Get Sts to compare answers with a partner.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 Yes, she does.
No, she's happy that Emma has other plans.
- 2 She isn't very happy about it. She is worried about Ben. Ben isn't listening to her.
- 3 **a** very happy and excited **b** excited, then worried
c unhappy / disappointed

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

4 SOCIAL ENGLISH

a Focus on the phrases in the chart and go through them with the class. You could highlight the positive responses *Awesome* and *Great*, *can't wait* and the use of *hopefully* to indicate what you want to happen, although it isn't certain.

Now give Sts time to match a phrase in **A** with a response in **B**. They can do this individually or in pairs.

b Play the video for Sts to watch and check.

Check answers. If you know your Sts' L1, you could get them to translate the phrases.

ANSWERS

- 1 On a Saturday? What a surprise!
- 2 Izzy's doing really well at the new job.
- 3 Well, hopefully about six.
- 4 Awesome. Let's say seven?
- 5 Great, can't wait.
- 6 Of course I do!

Now play the video again, pausing as necessary, for Sts to watch and repeat.

c Focus on the instructions and put Sts in pairs, making sure they understand what they have to do.

Monitor and help. Make sure they change roles. If there's time, you could get Sts **B** to close their books and respond from memory, and then change roles.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Put Sts in pairs and get them to talk about the questions relating to Ben and Izzy's relationship. You can decide if Sts should answer the questions briefly or have a more elaborate class discussion about them.

Elicit some feedback from the class. You could ask them what they think Ben should do or should say to Izzy.

G will / won't (predictions)

V opposite verbs: *pass – fail*, etc.

P 'll, won't

Lesson plan

The context of the lesson is pessimists and optimists. Sts are introduced to the future forms *will* and *won't* for the first time. They learn a specific use of these forms, which is to make predictions about the future, here particularly in response to what somebody says to you. The lesson begins with a vocabulary focus on common opposite verbs, e.g., *pass – fail*, *buy – sell* which are then practiced with a video activity. The grammar is then presented through eight situations, looking at the typical predictions an optimist or pessimist might make, e.g., *You won't like it*, *That'll be interesting*, etc. In Pronunciation, Sts practice the contracted forms of *will* / *won't*. Sts then listen to a radio show about positive thinking. They then read an article which states that negative thinking can be good for you, and they discuss the findings. Finally, Sts answer a questionnaire to find out whether they are a positive or negative thinker.

Video material

Vocabulary – opposite verbs

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar will / won't (predictions) p.199

Vocabulary Opposite verbs p.277 (instructions p.267)

Communicative Positive or negative? p.244 (instructions p.223)

For students

Workbook 6A

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Draw a big glass that is exactly half full of water on the board. Underneath, write *The glass is half _____*. Tell Sts to complete the sentence with one word, but they must not tell anybody which word they have written.

Now elicit from the class how to finish the sentence (*full* / *empty*).

Ask Sts who have written *empty* to put up their hands.

Tell them that they are pessimists (explain / translate if necessary).

Now ask who wrote *full* and tell these Sts that they are optimists.

1 VOCABULARY opposite verbs

a **6.1** Books open. Tell Sts they are going to hear five sentences or questions, and they have to write down the main verb from each sentence.

Play the audio, pausing after each sentence to give Sts time to write.

Check answers.

6.1

- 1 Did you **find** your keys?
- 2 Did you **send** the email?
- 3 I never **remember** people's names.
- 4 What time does the movie **start**?
- 5 Please **turn on** the air conditioning.

Elicit the opposite verbs.

ANSWERS

- 1 lose 2 get / receive 3 forget 4 finish / end 5 turn off

b Tell Sts to go to **Vocabulary Bank Opposite verbs** on p.165.

Vocabulary notes

You may want to highlight:

- the difference between *lend* and *borrow*, i.e., *I lend money to you* / *you borrow money from me*
- that the opposite of *start* is *finish* or *end* when referring to, e.g., a movie or a book, but *stop* when referring to, e.g., an activity, a car, etc.
- the other meaning of *miss*, e.g., *miss your family* (= feel sad because you are not with them)

Focus on **a** and get Sts to match the verbs and photos.

Check answers, but don't drill pronunciation yet.

ANSWERS

- 10 arrive 6 break 4 buy 15 download 3 find 7 forget
2 lend 16 love 14 miss 8 pass 17 pick up 1 push
12 send 5 start 11 teach 9 turn on 13 win

Then get Sts to do **b** by writing the verbs in the **Opposite** column in **a**. Point out that the first one (*leave*) has been done for them.

6.2 Now do **c**. Play the audio for Sts to check answers to **b**.

6.2

Opposite verbs

- 10 arrive – leave
6 break – fix / repair
4 buy – sell
15 download – upload
3 find – lose
7 forget – remember
2 lend – borrow
16 love – hate
14 miss – catch
8 pass – fail
17 pick up – drop off
1 push – pull
12 send – get / receive
5 start – finish / stop
11 teach – learn
9 turn on – turn off
13 win – lose

Now either use the audio, pausing after each pair of opposite verbs, or model and drill them yourself. Give further practice of any verbs your Sts find difficult to pronounce.

Focus on **Activation**. In pairs, Sts try to remember the verbs and their opposites. **A** (book open) says a verb and **B** (book closed) says the opposite. Make sure they change roles.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **6A**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **6A Vocabulary** photocopiable activity.

- c**  In this video, Sts see nine clips that illustrate different verbs from the pairs they have learned. After identifying the verb from the clip, they then say the opposite one. Focus on the task and the photo. Use the photo to ask *What's the verb phrase?* and elicit *finish a race*. Then ask what the opposite would be, and elicit *start a race*. Play the video once the whole way through. Pause at the end when the grid of nine pictures appears (01:22). Put Sts in pairs and get them to try to write the verb phrase and its opposite for each picture (they don't need to write a full sentence). Finally, play the video again, pausing after each clip and eliciting the two phrases.

ANSWERS

- 1 finish a race (*opp.* start a race)
- 2 catch a train (*opp.* miss a train)
- 3 drop off sb at the airport (*opp.* pick up sb at the airport)
- 4 fail a test (*opp.* pass a test)
- 5 get / receive an email (*opp.* send an email)
- 6 learn English (*opp.* teach English)
- 7 lose a game (*opp.* win a game)
- 8 pull the door (*opp.* push the door)
- 9 turn off the TV (*opp.* turn on the TV)

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

2 GRAMMAR *will / won't* (predictions)

- a** If you didn't do the **Optional lead-in**, check Sts know what an *optimist* and a *pessimist* are. Now focus on the eight conversations and go through the **Your friend says** phrases with the class. Then focus on the **You say** responses and point out that each one has two options, a and b. Tell Sts to label each response with *O* for *optimist* and *P* for *pessimist*.
- b**  **6.3** Play the audio for Sts to listen and check. Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 a O b P 2 a P b O 3 a O b P 4 a O b P 5 a O b P
6 a P b O 7 a O b P 8 a P b O

 6.3

See conversations in Student Book on p.48 and answer key

- c** Put Sts in pairs and get them to look at the eight situations in **a** and decide which response they would probably give. If you didn't do the **Optional lead-in**, get Sts to say whether they are an optimist or a pessimist. Get some feedback about various situations. With a show of hands, you could also see if there are more optimists or pessimists in the class.

- d** Focus on the **You say** responses in **a** and elicit the answer to the question.

ANSWER

the future

- e** Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 6A** on p.144.

Grammar notes

In *American English File Level 1*, Sts learned that *be going to* can be used to make predictions, e.g., *You're going to be very happy*. This use was reviewed in **3A**.

In this lesson Sts learn the future form *will / won't* + infinitive, and that it can also be used to make predictions. Sometimes both forms are possible, e.g., *I think the politician will lose the election.* / *I think the politician is going to lose the election.*

However, there is often a difference in usage: *will / won't* tends to be used more than *be going to* to make instant, on-the-spot predictions in reaction to what another person says, e.g.,

A *I'm going to try that new restaurant tonight.*

B *You won't like it.*

At this level you may prefer to simplify things by telling Sts that both *be going to* and *will / won't* can be used to make predictions.

Sts will learn other uses of the future (*will / won't*) in **6B** (promises, offers, and decisions) and will study the use of *will / won't* in conditional sentences with *if* in **8B**.

Focus on the example sentences and play audio  **6.4** for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the **be going to for predictions** box and go through it with the class.

Then focus on the exercises for **6A** on p.145. Sts do the exercises individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

- a** 1 I think they'll lose the game.
2 Will the meeting be long?
3 She won't get the job – she's not qualified enough.
4 Will you see him at work later?
5 I don't want to go. It'll be impossible to park.
6 You won't like that book.
7 I'm sure she'll love the present I bought her.
8 There won't be a lot of traffic in the morning.
9 You'll find a good job, I'm sure.
10 Everything will be OK, so there's no need to worry.
- b** 1 will be
2 will like
3 will snow
4 will get
5 will pass

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **6A**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **6A Grammar** photocopiable activity.

3 PRONUNCIATION 'll, won't

Pronunciation notes

An important aspect of *will* / *won't* is the pronunciation of the contractions, and Sts get some intensive practice here. Remind Sts that contractions are very common in conversation, but that it is not wrong to use the full uncontracted form.

Sts often confuse the pronunciation of the contracted form of *will not* (*won't* / *wəʊnt*) with the verb *want* / *want* / when speaking and listening, so there is also a special focus on this.

- a 🎧 6.5 Focus on **a** and play the audio for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Sts often find the contracted form of *it will* (*it'll*) difficult to say.

🎧 6.5

See words and phrases in Student Book on p.48

- b 🎧 6.6 Tell Sts that they are going to hear six sentences and that they have to write them down. Explain that they all include either *won't* or *want to*. Tell Sts that they will hear each sentence twice.

Play the audio once for Sts just to listen.

Now play the audio again, pausing after each sentence to give Sts time to write down what they hear.

Then elicit answers and write them on the board. Get them to spell *want* or *won't* to make sure they have written the correct word.

🎧 6.6

- 1 I want to go with you.
- 2 They won't come tonight.
- 3 You won't find a job.
- 4 We want to learn Russian.
- 5 They want to sell their house.
- 6 We won't win the game.

Now ask Sts what sound the pink letters have. Highlight that *want* is always followed by *to* before another verb, which will help them to be sure which form they have heard.

ANSWERS

won't = /oʊ/
want = /ɑ/

EXTRA IDEA Put Sts in pairs and get them to practice saying the sentences.

EXTRA SUPPORT Play the audio again, pausing after each sentence for Sts to listen and repeat.

- c Focus on the instructions and make sure Sts know what they have to do.
Put Sts in pairs. Tell Sts **A** to start by reading the first line of conversation 1 in **2a**. Sts **B** should respond as an optimist. When Sts **A** have read all eight conversations, they change roles, and this time Sts **A** respond to the situations as pessimists. Encourage them to use optimistic or pessimistic intonation.
Monitor and help, correcting any errors with *'ll* or *won't*.
- d Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**, and tell them to go to **Communication You're a pessimist!**, **A** on p.105, **B** on p.111.

Go through the instructions carefully. Now make sure Sts understand what they have to do.

EXTRA SUPPORT Get a student to read you their first sentence. Give an example of a pessimistic response.

Sit **A** and **B** face-to-face. **A** says their first sentence and **B** responds in a pessimistic way. Then they change roles. When they have finished, you could get a few Sts to read a sentence and get others to respond.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **6A**.

4 LISTENING taking notes

- a 🎧 6.7 Focus on the instructions and question. Tell Sts that the radio show is a talk show where one of the guests is an expert on positive thinking.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Before playing the audio, elicit some ideas from the class why positive thinking is good for you.

Play the audio for Sts to listen and answer the question.

Check the answer.

ANSWER

It helps you enjoy life more. Positive people are healthier and live longer.

🎧 6.7

(script in Student Book on p.129)

Today's topic is "positive thinking." We all know that people who are positive enjoy life more than people who are negative and pessimistic. But scientific studies show that positive people are also healthier. They get better more quickly when they are sick, and they live longer. A recent study has shown that people who are optimistic and think positively live, on average, nine years longer than pessimistic people. So, let's hear what you, the listeners, think. Do you have any ideas to help us be more positive in our lives?

- b Now explain that five people have called the radio show to give some tips (useful suggestions) to help people be more positive.

Get Sts, in pairs, to try and guess what the missing words in the sentences could be. Tell them not to write them in the sentences, but on a separate piece of paper.

You could elicit some ideas, but don't check answers yet.

- c 🎧 6.8 Play the audio once for Sts to listen and check their guesses and fill in the blanks.
Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 present, past
- 2 positive, negative
- 3 news
- 4 good things
- 5 language

🎧 6.8

(script in Student Book on pp.129–130)

H = host, A = Andy, J = Julie, Ma = Martin, Mir = Miriam, Mic = Michael

H Our first caller this evening is Andy. Hi, Andy. What's your tip for being positive?

A Hello. Well, I think it's very important to live in the present and not in the past. Don't think about mistakes you made in the past – you can't change things now. The important thing is to think about how you can do things better now and in the future.

H Thank you, Andy. And now we have another caller. What's your name, please?

J Hi, my name's Julie. My tip is: think positive thoughts, not negative ones. We all have negative thoughts sometimes, but when we start having them, we need to stop and try to change them into positive ones. Like, if you have an exam tomorrow and you start thinking,

"I'm sure I'll fail," then you'll fail the exam. So you need to change that negative thought to a positive thought. Just think to yourself, "I'll pass." I do this and it usually works.

H Thank you, Julie. And our next caller is Martin. Hi, Martin.

Ma Hi. My tip is: don't spend a lot of time following the news online or on TV. It's always bad news and it just makes you feel depressed. Read a book or listen to your favorite music instead, and you won't feel so bad.

H Thanks, Martin. Good tip! And our next caller is Miriam. Miriam?

Mir Hi.

H Hi, Miriam. What's your tip?

Mir Every week, make a list of all the good things that happened to you, on your phone or on a piece of paper. Then if you're feeling a little sad or depressed, read the list and it'll make you feel better.

H Thanks, Miriam. And our last call is from Michael. Hi, Michael. We're listening.

Mic Hi. I think it's good to try to use positive language when you speak to other people. You know, if your friend has a problem, don't say "I'm sorry" or "Oh, you poor thing." Say something positive, like "Don't worry! Everything'll be OK." That way you'll make the other person think more positively about their problem.

H Thank you, Michael. Well, that's all we have time for. A big thank you to all our callers.

- d Play the audio again for Sts to write down extra information, e.g., a reason or an example.
Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then play the audio again.
Check answers (see script 6.8).
Finally, in pairs, small groups, or as a whole class, answer the two questions. For the question *Which tips do you think are the most useful?*, you could get Sts to vote for the best tip with a show of hands.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to listen again with the scripts on pp.129–130, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

5 READING understanding a definition and examples

- a Focus on the photo of the girl. Elicit that she is surrounded by study materials and is stressed because she has an exam the next morning. Tell Sts to read what she is thinking, and with a show of hands, find out if Sts think the girl is an optimist or a pessimist.
- b Give Sts time to read the article and check their answer to a. They should also answer the question *What is "defensive pessimism"?*
Check answers.

ANSWERS

- a She is a pessimist.
b It's a strategy that we use to control anxiety, fear, and worry.

Deal with any other new vocabulary. Model and drill the pronunciation of any tricky words.

- c Now tell Sts to complete the two sentences from the article with the same word.
Check the answer.

ANSWER

wrong

- d Do this as a whole-class activity.

ANSWERS

- 1 The printer isn't working.
- 2 You have the incorrect number.
- 3 There were no problems on our trip.

- e Focus on the task and make sure Sts understand what they have to do.

When Sts have finished reading the article again, either put them in pairs or do it as a whole-class activity.

If Sts worked in pairs, get some feedback.

POSSIBLE ANSWERS

He can leave home early / check what time the bus leaves.
He can check which terminal the flight leaves from in advance.
He can pack carefully / weigh the luggage before he leaves home.
He can take a hoodie or jacket to wear on the plane.
He can take some food of his own, or buy food at the airport.

- f Do this as a whole-class activity and elicit answers from Sts.

6 SPEAKING

Focus on the activity and on the seven questions.

Then focus on the **Responding to predictions** box and go through it with the class. Drill the pronunciation, making sure Sts do not over-stress the word *so* and are clear about the meaning. Point out that the word *so* in *I hope so*, etc., means *yes*, and that *maybe* and *perhaps* have the same meaning.

In pairs, Sts take turns asking and answering each question, giving reasons for their predictions. They should then decide who is more optimistic.

Finally, get some feedback, e.g., ask how many people in the class think they will pass their next English exam.

G will / won't (other uses)

V verb + back: come back, call back, etc.

P word stress: two-syllable verbs

Lesson plan

Sts continue their work on the uses of *will*. In this lesson they learn that as well as making predictions, *will* can be used for making promises, offers, and decisions. The presentation context is an article and a listening about the true story of a couple who fell in love when they were young, lost contact, and found each other again later in life. This is followed by the grammar, presented through some humorous offers, promises, and decisions, and a pronunciation focus on stress in two-syllable verbs, e.g., *promise*, *decide*. Next, in Vocabulary, Sts focus on the use of certain verbs with *back* (*come back*, *take back*, etc.), which they then put into practice with a group speaking activity. Finally, Sts learn about colloquial language and write social media messages.

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar will / won't (other uses) p.200

Communicative Guess my sentence p.245 (instructions p.224)

For students

Workbook 6B

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Write *promises* on the board and elicit its meaning. Teach / Elicit that you can *make a promise* and then *keep or break a promise*.

Ask *What promises do people in love often make?* Try to elicit some promises and write them on the board, e.g., *I'll always love you / I'll never leave you / I'll marry you*, etc. Then ask Sts if they think people keep or break these promises.

1 READING & LISTENING understanding the events in a story

- Books open. Focus on the task and the two photos. Elicit answers for the two questions from the class. They will find out if they were right later in the lesson.
- Now tell Sts to read the article and answer questions 1–4. Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

- They met when Mark went to study at a school near where Penny lived.
- Penny's father forced Mark to end their relationship, and although he didn't want to, he did.
- Penny dropped out of college, and got married and divorced twice. Mark finished his degree and managed hotels around the world.
- Because Penny changed her last name when she married.

Deal with any other new vocabulary, e.g., elicit the meaning of *boarding school* and *split up*.

Model and drill the pronunciation of any tricky words.

- Focus on the task and tell Sts they are now going to find out what happened to Penny and Mark in the time between the two photos. Tell Sts to look at questions 1–4. Play the audio for Sts to listen and answer the questions. Then play it again if necessary.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

- Mark found a picture of Penny on Facebook.
- Penny was sad and angry.
- Penny went to the Bahamas to meet Mark.
- Mark asked Penny to marry him and she is going to move to the Bahamas.

6.9

(script in Student Book on p.130)

H = host, M = Mark, P = Penny

H At the end of twenty nineteen, Mark was still looking for Penny. Then he found a picture on Facebook.

M I wasn't sure, but I thought it was a photo of Penny, so I messaged the woman, and I asked, "Is this Penny?" Penny didn't use Facebook much, so she didn't see my message immediately. But then she replied. And it was her!

P Mark told me for the first time what had happened at university. I feel very sad and angry about it. I think my father didn't want a Black son-in-law, so he told himself he was doing the right thing. Now, attitudes to race have changed a lot.

H The couple couldn't travel to see each other at that time because of the Covid nineteen pandemic. They waited eighteen months, and in June twenty twenty-one, Penny finally went to the Bahamas, where they met again, at the ages of sixty and sixty-one.

M When we saw each other for the first time, I cried. I couldn't believe she was here in my arms.

P I hadn't seen him since I was nineteen, but it was as if we'd only been apart for a year. We hadn't changed at all.

H After three amazing weeks with Mark, Penny went back to England. When she returned to the Bahamas in October twenty twenty-one, Mark proposed to her when she got off the plane. Now Penny is going to live in the Bahamas with him.

P I feel like a whole new person. I've never loved anyone the way I love Mark.

M The point we met was not our time. Now, we are looking forward to a really great future.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to listen again with the script on p.130, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

- Put Sts in pairs to discuss the questions.

Get feedback from some pairs. You could join in the class discussion and give your own opinion too.

2 GRAMMAR will / won't (other uses)

- Focus on the sentences and the photos. Elicit / Explain any new words or phrases, e.g., *hurt*. Point out that the photo of the frog relates to the famous saying "You have to kiss a lot of frogs before you find your prince." It means that you might have to have several unsuccessful relationships before finding the right person for you. Now tell Sts to match the sentences to the photos.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 E 2 A 3 B 4 C 5 F 6 D

- b Focus on the instructions and make sure Sts understand *offer* and *promise*. Highlight that they should write the letter of the photo. Point out that the first one (C) has been done for them.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

offering something: C, E

deciding something: A, F

promising something: B, D

- c Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 6B** on p.144.

Grammar notes

Sts shouldn't worry about being able to distinguish between an offer, a promise, or a decision. Depending on the context, *I'll help you tomorrow* could be an offer, a promise, or a decision.

In some languages the present tense is used for offers and decisions. Highlight that in English you say *I'll help you*. NOT *help you*.

Focus on the example sentences and play audio 6.10 for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the exercises for **6B** on p.145. Sts do the exercises individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts, in pairs, to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

a 1 I 2 H 3 A 4 B 5 C 6 D 7 F 8 E

b 1 'I'll help 2 won't tell 3 'I'll call 4 'I'll...pay
5 won't forget 6 'I'll take 7 'I'll get 8 won't buy

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **6B**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **6B Grammar photocopiable activity**.

- d Focus on the task and give Sts time to write their sentences. Monitor and help. Correct any errors with *will* and *won't*.
Now put Sts in pairs and get them to read their sentences to each other.
Find out if anyone wrote exactly the same as their partner.

3 PRONUNCIATION word stress: two-syllable verbs

- a Focus on the activity and give Sts, in pairs, time to put the two-syllable verbs in the correct columns.
- b 6.11 Tell Sts they are going to hear the verbs being used in sentences. First, they will hear all the verbs that are stressed on the first syllable.
Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.
Check answers. You might want to point out that most two-syllable verbs are stressed on the second syllable.

ANSWERS

1st syllable: offer, promise, borrow, happen, practice

2nd syllable: decide, agree, arrive, complain, depend, forget, invite, prefer, receive, repair

6.11

First syllable

We'll offer him the job.

I promise to come.

Can I borrow your car?

It'll never happen.

Please practice the sentences.

Second syllable

We'll decide later.

I don't agree.

When do you arrive?

They complain about everything.

It'll depend on the weather.

Don't forget your keys.

Let's invite her.

Which do you prefer?

You'll receive it in a week.

Can you repair this, please?

- c 6.12 Tell Sts that this time they will only hear the verbs and they must listen and repeat them. Either tell Sts to look at the list of verbs in **a**, or get them to close their books.

Play the audio for Sts to practice saying the verbs, making sure they stress them clearly.

6.12

See the verbs in Student Book on p.51

EXTRA CHALLENGE Divide the class into small groups. Tell Sts you are going to give them a verb from **a**, and in their groups they must write a sentence, as quickly as possible, using it. The sentence must have a minimum of five words in it. When they are ready, they should read the sentence out loud. If the sentence is correct and their pronunciation is good, they get a point.

- d Give Sts time to complete sentences 1–5 in their own words.
Now put Sts in pairs and get them to read their sentences to each other.
Find out if anyone wrote exactly the same as their partner.

4 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING verb + back

- a Here Sts learn / review some common verbs with *back*, e.g., *go back*, *pay (somebody) back*. Focus on the question and elicit the answer.

ANSWER

go = to move or travel from one place to another

go back = to return to a place

Vocabulary notes

The key thing for Sts to understand is that by adding *back* to a verb, they are adding the sense of "returning" an action.

You may want to point out that the object pronoun (*it*, *them*, etc.) goes between the verb and *back*, e.g., *give it back*, *send them back*. Word order with these kinds of verbs + prepositions / adverbs (phrasal verbs) is dealt with in detail in **10B**.

Other verbs + *back* that you could also teach are *get back* (= return to where you started from, or return home), *write back*, *walk back*, etc.

- b** Focus on the phrases in the list. Demonstrate *give back* by giving something to a student and then saying *Give it back, please*.
Give Sts a couple of minutes to read 1–6 and complete them with a phrase from the list.
- c** **6.13** Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.
Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 come back 2 take it back 3 call you back 4 give it back
5 pay you back 6 send them back

6.13

See conversations in Student Book on p.51 and answer key

Deal with any new vocabulary, e.g., check Sts know that a *Zoom meeting* is a virtual / online meeting. Get Sts to practice the conversations in pairs.

- d** Focus on the **Giving examples and reasons** box and go through it with the class.
Now focus on the task and make sure that Sts understand the questions.
Put Sts into groups of three or four and get them to discuss 1–6.
Monitor and help while Sts are talking.
Get some feedback from the class.

EXTRA SUPPORT Demonstrate the activity by answering a couple of questions yourself.

5 WRITING social media messages

Tell Sts to go to **Writing Bank 6** on p.120.

- a** Focus on the instructions. Give Sts time to read the two social media messages.
Elicit what the two events are (Amol is going rock climbing, Maya is going to the theme park).
Have a show of hands to find out which event Sts would prefer. Ask individual Sts for the reason why.
Deal with any new vocabulary.
- b** Now get Sts to read the messages again and complete the chart.
Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

	Amol	Maya
What's the reason for the event?	birthday	exams being over
How are they celebrating?	rock climbing (barbecue and swimming)	theme park
What date is the event?	May 28	July 3
Where are they meeting?	activity center	Maya's house
Where are they going to eat?	by the river	park picnic area
What do they need to bring?	swimming things	food to share

- c** Focus on the **Colloquial language** box and go through it with the class. Check Sts understand that *colloquial* = very informal. You could tell Sts that using capital letters adds emphasis and if you were speaking, it's like shouting the word(s).
Focus on the highlighted words and phrases in Maya's message.

EXTRA SUPPORT Elicit which part of the **Colloquial language box** each highlighted phrase is an example of.

Give Sts time to rewrite the sentences. Then get them to compare with a partner.

Check answers. You might want to tell Sts that *guys*, like *everyone*, refers to a group of people who could all be the same gender or different (although *guy*, singular, refers to a man).

ANSWERS

- 1 **Can't wait** to go on vacation.
2 **Meet** at the train station.
3 **Exams are OVER**. Hooray!
4 **Hi guys!**
5 There are **loads of** things to see.
6 Then **it's lunch** at Pomodora.

- d** Go through the list of events, checking Sts know what they are. Tell them to choose an event from the list or think of something else. Focus on the chart in **b** as a guide for their notes. Give Sts time to plan the details of their message.

EXTRA SUPPORT Put Sts in pairs to choose an event and make notes.

- e** Get Sts to do the writing in class or assign it as homework. Remind them to refer to the **Colloquial language** box.
- f** Make sure Sts check their messages for mistakes before turning them in.

EXTRA IDEA Get Sts to exchange their messages in small groups, read them, and decide which event they'd like to go to. Get feedback from some individual Sts.

G review of verb forms: present, past, and future

V modifiers

P the letters *ea* and *ear*

Lesson plan

The final lesson in File 6 provides a consolidation of the verb forms studied in the first half of the book. Present, past, and future forms are reviewed through the context of interpreting dreams. Although the lesson provides a lighthearted look at dreams, the symbols and their interpretations have been taken from serious sources. Sts begin by watching a video of a visit to a psychoanalyst who interprets a patient's dream. After focusing on and reviewing different forms that are used in the conversation, Sts get the chance to ask and answer questions using all the verb forms they have studied. Then there is a vocabulary focus on modifiers like *fairly*, *really*, and *incredibly*. In Pronunciation, Sts look at the possible pronunciations of the letters *ea* and *ear*, and the lesson ends with a video listening about the meaning of dreams.

Video material

Listening – *An appointment with Dr. Stone* (Parts 1–3)

Listening – *What do our dreams really mean?* (extracts, full video)

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar review of verb forms: present, past, and future p.201

Communicative Talk about it p.246 (instructions p.224)

For students

Workbook 6C

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Ask Sts if they had any dreams last night. If they say *yes*, elicit from three or four Sts what they dreamed about (just the subject, not the details), e.g., *I dreamed I was falling / about my exams*. Write the dreams on the board and quickly ask the class if they know what the dreams mean. Accept any reasonable explanations, and tell them they are going to find out more about the meaning of dreams in the lesson.

1 LISTENING interpreting from visual clues

- a** Books open. Focus on the questions. Put Sts in pairs and get them to discuss the questions.
Get some feedback from various pairs. You could answer a couple of questions, too.
- b** ▶ This video is a drama where a psychoanalyst interprets a patient's dream. It is in three parts. In **Part 1** the patient describes his dream, in **Part 2** the psychoanalyst interprets everything except the last bit of the dream, and in **Part 3** she interprets the end.

Focus on the instructions and the photo. Check Sts know the meaning and pronunciation of *patient* /'peɪʃnt/. Go through the list and check Sts know all the words.

Play the video for Sts to watch and number the things in the list in the order the patient mentions them.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

1 a party 2 flowers 3 a violin 4 an owl 5 cold feet



See script in Student Book on p.52 and answer key for c

- c** Focus on the conversation and give Sts a few minutes to read it.

Elicit the answer to the first verb (*doing*) and ask Sts what tense is used there (past continuous). Then give Sts time to complete the other verbs. Highlight that the form of the verb will vary depending on the tense of the verb.

EXTRA SUPPORT Put Sts in pairs to do the task.

Play the video again for Sts to watch and check.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 doing 2 talking 3 were 4 couldn't 5 playing
6 saw 7 feel 8 remember 9 woke 10 wearing
11 had 12 mean

- d** Tell Sts that they are going to try to understand the man's dream. In pairs, they must match the things in his dream in the **You dream...** part of the box to interpretations 1–4 in **This means...**

Get Sts to compare with a partner.

- e** ▶ The next part of the video shows Dr. Stone interpreting the patient's dream. Focus on the photo and ask Sts how they think the patient is feeling.

Play the video for Sts to watch and check all answers.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

2 that you're at a party
1 about flowers
3 that somebody's playing the violin
4 about an owl



P = patient, D = doctor

P So, what does it mean, Doctor?

D Well, first, the party. A party is a group of people. This means that you're going to meet a lot of people. I think you're going to be very busy.

P At work?

D Yes, at work...you work in an office, I think?

P Yes, that's right.

D I think the party means you're going to have lots of meetings.

And that maybe, in the future, you'll have a meeting with your boss, about a possible promotion?

P Well, it's possible. I hope so...What about the garden and the flowers? Do they mean anything?

D Yes. Flowers are a positive symbol. So, the flowers mean that you are feeling positive about the future. So, perhaps, you already knew about this possible promotion?

P No, I didn't. But it's true, I am very happy at work, and I feel very positive about my future. That's not where my problems are. My problems are with my love life. Does my dream tell you anything about that?

D Mm, yes, it does. You're single, aren't you?

P Yes, well, divorced.

D Because the violin music tells me you want some romance in your life – you're looking for a partner perhaps?

P Yes, yes, I am. In fact, I met a woman last month. I really like her...I think I'm in love with her. I'm meeting her tonight.

D In your dream you saw an owl in a tree?

P Yes, an owl...a big owl.

D The owl represents a wise person. I think you'll need to ask this wise person for help. Maybe this "wise person" is me? Maybe you need my help?

P Well, yes, what I want to know is, does this woman...love me?

f  Focus on the task and elicit a few ideas from Sts about the meaning of *cold feet* in the patient's dream. You could write some of the ideas on the board.

Now play the video for Sts to watch.

Check the answer.

ANSWER

The woman doesn't love him.



P What I want to know is, does this woman...love me?

D You remember the end of your dream? You were feeling cold?

P Yes, my feet were very cold.

D Well...I think perhaps you already know the answer to your question.

P You mean she doesn't love me.

D No, I don't think so. I think you will need to find somebody else. I'm sorry.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

2 GRAMMAR review of verb forms

a Look at the sentences and explain that they come from the video conversation, and are examples of the different tenses and forms Sts have studied so far.

Elicit which one is in the present perfect (3). Then give Sts, in pairs, a few minutes to decide what time the other sentences refer to.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 P 2 P 3 PP 4 F 5 Pr 6 F 7 Pr 8 F

b Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 6C** on p.144.

Grammar notes

Sts should by now be reasonably confident with the simple present and continuous, the simple past, and *be going to*. With the new forms and tenses, how quickly they assimilate them will depend to a large extent on whether they have a similar form in their L1. Don't over-correct mistakes, but encourage Sts to use these tenses where appropriate and to get the form correct.

Focus on the example sentences and play audio  **6.14** for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the exercises for **6C** on p.145. Sts do the exercises individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

a 1 Do 2 Did 3 will 4 Have 5 Does 6 are 7 Was
8 Were 9 Has

b 1 're having 2 had 3 want 4 'll buy 5 have...been
6 was walking 7 decided 8 saw 9 're going to be / are
10 've already called 11 'll be

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **6C**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **6C Grammar** photocopiable activity.

3 SPEAKING

Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**. Tell Sts to go to **Communication Review questionnaire, A** on p.105, **B** on p.111.

Go through the instructions with them carefully and make sure Sts know what they have to do. You could tell Sts that the questions practice all the tenses they have studied so far, and that each student has one question for each tense. Give Sts time to interview each other, making sure they ask for more information.

Monitor and help while Sts are talking.

Get some feedback from the class.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **6C**.

4 VOCABULARY modifiers

a In this activity Sts review / learn some useful modifiers.

Focus on the two examples in the chart.

Now make sure Sts understand that they have to complete the chart with the words in the list in order. Elicit the first one (*incredibly*) from the whole class.

b  **6.15** Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers.

6.15

- 1 The room was **incredibly** dark.
- 2 The room was **really** dark.
- 3 The room was **very** dark.
- 4 The room was **fairly** dark.
- 5 The room was **a little bit** dark.
- 6 The room was **not very** dark.

Focus on the **a little (bit)** box and go through it with the class.

Vocabulary notes

You may want to highlight that:

- *incredibly* /ɪnˈkrɛdəbli/ has the stress on the second syllable
- *really* is a little stronger than *very*. Compare *She's very well* and *She's really well*
- *fairly* means an intermediate amount – neither a lot nor a little

- c Give Sts time to complete the sentences so that they are true for them, and then get them to compare their answers with a partner, as shown in the example.

EXTRA SUPPORT Complete one or two of the sentences yourself as an example.

Get some feedback from the class.

5 PRONUNCIATION the letters *ea* and *ear*

Pronunciation notes

The combination of vowels *ea* has several possible pronunciations.

The most common is /i/, e.g., *tree*. /ɛ/ is less common, e.g., *breakfast*. /eɪ/ is very rare, and the only common *ea* words with this sound are *great*, *break*, and *steak*.

ear can also be pronounced in different ways. The most common pronunciation is /ɪr/, e.g., *near*, but can also be /ɛr/ as in *wear* and /ə/ as in *heard*, *early*.

ear pronounced /ɑr/ as in *heart* is very unusual.

- a Focus on the activity and the chart. Elicit the six sound picture words and the sounds: *tree* /i/, *egg* /ɛ/, *train* /eɪ/, *chair* /ɛr/, *ear* /ɪr/, and *bird* /ər/.

Now tell Sts to put the words in the list in the correct column. Remind Sts that this kind of exercise is easier to do if they say the words aloud.

Get Sts to compare with a partner.

- b 6.16 Play the audio for Sts to listen and check. Check answers.

6.16

tree /i/ dream, mean, beach, clean, easy, jeans, meat, really, speak

egg /ɛ/ already, breakfast, sweater, weather

train /eɪ/ break, great

chair /ɛr/ wear

ear /ɪr/ clear, dear, fear, hear, near

bird /ər/ earn, learn

Then play it again, pausing after each word or group of words for Sts to listen and repeat.

Now ask Sts what the most common pronunciation of the letters *ea* and *ear* are.

ANSWERS

a /i/ b /ɪr/

- c 6.17 Tell Sts they are going to hear four sentences and they must write them down.

Play the audio once the whole way through for Sts just to listen.

Now play the audio again, pausing after each sentence to give Sts time to write.

Check answers.

6.17

- 1 What does my dream about the beach mean?
- 2 We've already had breakfast.
- 3 Great – it's time for a break.
- 4 Oh dear! I hear nobody is near to help us!

Finally, put Sts in pairs and get them to practice saying the sentences.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Put Sts in pairs and get them to write three more sentences with the words in a. They should then practice saying the sentences. You could then get pairs to exchange sentences and practice saying the new sentences.

6 LISTENING using visual clues to understand key topics

- a Tell Sts that they're going to watch a video about common dreams and what they mean (first some extracts and second the whole video).

Focus on the instructions.

Play the video extracts and ask Sts to match them to A–E.

Get Sts to compare their ideas with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

A 2 B 4 C 1 D 5 E 3

- b Give Sts time to read the sentences, making sure they understand them.

Then play the video for Sts to complete the sentences.

You could pause after each dream to check answers.

Get some feedback from various pairs.

ANSWERS

Dream 1: decision, friend

Dream 2: trip, talk

Dream 3: confidence, ability

Dream 4: successful, future

Dream 5: strong, love

What do our dreams really mean?

Meet Tom. Like everyone, Tom likes to get a good night's sleep. And like us all, Tom has about five separate dreams every night. These dreams can last between fifteen and forty minutes. According to experts, our dreams tell us who we are, what we need, and what we believe in, so, for Tom and for everyone else, here is a guide to the most common dreams and their meanings.

Dream one: Somebody is running after you.

If you have this dream, it means something is worrying you in real life. Something like a difficult decision or a difficult situation with a friend or a colleague. People often have this dream again and again until they make the decision or deal with the situation that is worrying them.

Dream two: You can't find something you need.

Dreaming about losing something and trying to find it again is a surprisingly common dream. It usually means that you're worried about something stressful that you need to do soon, like going on a long trip or giving a talk in public. In these situations, people sometimes dream about losing their passport or tickets, or losing their notes or thumb drive.

Dream three: You're unprepared for an exam.

This one is common for young adults or children who are under stress, and it can feel very real. Sometimes you can wake up sure that you've just failed an important exam or test. If you're not taking any exams in real life, this dream could mean that you don't have enough confidence in your ability to do something.

Dream four: You're flying or falling.

Another very common dream is the flying dream. Sometimes people dream that they are in control. If you feel in control, it means that your life is successful. Perhaps you've just passed an important exam,

or your boss has given you a promotion. But usually, people dream that they're out of control, and falling. This means the opposite – your life isn't going well, and you're worried about what's going to happen in the future.

Dream five: You're underwater.

If you dream that you're underwater, but you're feeling happy and comfortable and you can still breathe, it could mean you have very strong feelings for someone. You're probably in love!

Sometimes, dreams come true, but more often, they don't.

Sweet dreams!

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

- c Ask Sts to discuss the questions in groups or as a class.
Get some feedback from various Sts.

For instructions on how to use these pages, see p.49.

Video material

Can you understand these people? 5&6

More materials

For teachers

Oxford English Hub

Quick Test 6

File 6 Test

Progress Test Files 1–6

GRAMMAR

ANSWERS

1 a 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 c 6 c 7 b 8 a 9 b 10 b 11 a
12 c 13 a 14 b 15 b

VOCABULARY

ANSWERS

a 1 Two-thirds 2 five hundred and fifty 3 lend
4 coming back 5 teaching
b 1 sell 2 pull 3 forget 4 fail 5 lose
c 1 crowded 2 safe 3 noisy 4 hill 5 tower 6 palace
7 harbor 8 bones 9 heart 10 disease
d 1 Very 2 incredibly 3 little (bit) 4 really 5 fairly

PRONUNCIATION

ANSWERS

c
1 much /ʌ/ 2 many /ɛ/ 3 enough /f/ 4 why /w/
5 wear /ɛr/
d
1 impatient 2 easiest 3 optimist 4 depend 5 forget

CAN YOU understand this text?

ANSWERS

a
She shouted "Tell them about the dream, Martin. Tell them about the dream" when he was speaking in Washington.
b

1 E 2 F 3 B 4 A 5 C

CAN YOU understand these people?

ANSWERS

1 b 2 c 3 c 4 b 5 a



1 Katelyn

I = interviewer, K = Katelyn

I Do you have more free time than three years ago?

K I actually definitely do have more free time than I did a couple of years ago. So, I actually just graduated from college. This is my first year working full-time, so working nine to five frees up your evenings, so definitely more free time than before.

2 Susie

I = interviewer, S = Susie

I What's the most beautiful city you've ever been to?

S That's such a good question. Um, I think probably Athens.

I Why?

S It's, it's just, it's absolutely gorgeous – the Acropolis, the Parthenon, the sights are beautiful. Yeah, it's the best place to go.

3 Anna

I = interviewer, A = Anna

I What do you drink in a typical day?

A In a typical day I usually just drink, uh, a lot of coffee and water, sometimes juice.

I Is there anything you drink too much of?

A I probably drink too much coffee.

I Is there anything you don't drink enough of?

A I don't drink enough water most days, but I'm trying to get better.

4 Laura

I = interviewer, L = Laura

I Are you an optimist or a pessimist?

L I am a realist. Um, yeah, more pessimistic than optimistic.

5 Paula

I = interviewer, P = Paula

I Do you often dream about the same thing?

P Yes, I do. I had a really, really awful teacher at high school for history, and she was always really mean. And when I finished high school, I always dreamed that she would say, "You will never pass your A levels." And now I always dream of the same teacher from high school telling me, "You will never finish your degree," so that's kind of weird, yeah.

- G** uses of the infinitive
V verbs + infinitive: *try to*, *forget to*, etc.
P weak form of *to*, linking

Lesson plan

The context of this lesson is advice on how to “survive” new and stressful situations. The lesson begins with Sts watching a video that gives advice and tips for international students coming to study in the US. In Vocabulary, the focus is on some high frequency verbs that are followed by the infinitive form, and in Grammar, Sts learn when to use the infinitive form (after certain verbs, after adjectives, etc.). After practicing the grammar, they then read and discuss two different articles called *How to survive working from home*. In Pronunciation, Sts practice the weak form of *to* in phrases using an infinitive and linking, and then ask each other questions containing infinitives in the Speaking practice. Finally, in Writing they write their own *How to Survive* article.

Video material

Listening & Reading – *How to survive coming to study in the US*

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar uses of the infinitive p.202
Communicative *I'm going to tell you about...* p.247
 (instructions p.224)

For students

Workbook 7A

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Write *How to survive...* on the board in big letters. Tell Sts that there are websites giving people advice about how to survive many different situations in daily life that might be stressful. Then elicit from Sts stressful situations that they would like to read advice for, and write them on the board.
 You may want to give them a few ideas to start them off, e.g., *a week of exams, a first date*, etc.
 Continue until you have five or six situations. Then ask *What advice would you give?* and elicit ideas.

1 LISTENING & READING using visual clues and text to understand advice; reading on screen

- a** Books open. Focus on the task, and either do it as an open class question or put Sts in pairs to think of important advice.

You could ask if any Sts know someone who is studying / has studied in a different country, and if they enjoyed it.

Divide the board in half. Label one side *Before you go* and the other *When you get there*. Get some ideas from different pairs and write them on the board in the appropriate half.

- b** This video is a documentary giving advice to international students. It has four sections, each with advice that Sts hear, and then with a “top tip” that they read. A lot of TV and video nowadays has a significant amount of text on screen, and this video will give Sts practice in both listening and reading on screen.

If you didn't do the **Optional lead-in**, focus on the title of the video and make sure Sts know the meaning and pronunciation of *survive* /sə'vaɪv/ (= to continue to live in or after a difficult time).

Give Sts time to read the instructions and the headings. Highlight that there are four headings, but five verbs (there is one they don't need).

Play the video for Sts to watch and complete the headings.

Get them to compare with a partner, then check answers.

ANSWERS

1 Pack 2 Get 3 Learn 4 Make

EXTRA IDEA Elicit from the class whether any of the pieces of advice on the board are mentioned in the video.



How to survive coming to study in the US

You have a place to study in the US, you have your visa, you've found accommodations, and you're ready to go. You're very excited – but you also have so many questions! But don't worry. This guide, compiled with the help of many international students, aims to help make your first year in college everything that you have always hoped for. Here are four important tips:

One. Pack intelligently before you come

It's never too early to start packing! Make sure you bring these things:
 • suitable clothes. The US is big and the weather varies in different areas of the country. So research the weather for your school area and pack accordingly.

For example, if your school is in Chicago, bring warm clothes and snow boots. If your school is in Miami, bring shorts and flip-flops!
 • adapters. You can, of course, buy these in the US, but you will probably want to use your laptop and phone immediately.
 • medicine. If you take special medication, bring those you use regularly. You might need an American doctor's prescription to buy them in the US, but you may not want to wait for an appointment.

[text on screen: **Top tip:** Remember to bring personal things that will make you feel at home, like photos or pictures.]

Two. Get to know your city

Before you come, take a good look online at the area where you're going to live, for example, on Google Street View. Then check all the places you would like to visit in your new city. There are lots of ways of making city travel cheaper, like using a contactless payment method such as OMNY on public transportation in New York City. You can also get a discount at many places like museums or movie theaters with your student ID card.

[text on screen: **Top tip:** In your first week, go for a long walk around the area where you live. Check to find the bus stops and any useful stores and cafés or restaurants.]

Three. Learn to manage your money

You may find you have a lot of money in your bank account at the beginning of the semester, but after a few weeks it's all gone! Try to make a spending plan and stick to it. Many students get part-time jobs, for example, in a café, or sometimes on campus. Jobs are also good to put on your résumé, and are good work experience, too.

[text on screen: **Top tip:** Stores on college campuses can be expensive. Go to supermarkets and buy “own brand” products, which are often cheaper. Many cities also have “dollar” stores, where most everything costs one dollar.

Four. Make friends

It can be a little frightening to come to a new country on your own. But don't worry, there are many ways to make friends. All colleges and universities have lots of clubs for all kinds of free-time activities like sports, games, music, and other more unusual things. You can find out about them in the first week of the semester, usually called welcome week or orientation week. If you're homesick, almost all cultures have their own societies, which organize events so you can meet other students from your country.

[text on screen: **Top tip:** Don't stay in your room on your own! Chat with students in your classes or who have rooms near you, and invite them to have coffee or a meal with you. Join clubs or societies for things you already like and things you've never tried.]

So those are four tips for how to survive coming to study in the US. Good luck, and have a great time!

- c Focus on the questions. Give Sts time to read them, and help with any vocabulary problems, e.g., *homesick*. Then play the video again pausing if necessary after the top tips to make sure Sts have had time to read them.

Put Sts in groups of three to answer the questions, remembering the advice and top tips.

Check answers. Sts do not need to give all the information in the top tips but should remember the gist.

ANSWERS

- 1 Suitable clothes, adapters, medicines

Top tip: Remember to bring personal things that will make you feel at home.

- 2 Google Street View, using a payment method such as OMNY on public transportation, student discount in museums and movie theaters

Top tip: In your first week, go for a long walk around the area where you live.

- 3 Make a spending plan and stick to it, get a part-time job.

Top tip: Go to supermarkets and buy "own brand" products or go to "dollar" stores, which are often cheaper.

- 4 College and university clubs, join a society to meet students from your own country.

Top tip: Don't stay in your room on your own. Chat with other students and join clubs and societies.

EXTRA IDEA You could also give Sts more information about some specific US references in the video:

- OMNY: a contactless payment method for public transportation in New York City. You can use a contactless credit or debit card, your smartphone or smart watch, or an OMNY card to tap and pay your fare.
- "Own brand" products: products that supermarkets sell with just their own name on them. They are usually cheaper than other popular brands.
- Dollar stores: stores selling many different products at very low prices.
- Welcome week / Orientation week: the first week of the college year, when new students meet their roommates, classmates, and professors, find out about the college and their degree program, socialize, and join clubs.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

- d Do this as a whole-class activity if Sts are from the same country. If Sts are from different countries, put them in

pairs or small groups and give them time to discuss the question. Then get feedback from some pairs.

2 VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR verbs + infinitive; uses of the infinitive

Vocabulary notes

Although Sts are learning these verbs partly in a grammar context, it's important to make sure that they're clear about what they all mean, e.g., *pretend*, *try*, *decide*, etc., and are also clear about the difference in meaning between *would like* and *like*.

- a Here Sts focus on the verbs before the infinitives. Tell Sts to fill in the blanks in 1–3.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 want 2 Remember 3 Try

- b Tell Sts to go to **Vocabulary Bank Verb forms** on p.166. Focus on **1 Verbs + infinitive**.

Focus on **a** and get Sts to complete the **to + verb** column with the verbs from the list.

7.1 Now do **b**. Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers.

7.1

Verb forms, 1 Verbs + infinitive

- 1 We've decided **to go** to France for our vacation.

- 2 Don't forget **to turn off** all the lights.

- 3 We hope **to see** you again soon.

- 4 I'm learning **to drive**. My test is next month.

- 5 I need **to go** to the supermarket. I don't have any milk.

- 6 He offered **to help** me with my suitcase.

- 7 They're planning **to get married** soon.

- 8 He pretended **to be** sick, but he wasn't really.

- 9 He's promised **to pay** me back when he gets a job.

- 10 Remember **to bring** your dictionaries to class tomorrow.

- 11 It was very cloudy and it started **to rain**.

- 12 I'm trying **to find** a job, but it's very hard.

- 13 I want **to catch** the six o'clock train.

- 14 I'd like **to buy** a new car next month.

Either use the audio to drill the pronunciation of the sentences, or model and drill them yourself. Give further practice of any verbs your Sts find difficult to pronounce. Now do **Activation** and tell Sts, in pairs, to cover the **to + verb** column. They must try to remember and say the full sentences.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **7A**.

- !** The photocopiable vocabulary activity reviews both verbs + infinitive and verbs + gerund, so wait until after the **Vocabulary Bank** in **7B** before using it.

- c Tell Sts to focus on sentences a–c from the video and rules 1–3. They must match a sentence with a rule.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

- a 2 b 3 c 1

- d Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 7A** on p.146.

Grammar notes

The base form is the form that is given in a dictionary. Sts have seen this used in simple present questions and negatives, e.g., *Do you work?* *I didn't work*, and after the modal verb *can*.

Sts should already be familiar with the infinitive used after some verbs such as *want* and *would like*, e.g., *I want to come with you*.

! The infinitive of purpose says why something is or was done, e.g., *I called to say sorry*. It is only used to express an affirmative reason. To express a negative reason we use *in order not to* or *so as not to*, e.g., *We took a taxi so as not to be late*. NOT *We took a taxi not to be late*. At this level it is better not to point this out unless it comes up.

Focus on the example sentences and play audio **7.2** for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. You could highlight that in the examples that are negative, *not* comes before *to* and the verb, not between them. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the **Base form** box and go through it with the class.

Then focus on the exercises in **7A** on p.147. Sts do the exercises individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

a 1 E 2 D 3 F 4 A 5 C

b 1 to meet 2 to do 3 not to be 4 not to make 5 to learn
6 not to drive 7 to look for 8 to pay

EXTRA IDEA Put Sts into small groups. Get them to try to think of at least two answers to each of the questions below, using the infinitive.

Why do people...?

- go to parties
- go on vacation
- go to the gym
- get married
- learn English

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **7A**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **7A Grammar** photocopiable activity.

- e Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**. Tell the **As** that they will be reading the text on the page, and tell the **Bs** to go to **Communication How to survive...** on p.112.

Go through the instructions with Sts carefully, and make sure Sts know what they have to do.

A and **B** read their "How to survive working from home" articles. Give them time to try to memorize the information and deal with any vocabulary problems.

EXTRA SUPPORT You could put two Sts **A** and two Sts **B** together first to read the same article and help each other with new vocabulary and understanding. Then put them in **A / B** pairs for the Communication task.

A then tells **B** the five tips from their article. Then **B** tells **A** the five tips in their article and they decide together which tips are the same in both articles.

Finally, Sts discuss in their pairs which tips are the most important.

When they have finished, check answers and get feedback from some pairs about the most important tips and why they think they are important.

ANSWERS

Both articles include tips about finding the right place / a designated place to work and also about communicating with other people so as not to feel isolated.

EXTRA SUPPORT Tell Sts that they can look at the headings, but encourage them to give as much of the extra information as they can from memory.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Highlight any new vocabulary from the two texts that you think might be useful for your Sts, e.g., (in texts A and B) *work remotely*, *feel isolated*, *productive*; (in text A) *workspace*, *motivated*, *flexible*; (in text B) *distractions*.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **7A**.

3 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING weak form of to, linking

Pronunciation notes

Weak form of to

The word *to* is usually unstressed in a sentence (unless it comes at the end of a question, e.g., *Who are you talking to?*) and is pronounced as a weak form /tə/, e.g., *I never speak to /tə/ Jane*.

Linking

It's important for Sts to be aware of the way two consonant sounds are linked (see information box in the Student Book) as this will help them understand spoken language when this linking occurs.

- a **7.3** Tell Sts to listen to the three sentences and especially to how the word *to* is pronounced.
Play the audio once for Sts just to listen.
Check answer.

ANSWER

to isn't stressed and is pronounced /tə/

7.3

See sentences in Student Book on p.57

- b **7.4** Focus on the **Linking words with the same consonant sound** box and go through it with the class.
Now tell Sts they are going to hear ten questions and they must complete each one with three or four words.
Play the audio, pausing after each question to give Sts time to write. Play again if necessary.
Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers, making sure Sts understand the questions.

7.4

- 1 Have you ever **tried to learn** something new and failed?
- 2 How important is it to know **how to drive**?
- 3 How long do you usually spend deciding **what to wear** in the morning?
- 4 Have you ever **forgotten to turn off** your phone during a class or concert?
- 5 Where are you **hoping to go** for your next vacation?
- 6 Are you **planning to go anywhere** next weekend?
- 7 Would you like **to work or study** in another country?
- 8 Have you ever **pretended to be sick** when you weren't?
- 9 Do you think it's important **to learn to cook** at school?

10 Do you think it's possible to stay friends with an ex-boyfriend or girlfriend?

- c** This speaking activity reinforces the pronunciation presented in **a**, as well as the grammar.
Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**. **A** asks the first five questions to **B**, who answers giving as much information as possible. Then **B** asks the next five questions to **A**.
Get feedback from the class.

EXTRA SUPPORT Get Sts to choose questions to ask you first. Encourage them to ask follow-up questions for more information. You could write a few question words, e.g., *Why? When?, etc.*, on the board to remind them.

4 WRITING an article giving tips

Books closed. Ask Sts if they have ever been on a vacation with their friends. Elicit reasons why vacations with friends might sometimes be stressful. Write them on the board.

Tell Sts to go to **Writing Bank 7** on p.121.

- a** Focus on the instructions. Give Sts time to read the article and write the correct paragraph number next to each word in the list.
Check answers.

ANSWERS

Tip 3: activities

Tip 2: bedrooms

Tip 4: housework

Tip 1: money

- b** Now focus on the **Topic sentences** box and go through it with the class. Elicit what an imperative is and point out the examples. You could ask Sts to look at paragraph 2 of the article and tell you what the imperatives are (*Don't argue, agree, change*).

Now go through the table in **b** with the class. Sts reread the article and complete the table.

Get them to compare with a partner.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

Paragraph 2: Don't argue about who sleeps where. Agree that the person with the best room will pay a little extra. Or change rooms after a few days.

Paragraph 3: Don't force people to visit a museum with you. Accept that some people like sightseeing, but others prefer to sunbathe and read.

Paragraph 4: Agree on a chore list where each day different people do the jobs.

- c** Focus on the instructions. Highlight that the context of the tips is different now – *How to survive your first day at work*. Get Sts to look at the list of verbs. Give them time to complete tips 1–6.
Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 Plan **2** Say **3** Offer **4** ask **5** Don't be, Wait **6** keep

- d** Tell Sts they are going to plan their own *How to survive...* article. They can choose from the topics given. Make pairs of Sts who have chosen the same topic. In their pairs, Sts brainstorm problems, which will be the topic sentences for the paragraphs of the article. Remind them about

topic sentences by focusing on the highlighted sentences in the article.

Monitor and help if necessary, so that all pairs have four problems. Now give the pairs time to make a note of one or more tips for each problem.

- e** Assign the writing task for homework. Remind Sts to use imperatives as shown in the information box.
f Sts check their work for mistakes before turning it in.

- G** uses of the gerund (verb + *-ing*)
V verbs + gerund: *like, can't stand*, etc.
P /ŋ/, /ɪ/ + /k/

Lesson plan

Cartoons about happiness posted on Instagram by two well-known illustrators provide the context for Sts to learn three common uses of the verb + *-ing* form (often called the gerund). The lesson begins with the cartoons, which lead Sts into Vocabulary and Grammar by focusing on common verbs, which are followed by the gerund and other uses of the gerund. Next, Sts listen to a podcast about ways to make yourself feel happier based on advice given by health experts. In Pronunciation, Sts focus on the /ŋ/ sound, and the lesson ends with a speaking activity, in which Sts talk about things they love / like / don't mind, etc., doing.

Video material

Pronunciation – /ŋ/, /ɪ/ + /k/

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar infinitive or gerund? p.203

Communicative Questions with gerunds p.248
(instructions p.224)

Vocabulary Verbs + infinitive and verbs + gerund p.278
(instructions p.267)

For students

Workbook 7B

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Write the following words on the board: *happy sad dark weak*. Ask Sts what kind of word these are, and elicit that they are adjectives. Then tell Sts that by adding four letters to the end of these adjectives, you make them into nouns, and see if anyone comes up with *-ness*. Write the nouns on the board (*happiness, sadness*, etc.), and model and drill pronunciation. You could also teach a few more *-ness* nouns from other adjectives Sts know, e.g., *kindness, laziness*, etc.

1 VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR verbs + gerund, uses of the gerund

Vocabulary notes

Although Sts are learning these verbs partly in a grammar context, it's important to make sure that they're clear about what they all mean, e.g., *go on* (= continue), *feel like* (= want to have or do sth), etc.

- a** Books open. Put Sts in pairs and get them to discuss the questions. You could answer the questions yourself first. Get some feedback from various pairs.

EXTRA SUPPORT Do this as a whole-class activity.

- b** Focus on the text and the cartoons. Tell Sts to read the text once and then check the cartoons they agree with most.

Get some feedback. You could tell Sts which ones you agree with most.

- c** Elicit the answer from the class.

ANSWER

The *-ing* form is used after "stop" in the cartoon.

Elicit any other verbs Sts know that are followed by a verb in the *-ing* form – they should remember *like, love, hate*, and *mind*.

- d** Here Sts learn some other common verbs that take the gerund. Tell Sts to go to **Vocabulary Bank Verb forms** on p.166 and look at **2 Verbs + gerund (verb + -ing)**.

Focus on **a** and get Sts to complete the **gerund** column with the verbs from the list.

- 7.5** Now do **b**. Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers.

7.5

Verb forms, 2 Verbs + gerund

- 1 I enjoy **reading** in bed.
- 2 Have you finished **cleaning up** your room?
- 3 I want to go on **working** until I'm seventy.
- 4 I hate **being** late when I'm meeting someone.
- 5 I like **having** breakfast in a café.
- 6 I love **waking up** early on a sunny morning.
- 7 I don't mind **doing** the ironing. It's very relaxing.
- 8 She spends hours **talking** on the phone.
- 9 It started **raining** at five thirty in the morning.
- 10 Please stop **making** so much noise. I can't think.
- 11 I don't feel like **cooking** today. Let's go out for lunch.

Now either use the audio to drill the pronunciation of the sentences, or model and drill them yourself. Give further practice of any verbs your Sts find difficult to pronounce. Remind Sts that *I don't mind (doing something)* = although I don't enjoy it, it isn't a problem for me. Point out the asterisks by *hate, like, love*, and *start*, and tell Sts that these verbs can be used with a gerund or infinitive with no big difference in meaning, e.g., *It started raining* or *It started to rain*.

Now do **Activation** and tell Sts, in pairs, to cover the **gerund** column. They must try and remember the full sentences.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **7B**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **7A and 7B Vocabulary photocopiable activity**.

- e** Focus on the task. Either put Sts in pairs or do this as a whole-class activity.
If Sts worked in pairs, check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 a bird landing close without seeing you
- 2 being the first up; finding money in jeans you haven't worn in a while; getting your old password right on the first guess; your favorite team winning at the last minute; taking off your boots after a long hike
- 3 not seeing any dirty dishes in the sink

- f** Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 7B** on p.146.

Grammar notes

It is very likely that in your Sts' L1, an infinitive form will be used in places where English uses an *-ing* form.

! In American English it is much more common to use the infinitive after *like*, *love*, and *hate*, especially when you are speaking about general likes and dislikes. However, a gerund can often be used without any real difference in meaning, and British English uses the gerund.

Spelling rules

You may want to point out that two-syllable verbs that are stressed on the last syllable also double the final consonant, e.g., *begin* – *beginning*, *prefer* – *preferring*.

Gerund or infinitive?

Sts are asked to discriminate between the gerund and infinitive in the second exercise in the **Grammar Bank**. Before doing it, you could get Sts to quickly look again at the rules for both (see **Grammar Bank 7A p.146**).

Focus on the example sentences and play audio 7.6 for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the exercises for **7B** on p.147. Sts do the exercises individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

- a 1 swimming 2 practicing 3 remembering 4 Making
5 messaging 6 not knowing 7 Traveling 8 studying
b 1 Doing 2 to pay 3 to park 4 giving 5 to get
6 raining 7 cooking, doing 8 loading

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **7B**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **7B Grammar photocopiable activity**.

- g Tell Sts they are going to write a sentence similar to the ones in **b**. Write *Happiness is...* on the board and tell Sts they should write between five and ten words about their idea of happiness.

EXTRA IDEA If your Sts like drawing, you could ask them to illustrate their text.

- h When Sts have finished writing, put them in small groups (of three or four). Tell Sts to read their sentences to the rest of their group. When they have finished reading all of them, they should give their opinion.
Get some feedback from various groups. If Sts have illustrated their work, you could put it up on the wall.

2 LISTENING & SPEAKING understanding official advice and supporting detail

- a Focus on the instructions and the task. Put Sts in pairs to decide which six tips they think they will hear. Tell them to think about where the advice is coming from when they choose their answers. Elicit ideas from the class, but don't tell them if they are right or not.
b 7.7 Focus on the task. Play the audio once the whole way through.
Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 3 Boost your self-esteem
2 Enjoy yourself

- 4 Have a healthy lifestyle
6 Learn to deal with your problems
1 Manage your stress levels
5 Talk to other people

7.7

(script in Student Book on p.130)

How to be happier

Happiness is very important for our mental health. These six tips will help you be happier, more in control, and stronger in difficult times.

Tip one: Manage your stress levels.

If you have a lot of stress in your life, organizing your time better will help you stay in control. Plan regular exercise and make time for yourself every day. Do slow-breathing exercises to help you relax.

Tip two: Enjoy yourself.

Doing things that you enjoy is very good for you. Simple activities like watching sports with a friend, taking a hot bath, or meeting friends for coffee can all improve your day. Doing something that you're good at, for example, cooking or dancing, is also a good way not only to enjoy yourself, but also to feel positive about yourself. Try to avoid things that seem enjoyable at the time, but make you feel worse afterward, for example, going to bed very late or eating junk food.

Tip three: Boost your self-esteem.

Self-esteem is the way you feel about yourself. The best way to improve your self-esteem is to treat yourself the same way you would treat a good friend – in a positive, but honest, way. Control negative thoughts. Don't say to yourself, "You're so stupid for not getting that job." Instead think, "Would I say that to my best friend?" You probably wouldn't. Tell yourself something positive, for example, "You're an intelligent person, you'll definitely get the next job."

Tip four: Have a healthy lifestyle.

Make healthy choices. A balanced diet that includes the main food groups helps your brain and body work efficiently. Doing moderate exercise releases chemicals in your brain that make you feel happier, and help you sleep better, have more energy, and keep your heart healthy. Choose an exercise that you enjoy. If it helps, do it with a friend or listening to music.

Tip five: Talk to other people.

Communication is important, whether it's with a friend, a family member, or even a therapist. Talking about things and sharing your feelings helps you release tension. It also helps to make your relationships stronger, and to connect with people.

Tip six: Learn to deal with your problems.

Resilience is what allows you to cope with life's ups and downs. Making something good out of bad times helps you build your resilience. If you're going through a difficult time, try making something creative out of your bad experiences. Things like writing, painting, or singing can help you express your worries and see light at the end of the tunnel.

- c Focus on the questions and go through them with Sts.
Then play the audio again for Sts to listen and take notes.
Get Sts to compare their answers with a partner, and play the audio again if necessary, pausing after each tip.
Check answers.

ANSWERS

- Tip 1:** Organize your time better: plan regular exercise; make time for yourself; do slow-breathing exercises.
Tip 2: Simple activities that you enjoy (e.g., watching sports, taking a hot bath, meeting friends for coffee); activities that you're good at (e.g., cooking, dancing). You shouldn't do things that make you feel worse afterward (e.g., going to bed very late or eating junk food).
Tip 3: Treat yourself as you would a good friend, and tell yourself positive things.
Tip 4: A balanced diet and moderate exercise
Tip 5: It helps you release tension, make your relationships stronger, and connect with people. You can talk to a friend, family member, or therapist.
Tip 6: Writing, painting, or singing. They can help you express your worries and see light at the end of the tunnel.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to listen again with the script on p.130, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

- d Put Sts in pairs and get them to discuss the questions.
Get some feedback from various pairs. You could also get Sts to ask you the questions.

3 PRONUNCIATION /ŋ/, /ɪŋ/ + /k/

Pronunciation notes

-ing at the end of a word, as in the gerund, is always pronounced /ɪŋ/. Sts often need practice making this sound as they may not have it in their language.

Sts often have problems with the different pronunciations of the letter o in *going* and *doing*.

- a  Focus on the sound picture and elicit the word and sound (*singer* /ŋ/).
Play **Part 1** of the video for Sts to watch and repeat the sound and words.
If necessary, play the video again. Elicit the answer to the question.

ANSWER

In *doing* "o" is pronounced /u/ and in *going* "o" is pronounced /ou/.



See sound and words in Student Book on p.59

- b  Focus on the sound pictures and elicit the two words and sounds (*singer* /ŋ/ and *key* /k/).
Play **Part 2** of the video for Sts to listen and repeat the sounds and words.



See sounds and words in Student Book on p.59

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

- c  **7.8** Focus on the pairs of words in 1–4 and make sure Sts know what they mean.

Tell Sts they are going to hear all the words and they should try to notice the difference between them.

Now play the audio once the whole way through for Sts just to listen. Then play it again and get Sts to repeat the words and sounds.



7.8

See words in Student Book on p.59

- d  **7.9** Tell Sts they are going to hear one of the words in each pair in c used in a sentence. They just have to decide if it is a or b.

Play the audio once the whole way through, pausing after each sentence. Play it again if necessary.

Check answers.



7.9

1 The news about the **bank** really surprised me.

2 One **thing** I hate about supermarkets is standing in the check-out line.

3 Please, could you put the dirty dishes in the **sink**?

4 I think you have a message. I just heard your phone **ping**.

EXTRA IDEA You could teach more pairs of words with the same pronunciation pattern as those in c. Model and drill. Explain or translate any new words.

bring – brink

bling – blink

cling – clink

king – kink

ring – rink

sting – stink

wing – wink

sung – sunk

4 SPEAKING

- a Here Sts get some oral practice of the new vocabulary and grammar. Focus on the task. Highlight that Sts only have to choose five things they want to talk about from the ten possibilities. Give them a minute to choose their five things.

! Highlight that *dream of* is used for daydreaming, i.e., something we would love to do; *dream about* is used for dreaming while actually asleep, e.g., *I dreamed about you last night*.

EXTRA SUPPORT Sts could write down their answers to help prepare them for the speaking.

- b Demonstrate the activity by choosing a few things from the list in a and talking about them yourself. Encourage the class to ask you for more information, e.g., *Why (not)?*
In pairs, **A** tells **B** their five things and **B** asks for more information.

When Sts **A** have finished, get them to change roles.

Monitor and help while Sts are talking. Correct Sts if they use an infinitive instead of an -ing form.

Get some feedback from the class.

EXTRA IDEA Get fast finishers to choose more topics to talk about.

- G** *have to, don't have to, must, must not, can't*
V adjectives + prepositions: *afraid of*, etc.
P stress on prepositions

Lesson plan

The title and main context of this lesson were inspired by a news article, where an experiment was done to see how well someone could learn a foreign language in just a month. When the month was up, the person traveled to the country itself and carried out a series of tasks to see how much they had learned. The lesson begins with Sts speaking about whether they use English outside the classroom. Then Sts read an article about Americans' problems learning foreign languages, and an experiment to see how much Spanish an American student, Max, could learn in a month. Next is a grammatical focus on verbs expressing obligation: *have to / don't have to, must / must not*, and *can't*. Then Sts listen to hear how Max did in Puerto Rico when his course finished and he did the challenges themselves. The Vocabulary and Pronunciation focus is on common adjective + preposition combinations, e.g., *bad at, afraid of*, etc., as well as stress on prepositions.

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar have to, don't have to, must, must not, can't p.204
Communicative In the US p.249 (instructions p.225)

For students

Workbook 7C

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Ask Sts what rules there are in their class, and elicit their ideas, writing them on the board in imperatives, e.g.,
Do homework every day.
Don't miss classes.
Turn off your phone.
Don't speak in (Sts' L1), etc.
 You could leave these up on the board to be referred to later. Then ask Sts which two they think are the most important.

1 SPEAKING

Books open. Here Sts do a short speaking activity based on their experience of using English. Quickly run through the questions before Sts start.

Put Sts in small groups and get them to discuss the questions. Encourage them to use *What about you?* to return the question after they have answered.

Get some feedback from various groups about their experiences. You could also tell them a little about your experience of language learning.

2 READING identifying topic sentences

- a** Focus on the questions and elicit some opinions from the class. Try to get a short discussion going if Sts seem to be interested in the topic.

- b** Tell Sts that they are going to read an article about a language learning experiment. Make sure Sts understand *an experiment* (= a test that you do to find out what will happen or if sth is true).

First, focus on the **Topic sentences** box and go through it with the class.

Now focus on topic sentences A–F and go through them, making sure Sts understand all the lexis, e.g., *motivation*.

Give Sts time to read the article and match the sentences with the paragraphs.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

1 E 2 D 3 F 4 B 5 C 6 A

- c** Go through questions 1–6 with the class.
 Give Sts time to read the article again.
 Get Sts to answer the questions with a partner, and then check answers.
 You could ask Sts what they think of the challenge set for Max in paragraphs 4–6. Do they think he will be successful after three hours of language teaching a day for one month? Why (not)?

ANSWERS

- American tourists sometimes try to say a few phrases in a foreign language, but stop as soon as they discover that the waiter speaks a little English; Some Americans who live abroad never learn the language at all.
- They think they don't need to learn a language because everyone speaks English.
- It's too difficult.
- By sending one of their journalists on an intensive language course.
- Because he'd like to go to Puerto Rico and Latin America. He did a one-month intensive course.
- He went to San Juan, in Puerto Rico, and met with a teacher there to take some tests to see if he could survive.

Deal with any other new vocabulary. Model and drill the pronunciation of any tricky words.

3 GRAMMAR *have to, don't have to, must, must not, can't*

- a** **7.10** Focus on the tests and rules, and give Sts time to read them. Make sure Sts understand all the lexis, e.g., *historical building*.

Now play the audio of Max talking about the tests. Sts listen and fill in the blanks.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 sandwich 2 follow 3 taxi 4 dictionary 5 speak Spanish
 6 hands

7.10

(script in Student Book on p.130)

There were four tests for me to complete in San Juan, Puerto Rico. I had to order a drink and a sandwich in a café, ask the price, and understand it. Then I had to ask for directions on the street and

follow them. Then I had to get a taxi to a historical building in San Juan, and finally, I had to call somebody and leave a message on their voicemail.

There were just three rules. You must not use a dictionary or phrase book app, you must only speak Spanish, and you can't use your hands or mime, or write anything down.

- b** Focus on the highlighted phrases in **a** and questions 1 and 2.

Give Sts a few moments to answer the questions, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 You have to, You must 2 You must not, You can't

- c** Do this as a whole-class activity.

ANSWER

- 1 I don't need to do this

- d** Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 7C** on p.146.

Grammar notes

must and have to

At this level, *have to* and *must* can be treated as synonyms as a way of expressing obligation. We tend to use *have to* more often than *must* when there is an external obligation, i.e., a law or a rule, e.g., *You have to wear a seat belt in a car* in many states in the US.

Watch out for the typical mistake of using *to* with *must*: *I must go to the bank*. NOT *I must to go to the bank*.

Highlight the impersonal use of *You* when we talk about rules and laws, e.g., *You have to drive on the right*.

must not / can't and don't have to

The typical mistake here is when Sts use *don't have to* instead of *must not* or *can't*. *You must not use your phone in class*. NOT *You don't have to use your phone in class*.

Focus on the example sentences and play both audio 7.11 and 7.12 for Sts to listen and repeat.

Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the information box about **must and have to**, **must not and don't have to**, and **Impersonal you**, and go through it with the class.

Then focus on the exercises for **7C** on p.147. Sts do the exercises individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

- a** 1 has to 2 have to 3 Does...have to 4 has to 5 have to 6 doesn't have to 7 have to 8 Do...have to
b 1 must not 2 ✓ 3 don't have to 4 ✓ 5 must not 6 ✓ 7 ✓ 8 don't have to

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **7C**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **7C Grammar photocopiable activity**.

- e** Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**. Tell Sts to go to **Communication What are the rules?**, **A** on p.106, **B** on p.112.

Go through the instructions with Sts carefully, and make sure they know what they have to do.

Sts **A** look at photos 1–6 and complete the rules. Sts **B** do the same with photos 7–12.

EXTRA SUPPORT You could put two Sts **A** and two Sts **B** together first to complete the rules. Then put them in **A / B** pairs.

A then reads their rules in a different order to **B**, who looks at their photos and says which photo the rules apply to.

They then change roles and do the same with photos 7–12.

Finally, check the rules for photos 1–12.

ANSWERS

- 1 You have to / must turn off your phone.
- 2 Children don't have to pay.
- 3 You have to / must wear a jacket.
- 4 You must not / can't touch the door.
- 5 You have to / must be over 18 to see this movie.
- 6 You must not / can't take photos here.
- 7 You don't have to pay anything now.
- 8 You must not / can't play soccer here at night.
- 9 You must not / can't put your feet on the seats.
- 10 You don't have to come to class on Mondays.
- 11 You have to / must drive in one direction.
- 12 You have to / must wear athletic shoes here.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **7C**.

EXTRA IDEA Ask Sts what rules there are in their school, and if they think they are good rules. You could then also ask Sts to invent some new rules that they would like to see incorporated.

4 LISTENING listening to check hypotheses

- a** 7.13 Tell Sts to look at the tests again in **3a** and ask Sts the two questions. Get some feedback from the class.

Then play the audio of Max doing the tests in Puerto Rico. Sts just listen to hear which test was the easiest and which was the most difficult.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

The easiest test was ordering the soda and sandwich. The most difficult was taking a taxi.

7.13

(script in Student Book on pp.130–131)

M = Max, **N** = Nilda, **W** = waiter, **Pb** = passerby, **T** = taxi driver, **L** = Lourdes

M I arrived at the airport in San Juan, Puerto Rico, where I met Nilda. *Hola, Soy Max.*

N Encantada. Soy Nilda.

M Nilda took me to my hotel, and that evening we went to eat, and it was time for my first test. I had to order a sandwich and a drink in a café, and then ask for the check. I sat down at a table, and I tried to order a soda and a chicken sandwich. *Por favor, uno refresco y un emparedado de pollo.*

W En seguida.

M Terrific! The waiter understood me the first time. My pronunciation wasn't perfect, but I got my soda and my sandwich. I really enjoyed it. But then the more difficult part. Asking for the check... *Cuánto es?*

W Seis noventa.

M Cómo?

W Seis noventa.

M Six ninety. I understood! Nilda gave me eight points for the test. I was very happy with that. Next, we went out on the street. Test number two was asking for directions and understanding them. We were on a narrow street, and I had to stop someone and ask him or her for the nearest drugstore, *una farmacia*. I stopped a woman. At first, I didn't understand anything she said!

Pb *Siga derecho y tome la segunda calle a la izquierda. Hay una farmacia en esa calle.*

M I asked the woman to speak more slowly.

Pb *Todo derecho y tome la segunda calle a la izquierda. IZQUIERDA.*

M I got it this time, I think. The second street on the left. I followed the directions and guess what? There was a drugstore there! Seven points from Nilda. Test number three. I wasn't looking forward to this one. I had to take a taxi to a historical place in San Juan. Nilda wrote down the name of the place on a piece of paper. It was the name of an old fort near the ocean. We stopped a taxi. *El Morro, por favor.*

T *Qué? Adónde?*

M He didn't understand me. I tried again, but he still didn't understand. I was desperate, so I said, "fort, old, water."

T *Ah! El Morro.*

M Finally! Nilda only gave me five points because I ended up using English. Still, at least I made the taxi driver understand where I wanted to go. And so, to the final test. I had to leave a message in Spanish on somebody's voicemail. I had to give my name, spell it, and ask the person to call me back. Nilda gave me the number (it was one of her friends, named Lourdes) and I dialed. I was feeling a little nervous at this point, because speaking on the phone in a foreign language is never easy.

L *Deje su mensaje después de la señal.*

M *Uh. Buenas noches. Soy Max. Max. M-A-X. Uh... Por favor... llámame esta noche... Oh yes... a las ocho y media, uh, gracias.* Well, my grammar wasn't correct, but I left the message. Half an hour later, at eight-thirty, Lourdes called me. Success! Nilda gave me eight points. That was the end of my four tests. Nilda was happy with me. My final score was seven. I was very happy with that. So, how much can you learn in a month? Well, of course you can't learn Spanish in a month, but you can learn enough to survive if you are on vacation or on a trip. Now I want to go back to Washington, DC, and try and learn some more. *Adiós!*

b Focus on the task and quickly go through sentences 1–7 before playing the audio. Make sure Sts understand all the lexis, e.g., *fort*.

Play the audio again, pausing to give Sts time to mark them *T* (true) or *F* (false). Play all or part of the audio again if necessary. Remind Sts to correct the *F* ones.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 F (The waiter **understood** Max.)
- 2 T
- 3 F (It was the **second** street on the left.)
- 4 F (The driver **didn't understand** the name.)
- 5 T
- 6 F (He got **seven**.)
- 7 F (You **can't** learn a language (Spanish) in a month, but you can learn enough to do some simple things on a vacation / trip.)

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to listen again with the script on pp.130–131, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

c Focus on the task and give Sts time to think of their answers. Put Sts in pairs and get them to discuss their answers to 1–4.

Get some feedback from various pairs for each test.

POSSIBLE ANSWERS

- 1 Can / Could I have a coffee and a cheese sandwich, please?
How much is that?
- 2 Excuse me, where's the nearest drugstore?
- 3 Could you take me to..., please?
- 4 Hi, it's [Laura]. Could you please call me back? My number is...

5 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION

adjectives + prepositions, stress on prepositions

Vocabulary notes

Certain adjectives are often followed by a particular preposition, which may well be different in Sts' L1. Sts should make a note of adjective + preposition combinations when they meet them.

- a** Focus on the **Adjectives + prepositions** box and go through it with the class.
Then focus on questions 1–10, and get Sts to fill in the blanks with a preposition from the list.
Get them to compare with a partner.
- b** **7.14** Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.
Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 at 2 at 3 for 4 of 5 in 6 of 7 for 8 to 9 with
10 from

7.14

See questions in Student Book on p.61 and answer key

Pronunciation notes

Sts are normally encouraged not to stress prepositions in sentences and questions. However, there is one situation in which prepositions are stressed, which is when they are the last word in a sentence or question. Pointing this out and getting Sts to practice it will improve their sentence rhythm.

- c** **7.15** Focus on the instructions. Make sure Sts understand the task.
Play the audio once the whole way through for Sts just to listen.
Then play it again, pausing after the first pair of questions.
Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then repeat with the second pair of questions.
Check answers.

ANSWERS

at is unstressed in 1 and stressed in 2.
for is unstressed in 3 and stressed in 7.

7.15

See questions in Student Book on p.61 and answer key

Finally, ask *What do you think the rule is for stress on prepositions?* to elicit that prepositions are stressed when they are the last word in a sentence or question.

EXTRA SUPPORT Play the audio one more time, pausing after each question for Sts to repeat it. Monitor to make sure they are stressing the prepositions in questions 2 and 7 only.

- d** Put Sts in pairs and get them to ask and answer questions 1–10 in **a**. You could demonstrate the activity by getting Sts to ask you some of the questions first.
Get some feedback from various pairs.

EXTRA IDEA Tell Sts to choose their favorite three questions from **a** and write their answers for homework, giving examples and extra information to support their answers. Collect the homework and correct it.

Running into trouble

Practical English at the pharmacy

Lesson plan

In this episode, the functional language is asking for advice and buying medicine in a pharmacy. In the first scene Ben is at work in the café. He hurts his back lifting boxes and Carla sends him home to rest. Izzy and Ben were planning to go running after work, and Izzy calls to say that Max is going, too. Ben agrees to go, without telling Izzy about his back pain. In the second scene Ben goes to the pharmacy to get some painkillers. Then in the third scene he joins Max and Izzy for the run, which does not go well.

Video material

Pictures of you Episode 4

More materials

For teachers

Oxford English Hub

Quick Test 7

File 7 Test

For students

Workbook Practical English 4

Can you remember...? 1–7

THE STORY SO FAR (books closed)

▶ Play the recap of Episode 3 (*Previously*) to remind Sts of the previous episode of *Pictures of you*. Elicit everything that happened. You could ask Sts about how each of the characters feels about each other and their relationships.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Put Sts in pairs or small groups to remember what happened in the previous episode of *Pictures of you*. Then play the recap for them to check what they remembered.

1 BEN HURTS HIMSELF

- a** ▶ In this scene Ben hurts his back while working in the café, but still agrees to go for a run with Izzy later on. Books open. Focus on the photo and the questions and elicit some answers. Don't tell them if they are correct or not yet. Now play the video once the whole way through for Sts to check their ideas. Check answers.

ANSWERS

Ben hurt his back picking up a heavy box. He's going to go home.



C = Carla, B = Ben, I = Izzy

C Ben. Can you put those boxes in the back room, please?

B Of course.

C What are you doing after work? Do you have any plans?

B I don't know. I think I'll probably go for a run with Izzy.

C Are you OK?

B Ah! I hurt my back. That box was a little heavier than I thought.

C Here. Sit down.

B I'll be fine. Ah!

C OK. I think you need to go home. I can finish everything here.

B No, I think I'll be OK. Ah!

C I'll get you a cab.

I Hey, Ben. Quick question. Are we still going for a run after work?

B Uh...well...

I Because I mentioned it to Max and he wants to come with us. You remember Max, right?

B Yeah. I do.

I So are you coming?

B Yeah, I'm coming. See you later.

I See you later.

- b** Focus on questions 1–3 and the possible answers and give Sts time to read them. Check Sts understand all the vocabulary.

Play the video again the whole way through.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Get Sts to choose the answer a, b, or c before they watch the video again. Then play the video for them to check.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and play again if necessary.

Check answers.

You could ask what Carla does to try and help Ben when he hurts himself. (She gets him to sit down. Then she calls for a taxi.) You could elicit / teach that *cab*, used by Carla, is another word for *taxi*.

ANSWERS

1 b 2 a 3 c

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

2 AT THE PHARMACY

- a** ▶ In this scene Ben goes to the pharmacy to get some medicine for his back. Get Sts to read the two questions. Tell them to cover the conversation in **b**. Play the video once the whole way through. Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers. You might want to point out that, in the US, *drugstore* is another name for a store that sells medicines like painkillers.

ANSWERS

1 Ibuprofen / Painkiller

2 Two, every four to six hours



P = pharmacist, B = Ben

P Good afternoon. Can I help you?

B Yes, I hurt my back. I need something for the pain.

P Of course. How did you hurt it?

B Well, I was moving some heavy boxes this morning.

P OK, I see...Are you allergic to any medicines?

B No.

P Are you on any medication?

- B No, I'm not.
P No problem. This is ibuprofen. It will help with the pain.
B Great. How many do I have to take?
P Take two, every four to six hours, and if it isn't better in two or three days, go and see your doctor.
B OK, thanks. How much is that?
P Three ninety-nine, please.
B Thank you.
P You're welcome.

If necessary, tell Sts that ibuprofen is an anti-inflammatory medicine also often used as a painkiller.

- b Now focus on the conversation in the chart. Elicit who says the **You hear** phrases (the pharmacist) and who says the **You say** phrases (the customer, here Ben). These phrases will be useful for Sts if they need to go to a pharmacy. Give Sts a minute to read through the conversation and think what the missing words might be. Then play the video again, and get Sts to fill in the blanks. Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

1 hurt 2 medicines 3 pain 4 better 5 doctor 6 £3.99

Go through the conversation line by line with Sts, helping them with any words or expressions they don't understand. Elicit / Explain the meaning of the phrase *to be allergic to something*. Model and drill *allergic* /ə'lərdʒɪk/. Ask a few Sts *Are you allergic to anything?*

You could highlight *Are you allergic to any medicines?* and *Are you on any medication?* and ask Sts why the pharmacist has to ask these questions. (Because she needs to make sure that the medicine she recommends is safe for the patient. An allergy could be dangerous. Medicines can react with each other, which could also be dangerous.)

- c ▶ Now focus on the **You say** phrases and tell Sts they're going to hear the conversation again. They should repeat the phrases when the video pauses. Encourage them to copy the rhythm and intonation. Play the video for Sts to watch and repeat the phrases.



Same as previous video with repeat pauses

- d Focus on the **What's the matter?** box and go through it with the class. Model and drill *hurt* and *pain*. Point out that *What's the matter?* is the question we often use when we think someone has a problem. Now focus on the role-play. Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**. **A** is the pharmacist and **B** is the customer. Tell Sts to read their instructions carefully and think about what they are going to say. Elicit or teach the meaning of *dose* (= how much medicine to take).

EXTRA SUPPORT Demonstrate the activity by taking the role of the pharmacist yourself and getting a confident student to be the patient.

When they are ready, tell Sts to have a conversation in a pharmacy. **A** begins: *Good morning. Can I help you?* Monitor and help if necessary.

When they have finished, Sts should change roles and have another conversation where the customer has a different medical problem. Again, give Sts time to think / prepare before they start the new role-play.

You could get a few pairs to perform in front of the class.

3 GETTING COMPETITIVE

- a ▶ In this scene Ben arrives at the park to find Izzy doing warm-up exercises with Max. Despite his bad back he races Max until eventually he has to stop, and Izzy finds out that he had a problem.

Books closed or get Sts to cover the photos. Focus on the title of the scene and ask Sts what they think is going to happen. Then focus on the five photos and the instruction. Put Sts in pairs to discuss what they can see in each photo.

Then play the video for Sts to watch and number the photos.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

A 5 B 2 C 1 D 4 E 3



B = Ben, I = Izzy, M = Max

B Hey.

I Hey, Ben. Are you OK?

B I'm fine. Let's go.

I Have you warmed up yet?

M I can help you stretch if you like. Warming up is very important.

I Yes. Max has some great ideas for warming up.

B Yeah, I saw them. Thanks, Max. I'm OK. I've warmed up. I ran here. Let's go.

I Ben? What's wrong?

B Just uhh...out of breath...

M OK. Take a break. Here. It's important to drink water when you're exercising.

B It's cool. I'm OK now. Come on.

M Maybe slow down a bit, Ben?

B Don't worry about me. I'm fine.

I Huh. A text from Carla. "Hi, Izzy. Ben's not answering his texts.

How's his back? He went home from work early." What's the matter with your back?

B It's nothing serious.

I Nothing serious? Look at you.

B OK, I hurt it this morning, moving heavy boxes.

I Why didn't you tell me when I called? Why did you run with a bad back?

B Look, I thought I was OK. I took some ibuprofen.

I Why did you run so fast? You and Max were running like it was the Olympics.

B I don't know what you mean.

I You were being silly, both of you, but especially you, with a bad back.

B Look, I feel fine. What time is it?

I It's six.

- b Focus on questions 1–5 and go through them. Make sure Sts understand *warm-up exercises*.

Play the video again for Sts to watch and answer the questions. Play again if necessary.

Get Sts to compare answers with a partner.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 Because he sees Max and Izzy warming up and feels jealous. They are laughing / touching.
- 2 Because he ran to the park and because he doesn't like Max
- 3 He suggests Ben drinks some water. No, he doesn't.
- 4 Carla sends Izzy a text asking how Ben is. She says he hurt his back at work.
- 5 She thinks he's behaving irresponsibly.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

4 SOCIAL ENGLISH

- a** Focus on the phrases in the chart and go through them with the class. Elicit that *What's the matter?* and *What's wrong?* are both questions used to ask about a problem. Now give Sts time to match a phrase in **A** with a response in **B**. They can do this individually or in pairs.
- b**  Play the video for Sts to watch and check. Check answers. If you know your Sts' L1, you could get them to translate the phrases.

ANSWERS

- 1 I'll get you a cab.
- 2 Yeah, I'm coming. See you later.
- 3 Just out of breath.
- 4 It's nothing serious.
- 5 I don't know what you mean.

Now play the video again, pausing as necessary, for Sts to watch and repeat.

- c** Focus on the instructions and put Sts in pairs, making sure they understand what they have to do. Monitor and help. Make sure they change roles. If there's time, you could get Sts **B** to close their books and respond from memory, and then change roles.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Put Sts in pairs and get them to discuss the questions about Izzy, Ben, and Max. You can decide if Sts should answer the questions briefly or have a more elaborate class discussion about them.

Elicit some feedback from the class. You could ask Sts what they think is going to happen in the next episode.

G *should***V** *get: get angry, get lost, etc.***P** /ʊ/ and /u/

Lesson plan

In this lesson Sts learn to use *should / shouldn't* for giving advice. The lesson begins with Sts reading a problem that was sent to a newspaper advice column by a woman wanting advice, and then reading and discussing the advice given. This leads into the grammar presentation, which is followed by a pronunciation focus on the /ʊ/ and /u/ sounds. Then there is a speaking and listening activity where Sts listen to a radio call-in show and discuss the advice that is given to three callers. Finally, Vocabulary and Speaking focuses on different meanings of *get*, which are practiced in a video activity and recycled in a questionnaire.

Video material

Pronunciation – /ʊ/ and /u/

Vocabulary & Speaking – *get*

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar should / shouldn't p.205*Vocabulary get* p.279 (instructions p.267)*Communicative I need some advice* p.250 (instructions p.225)

For students

Workbook 8A

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Write on the board *I need some advice*. Ask Sts what they think *advice* means, and also elicit that it is a noun, and that the verb is *advise*. Point out that the verb is pronounced /əd'vaɪz/ and the noun is /əd'vaɪs/. Tell Sts that *advice* is uncountable in English – it can't be used with *an* or in the plural, e.g., *My sister usually gives me good advice*. NOT *a good advice* or *good advices*.

1 READING assessing advice

- a Books open. Focus on the question and give Sts a couple of minutes to discuss it in pairs or small groups. Get feedback from the class.
- b Give Sts time to read the short text. Elicit the answer to the question, and make sure Sts understand what *an advice column* is.

ANSWER

The two reviews are very positive, so yes, people think Annalisa gives good advice.

Find out if Sts think contacting Annalisa is better than asking a family member or friend. Ask *Why (not)?*

Ask *Would you write to Annalisa with a problem?* Elicit answers from individual Sts.

- c Focus on the instructions and give Sts time to read the problem. Elicit the meaning of *vegan* /'vɪɡən/

(= someone who doesn't eat meat, fish, or any animal products) and *omnivore* /'ɒmnɪvɔː/ (= someone who eats all types of food). You could check Sts understand the difference between *a vegan* and *a vegetarian* (a vegetarian doesn't eat meat or fish, but does eat eggs and dairy products).

With a partner, Sts discuss which they think is the best advice from options 1–3.

Elicit some opinions. Ask them what they think Annalisa will advise Heather to do.

- d Tell Sts to go to **Communication What Annalisa says** on p.107 and read her advice.

Elicit that Annalisa's advice is most similar to option 3 in c and find out if that is the one they chose.

Deal with any new vocabulary. Model and drill the pronunciation of any tricky words.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson 8A.

2 GRAMMAR *should*

- a Tell Sts to look at the three sentences and answer the questions. Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 b

2 Add *not / n't* for negatives; *Should* + subject + base form for questions.

- b Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 8A** on p.148.

Grammar notes

Should does not usually cause problems, as it has a clearly defined use and the form is simple. Remind Sts to use the base form after *should*.

The main problem with *should* is the pronunciation, i.e., the silent *l* (see **Pronunciation notes in 3**).

Focus on the example sentences and play audio 8.1 for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the **ought to** box and go through it with the class.

Then focus on the exercises for 8A on p.149. Sts do them individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

a 1 shouldn't 2 should 3 should 4 shouldn't 5 should 6 should 7 should 8 shouldn't

b 1 should wear 2 should study 3 should book 4 shouldn't be 5 should relax 6 shouldn't drive 7 should spend 8 shouldn't buy

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson 8A.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the 8A Grammar photocopiable activity.

- c Focus on the instructions and quickly go through the messages to make sure Sts understand all the lexis, e.g., *it's driving me crazy*, etc.
- Give Sts time to write a short answer to each message. Tell them to write between 10 and 20 words for each answer.
- Monitor and help with vocabulary while Sts are writing.
- Put Sts in small groups and get them to read aloud their advice for each problem. They should then choose the best piece of advice.
- Get feedback from each group by eliciting the best piece of advice they chose for each problem.

3 PRONUNCIATION /ʊ/ and /u/

Pronunciation notes

Should (like *would* and *could*) is often mispronounced, partly because of the silent *l*, but also because *ou* is not normally pronounced /ʊ/.

The focus on /ʊ/ and /u/ will give Sts further practice of /ʊ/ and contrast it with the long /u/. It is worth pointing out that one of the main problems with these two sounds is words with *oo*, which can be pronounced either way, e.g., *good* /gʊd/ and *food* /fud/. There is no rule, so Sts need to learn each word as it comes up.

- a  Focus on the sound pictures and elicit the two words and sounds (*bull* /ʊ/ and *boot* /u/).
- Focus on the instructions and questions.
- Play the video for Sts to watch and repeat the sounds and words.
- Ask the class the first question.

ANSWER

/u/ is long.

Now ask the second question.

ANSWER

The *l* isn't pronounced in *should* and *would*.

Finally, play the video again for Sts to watch and repeat.



See sounds and words in Student Book on p.64

- b  **8.2** Tell Sts to put the words in the correct group.
- Remind them that this kind of exercise is easier to do if they say the words aloud.
- Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.
- Check answers.

8.2

bull /ʊ/ book, could, look, pull, push

boot /u/ cool, flew, food, lose, shoes, school

Now play the audio again for Sts to listen and repeat.

- c Put Sts in pairs and get them to practice saying the sentences.

EXTRA SUPPORT Before putting Sts in pairs, read each sentence aloud and get Sts to listen and repeat.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

4 SPEAKING & LISTENING understanding a problem; assessing advice

- a Tell Sts that 1–3 are three different pieces of advice for a problem. They should read them and then, with a partner, decide what the problem is.
- Elicit some ideas, but don't tell Sts if they are right or not.
- b  **8.3** Focus on the task and tell Sts they are going to listen to Annabel and Peter calling a radio show with their problem. They must listen and make notes about the problem.
- Play the audio once the whole way through. Then play it again if necessary.
- Check the answer and ask a few comprehension questions to make sure Sts understood the details of the problem. Find out how many Sts guessed correctly in **a**.

ANSWERS

Their son, Jamie, wants to go on vacation to Mexico with some friends. Annabel and Peter, his parents, don't think he should go. They think he should save his money, so he can get his own place to live.

8.3

(script in Student Book on p.131)

A = Annabel, P = Peter, E = expert

A Hello. I'm Annabel.

P And I'm Peter.

E Hi there, Annabel and Peter. What's your problem?

A We have a son, Jamie, and he's twenty-five. He's a chef.

P But he still lives with us because he says it's too expensive to rent an apartment and he doesn't earn enough money.

A He gives us some money every month for bills – not much, but a little – and, you know, it's nice to have him at home, but we think he needs to be more independent.

P Yes, absolutely.

A But last week, he told us that he's planning a two-week vacation to Mexico with his friends. I mean, it's true that he works full-time and we know he needs a break, but we really think...

P Yes, we don't think he should go on an expensive vacation when he doesn't give us much money. We think he should save his money so that he can get his own place to live. Should we tell him that he can't go to Mexico?

- c With their partner, Sts discuss which advice in **a** they think is the best.
- Elicit some feedback and ask Sts to explain why they chose their advice.
- d  **8.4** Now tell Sts they are going to listen to the expert's advice. They must see if the expert gives the same advice that they chose in **c** and decide whether it is good advice. They should make notes, so they can then compare it to their advice.
- Play the audio once the whole way through. Then play it again if necessary.
- Check the answer first, then find out what Sts think of the advice, and if they have any other suggestions.

ANSWER

3 – The expert's advice is to let Jamie go on vacation, but talk to him about paying rent when he gets back.

8.4

(script in Student Book on p.131)

E You know, to be honest, I think you're being a little hard on him. I mean, he's only twenty-five. It's good that he has a job, and everybody needs a vacation. My advice is that you should let him go to Mexico, but when he comes back, you should sit down with him and talk to him about starting to pay rent. That way, he'll understand that he needs to start planning for the future and to start thinking about renting an apartment. But I know from talking to other parents that there are a lot of young people still living at home in their twenties and thirties, and some of them don't even have jobs. So, in many ways, I think you're lucky.

A You see? That's just what I think...

- e 8.5 / 8.6 Tell Sts they are going to hear another caller, Nick. They should follow the same steps as for Annabel and Peter, i.e., predict the problem, then listen and check and make notes, decide which advice they think is best, and then listen to the advice and see what they think of it.

ANSWER

Nick's girlfriend wants to move to Chicago to get a better job, but he has a good job where they live and doesn't know if he should follow her or not.

8.5

(script in Student Book on p.131)

N = Nick, E = expert

N Hi there. I'm Nick.

E Hi, Nick. So what's your problem?

N Well, I've been with my girlfriend for three years. We have a really great relationship, although we're very different. She's smart and popular, and I'm, uh, quiet and hardworking. Anyway, now she wants to move to Chicago because she thinks she can get a better job there, and she wants me to go to Chicago, too – and you know, Chicago's much more exciting than Galena, Texas, where we live now. But I have a good job in Galena and I get a good salary. I mean, the idea of moving and having a new life is like a dream, but for me, that's what it is – I mean, it's a dream, it isn't real. What should I do? Should I follow my heart and move to Chicago with her? Or should I stay here where I know I have a good job, but possibly lose my girlfriend?

ANSWER

1 – The expert's advice is for Nick and his girlfriend to sit down and discuss their future. If they want the same thing, then Nick's girlfriend should move to Chicago and he can visit and see if he wants to move there.

8.6

(script in Student Book on p.131)

E I think you should sit down together and talk about your dreams for the future, and see if they are the same dreams. If they are, and you can see a future together, then the first thing is for her to look for a job in Chicago. If she finds one, then maybe she can move there first, and you can go on weekends and see how you feel about life there.

N Thanks a lot for that. I think that's really good advice.

- f 8.7 / 8.8 Tell Sts they are going to hear a final caller, Jane. They follow the same steps as for Annabel and Peter, and Nick.

ANSWER

Jane has planned a vacation with her friend Susan and is really looking forward to it. However, Susan has now invited another friend, Angie. Jane doesn't know Angie and doesn't want to go on vacation with her.

8.7

(script in Student Book on p.131)

J = Jane, E = expert

J Hello. My name's Jane.

E Hi, Jane. Why are you calling?

J Well, a month ago my friend Susan and I decided to go on vacation together this summer. So we planned everything and, uh, I was really looking forward to it because Susan's an old friend and I don't see her very often. But the other day, she told me that she was telling another friend of hers about our vacation – somebody I don't know, a woman called Angie – and Angie was really interested, and now Susan has invited her to come, too. Susan never asked me what I thought! I don't even know Angie, and I really don't want to go on vacation with someone I don't know. What should I do?

ANSWER

2 – The expert's advice is to try to get to know Angie first. If Jane likes her, then the vacation will be a success. If not, then she should tell her friend Susan she isn't going because of Angie.

8.8

(script in Student Book on p.131)

E I think your friend has been a little insensitive, and she's put you in a difficult position. You have several different options. You could say that you aren't going if Angie goes, but then you'll put Susan in a difficult position. Or you could just cancel and suggest taking another vacation later with just the two of you. Or you could invite someone else who you like, and then there would be four of you, which is sometimes a better number than three. But, in fact, you don't know Angie, and maybe you'll like her. So, I think you should try to get to know her first. If you like her, then the vacation will probably be a success. If not, then you should tell your friend you aren't going because you don't think it will work with Angie. You know, a bad vacation is worse than no vacation.

J Yes, that's absolutely true. Thanks a lot.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to listen again with the scripts on p.131, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

5 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING *get*

- a Focus on the instructions, the three sentences, and the meanings.
Get Sts to match them and then compare with a partner.
Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 c 2 a 3 b

- b Tell Sts to go to **Vocabulary Bank** *get* on p.167.

Vocabulary notes

Get is one of the most common verbs in English, mainly because it has many different meanings and there are also many phrasal verbs with *get*. It's important for Sts to be clear about the four main meanings (*become*, *buy / obtain*, *arrive*, and *receive*) and to begin learning some of the most common phrasal verbs.

When focusing on the first **become** section, highlight the difference between *be angry / divorced*, etc. and *get angry / divorced*, etc.

Highlight the different phrasal verbs for cars (*get into / out of*) and public transportation, e.g., buses, planes, and trains (*get on / off*).

Focus on the **get** box and go through it with the class.

Get Sts to do **a** individually or in pairs. Many of these words / phrases may already be familiar to them.

🔊 **8.9** Now do **b**. Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers.

🔊 8.9

get

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| 7 get angry | 10 get a ticket |
| 3 get divorced | 13 get along with somebody |
| 5 get in shape | 16 get into a car |
| 4 get lost | 15 get on a bus |
| 2 get married | 14 get up |
| 1 get nervous | 18 get home |
| 6 get ready | 19 get to school |
| 9 get better / get worse | 17 get to work |
| 8 get colder | 21 get an email |
| 11 get a job | 20 get a present |
| 12 get a newspaper | 22 get a prize |

Now either use the audio to drill the pronunciation of the phrases, or model and drill them yourself. Give further practice of any words your Sts find difficult to pronounce.

Focus on the **have got** box and go through it with the class. If you would like your Sts to spend more time practicing *have got* (it is dealt with at higher levels of *American English File*), tell them to go to the Appendix on p.173. Focus on the example sentences and play audio

🔊 **8.10** for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Then focus on the exercises. Sts do them individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

- a** 1 She hasn't got any brothers.
2 Have you got a big apartment?
3 We haven't got a lot of work today.
4 Has your sister got a boyfriend?
5 Roger and Val have got a beautiful yard.
6 I've got a really good teacher.
7 My brother hasn't got a job right now.
8 They've got the same color eyes.
9 Have we got a meeting today?
10 He hasn't got many friends at work.
- b** 1 haven't got 2 Has...got 3 've got 4 haven't got
5 's got 6 haven't got 7 Have...got 8 's got
9 Have...got 10 haven't got

Tell Sts to go back to p.167.

Finally, do **Activation** and get Sts to cover the phrases and look at the pictures. They can test themselves or a partner.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **8A**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **8A Vocabulary photocopiable activity**.

- c** ▶ This video is a series of clips illustrating different phrases with *get*. Focus on the instructions and the photo, and use it to elicit the phrase *get a present*. Ask Sts what *get* means here (= receive).

Play the video and pause at the beginning when the grid appears. Tell Sts they will see nine clips which each show a phrase with *get*. Then play the video once the whole way through, and pause at the end when the grid reappears (01:04).

Put Sts in pairs and get them to use the grid to remind them what was in each clip and to write the phrase.

Play the video again pausing after each clip (from 2 onward) to elicit the phrase. Ask Sts what *get* means in each phrase.

ANSWERS

- 1 get a present (get = receive)
- 2 get angry (get = become)
- 3 get in shape (get = become)
- 4 get married (get = become)
- 5 get a ticket (get = buy)
- 6 get up (phrasal verb)
- 7 get home (get = arrive)
- 8 get an award / a prize (get = receive)
- 9 get colder (get = become)

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

- d** Focus on the questionnaire and go through the questions.

Get Sts to ask you one or two of the questions.

Then get Sts to ask and answer in pairs.

Monitor and help, making sure they are using *get* correctly.

Get feedback from a few pairs.

- G** *if* + present, *will* + base form (first conditional)
V confusing verbs: *carry*, *wear*, *win*, *earn*, etc.
P homophones

Lesson plan

This lesson presents the first conditional through the humorous context of “Murphy’s Law,” which states that if something bad can happen, it will happen. The lesson begins with a reading text about the origins of Murphy’s Law and Sts try to match two halves of some common examples. This leads into the grammar presentation of the first conditional, which is practiced through a video of several “Murphy’s Law” situations. There is then a listening activity in which Sts hear two stories about true examples of Murphy’s Law. The Vocabulary and Speaking focus is on verbs that are often confused, like *know* / *meet* and *borrow* / *lend*, that are practiced in a questionnaire. The lesson ends with a pronunciation focus on homophones, e.g., *wear* – *where*, *write* – *right*, etc.

Video material

Grammar – *if* + present, *will* + base form

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar *if* + present, *will* / *won’t* + base form (first conditional) p.206
 Vocabulary Confusing verbs p.280 (instructions p.267)
 Communicative Conditionals race p.251 (instructions p.225)

For students

Workbook 8B

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Write *Murphy’s Law* on the board and elicit from the class anything they know about it. Try to elicit a concrete example of one of Murphy’s laws. If the class doesn’t seem to have any idea, you could ask *What always happens if you drop a piece of bread or toast on the floor? Which way does it fall?* (with the buttered side on the floor). You could use mime to help make this clear.

1 READING identifying examples of behavior

- a** Books open. Focus on the question. Sts will probably try to express that the line they were in before will move faster.
b Focus on the article and ask them if they notice anything odd about the title (the word *wrong* is upside down!). Make sure Sts understand the meaning of the phrase *go wrong* (= end badly, not work correctly). Focus on the instructions and give Sts a few minutes to read the first two paragraphs and answer the questions.
 Check answers.

ANSWERS

Murphy was an American aerospace engineer.
 His “law” is “if there is something that can go wrong, it will go wrong.”

- c** Give Sts time to read the examples of Murphy’s Law (1–8) and to match them to the correct endings A–H.
 Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 D 2 H 3 B 4 C 5 A 6 F 7 E 8 G

Deal with any other new vocabulary. Model and drill the pronunciation of any tricky words.

- d** In pairs, small groups, or as a whole class, Sts answer the question.
 If Sts worked in pairs or small groups, get some feedback. You could tell Sts if these things happen to you.

2 GRAMMAR *if* + present, *will* + base form

- a** In pairs, Sts cover A–H in **1c** and try to remember the laws, using the first half of the sentences in the article as prompts.
b Now tell Sts to focus on the full sentences and to decide which structures are used in both parts.
 Check answers and explain that sentences with *if* are often called *conditional sentences*, and that this structure (a sentence with *if* + present, future) is often called the *first conditional*.

ANSWER

The verb after *if* is in the simple present and the other verb is in the future (*will* / *won’t* + base form).

- c** Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 8B** on p.148.

Grammar notes

Since first conditional sentences refer to future possibilities, some Sts may try to use the future after *if*. A typical mistake is: *If he’ll phone, I’ll tell him*.

The simple present is also used after *when*, rather than *will*, e.g., *I’ll tell him when he arrives*. You may want to point this out in this lesson.

Focus on the example sentences and play audio 8.11 for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the exercises for **8B** on p.149. Sts do them individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

- a** 1 D 2 G 3 E 4 F 5 A 6 B
b 1 tell, won’t tell 2 don’t write, won’t remember
 3 Will...call, get 4 ‘I’ll help, ask 5 ‘I’ll call, hear
 6 ‘I’ll miss, move 7 listen, ‘I’ll understand 8 won’t be, ‘re
 9 ‘I’ll drive, give 10 don’t take, ‘I’ll rain

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **8B**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **8B Grammar photocopiable activity**.

- d In this video, there are five short scenes, each of which illustrates an example of Murphy's Law.

Remind Sts of the original "law": *If there is something that can go wrong, it will go wrong.*

Focus on the photo and prompt 1, and elicit the meaning of the verb *spill*.

Then elicit a possible Murphy's Law based on the photo and using the two verbs. Accept any answers that are grammatically correct and make sense, and write them on the board.

Play the video for Sts to watch the first clip. With the whole class, agree on the best "Murphy's Law" for this clip.

Now focus on prompts 2–5. Play the rest of the video for Sts to watch and think about the Murphy's Law for each clip.

Put Sts in pairs. Play the video again, pausing after each clip for Sts to talk together and write the corresponding law.

- e Put Sts in small groups and get them to read their "laws" to each other. Ask the class if the laws were mostly similar or the same.

Elicit the laws Sts have come up with. Write them on the board as before and get the class to agree on the best one.

POSSIBLE ANSWERS

- 1 If you wear a (new / clean) white shirt, you'll spill food / spaghetti / tomato sauce on it.
- 2 If you stop waiting for a bus and start walking, the bus will arrive.
- 3 If you find some shoes that you (really) like online, they won't have your size.
- 4 If you put your phone on "silent," you'll miss an important call.
- 5 If you leave the room during a game, someone will score a goal.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

3 LISTENING tuning in to a story using key words and phrases

- a **8.12** Focus on the photos, and elicit what they can see (a bus going into a tunnel and a tiger in the jungle). Then focus on the instructions and make sure Sts understand what they have to do. Point out that they are just going to hear extracts from the stories first. Give them time to read through extracts 1–6.

Play the audio once the whole way through for Sts to listen and complete the task.

Check answers.

8.12

- 1 It was the **recession** and it was very difficult to get a job.
- 2 I **applied for** lots of different jobs.
- 3 We **got cut off** because the bus went into a tunnel.
- 4 I was interested in **either** a trip to see birds **or** a trip to see a tiger.
- 5 I thought it would be really cool to see a tiger **in the wild**.
- 6 We spent **the whole** morning looking for the tiger.

Now put Sts in pairs and get them to discuss what they think the words and phrases they circled mean.

Check answers. Model and drill pronunciation.

ANSWERS

- 1 **recession** = a difficult time for the economy of a country
- 2 **applied for** = sent applications and résumés to possible employers
- 3 **got cut off** = lost phone connection

- 4 **either...or** = one of two options
- 5 **in the wild** = in its natural environment
- 6 **the whole** = all of

- b **8.13** Tell Sts they are now going to listen to both Peter's and Sue's stories in full. They must decide why they are examples of Murphy's Law.

Play the audio once the whole way through. You could pause it after Peter's story to give Sts time to complete the task before playing Sue's story.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

Peter waited four months for a job interview, but when the phone call finally came for an interview, the call got cut off.

Sue got up early for a trip to see a tiger, but she didn't see one.

However, other people who went on a trip to see birds saw the tiger.

8.13

(script in Student Book on p.131)

N = narrator, **P** = Peter, **S** = Sue

N Peter wanted to get a job.

P I studied math in college and usually after studying math in college, people get a job in a bank or in IT, but when I graduated it was the recession and it was very difficult to get a job. I was unemployed for a very long time. I was looking for jobs, and I applied for lots of different jobs, but they just answered, "Sorry, we don't want you," and I was getting a little depressed. This went on for about four months, and then one day I was on a bus – I can even remember where I was sitting – and my phone rang. I said hello, and a woman said, "Hello, you applied for a job with us a few months ago. Are you still interested?" So I said, "Yes, absolutely. I'm very interested." So then she said, "We'd like you to come for an interview..." and then, at that moment, we got cut off because the bus went into a tunnel. And the phone number wasn't on my phone – it just said "unknown number," and I couldn't remember what the name of the company was because I'd applied for so many jobs. So I thought, "Four months of nothing and then when they call, I get cut off." Luckily, they called back the next day, and in the end, I had an interview and I got the job.

N Sue wanted to see a tiger.

S This happened when I was at a conference in Thailand. The conference hotel was amazing; it was in a beautiful national park called Khao Yai, north of Bangkok. We were very busy with talks and meetings most of the time, but we had one free morning, and we could choose from different trips or activities. I was interested in either a trip to see birds or a trip to see a tiger. A tiger, not *tigers*, because they told us that there was only one tiger in the whole park! Well, I chose the tiger trip because I thought it would be really cool to see a tiger in the wild. But we had to leave really early in the morning because we had to travel a long way to the part of the park where the tiger usually was – the bird trip was closer to the hotel. So we tiger-watchers got up at five in the morning, but our guide said that we probably wouldn't see the tiger because, you know, there was only one tiger. We finally got there and we spent the whole morning looking for the tiger, but no luck. But we saw some nice birds, and it was fun, so when we got back to the conference hotel, we felt we'd had a really good morning. But then the other group got back, the ones who went to see the birds, and of course they saw lots of amazing birds, but they also saw the tiger! I guess that day it wasn't in its usual part of the park. And I thought, "Isn't that typical? You go on the tiger trip and you don't see the tiger, but the people on the bird trip see the tiger!"

- c Focus on the task and give Sts time to read sentences 1–6. Play the audio, pausing at the end of Peter's story. Give Sts time to mark 1–3 *T* or *F* and then play Sue's story. Then give Sts time to do the same with 4–6 *T* or *F*. Remind them that they need to correct the *F* sentences.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 F (Peter studied math in college.)
- 2 T
- 3 F (Peter couldn't call them back because his phone said "unknown number.")
- 4 T
- 5 F (The guide wasn't optimistic about seeing the tiger.)
- 6 F (Sue enjoyed her trip.)

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to listen again with the script on p.131, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

- d Do this as a whole-class activity. You could also tell Sts what you think, and tell any Murphy's Law stories that you can think of.

4 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING confusing verbs

- a Focus on the question and elicit answers from the class.

ANSWERS

- 1 looking for 2 told

- b Tell Sts to go to **Vocabulary Bank Confusing verbs** on p.168 and get Sts to do a individually or in pairs. Many of these words / phrases may already be familiar to them.

Vocabulary notes

Some of these verbs are often confused because in some Sts' L1, one verb may be used for both meanings. Use the notes below to help clarify where necessary. Encourage Sts to learn the verbs in a phrase, e.g., *know somebody well*, *meet somebody for the first time*, etc.

- **wear / carry:**
You *wear* clothes or jewelry, i.e., have it on your body, e.g., *I wear glasses to read.*
You *carry* something heavy and take it from one place to another, e.g., *He was carrying a suitcase.*
- **win / earn:**
You *win* a sports game, something in a competition, the lottery, etc.
You *earn* money when you work.
- **know / meet:**
know a person = you have met and seen this person before; *meet a person* = to get to know somebody for the first time, e.g., *Nice to meet you*, or to arrange to be with a person in a certain place / at a certain time, e.g., *Let's meet in the café at 6:30.*
- **hope / wait:**
hope = what you want to happen, e.g., *I hope that it's sunny tomorrow.*
wait = sit / stand and do nothing until something happens, e.g., *wait for the doctor*
- **watch / look at:**
You *watch* something where there is movement, e.g., *We watched a soccer game in the park*, *We watched the children playing.*
You *look at* something static, e.g., a photo, somebody's passport.

- **look / look like:**
We use *look* + adjective, e.g., *You look tired.*
We use *look like* + a noun, e.g., *You look like Brad Pitt.*
- **miss / lose:**
You *miss* a class, a bus, a plane (e.g., if you are late / sick).
You *lose* a sports game or lose an object, e.g., your keys.
- **bring / take:**
This depends on where the speaker is. The teacher (at school) says: *Don't forget to bring your book to class tomorrow.* The student (at home) says: *I have to remember to take my book today.*
- **look for / find:**
Look for is the action of trying to locate something you have lost or need, e.g., *I'm looking for a new job.*
Find is used when you have located it, e.g., *I have found a new job.*
- **say / tell:**
Say is used like this:
Jack said, "Hello."
Jack said hello to me yesterday.
Tell has the same meaning as *say*, but is always followed by a noun, either a thing or a person.
Susan told a lie.
Susan told me a lie.
- **lend / borrow:**
I lent my brother some money.
My brother borrowed some money from me.
- **hear / listen to:**
hear = be aware of sounds in your ears, e.g., *I heard the baby next door crying.*
listen to = to pay attention to sb / sth that you can hear, e.g., *I listen to the news on the radio every morning.*

- 🔊 **8.14** Now do b. Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers.

🔊 8.14

Confusing verbs

- 2 wear jewelry, wear clothes, carry a bag, carry a baby
- 8 win a game, win a medal, win a prize, earn a salary, earn money
- 5 know somebody well, know something, meet somebody for the first time, meet at eleven o'clock
- 1 hope that something good will happen, hope to do something, wait for a bus, wait for a long time
- 3 watch TV, watch a game, look at a photo, look at your watch
- 11 look happy, look about twenty-five years old, look like your mother, look like a model
- 4 miss the bus, miss a class, lose a game, lose your glasses
- 9 bring your dictionary, bring something back from vacation, take an umbrella, take your children to school
- 6 look for your glasses, look for a job, find your glasses, find a job
- 10 say sorry, say hello, say something to somebody, tell a joke, tell a lie, tell somebody something
- 7 lend money to somebody, borrow money from somebody
- 12 hear a noise, hear the doorbell, listen to music, listen to the radio

Now either use the audio to drill the pronunciation of the phrases, or model and drill them yourself. Give further practice of any words your Sts find difficult to pronounce. Focus on the **hope and expect** and **bring and take** box and go through it with the class.

Finally, get Sts to do **Activation** in pairs. **A** says a verb and **B** a continuation, and then they change roles.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **8B**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **8B Vocabulary** photocopiable activity.

- c** Get Sts to read questions 1–10 and circle the correct verb in each one.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

1 look like 2 missed 3 listening to 4 earn 5 meet
6 tell 7 lent 8 looking for 9 wear 10 watch

Now put Sts in pairs and get them to ask and answer the questions.

Get some feedback from the class.

5 PRONUNCIATION homophones

EXTRA IDEA You could introduce the concept of homophones by dictating individual words, like *here*, *where*, *no*, etc. Then get Sts, in pairs, to compare how they've spelled them. Finally, elicit some of the words and write them on the board, and explain that both words, e.g., *here* and *hear*, are pronounced exactly the same.

- a**  **8.15** Focus on the **Homophones** box and go through it with the class, stressing that the pronunciation of the words is identical.

Give Sts time to quickly read 1–8.

Play the audio, pausing after each **b** sentence to give Sts time to write.

Check answers by eliciting the words and writing them on the board, getting Sts to spell them.

EXTRA SUPPORT Pause the audio after the first one, and elicit the answer to check Sts know what they have to do.

8.15

- 1 **a** What are you going to wear tonight?
b A **Where** are you from?
B I'm from Toronto.
- 2 **a** I don't know what to do.
b There's **no** milk in the refrigerator!
- 3 **a** Hi. Nice to meet you.
b Do you want **meat** or fish?
- 4 **a** The maximum weight for carry-on bags is 25 pounds.
b I'm coming! **Wait** for me!
- 5 **a** Please write soon.
b Is it on the left or on the **right**?
- 6 **a** There's only one ticket left.
b Brazil **won** the game five–one.
- 7 **a** I can't see the board!
b I love swimming in the **sea**.
- 8 **a** Have you ever read *War and Peace*?
b It was cold, so she **wore** a coat.

- b**  **8.16** Tell Sts they are going to hear four sentences and they must write them down. The first time, tell them just to listen, not to write.

Now play the audio again, pausing after each sentence to give Sts time to write.

Check answers, eliciting the sentences and writing them on the board, and getting Sts to spell the homophones in each sentence.

8.16

- 1 I can see the sea from here.
2 I write with my right hand.
3 He won one game.
4 I know there's no hope.

Play the audio again, pausing for Sts to listen and repeat the sentences and copy the rhythm.

Now put Sts in pairs and get them to practice saying the sentences.

- G** possessive pronouns
V adverbs of manner: *dreamily*, *completely*, etc.
P reading aloud

Lesson plan

The context of this lesson is a short story by the famous American writer O. Henry (1862–1910), which has a characteristic “twist” at the end. Sts read and listen to the first part of the story and then practice reading aloud with good sentence rhythm in Pronunciation. Examples taken from the story lead into the grammar focus on possessive pronouns. Then Sts watch videos of both the first two parts to see dramatized versions of what they have read. They then go on to watch Parts 3 and 4 and discuss the ending. There is then a vocabulary focus on using adverbs of manner and finally, Sts go to the **Writing Bank** and write a short story containing dialogue.

This lesson provides a good opportunity to remind Sts of the value of reading Graded Readers (sometimes called Easy Readers) in English. Reading Graded Readers helps consolidate what Sts already know and build their vocabulary. Most Graded Readers also have accompanying audio and are available as e-books, which can be used to help improve Sts’ listening comprehension and pronunciation. You could recommend the Oxford Bookworm series level 2, which has a selection of other O. Henry stories in a book called *New Yorkers*.

Video material

Listening – *Girl* (Parts 1–4)

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar possessive pronouns p.207

Communicative Reading questionnaire p.252 (instructions p.225)

For students

Workbook 8C

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Write this question on the board and get Sts to ask each other in pairs:
Which of these things do you read in English?

- school or college textbooks
- websites
- social media
- movie subtitles
- video or computer game instructions
- song lyrics
- graded readers
- anything else

Remind Sts that Graded Readers are English books that are written in simple language, using grammar and vocabulary according to level.

Get feedback from the class and use this opportunity to stress the importance of reading in English outside class. If you haven’t already done so, draw Sts’ attention to Graded Readers, particularly if your school has a library. If not, you could consider starting a class library by getting Sts to buy one book each and then exchanging the books among all the Sts in the class. You could also have a wallchart recording the books Sts have read and a brief comment or score.

1 READING understanding a short story

- a** Books open. Focus on the task and tell Sts to look at the all the photos in the lesson. Elicit answers from the class.
- b** **8.17** Tell Sts they are going to read and listen to an extract from *Girl* by O. Henry. You might want to tell them that his real name was William Sydney Porter and that he was a famous American author.

Play the audio once the whole way through while Sts follow **Part 1** of the story.

8.17

See Part 1 in Student Book on p.68

Then give Sts time to read **Part 1** again without the audio. In pairs, Sts answer questions 1–4 and the *Think about the story so far* question.

Check answers to 1–4 and elicit ideas for *Think about the story so far*.

ANSWERS

- 1 He gave Hartley Vivienne’s address. He offered to follow her.
- 2 He left the detective’s office and went to find where Vivienne lived.
- 3 She looked about 21, her hair was red gold, and her eyes were sea blue.
- 4 Because she didn’t answer his letter

- c** **8.18** Before telling Sts to read and listen to **Part 2**, go through the **Glossary** with them.

Then play the audio once the whole way through while Sts read **Part 2** of the story.

8.18

See Part 2 in Student Book on p.68

Now give Sts time to read **Part 2** again without the audio. In pairs, Sts answer questions 1–5 and the *Think about the story so far* question.

Check answers to 1–4, and then elicit ideas for 5 and *Think about the story so far*.

- !** At this stage of the story, Sts will probably assume that Hartley is in love with Vivienne and wants her to come and live with him. They will also probably imagine that Héloïse is his wife. Don’t confirm or reject these assumptions.

ANSWERS

- 1 She doesn’t think she would enjoy living in the suburbs.
- 2 He told her she could come to the city whenever she wanted.
- 3 At the Montgomerys’
- 4 Because there is someone else

Deal with any other new vocabulary. Model and drill the pronunciation of any tricky words.

2 PRONUNCIATION reading aloud

Pronunciation notes

Reading aloud in class is an activity that divides teachers. Some feel that it can give Sts valuable pronunciation practice, while others find it painful. We believe that in small doses, it can be helpful to improve Sts' awareness of word and sentence rhythm. However, we believe that reading aloud needs to be focused, with short pieces of text that all Sts can work on (with teacher correction). This can be much more effective than just getting Sts to read a text aloud around the class, with each person reading a different sentence.

- a  **8.19** Focus on the task and on the last four lines of the story on p.68 (from "Vivienne," said Hartley masterfully to the end). Get Sts to read the two questions, and then play the audio.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- a punctuation b the adverbs, i.e., *masterfully, calmly*

8.19

See last four lines of Part 2 in Student Book on p.68

Focus on the **Reading aloud** box and go through it with the class.

Play the extract again and ask Sts to focus on the rhythm of the sentences, and how the speaker pauses.

Now give Sts a few moments to read the text aloud (quietly) to themselves. Tell them to try to get the correct rhythm, to pause momentarily when there is a comma, and to read the two lines with adverbs (*masterfully* and *calmly*) in the appropriate way.

Then choose a couple of Sts to read the text aloud to the class with good rhythm, correcting them as necessary.

- b  **8.20** Play the audio, pausing after each name for Sts to listen and repeat.

8.20

See names in Student Book on p.69

Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**. Then focus on the instructions. Remind Sts that they need to pay attention to the adverbs, e.g., *slowly*, etc. as they read. They also need to stress words which should be stressed and to pause momentarily when there is a comma.

Give Sts time, in pairs, to read their section of **Part 2** of the story. Monitor helping Sts with the rhythm and stress. When they have both had their turn reading, you could focus on any words or phrases that Sts were mispronouncing.

EXTRA IDEA If you think your Sts would enjoy it, you could put them in groups of three, with one student playing Hartley, one Vivienne, and one being the narrator, as they heard on the audio. When they have finished, get a group to perform in front of the class.

3 GRAMMAR possessive pronouns

- a Tell Sts to look at the two sentences from the story, and to fill in the blanks.

Check answers. You could ask Sts what the difference between the two words is (*my* = possessive adjective and *mine* = possessive pronoun).

ANSWERS

- 1 my 2 mine

- b Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 8C** on p.148.

Grammar notes

Sts will probably need to be reminded of how possessive adjectives (*my, your, his*, etc.) are used, and in particular, how they agree with the subject of a sentence, not the object (e.g., **Jack helps his sister a lot.** NOT ~~Jack helps her sister a lot.~~) and how they never change (e.g., *your books* NOT ~~yours books~~).

When Sts learn possessive pronouns, e.g., *These are yours / hers / ours*, they may then tend to start adding an *s* to possessive adjectives.

Focus on the example sentences and play audio  **8.21** for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the exercises for **8C** on p.149. Sts do them individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

- a 1 my 2 yours 3 ours 4 her 5 mine 6 their 7 theirs
8 your 9 hers
b 1 Hers 2 him 3 their 4 ours 5 theirs 6 us 7 our
8 its

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **8C**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **8C Grammar photocopiable activity**.

- c  **8.22** Focus on the instructions and the example.

Tell Sts they are going to listen to seven sentences, and each time, they must change the object for a possessive pronoun.

Play the audio, pausing after each sentence for Sts to make the transformation.

8.22

- 1 It's my book. (*ping*) It's mine.
2 It's her scarf. (*ping*) It's hers.
3 They're our coats. (*ping*) They're ours.
4 It's his bike. (*ping*) It's his.
5 It's your phone. (*ping*) It's yours.
6 It's their house. (*ping*) It's theirs.
7 They're your cookies. (*ping*) They're yours.

Then repeat the activity, eliciting responses from individual Sts.

4 LISTENING using visual clues to understand a story

- a** Focus on the instructions. Sts close their books. Play the video the whole way through for Sts to watch Parts 1 and 2 of the story.



See Parts 1–2 in Student Book on p.68

- b** Tell Sts they are going to watch **Part 3** of the story and they must answer two questions and the *Think about the story so far* question. Give them time to read the questions. Play **Part 3** of the video once the whole way through. Then play it again if necessary. Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers to 1 and 2. Elicit ideas for *Think about the story so far*, but don't tell Sts if they are right yet.

ANSWERS

- 1 He said Héloïse must go.
2 She promised Hartley she would be his.



H = Hartley, V = Vivienne, N = narrator

H Héloïse will go. I haven't had one day without problems since I met her. You're right, Vivienne. Héloïse must go before I can take you home. But she will go. I've decided.

V Then...my answer is yes. I will be yours.

H Promise me.

V I promise.

H I will come for you tomorrow.

V Tomorrow.

N *An hour and forty minutes later, Hartley stepped off the train when it stopped in the suburbs. He walked to his house, went inside, and walked up the stairs.*

- c** Now tell Sts they are going to watch **Part 4** and they must answer questions 1–3. Play **Part 4** of the video once the whole way through. Then play it again if necessary. Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 Hartley's wife 2 The Montgomerys' cook 3 Hartley's cook



HW = Hartley's wife, H = Hartley

HW My mother's here. But she's leaving in half an hour. She came to have dinner, but there's nothing to eat.

H I have something to tell you.

HW Oh, Mother! What do you think? Vivienne is coming to be our cook! She is the cook that was with the Montgomerys. She's going to be ours!

H Yes.

HW And now, dear, you must go to the kitchen and tell Héloïse to leave. She's been drunk again all day.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

- d** Do this as a whole-class activity. You could tell Sts your reaction the first time you read and watched the story.

5 VOCABULARY adverbs of manner

Vocabulary notes

Some Sts at this level still have problems distinguishing between adjectives and adverbs.

If necessary, remind them that adverbs describe actions (verbs) and elicit the basic rules for the formation of adverbs:

adjective	adverb	
quiet	quietly	add -ly
sad	sadly	
possible	possibly	change -ble to -bly
comfortable	comfortably	
lazy	lazily	change -y to -ily
angry	angrily	
good	well	irregular
fast	fast	
hard	hard	

- a** Focus on the instructions and give Sts time to underline six adverbs in **Part 2** of the story.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers. Sts may underline the adverb *well* (*I remember so well the evening...*). You could also accept this as an answer.

ANSWERS

dreamily (line 01) slowly (line 02) completely (line 11)
suddenly (line 19) masterfully (line 25) calmly (line 27)

- b** Focus on the instructions and get Sts to make adverbs from the adjectives in the list.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

angrily lazily quietly sadly seriously slowly

- c** **8.23** Get Sts to read sentences 1–6 and to think what the missing adverbs from the list in **b** might be.

Now play the audio the whole way through. Then play it again, pausing after each sentence for Sts to write an adverb to describe how the person is speaking.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

1 sadly 2 angrily 3 slowly 4 quietly 5 lazily 6 seriously

8.23

See sentences in Student Book on p.69 and answer key

- d** Focus on the task, and remind Sts that at the end of the story, Hartley's wife tells him to tell the cook (Héloïse) to leave. In pairs, give Sts five minutes to write their short scene. Tell them that they should also include at least two adverbs in their dialogues after *said*.

Get Sts to perform their dialogues in front of the class. You could get them to vote for the best ones.

EXTRA IDEA You could get pairs to read their scenes to each other and see how similar they are.

6 WRITING a short story

Tell Sts to go to **Writing Bank 8** on p.122.

- a** Focus on the photo and ask Sts where the people are and what they are doing. Now focus on the instructions and get Sts to read Lola's story and choose a title for it from the three options.

Check the answer.

ANSWER

c

- b** Tell Sts to read the story again and answer the questions.

Get Sts to compare with a partner.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 Lola was with her three-year-old son.
- 2 They were at Union Station in Los Angeles.
- 3 They were waiting for a bus to the airport.
- 4 There was only one seat left on the bus.
- 5 They got a taxi with the man behind them.
- 6 They got their flight home.

- c** Now focus on the **Punctuating dialogue** box and go through it with the class. Make sure Sts know all the words used to describe punctuation marks.

Focus on the instructions and the highlighted examples in the story. Give Sts time to find six examples of dialogue.

Put Sts in pairs to compare answers and to answer the questions.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

"But I've booked two seats on this bus for my son and me," I said, angrily. "Our flight is at 6:15."
He just looked at me and said, "There's room for one more passenger."
A man behind us said, "You're going to miss your flight. Do you want to get a taxi with me?"
"That's a great idea!" I said, quickly.
"How much is it?" I asked when we arrived.
"I'll pay. Go and get your flight," the man said.
Yes, most of the examples begin or end with *said / asked*, except for "Our flight is at 6:15." (as the "I said" after the first sentence refers to the second sentence too).

- d** Sts could do this individually or in pairs.

Check answers. You could invite Sts up to write their answer on the board. Correct any mistakes in punctuation.

ANSWERS

- 1 "I can't find my phone," she said.
- 2 He said, "Look at that strange light in the sky."
- 3 "Where have you been?" he asked.
- 4 I said, "We're almost there."
- 5 "You're wrong," they said.

- e** Tell Sts they are going to plan their own short story about something that happened to them. Focus on the instructions and remind Sts that they will need a title and also some dialogue in their story. They should use the questions in **b** to help them plan.

Give Sts time to plan what to write. Monitor and deal with any difficulties.

- f** When Sts are ready, focus on the instructions and assign the writing task for homework.

- g** Sts check their work for mistakes before turning it in.

For instructions on how to use these pages, see p.49.

Video material

Can you understand these people? 7&8

More materials

For teachers

Oxford English Hub

Quick Test 8

File 8 Test

GRAMMAR

ANSWERS

1 a 2 c 3 b 4 c 5 b 6 a 7 a 8 c 9 c 10 b 11 a
12 b 13 b 14 c 15 b

VOCABULARY

ANSWERS

a 1 meet 2 tell 3 miss 4 hope 5 wears
b 1 forget 2 learn 3 feel like 4 promise 5 hate 6 mind
7 enjoy 8 finish
c 1 at / with 2 in 3 of 4 at 5 for
d 1 lost 2 home 3 better 4 tickets 5 along 6 divorced
7 presents

PRONUNCIATION

ANSWERS

c 1 choose /u/ 2 look /ʊ/ 3 love /v/ 4 doing /ŋ/
5 know /n/
d 1 survive 2 happiness 3 afraid 4 pretend 5 borrow

CAN YOU understand this text?

ANSWERS

a 1
b 1 c 2 a 3 f 4 b 5 d 6 e

▶ CAN YOU understand these people?

ANSWERS

1 b 2 a 3 b 4 c 5 a



1 Susie

I = interviewer, S = Susie

I What's your idea of happiness?

S That's a difficult question. Um, my idea of happiness is probably relaxing with friends in my home, listening to nice music, with lovely food for everyone.

2 Frank

I = interviewer, F = Frank

I What foreign languages do you speak?

F I speak German, English, and a little bit of Russian.

I How well do you speak them?

F I am a native German speaker. I speak English very well, and I speak very little Russian.

3 Katelyn

I = interviewer, K = Katelyn

I If you have a problem, who do you ask for advice, friends or family?

K When I have a problem, I usually ask close friends for advice.

I Why?

K My parents are a lot older than me, so their advice is really great for certain things, but most of the things I'm going through right now, my friends are pretty good.

4 Joseph

I = interviewer, J = Joseph

I What advice would you give someone who can't sleep at night?

J If someone couldn't sleep at night, I'd usually advise them to do something like meditation, so some kind of breathing exercises which would calm them down, um, and also just to be in an environment where they feel comfortable and safe I guess, rather than in an environment that stresses them out, maybe keep their phone out of the bedroom, or something like that.

5 Alison

I = interviewer, A = Alison

I Do you think Americans and the British are bad at language learning?

A I think we do tend to be rather bad at learning languages.

I Why?

A I think we can be a bit lazy, because everybody else speaks English.

G if + past, *would* + base form (second conditional)

V animals and insects: *lion*, *tiger*, *goat*, etc.

P word stress

Lesson plan

The context of this lessons is animals and insects, and the second conditional is presented through a survival quiz. The lesson begins with a video that introduces the vocabulary focus. Sts learn the names of common animals and insects, and Pronunciation focuses on how to pronounce words for animals that may be similar in Sts' own language but stressed on a different syllable. Next, Sts watch a documentary about the five most dangerous animals in North America. This leads to Reading and Speaking, where Sts read and answer questions in a quiz and then find out if they have chosen the best option. Questions from the quiz are used to lead into Grammar, where the second conditional is analyzed and practiced. Finally, both the grammar and vocabulary are recycled and practiced in Speaking.

Video material

Vocabulary – animals and insects

Listening – *The most dangerous animals in the US*

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar if + past, *would* / *wouldn't* + base form (second conditional) p.208

Vocabulary Animal quiz p.281 (instructions p.268)

Communicative I think you'd... p.253 (instructions p.225)

For students

Workbook 9A

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Give Sts, in pairs, three minutes to brainstorm words they know for animals.

Elicit answers, getting Sts to spell the words, and write them on the board. Elicit the correct pronunciation. You could also write the animals in columns, depending on whether they are wild animals, farm animals, insects, etc.

1 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION

animals and insects, word stress

Vocabulary and Pronunciation notes

Many animal words are similar in other languages, but the pronunciation can be very different as the stress is often in a different place. Sts may also have problems with spelling, e.g., *crocodile* /'krakə,daɪl/ in English is *cocodrilo* in Spanish.

a Books open. In this video, images of different animals are gradually revealed, along with sound effects of the noise they make.

Focus on the photo and ask Sts what animal they think is going to be revealed. Then play the video for them to check the answer to 1.

Now tell Sts that they are going to see seven more animals. Tell them to put their hand up as soon as they think they know what the animal is. Play 2, and as soon as a student puts their hand up, pause the video and ask them what they think it is. Don't tell them if they are right yet or not. Continue, allowing more Sts to put their hands up if they have a different answer, until the animal is finally revealed. Then elicit the name and pronunciation, and get Sts to spell it and write it on the board.

Continue with the remaining animals.

EXTRA IDEA With 2, pause the video when the first circle appears (00:31) and elicit guesses. Do the same with the second and third circles. When the picture is revealed, give any Sts who guessed correctly after the first three circles a point. At the end the person with most points is the winner.

ANSWERS

1 chicken (or hen) 2 horse 3 monkey 4 snake 5 cat
6 dog 7 lion 8 bull

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

b Tell Sts to go to **Vocabulary Bank Animals** on p.169.

Focus on the four headings and make sure Sts understand them. Model and drill the pronunciation of *insects* /'ɪnsɛkts/ and *wild* /waɪld/.

Get Sts to do **a** individually or in pairs.

9.1 Now do **b**. Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers.

9.1

Animals

Insects

4 bee
2 butterfly
6 fly

3 mosquito
5 spider

1 wasp

Farm animals

8 bull
10 chicken
12 cow
7 goat
13 horse

11 pig

9 sheep

Wild animals

16 bat
18 bear
21 bird
14 camel
26 crocodile
28 deer
17 elephant
15 giraffe
22 kangaroo
20 lion

19 monkey

23 mouse

(plural: mice)

25 rabbit

27 rat

29 snake

24 tiger

Sea animals

32 dolphin

30 jellyfish

33 shark

31 whale

Either use the audio to drill the pronunciation of the words, or model and drill them yourself. Give further practice of any words your Sts find difficult to pronounce. Focus on the **bite** and **sting** box and go through it with the class.

Finally, do **Activation** and get Sts to cover the words and look at the photos. They can test themselves or a partner.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **9A**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **9A Vocabulary photocopiable activity**.

c Tell Sts to look at the animal words in the list and to underline the stress.

EXTRA SUPPORT You could elicit the stress on the first word *camel* with the whole class as an example.

d **9.2** Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers. If you are teaching a monolingual class, ask them if the stress is in the same place in their L1.

EXTRA SUPPORT Either use the audio to drill the pronunciation of the words or model and drill them yourself.

9.2

camel
crocodile
dolphin
elephant

giraffe
kangaroo
lion
mosquito

e Quickly go through questions 1–7, making sure Sts understand them.

Put Sts in pairs, and get them to ask and answer the questions.

Get some feedback from the class by asking individual Sts for some of their answers.

2 LISTENING using visual clues to rank information

a Focus on the pictures and the task. Elicit some ideas for the most dangerous animals or insects. Don't tell Sts if they are right yet.

EXTRA SUPPORT Refer Sts back to **Vocabulary Bank Animals** on p.169 if they can't remember the names of the animals and insects.

b This video is a short documentary about the most dangerous animals or insects in the US. Focus on the chart and tell Sts that as they watch the video and check their answers to **a**, they should write the names of the animals or insects in the five headings. Tell them not to worry about the rest of the chart.

Play the video for Sts to watch and check.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

5th snakes **4th** cows **3rd** dogs **2nd** bees and wasps
1st deer



Everybody knows that the wildlife in the US can be pretty dangerous. And many people think they know which the most dangerous animals are: the sharks swimming near the beach,... the crocodiles hiding in the swamps,... the bears attacking in the woods. What most people don't know is that, *actually*, the scariest creatures are not necessarily the deadliest ones... So, today, I'm going to tell you about the top five.

Starting in reverse order, at number five, are snakes. There are a number of venomous snakes in the US, and one of the most dangerous is the copperhead. They can be about three feet long, and they are common in most parts of the country, especially in forests, rocky areas, and near water. They don't normally attack people, except when they feel frightened. A bite from a copperhead can be very painful and can occasionally kill. Each year, about eight thousand people are bitten by snakes in the US. About five of those people die.

So, to number four. The fourth most dangerous animals in the US, you may be surprised to hear, are cows. People think cows are slow and a little stupid, but in fact, cows kill at least twenty Americans every year. Most attacks happen when people are working with cows on farms. However, some attacks also happen when people are running, riding their bikes, or walking their dogs in a field,... usually in the spring or early summer, when young cows are with their mothers. So *that's* when you need to be most careful.

The third most dangerous animals in the country are dogs. Each year, they are responsible for about *four point five million* attacks in the US,... and although most attacks aren't serious, about eight hundred thousand people need medical attention after a bite and about forty of these people die. Certain breeds of dogs, like German shepherds, Rottweilers, and pit bulls, are more aggressive than others. One reason for this is that they were traditionally hunting dogs or guard dogs. Dog attacks can happen at any time, and some dogs even attack their owners.

In second place are wasps and bees. About sixty people a year die from bee or wasp stings,... often because of an allergic reaction. About one–two percent of the American population have a bee or wasp allergy, some more serious than others. However, people are usually allergic to either bees or wasps – not both. Bees and wasps only sting in self-defense or when they're provoked,... but wasps are more aggressive than bees. So if you ever see a wasp's nest in your yard, make sure you call a professional to come and take care of it. Finally, in first place are... deer. Surprisingly, these beautiful creatures cause about *four hundred* deaths a year in the US – more than any other animal. "How is it possible?!" you ask... Well, these are large animals – they can weigh over two hundred pounds. And you need to be especially careful in the fall, when male deer can get *very* aggressive. However, the main reason is that they also cause frequent accidents on the road by running out in front of cars – there are over *two million* car accidents a year involving deer. So now you know what to look out for if you are in the US. Good luck... and be careful!!

c Tell Sts they are going to watch the video again but before they do, they need to see what they can remember, and try to circle the correct information in the chart.

Go through the information in the chart, making sure Sts understand all the lexis, e.g., *attack* (verb and noun), *aggressive*, etc.

Give Sts time, individually or in pairs, to circle the correct information.

Now play the video again. You could pause it after each animal or insect is mentioned to give Sts time to check, and if necessary change, their answers.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 frightened **2** feet **3** every year **4** dogs **5** summer
6 aren't **7** their owners **8** 60 **9** Wasps **10** bees
11 200 **12** million

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

d Do this as an open-class question. You could tell Sts about your own experience if you have one.

3 READING & SPEAKING understanding reasons

a Focus on the list of animals, and elicit the pronunciation of each one.

Now focus on the instructions and the quiz. Tell Sts, in pairs, to fill in each blank in the questions with one of the animals or insects in the list.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 dog **2** bee, wasp **3** snake **4** cows **5** jellyfish **6** shark

b Go through the three alternatives for each quiz question, and deal with any other new vocabulary. Model and drill the pronunciation of any tricky words.

Focus on the **Glossary** at the bottom of the quiz and the list of verbs. Get Sts to read the quiz again to complete the Glossary with these verbs, using the context in the text to figure out the meaning.

Get Sts to compare answers with a partner.

Check answers, using mime if necessary to help them with the meaning or translating into Sts' L1. Model and drill the pronunciation.

ANSWERS

1 suck 2 rub 3 shout 4 float 5 wave 6 keep still 7 tie

Now give Sts a few minutes to read the questions again and choose their answers, a, b, or c.

Get Sts to compare their choices with a partner.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Encourage Sts to try to say why they have chosen each option.

- c Put Sts into groups of three. Tell them to go to **Communication Would you know what to do?**, **A** on p.107, **B** on p.111, and **C** on p.112. Explain that all Sts **A** are going to read the answers to *In the city*, Sts **B** to *In the country*, and Sts **C** to *In the ocean*.

! If the number of Sts you have does not divide into groups of three, have one or two pairs who read and tell each other the answers to **A** and **B**, and then simply read the answers to **C**.

Go through the instructions with them carefully. Monitor and help with vocabulary while they are reading.

When Sts have read their answers, put them back into their groups, so they can tell each other what the correct answers are and why the others are wrong.

When they have finished, they could see who in their group got the most answers correct.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **9A**.

- d Do the questions as a whole-class activity. If you have been in any of the situations, tell the class about it.

4 GRAMMAR *if* + past, *would* + base form

- a Focus on the task. Get Sts, in pairs, to look at questions 1–6 in the quiz in **3**, or go through them with the whole class.
Check answers.

ANSWERS

They are all about an imagined future situation.

The tense of the verb after *if* is the simple past. The other form is *would* + base form.

- b Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 9A** on p.150.

Grammar notes

Sts may find it strange to be using past tenses in the *if* half of these conditional sentences, and it needs emphasizing that they do not refer to the past, but rather to a hypothetical situation.

Sts have seen and used *would* / *wouldn't* + base form before with the verb *like*, so they should not have problems with the form of *would*. You may want to tell them *would* is a modal auxiliary verb (like *will* or *should*) and that one of its uses is to express unreal or imaginary situations. It is often the equivalent of the conditional tense in other languages.

Focus on the example sentences and play audio 9.3 for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the **be in second conditionals** box and go through it with the class.

Go through the **first or second conditional?** note with the class. Sts learned about first conditional in **8B**. The two example sentences here help to make the difference in use clear.

Then focus on the exercises for **9A** on p.151. Point out that these exercises only practice second conditional. Sts do them individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

a 1 E 2 D 3 C 4 F 5 G 6 B

- b 1 would / could get, had
2 tried, 'd like
3 wouldn't buy, didn't like
4 rented, could
5 'd see, lived
6 wouldn't go, were / was
7 'd learn, did
8 'd bike, weren't / wasn't
9 Would...work, found
10 wouldn't be, had to

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **9A**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **9A Grammar photocopiable activity**.

5 SPEAKING

Go through the questions and make sure Sts understand them all.

Then focus on the **Talking about imaginary situations with would / wouldn't** box and go through it with the class.

Get some Sts to choose a question to ask you. Answer, giving as much detail as you think Sts will understand, and trying to use some of the phrases in the box.

Put Sts into groups of three, and tell them to take turns choosing a question they want to ask their partners. They should also answer that question themselves. Encourage Sts to ask for more information (*Why?*, etc.).

Monitor and help Sts, correcting any misuse of tenses in the second conditional.

Get some feedback from the class, asking if anyone found their partners' answers surprising / funny, etc.

EXTRA SUPPORT Before Sts start, you might also want to elicit some useful phrases for them to use when they are discussing the questions in their groups, e.g., *Me too.*, *I don't think that's a good idea because...*, *Really? Why (not)?*, etc.

- G** present perfect + *for* and *since*
V words related to fear: *afraid*, *frightened*, etc.
P sentence stress

Lesson plan

The context of this lesson is phobias, and Sts study the present perfect with *for* and *since* to talk about unfinished actions or states. The lesson begins with some online information about phobias, and comments from people who have them, and through the texts Sts learn some words related to fear. Then in Listening, Sts hear a woman talking about a phobia she suffers from. Examples of the present perfect are taken from the listening activity and analyzed before Sts go to the **Grammar Bank**. Sts then practice using phrases with *for* and *since*, and finally practice the structure in a video activity. In Pronunciation, Sts work on sentence stress in present perfect sentences to prepare them for the speaking activity – a survey in which Sts find out how long their classmates have done certain things.

Video material

Grammar – present perfect + *for* and *since*

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar present perfect + *for* and *since* p.209
 Communicative Famous phobias p.254
 (instructions p.226)

For students

Workbook 9B

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Play ten chances with the word *phobia* (see p.31 for instructions on how to play). When Sts have figured out the word, elicit the pronunciation (reminding Sts that *ph* is usually pronounced /f/). Then ask *How do you feel if you have a phobia of something?* and elicit *afraid* (or *frightened* / *scared*).

1 READING & VOCABULARY understanding social media posts; words related to fear

- a** Books open. Do this as a whole-class activity. You could tell Sts if you are afraid of any of the things.
 Then elicit any other things Sts can think of that people sometimes have phobias of, and write them on the board.
- b** Focus on the text. If you didn't do the **Optional lead-in**, make sure Sts understand *phobia*. You may also need to explain here that *fear* is the noun from *afraid* (though this is focused on later). Now tell Sts to read the text and complete each heading with one of the phobias shown in the photos.
 Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 Fear of driving 2 Fear of butterflies 3 Fear of public speaking
 4 Fear of heights 5 Fear of crowds

- c** Tell Sts that five people have written comments online about their phobias. Sts need to read each comment and match it to a phobia in **b**.

Give Sts time to match comments A–E to phobias 1–5.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers. You could ask Sts which words helped them match the comments and fears.

ANSWERS

A 3 B 1 C 2 D 5 E 4

- d** Focus on the instructions and give Sts time to match the seven highlighted words and phrases in the phobias and comments to definitions 1–6.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 fear 2 terrified 3 scared, frightened 4 panic
 5 suffers from 6 freeze

Deal with any other new vocabulary. Model and drill the pronunciation of any tricky words.

- e** Focus on the task and example.

Put Sts in pairs or small groups to discuss the three questions.

Get some feedback from the class.

2 LISTENING listening for key information

- a** **9.4** Focus on the instructions and give Sts time to read the questions. Make sure Sts understand the meaning of *therapy* (= a way of helping people who are physically or mentally ill).

Play the audio for Sts to listen and answer the questions.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then play the audio again if necessary.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 spiders 2 when she was a child 3 in her 20s
 4 a local zoo 5 She still has it, but it's much better.

9.4

(script in Student Book on p.132)

I = interviewer, J = Jo

I Do you have any phobias?

J Yes, I'm very scared of spiders.

I And how long have you had this phobia?

J I've had it since I was a child, so for more than forty years.

I Did something happen to start the phobia?

J Um, well, not really, I've always been a little afraid of spiders, maybe because my sisters used to chase me with them when I was a child, and I think as I got older, my fear got worse. But then something happened when I was in my twenties that made me think I had a real problem. I was in the car with my boyfriend – he was driving – and the road was very busy, and suddenly I saw a huge spider on the floor of the car, next to my foot. I was terrified, and my instinct was to try to get away from the spider as quickly as possible, so I opened my door, while he was still driving. It was really dangerous. Luckily, he managed to stop and nothing happened, but

I knew then that I had to do something about my phobia, get some therapy, you know, get some professional help.

I What kind of therapy did you have? How long did it take?

J I took a "spider phobia" class, it was a one-day class at a local zoo. We were a group of about fifteen people. First, there was a session with a doctor. We learned a lot of facts about spiders, and talked about what we were afraid of, and we did a hypnotherapy session. Then we went to the spider house. The other people in the class went up close to the glass to look at the spiders, and they were saying, "Ah, I'm cured, I feel fine." But I stayed at the back of the group, and I was crying because I was still terrified. But a little bit later, I was able to pick up a small spider with a piece of paper and a glass over the top of it and walk across the room. And by the end of the day, I could hold a tarantula, which was amazing.

I Do you still have the phobia now?

J Well, yes, I do, but now if I see one, I am more rational about it. My first reaction is to be frightened, but then with a little bit of talking to myself, and if it's not too big, I can usually deal with it.

- b** Focus on the list of four words about *The incident that made her realize her phobia was serious*. Make sure Sts understand they are listening for the significance of the four things. Play the audio again, pausing before the section about therapy. Put Sts into pairs to recreate the incident, using the words in the list.

Check answers.

Tell Sts they are going to listen to Jo talking about her therapy again. Then play the audio the whole way through. Again, Sts in their pairs discuss the therapy that Jo had, using the words in the list.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 She was in the car with her boyfriend. She saw a spider on the floor by her foot. She opened the car door while they were driving. Her boyfriend stopped the car.
- 2 They had a session with a doctor (with hypnotherapy). They went to see spiders and the other people on the course felt fine, but she didn't. Later she could pick up a small spider with a piece of paper and a glass. At the end of the day she could hold a tarantula.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to listen again with the script on p.132, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

- c** Do this as a whole-class activity, making sure Sts know the meaning of *rational* (= based on reason rather than emotions). You could also tell them what you think. Elicit more common phobias from the class.

EXTRA SUPPORT If Sts have difficulty coming up with phobias, you could write some of the following on the board (phobia only) and see if they can guess or know what they are, explaining those which are new to them.

- claustrophobia – small, enclosed spaces
- aerophobia – flying
- nosophobia – developing a specific disease
- ophidiophobia – snakes
- nyctophobia – the dark
- musophobia – mice and rats
- coulrophobia – clowns

3 GRAMMAR present perfect + *for* and *since*

- a** Tell Sts to focus on the extract from the interview with Jo and to answer the questions.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 When she was a child
- 2 Yes

- b** Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 9B** on p.150.

Grammar notes

The present perfect with *for* and *since* can be tricky for Sts as they may use a different structure in their language to express this concept, e.g., the present tense. Typical mistakes include using present instead of present perfect and choosing incorrectly between *for* and *since*: *I have lived here for three years*. NOT *I live here since three years*.

The important thing to highlight is that the present perfect with *for* and *since* is used to say how long a situation has continued from the past until now, i.e., we use it for situations that are still true, e.g., *I've been in this class for two years* (= I started two years ago and I am still in this class now).

In the following lesson, the present perfect for unfinished actions / periods of time will be contrasted with the simple past for finished actions / periods.

Focus on the example sentences and play audio  **9.5** for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the exercises for **9B** on p.151. Sts do the exercises individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full questions and sentences.

ANSWERS

- a**
- 1 How long have you been afraid of flying?
 - 2 How long has your sister had her new car?
 - 3 How long have they lived in this town?
 - 4 How long has your dad been a teacher?
 - 5 How long have you known your boyfriend?
 - 6 How long has Spain been in the EU?
 - 7 How long have you had your cat?
 - 8 How long has Dan been in this class?
- b**
- 1 've been afraid of flying since
 - 2 's had her car for
 - 3 've lived in this town for
 - 4 's been a teacher for
 - 5 've known my boyfriend since
 - 6 's been in the EU since
 - 7 've had our cat for
 - 8 's been in this class since

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **9B**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **9B Grammar photocopiable activity**.

- c** Give Sts time to complete the phrases with *for* or *since*. Get them to compare with a partner.
- d**  **9.6** Play the audio for Sts to listen and check. Check answers. You might want to point out to Sts the linking between *for* and *since* and the words that follow when they start with a vowel, e.g., *for ages, for about, since I*, etc.

9.6

since nineteen ninety
for about twenty years
since I was a child
since May fourth
since then
since eight-fifteen

for a long time
for ages
for six months
for a few weeks
since I got up this morning
for five minutes

Get Sts, in pairs, to practice saying the phrases.

- e  This video uses clips of people in different situations, and Sts hear questions with *How long...?* which they have to answer with full sentences in the present perfect, and using the time expression which appears on screen with either *for* or *since*.

Get Sts to cover the example and look at the photo. Ask Sts how the little girl feels. Elicit that she is afraid of the dog. Then elicit the question *How long has she been afraid of dogs?*

Play the video and pause it when the phrase *she a baby* appears. Tell Sts to answer the question *How long has she been afraid of dogs?* using the present perfect + *for* or *since* and the phrase on screen. Give them a few minutes to write their sentences. Then continue playing the video for them to hear the correct answer, and check how many of them got it right.

Play the video for clip 2 and pause when *2020* appears. Continue the process, giving Sts time to write their sentences and checking answers as they go along.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Repeat the activity, but ask Sts to close their notebooks and answer the questions orally.



- 1 How long has she been afraid of dogs? (*ping*) She's been afraid of dogs since she was a baby.
- 2 How long has she been a teacher? (*ping*) She's been a teacher since twenty twenty.
- 3 How long has she had her car? (*ping*) She's had her car for two weeks.
- 4 How long have they lived in this apartment? (*ping*) They've lived in this apartment since last week.
- 5 How long has he worked here? (*ping*) He's worked here for six months.
- 6 How long has he known his girlfriend? (*ping*) He's known his girlfriend for two years.
- 7 How long have they had their cat? (*ping*) They've had their cat for three weeks.
- 8 How long has she been sick? (*ping*) She's been sick since Wednesday.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

4 PRONUNCIATION sentence stress

- a  **9.7** Here Sts practice sentence rhythm in the present perfect to prepare for the speaking activity in **5**.

Play the audio once the whole way through for Sts just to listen.

Now play it again, pausing after each section for Sts to repeat, building up to the whole sentence or question. Encourage them to copy the rhythm.

9.7

See phrases and sentences in Student Book on p.75

Finally, get Sts to practice in pairs.

- b  **9.8** Now tell Sts they are going to hear five sentences / questions and they must write them down.

Play the audio once for Sts just to listen.

Now play it again, pausing after each line to give Sts time to write. Play the audio again if necessary.

Check answers.

9.8

- 1 How long have you worked here?
- 2 They've been married for twenty years.
- 3 She hasn't traveled by plane since two thousand five.
- 4 How long has he lived in Peru?
- 5 We've known them for a long time.

In pairs, get Sts to practice saying the sentences.

5 SPEAKING

- a Focus on the chart and instructions. Tell Sts to look at the group of *have* questions and think what the tenses should be for the first and third questions. Elicit from the class that the first prompt (*have / a pet*) is a simple present question, and the third one (*How long / it?*) is present perfect.

ANSWER

The two verb forms are the simple present and the present perfect.

Elicit the four questions for *have*: *Do you have a pet / tablet? How long have you had it?* Now focus on the first prompt for *be* and elicit the first and third questions (*Are you a fan of a soccer team? How long have you been a fan?*).

Then put Sts in pairs to say all the remaining questions in the chart.

- b  **9.9** Play the audio for Sts to listen and check. Check answers.

9.9

have

Do you have a pet? What is it? How long have you had it?
Do you have a tablet? What kind? How long have you had it?
live

Do you live in a modern apartment? How old is it? How long have you lived there?

Do you live near this school? Where exactly? How long have you lived there?

know

Do you know anybody from another country? Where's he or she from? How long have you known him or her?

be

Are you a fan of a soccer team? Which team? How long have you been a fan?

Are you a member of a club or organization? Which one? How long have you been a member?

Are you married? What's your partner's name? How long have you been married?

- c Focus on the example. Explain to Sts that they are going to do a mingle activity and ask the questions to different Sts. When they find a student who answers *Yes, I do* or *Yes, I am* for a question, they should ask the second question and write the student's name in the chart next to that question. They should try to find someone different for each question. Encourage Sts to ask for and give as much information as they can so that the survey becomes more of a conversation, rather than just question and answer. When Sts have finished, get some feedback.

EXTRA SUPPORT Check Sts can make the questions correctly by getting them to ask you a few first. Give short, natural answers with *for* and *since*, and some more information if you can, as a model for how Sts should answer.

- G** present perfect or simple past? (2)
V biographies
P word stress, /ɔr/

Lesson plan

The main focus of this lesson is how to describe your or somebody else's life, and the contrast between the simple past for completed actions or situations in the past, and the present perfect for situations or actions that started in the past, but are still true now. This is taught through reading and listening texts about famous actors. The lesson begins with Sts learning the vocabulary for verb phrases often used in biographies. Then there is a pronunciation focus on the word stress in these phrases, and on the /ɔr/ sound. This lexis is recycled in Reading, where Sts read about the lives of two prominent Black actors: Sidney Poitier and Denzel Washington. The contrast between the verb forms used for Poitier (who is dead) and Washington (who is alive) is used to show Sts a fundamental difference between how the simple past and the present perfect are used in English. In Listening, Sts watch a video documentary about another famous actor: Diana Rigg. The lesson finishes with a speaking activity where Sts talk about the life of an older person who they know well. This leads into Writing, where Sts are asked to write a short biography about a living actor of their choice.

Video material

Pronunciation – /ɔr/

Listening – *An icon for 60 years*

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar present perfect or simple past? (2) p.210

Communicative Like father, like son p.255 (instructions p.226)

For students

Workbook 9C

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Ask Sts, in pairs, to choose a famous actor whose work they like and brainstorm everything they know about them. Elicit some answers, getting Sts to tell you important biographical information about the actors, and write their names on the board.

1 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION

biographies, word stress, /ɔr/

- a** Books open. Focus on the list of phrases. Elicit / Teach the meaning of *events* (= things that happen to you). Go through the list, making sure Sts understand them all. Now tell Sts to number the events in a logical order between *be born* and *die*. Put Sts into pairs and get them to compare their order with a partner. Do they agree? Finally, elicit from the class a typical order of the events.

POSSIBLE ANSWERS

- 2 go to elementary school 3 go to high school
 4 graduate from high school 5 go to college 6 get a job
 7 fall in love 8 marry somebody / get married 9 have children
 10 separate 11 divorce somebody / get divorced 12 retire

EXTRA IDEA You could get Sts to mark the expressions: *E* = everybody does it, *M* = most people do it, *S* = some people do it.

- b** **9.10** Give Sts time to look at the highlighted words and mark the stress. Play the audio for Sts to listen and check. Check answers.

9.10

marry somebody / get married

go to elementary school

have children

go to college

graduate from high school

separate

divorce somebody / get divorced

retire

Then play the audio again for Sts to listen and repeat.

Pronunciation notes

The most common spellings of the /ɔr/ sound are *or* (when it is stressed), *oor*, and *ore*.

However, words beginning *wor* are pronounced /ɔr/, e.g., *work*, *world*, *worse*, etc., which is confusing for Sts who often pronounce these words with the /ɔr/ sound.

Learning the rule here should help them avoid this common pronunciation error.

- c** **9.10** Focus on the sound picture and elicit the word and sound: *horse* and /ɔr/.

Then play the video for Sts to watch and repeat the sound and words. Encourage them to copy the mouth position.



See sound and words in Student Book on p.76

- d** Focus on the words in the list and tell Sts that some of them have the /ɔr/ sound. Sts should say the words and circle the ones with the /ɔr/ sound. Remind them that it is easier if they say the words aloud to themselves. Get Sts to compare with a partner.

- e** **9.11** Play the audio for Sts to listen and check. Check answers.

ANSWERS

more, boring, door, sports, wore, form, score

9.11

See words in Student Book on p.76

Now ask *What rule can you hear for words with wor + consonant?* and elicit the answer.

ANSWER

wor + consonant words are usually pronounced /ər/.

You may want to point out that after other consonants, *or* is usually pronounced /ɔr/, e.g., *more, born, horse*, etc.

Now play the audio again for Sts to listen and repeat.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

2 READING understanding the order of life events

- a** Tell Sts they are going to read a text about two actors, Sidney Poitier and Denzel Washington. Focus on the photos and ask the class if they have heard of them.

Explain what the title *Brothers in arms* means (= men who develop a close relationship because they fight side by side in a conflict or struggle – in this case, racism in the movie industry).

Focus on the task. Give Sts time to read the facts.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

They are both Black actors, both won Oscars, their mothers were both told that they would be famous.

Ask Sts if they have seen either of the movies mentioned, or any other Denzel Washington movies.

Deal with any new vocabulary, e.g., *fortune-teller, prophecy*, etc. Model and drill the pronunciation of any tricky words.

- b** Focus on the task and tell Sts, in pairs, to read six more facts and decide if each one refers to Poitier or Washington.

Then they decide on the order of the new facts as they add them to the text.

EXTRA SUPPORT First get Sts to decide which facts belong to which person, check answers, then order the facts.

- c** **9.12** Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 D 2 F 3 C 4 A 5 B 6 E

9.12

See text in Student Book on p.76 and p.77 and answer key

Deal with any other new vocabulary. In fact F, the adjective *iconic* /aɪˈkɒnɪk/ (= related to a famous person or thing that people see as a symbol) and related noun *icon* are useful for this lesson. Model and drill the pronunciation of any tricky words.

Glossary: Point out that the equivalent of “Sir” for a woman is “Dame” (e.g., Dame Judi Dench, Dame Diana Rigg).

- d** Elicit / Explain the meaning of *What else do they have in common?* (= what other things are similar about them and their lives).

Books closed. Put Sts in pairs to share what they can remember about the two actors.

Check answers

POSSIBLE ANSWERS

They both got married and had children.

They both played many iconic roles.

They both received many awards.

3 GRAMMAR present perfect or simple past? (2)

- a** Give Sts time to answer the questions about sentences 1–6.

Check which sentences are about Denzel Washington.

ANSWERS

Sentences 2, 3, and 6

Now ask Sts why the tenses in the sentences about Sidney Poitier (1, 4, and 5) are different from the ones in the sentences about Denzel Washington.

ANSWERS

The sentences about Sidney Poitier are all in the simple past because he has died. The ones about Denzel Washington are in the present perfect because he is alive, and the actions or situations are true about his life up to now.

- b** Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 9C** on p.150.

Grammar notes

The contrast between the simple past and the present perfect was first focused on in **4B** (see **Grammar Bank 4B** p.140).

Highlight that the present perfect is used in the examples about Denzel Washington because his career as an actor hasn't finished. He is still an actor and will probably be in more movies.

The past tense is used for Sidney Poitier because the sentences refer to a finished period of time. Poitier won't play any more roles now because he is dead, so *played* is used. If he were still alive, then *has played* would be used (as it is for Denzel Washington).

Focus on the example sentences and play audio **9.13** for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the exercises for **9C** on p.151. Sts do the exercises individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

- a** 1 Martin left 2 I lived 3 Hana's been 4 My sister had
5 I've worked 6 The city has changed 7 They were
8 I met, was
b 1 has he lived, moved
2 did Picasso die, did he live, left
3 have they been, 've been, met, did...go

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **9C**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **9C Grammar** photocopyable activity.

4 LISTENING using visual clues to understand biographical information

- a** Focus on the photos and the questions, and elicit answers. Don't worry if none of your Sts know her name; however, they may know some of the roles she played, e.g., Lady Olenna Tyrell. Tell them that they will find out all about her in the video.

- b** This video is a documentary about Diana Rigg.

Focus on the task. Go through the headings and all the places, things, and people in the list with Sts.

Play the video once the whole way through. Sts should just watch and not make notes.

Put Sts in pairs to do the task.

Play the video again, pausing after each section for Sts to discuss.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

Her early life: India – It's where she lived for the first eight years of her life.

Her education: Fulneck Girls' School – It's where she acted in many plays
RADA – it's where she studied drama.

Her early career: The Royal Shakespeare Company – It's where she played important roles in theater.

Secret Agent Emma Peel – It's the role she got in a popular TV series called *The Avengers*.

£150 → £450 a week – It's the increase in salary she got per week in her second season.

Her later career: *On Her Majesty's Secret Service* – It's the movie in which she played the only woman James Bond married.

Lady Olenna Tyrell – It's the role she played in the hit series *Game of Thrones*.

Last Night in Soho – It's the horror movie where she played the villain in her last role.

Her private life: Rachael – She's her daughter with her second husband.

A big party – She had an enormous party on her 80th birthday where she danced all night.

"Oh, but I've had such a life!" – One of the last things she said to her daughter before she died.



In an acting career that covered sixty years in theater, in film, and on TV, from Shakespeare, to Bond, to *Game of Thrones*, Diana Rigg was an icon not only for her acting talent, but also for her incredible style.

Diana was born in Doncaster, in the northern part of England, but she lived for the first eight years of her life in Jodhpur, in India, where her father, Louis, was a railway engineer.

Diana returned to her home country with her mother, Beryl, in nineteen forty-five.

She went to boarding school, where she acted in many plays. Her teachers recognized her talent, and when she finished school, she studied drama at RADA, the Royal Academy of Dramatic Art.

After RADA, in nineteen fifty-nine, she got a job with the Royal Shakespeare Company. Diana made her debut in nineteen sixty-one, playing important roles, such as Helena in *A Midsummer Night's Dream*, and Cordelia in *King Lear*. She was part of a group of brilliant young actors, including Judi Dench.

Diana didn't earn much money in the theater, so she also worked as a model, and had some small TV roles. However, in nineteen sixty-five, she got the role of secret agent Emma Peel in a very popular TV series called *The Avengers*. Overnight she became a star, but she continued to work with the Royal Shakespeare Company. She filmed *The Avengers* during the day and then played Shakespearean roles in the theater at night.

At this time, women actors were usually paid less than men, but in her second season in *The Avengers*, she fought to get paid the same as the male star, Patrick Macnee. Her salary went up from one hundred and fifty pounds a week to four hundred and fifty pounds, though she said later that no other women in the profession supported her.

After leaving *The Avengers*, she had many roles in successful movies. In nineteen sixty-nine, in the movie *On Her Majesty's Secret Service*, she played Tracy, the only woman James Bond ever married.

Diana won many awards for her acting, both in the US and in the UK, including an Emmy for her role in *Rebecca* (in nineteen ninety-seven). In nineteen ninety-four, she was made a Dame Commander of the Order of the British Empire, or DBE.

For many of the younger generations, who did not know her in her early roles, Diana became a star again in the hit HBO series *Game of Thrones*, when, from twenty thirteen to twenty seventeen, she played Lady Olenna Tyrell, "Queen of Thorns."

Her last role was in twenty twenty-one, in the horror movie *Last Night in Soho*, where she played the main villain. The movie was still

in production when she died in September twenty twenty, at the age of eighty-two, and it is dedicated to her.

Diana Rigg married twice, and had a daughter, Rachael, with her second husband, Archie Stirling, a theater producer. When she discovered that Stirling was having an affair, Diana divorced him. Diana Rigg loved life, and lived it to the fullest. On her eightieth birthday, she had an enormous party where she danced all night. One of the last things she said to her daughter before she died was, "Oh, but I've had such a life!"

Deal with any new vocabulary. Model and drill the pronunciation of any tricky words.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

c Do the questions as a whole-class activity and elicit opinions. You could tell Sts what you think.

5 SPEAKING

a In this activity Sts put into practice the contrast between the simple past and the present perfect through talking about an older person – a friend or member of their family.

Focus on the activity and give Sts five minutes to think about who they are going to talk about and to prepare their answers to the questions. Stress that it should be an older person, not a younger one, because they will have had more experiences.

Focus on the question prompts. You could demonstrate the activity by getting the class to ask you about one of your grandparents, older relatives, or a friend.

b Sit Sts in pairs, ideally face-to-face. Set a time limit for Sts to interview each other. Encourage Sts answering to give as much information as possible, and Sts asking the questions to ask for extra information where possible.

Then Sts change roles.

Find out if their two people had anything in common.

6 WRITING a biography

Tell Sts to go to **Writing Bank 9** on p.123.

a Focus on **a**. Give Sts time to read the list of events. Deal with any new vocabulary.

Sts read the biography of Michelle Yeoh and do the ordering task. Point out that the first one has been done for them.

Get them to compare answers with a partner.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

3 She first appeared on TV.

7 She achieved international fame.

8 She won her first Oscar.

1 She was born in Malaysia.

6 She became very famous in Asia.

2 She failed to become a dancer.

5 She gave up acting.

4 She got an important part in a martial arts movie.

- b Now focus on the **Using tenses: simple past, present perfect, simple present** box and go through it with the class.

Sts read the Michelle Yeoh biography again and find another example of each tense.

Check answers.

POSSIBLE ANSWERS

Simple past: she began to train as a ballet dancer; she had to stop; she hurt her back; she decided to study creative arts; she then went back; she won a beauty competition; an Asian movie company invited her; she concentrated on acting; she played the main role; she married her producer; she retired from acting; she got divorced and started making movies again; she appeared in *Police Story 3*; she became a star; Michelle played agent Wai Lin; she became famous

Present perfect: she has received many awards; Michelle has worked for several wildlife organizations

Simple present: Michelle Yeoh is a Malaysian actor

- c Now Sts read a paragraph about another actor, Ke Huy Quan, and complete it by putting the verbs in parentheses in the simple past, present perfect, or simple present.

Get Sts to compare answers with a partner.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 was born 2 moved 3 starred 4 gave up 5 returned
6 won 7 has changed 8 has received 9 lives

- d Sts choose an actor who is still alive – but not too young – and use the table to make notes about them. They could do this individually or in pairs. If you did the books closed lead-in and Sts chose an actor who is alive, you could suggest that they write about them.
- e Focus on the highlighted phrases in the biography of Michelle Yeoh. Tell them to use some of these in their own biography.
- Sts do the writing task in class, or for homework if you want them to research the person they are writing about. They could also attach a photo of the actor.
- f Make sure Sts check their biography for mistakes, especially in their use of tenses.

EXTRA IDEA If Sts wrote their biographies for homework, when they bring them in, get them to exchange them with other Sts, or put them up around the class for people to read, and then ask the class which ones they found most interesting.

What's going on with Max?

Practical English following directions

Lesson plan

In this episode Sts learn functional language for directions, particularly on public transportation.

The episode begins with Ben discussing his relationship problems with Carla and Emma. He has to go to another of Izzy's work events and does not want to. Then in the next scene he calls Izzy to get directions to the bar where the work event is taking place. In the final scene, Ben arrives at the event and misunderstands the situation between Izzy and Max. Izzy is embarrassed by his behavior, and this leads to a big argument, which ends the episode.

Video material

Pictures of you Episode 5

More materials

For teachers

Oxford English Hub

Quick Test 9

File 9 Test

For students

Workbook Practical English 5

Can you remember...? 1–9

THE STORY SO FAR (books closed)

▶ Play the first part of the video – the recap of Episode 4 (*Previously*) – to remind Sts of the previous episode of *Pictures of you* and use it to elicit from Sts what happened.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Put Sts in pairs or small groups to remember the previous episode of *Pictures of you*. Then play the recap for them to check what they remembered.

1 THE REAL PROBLEM

a ▶ In this scene Ben explains to Carla and Emma why he doesn't like the way his relationship with Izzy is going because she has changed so much.

Focus on the photo and elicit that Ben and Emma are in the café talking to Carla.

Focus on the task and give Sts time to read the two questions.

Now play the video once. Get Sts to discuss the questions with a partner.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 He's going to one of Izzy's work events. He doesn't want to go.
- 2 Carla



C = Carla, E = Emma, B = Ben

C What's the matter?

E Ben has another one of Izzy's work events tonight.

C And that's a bad thing?

B This is what it's like: Nice to meet you, Ben. So you work in a café? Aw, you're so lucky. I love coffee. People always need coffee. Neh, neh, neh, neh. Ha ha ha.

C Really? Are they all like that?

E But that's not the real problem, is it Ben?

B No, it isn't. It's Izzy. She's different when she's with the people from work.

C Well, she's working. We're all different at work, aren't we? Hi, can I help you? Hi, can I help you? To have here or take away? Thanks very much. Have a nice day!

E Well, I'm not different at work.

C You work on a farm! You spend most of your time talking to animals!

B I know it's because she's at work, but...she's always at work. I don't want to spend all our free time with her work friends, especially Max.

C Well, I'm sure you're going somewhere really nice this evening.

B This evening, I would just like to have a pizza with my girlfriend on the sofa in her apartment. I don't want to have to dress up and go out to a nice restaurant. I want it to be like before. I want Izzy back!

C Izzy is still here.

E Is she...?

B I don't know.

b Focus on the list and give Sts time to read all the items. Make sure they understand the instruction.

Play the video again so Sts can watch and check the relevant items in the list.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

Sts should check:

- having to go to Izzy's work event
- how Izzy's colleagues talk to him
- how Izzy is different at work
- having to put on nice clothes this evening

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

2 FOLLOWING DIRECTIONS

a Focus on the photos and elicit that Izzy is giving Ben directions on the phone. Now focus on the map and explain that this is a simplified version of part of the London Underground train system. Tell Sts that the London Underground is usually referred to as *the Tube*, and go through the American English and British English box.

Focus on the map again and point out the four words for direction: *north, east, south, west*.

Put Sts in pairs to answer the four questions.

Check answers.

Now give Sts more time in their pairs to discuss what the **bold** words mean.

Go through the meanings with the class, eliciting ideas from Sts and confirming or correcting the answers.

! The map in the Student Book has been adapted and is simplified rather than strictly accurate.

ANSWERS

1 five 2 It's an eastbound train. 3 The Victoria line
4 Oxford Circus

stops = stations

eastbound / westbound = (trains) going in the direction of
east / west

line = a subway / train track

get (a line) = take (a particular underground line)

get off = get out of a train

change to (a different line) = get off a train at a station in order to
take another train on a different line

- b ▶ In this scene Ben asks Izzy for directions to the evening
work event.

Focus on 1 and 2 and the a, b, c options.

Play the video once, and then tell Sts to choose the
correct answers.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check
answers.

ANSWERS

1 b 2 c



B = Ben, I = Izzy

B Hey, yeah. I'm on my way. What's the best way to get to the bar?

I By Tube. Get the Piccadilly line westbound to King's Cross.

B OK, and then?

I Then change to the Victoria line southbound and get off at Warren
Street. It's only two stops.

B Could you say that again?

I Get the Piccadilly line westbound to King's Cross. Then change to
the Victoria line southbound and get off at Warren Street. It's only
two stops.

B Where's the bar?

I Turn right out of the station, then go straight on about fifty meters
and take the second right. That's Grafton Way. The place is on the
left. It's called The Conversation Bar.

B Got it, thanks. See you soon.

I And Ben...

B Yeah...

I Please don't be late.

- c Now focus on the conversation in the chart. Elicit that
the **You say** phrases are what Ben says and the **You hear**
phrases are said by Izzy, who is giving Ben directions.
These phrases will be useful for Sts if they need to ask for
and follow directions.

Give Sts a minute to read through the conversation and
think what the missing words might be. Then play the
video again and get Sts to fill in the blanks. (Note that the
complete dialogue is on the unit page, but not on screen
for the "listen and repeat" video.) Play again if necessary.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check
answers.

ANSWERS

1 line 2 change 3 stops 4 right 5 straight 6 left

Go through the conversation line by line with Sts,
helping them with any words or expressions they don't
understand. Make sure Sts are confident with *left*, *right*,
and *straight on*.

- d ▶ Now focus on the **You say** phrases and tell Sts they're
going to hear the conversation again. They should repeat

the phrases when the video pauses. Encourage them to
copy the rhythm and intonation.

Play the video again for Sts to watch and repeat the
phrases.



Same as previous video with repeat pauses

Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**. **A** is Izzy and **B** is Ben.

Get Sts to read the conversation aloud, and then change
roles.

- e Focus on the role-play. In their pairs, Sts role-play asking
for and giving simple directions to a particular Tube stop
using the Tube map. Go through the instructions with
them. Get them to find Euston station on the map.
Remind Sts that Ben asked *Could you say that again?* to get
Izzy to repeat the directions. Model and drill the phrase
and tell Sts **B** to use it if they need it.

A starts the role-play with *Get the...line...bound*.

Monitor and help if necessary.

EXTRA SUPPORT Demonstrate the activity by taking the **A**
role yourself and getting a confident student to follow your
directions and tell the class the destination.

When they have finished, they should change roles. This
time, **B** gives directions. **B** can decide if **A** starts at Euston
or another Tube station.

You could get a few pairs to perform in front of the class.

3 IZZY'S WORK PARTY

- a ▶ In the final scene Ben arrives at the magazine party to
see Izzy putting her hand on Max's shoulder as they pose
for a work photo. He misunderstands the situation and
causes a scene. Izzy is very embarrassed and they have an
argument.

Focus on the photos and the task.

Elicit ideas, but don't tell them if they are right or not.

Play the video once the whole way through.



B Hey! What are you doing?

I What's wrong with you?

B Look, I made a mistake, OK?

I I'm so embarrassed. Couldn't you see it was a work photo?

B I said I'm sorry, OK! But it's always a work "something" with you
these days. Is that all you think about? Your wonderful job?

I What? Are you annoyed that I'm successful?

B No, of course not. I'm very proud of you, but...but there's never
any time for us. And what's going on with Max?

I Max? Oh, come on, Ben. Now you are acting like a child. Max is my
boss. I work with him. I work for him. There's nothing going on...Do
you really think I would do that to you?

B I don't know. I feel like I don't know who you are anymore.

I That's not fair. I'm me. I'm Izzy. If you don't like who I am, then I...

B Then what?

I I can't have this conversation with you right now.

B I'm not following you, if that's what you want.

- b Now give Sts time to read the *Who...?* questions in the
list. Check they understand all the vocabulary, e.g., *got*
the wrong idea (= thought something that was not true),
apologizes (= says sorry).

Play the video again the whole way through for Sts to watch and write *B* or *I* for each question. Play it again if necessary.
Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

1 B 2 I 3 B 4 B 5 I 6 I

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

4 SOCIAL ENGLISH

a Focus on the phrases in the chart and go through them with the class. Highlight that they are all from the video.
Now give Sts time to match a phrase in **A** with a response in **B**. They can do this individually or in pairs.

b  Play the video for Sts to watch and check.
Check answers.

You could highlight that Izzy uses the phrase *Oh, come on* to show she is annoyed or angry with Ben and that it is stupid of him to think she is interested in Max. You could also tell Sts that we use *What's going on with...?* to ask for an explanation of a situation.

If you know your Sts' L1, you could get them to translate the phrases.

ANSWERS

- 1 Look, I made a mistake, OK?
- 2 I said I'm sorry, OK!
- 3 No, of course not.
- 4 Max? Oh, come on, Ben.
- 5 That's not fair.
- 6 Then what?

Now play the video again, pausing as necessary, for Sts to watch and repeat.

c Focus on the instructions and put Sts in pairs, making sure they understand what they have to do.

Monitor and help. Make sure they change roles. If there's time, you could get Sts **B** to close their books and respond from memory, and then change roles.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Focus on the **What do you think?** box and go through it with the class.

Put Sts in pairs and get them to discuss their answers to the questions. You can decide if Sts should answer the questions briefly or have a more elaborate class discussion about them.

Elicit some feedback from the class.

- G** expressing movement: *go over*, etc.
V sports: *team*, *player*, etc.; expressing movement: *into*, *through*, etc.
P word stress

Lesson plan

The context of this lesson is sports, and Sts learn how we express movement in English using a verb and an adverb or preposition, e.g., *walk under the bridge*, *go out of the door*. At the start of the lesson, in Vocabulary and Pronunciation, Sts identify various sports in a video, as well as focusing on verbs that go with sports. They then work on the word stress in names of sports, before doing a questionnaire about which sports they like and don't like, etc. In Vocabulary and Grammar, Sts focus on prepositions of movement (*up*, *down*, *along*, *through*, etc.) and they learn how to combine these words with a verb to express movement. In Reading and Speaking, Sts read an article about athletes who are or were bad losers, and talk about others that they have heard of. Finally, in Writing, Sts read an article about public running events, and then write an article of their own about an activity they enjoy in their free time.

Video material

Vocabulary – sports

Vocabulary & Grammar – expressing movement

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar expressing movement p.211

Vocabulary Expressing movement p.282 (instructions p.268)

Communicative The race p.256 (instructions p.226)

For students

Workbook 10A

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Write on the board the names of four famous current sports people (two male, two female) that you think your Sts will have heard of, ideally each from a different sport, e.g., *Neymar* (Brazil, soccer), *Carlos Alcaraz* (Spain, tennis), *Simone Biles* (US, gymnastics), *Elaine Thompson-Herah* (Jamaica, track and field). Ask Sts what their sports are, where they are from, and if Sts have ever seen them on TV. Finally, elicit the verbs to use with their sports, e.g., *play soccer / tennis, do gymnastics / track and field*.

1 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION

sports, word stress

Vocabulary and Pronunciation notes

Some words for sports in other languages are similar to the English word, or even the same. However, they are sometimes spelled differently, e.g., *tennis* is spelled with one *n* in several languages and the pronunciation is usually different, especially the stress, e.g., *karate* is *karate* in Portuguese. This means that there may often be interference from Sts' L1 when they use the English word for a particular sport.

The way the verbs *do*, *play*, and *go* are used with sports may also be different in your Sts' L1. *Play* is generally used for ball sports, and *do* for *track and field*, *martial arts*, *gymnastics*, and for sports and exercise in general, e.g., *I do a lot of exercise*.

It is also important for Sts to understand the difference between, e.g., *swim* and *go swimming*, which was referred to in **2A**. All sports ending in *-ing* (*sailing*, etc.) can also be used as normal verbs, e.g., *We sailed to the island and had lunch there*.

- a** ▶ This video shows clips of different sports. Focus on the instructions and tell Sts not to write.
 Play the video all the way through for Sts to watch.
 Set a time limit, and put Sts in pairs to remember the ten sports.
 Check answers.

ANSWERS

track and field, basketball, tennis, skiing, cycling, soccer, football, gymnastics, karate, volleyball

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

- b** 🎧 **10.1** Books open. Focus on the list of sports and check Sts know them all. Use the photos to help. Give Sts time to underline the stressed syllable in each one.
 Play the audio once for Sts to listen and check.

🎧 10.1

baseball, basketball, gymnastics, handball, hockey, ice skating, karate, sailing, soccer, tennis, track and field, windsurfing

EXTRA CHALLENGE Before playing the audio, put Sts in pairs and get them to say together how they think the sports are pronounced, and to underline the stressed syllable.

- c** Now focus on the questions. Put Sts in pairs to discuss the answers, looking at the list in **b**.

EXTRA SUPPORT As an example, elicit whether we use *play* or *do* with the first sport in the list, *baseball* (*play*).

Check answers.

For 1, you could point out that these are gerunds (*-ing* forms).

You could elicit that we most often use *play* when talking about sports with a ball.

ANSWERS

- 1 ice skating, sailing, windsurfing; *cycle* is used when referring to a means of transportation, e.g., *I often cycle to work*, or to doing the sport professionally, e.g., *He cycles three hours a day when he's training*. *Go cycling* = the activity done for pleasure, e.g., *We're going cycling this weekend*.
- 2 a play: baseball, basketball, handball, hockey, soccer, tennis
b do: gymnastics, karate, track and field

2 SPEAKING

Now focus on the sports questionnaire and go through the questions, making sure Sts understand them. Point out that *live* in the penultimate question is an adjective and is pronounced /laɪv/. Elicit or teach the meaning and pronunciation of *memorable* /ˈmɛmərəbəl/ in the last question. Demonstrate the activity by answering some of the questions yourself.

Put Sts in pairs and get them to ask and answer the questions. Encourage them to ask for and give more information, so that this becomes a conversation, rather than just questions and answers.

Get some feedback from the class.

3 VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR expressing movement

- a 10.2 Focus on the task. Give Sts time to look at the illustration and read the passage.

Tell Sts they will hear some of the commentary before and after the passage in the Student Book.

Play the audio once the whole way through for Sts to fill in the blanks. Then play it again if necessary.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 past 2 toward 3 over 4 into

10.2

The US really needs a goal now. They're losing two–one, with only five minutes left. But here comes Matthews. What can he do here? He goes past one defender, and another! The goalkeeper's coming toward him. Matthews shoots. And the ball goes over the goalkeeper, and into the goal! That is a fantastic goal! That is the Matthews magic! The US two, Mexico two!

- b Tell Sts to go to **Vocabulary Bank Expressing movement** on p.170 and get them to do **a** individually or in pairs.

Vocabulary notes

Sts may not be clear about the difference between *to* and *toward*. Highlight that *He walked to the car* = he reached the car, and *He walked toward the car* = he walked in the direction of the car.

- 10.3 Now do **b**. Play the audio for Sts to listen and check. Check answers.

10.3

Expressing movement

- | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| 6 under the bridge | 3 over the bridge |
| 11 along the street | 12 up the steps |
| 10 around the lake | 7 past the church |
| 8 through the tunnel | 9 toward the lake |
| 4 into the store | 1 down the steps |
| 2 across the road | 5 out of the store |

Now either use the audio to drill the pronunciation of the phrases, or model and drill them yourself. Give further practice of any words and phrases your Sts find difficult to pronounce.

Focus on the **across or through** box and go through it with the class.

Then focus on the **away and back** box and go through it with the class.

Finally, focus on **Activation**. Get Sts to cover the words in **a** and look at the pictures. From memory, they take turns telling their partner where the woman and her dog went.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **10A**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **10A Vocabulary photocopiable activity**.

- c This video consists of seven clips from the video in **1a**, which clearly show the movement in each of the sentences. Check that Sts understand the verbs in the list. Elicit / Teach the meaning of *hoop*, *net*, *track*, and *line*. Focus on the photo and elicit what the sport is (*track and field* – *the high jump*). Now focus on the task and the example sentence, and tell Sts they are going to watch a video to see the movements in sentences 1–7. Play the first clip and let Sts complete the sentence, and check the answer. Now play the rest of the video. The pause when the movement is frozen should give Sts enough time to complete the sentences.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 2 throwing, through (= basketball)
- 3 hitting, over (= tennis)
- 4 skiing down (= skiing)
- 5 cycling around (= cycling)
- 6 kicking, into (= soccer)
- 7 running toward (= football)

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

- d Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 10A** on p.152.

Grammar notes

In English, movement is usually expressed by adding a preposition or adverb of movement to a verb, e.g., *walk up the steps*, *climb over the wall*. In your Sts' L1, this may be expressed in a different way, e.g., by just using a single verb.

Focus on the example sentences and play the audio

- 10.4 for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class. Now focus on the **come or go?** and **in or into? out or out of?** box and go through it with the class.

Then focus on the exercises for **10A** on p.153. Sts do the exercises individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

- a 1 to, into 2 past 3 along 4 over 5 toward 6 over, into
7 around 8 across
b 1 over 2 in 3 up 4 into 5 out 6 away 7 down

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **10A**.

EXTRA CHALLENGE With a class that is very interested in sports, you could get Sts to practice more sports rules. Put Sts in groups of four: **A, B, C,** and **D.** **A** thinks of a sport they know well. The others have to guess it by asking a maximum of ten *yes / no* questions, e.g., *Is it a team sport? Do you play it inside? Do you have to throw the ball?*, etc. When they have guessed, **B** thinks of a sport, etc.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **10A Grammar** photocopiable activity.

4 READING & SPEAKING reading and retelling key events

- a** Do this as a whole-class activity. If Sts aren't into sports themselves, they could think of a friend or family member instead.
- b** Focus on the instructions and the photos A–E. Put Sts in pairs to identify the sports.
Give Sts time to read the article and check their answers. They also need to match the photos and paragraphs.
Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.
Get Sts to read the **Glossary**.

ANSWERS

- A** soccer, paragraph 5
- B** track and field, paragraph 3
- C** soccer, paragraph 1
- D** taekwondo, paragraph 4
- E** tennis, paragraph 2

- c** Tell Sts to read the article again. Put them in pairs and get them to cover the article and retell each story from looking at the photos in **b**.
Check answers.

ANSWERS

- A** Robert Bauer showed seven fingers to the fans after the German men's soccer team lost to Brazil in the 2016 Olympics.
- B** Jon Drummond lay down on the track because he was disqualified. He was crying for so long he became dehydrated.
- C** Hope Solo made her opponent wait while she changed her gloves, and then was upset after losing the match. She called the Swedish team cowards. Later she was given a six-month ban.
- D** Ángel Matos kicked the referee and attacked a judge. He was banned from all competitions for life.
- E** Serena Williams lost her temper twice and shouted at the umpire. She lost the match.

Deal with any other new vocabulary, either explaining in English, translating into Sts' L1, or getting Sts to check in their dictionaries. Model and drill the pronunciation of any tricky words.

- d** Put Sts in small groups to discuss the questions or do this as a whole-class activity. If Sts did the task in groups, get some feedback. You could give your own answers to the questions too.

5 WRITING an article

- a** Do this as a whole-class activity.
- b** Tell Sts to go to **Writing bank 10** on p.124 and to do **a**.
When they have finished, check the answer.
You could find out whether Sts already knew about Parkrun and what they think of it.

ANSWER

She enjoys exercising with other people.

Now tell Sts to focus on the instructions for **b**. Sts look at the topic in each paragraph of the article. Get them to match 1–4 to the correct summary.

Get Sts to compare answers in pairs.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

Paragraph 4: A

Paragraph 2: B

Paragraph 1: C

Paragraph 3: D

Now focus on the **Organizing notes into paragraphs** box and go through it with the class.

For **c**, point out the groups of notes around the article. Get Sts to complete them with notes 1–8.

Get Sts to compare answers in pairs.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

a 5 **b** 1 **c** 4 **d** 7 **e** 3 **f** 8 **g** 2 **h** 6

For **d**, Now tell Sts to choose an activity that they enjoy doing in their free time – explain that it doesn't have to be a sport; it can be any free-time activity. Focus on the title. Tell them they must then write an article with four paragraphs by following the model. Give Sts time to make notes about their activity and then organize the notes into four groups.

For **e**, point out the highlighted phrases in the article. Sts should make a list of useful phrases for their activity. Sts could do the writing in class, or you could assign it as homework.

In **f**, Sts should check their article for mistakes.

EXTRA IDEA In small groups, Sts exchange and read each other's articles. Find out if any Sts wrote about the same activity. Finally, find out if any Sts would like to try an activity they read about.

- G** word order of phrasal verbs
V phrasal verbs: *look up*, *look after*, *find out*, etc.
P linking

Lesson plan

This lesson provides an introduction to phrasal verbs both as the grammatical and lexical focus. Phrasal verbs are an important feature of English, and are used very frequently by native speakers. Sts will probably have already learned some in *American English File Level 1*, such as *wake up*, *get up*, *turn off*, and here they review ones that have come up so far during the course, learn some more common ones, and learn how they work grammatically. The context is about being a morning person (*lark*) or an evening person (*owl*). The lesson begins with a video documentary about larks and owls and Sts interview each other to find out which category they fall into. In Vocabulary, the focus is on common phrasal verbs, and in Grammar, the word order of phrasal verbs is analyzed. In Listening, Sts listen to a radio show about the advantages of getting up early. Then in Pronunciation, Sts have more practice of linking. The lesson finishes with Speaking, where the phrasal verbs Sts have learned are recycled and practiced in a questionnaire.

Video material

Listening – *Larks and owls* (Parts 1–2)

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar word order of phrasal verbs p.212
Vocabulary Phrasal verbs p.283 (instructions p.268)
Communicative Phrasal verb conversations p.257 (instructions p.226)

For students

Workbook 10B

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Draw a clock on the board and quickly review telling the time. Then say a few “digital times” to Sts (e.g., *eight fifteen*, *eleven forty*, etc.) and elicit the other way of saying them (*a quarter after eight*, *twenty to twelve*).

Then tell Sts to continue in pairs, **A** and **B**. **A** says a digital time and **B** has to say it the other way. Then **B** says a digital time, etc. Stop the activity when you think Sts have had enough practice.

Now ask Sts what they consider to be a very early time to get up, and whether they ever get up at that time.

1 LISTENING & READING

categorizing information, taking notes for retelling

- a** ▶ This video is the first part of a documentary about the difference between *larks* (morning people) and *owls* (evening people).

Focus on the two photos and the bird icons, and also the two photos of the birds at the top of the page.

Explain that the one in the picture on the right is an owl

and the one in the picture on the left is a lark. You may want to translate *lark* into Sts’ L1, and tell them that it’s a bird that sings early in the morning.

Get Sts to read the instruction and question.

Play the video. Then elicit the answer to the question.

ANSWER

It’s describing the differences between morning and evening people. Larks are people who get up early and are at their best in the morning. Owls are people who get up late and are at their best in the evening.



Are you a lark? Do you jump out of bed early in the morning with a smile on your face? Or are you an owl? Do you prefer to stay up late at night?

Larks are at their best early in the day and tend to go to bed earlier. Owls like to get up late, and they are at their best late in the day. However, it’s not just about what time you get up in the morning and go to bed at night. It’s about when you feel most active.

- b** ▶ Tell Sts they will now watch **Part 2** of the video. Go through the questions with them and elicit / explain the meaning of *night shifts* and *self-disciplined*. You could also check whether they know who the people in 1 and 2 are. Play the video all the way through. Get Sts to do the task, and then compare answers in pairs.

EXTRA IDEAS

- You could pause the video at 02:24 and ask Sts to predict who they think the documentary will say are happier, larks or owls.
 - As a whole-class activity, you could ask Sts to remember one thing from the video that was new to them or they found especially interesting. Elicit answers from some individual Sts.
- c** Play the video again for Sts to check their answers to **b** and answer the questions.

ANSWERS

b 1 L 2 O 3 O 4 L 5 O 6 L 7 B 8 L 9 O

- c** Larks are usually happier. If you’re an owl and you’d like to be more like a lark, you can get up earlier, keep busy during the day and practice going to bed earlier.



Most people think that people who get up early do better in life and get more done. Many very successful and super-productive people get up between four and six a.m., for example, Oprah Winfrey, ... Tim Cook, ... and Richard Branson.

However, not all successful people are larks. Famous night owls include Barack Obama, Charles Darwin, and Rihanna. So, in order to be successful, it’s a good idea to match your job to your type. For example, owls are more suited to evening work or night shifts. Let’s look at some other factors.

More women are larks. More men are owls. Teenagers of either sex are usually owls. Older people are usually larks. But actually around sixty percent of people are a mix of the two types.

Type is also linked to personality. Larks are normally more self-disciplined and orderly, but owls are more extroverted and open. So, the big question is...who is happier – the larks...or the owls? Well, studies have shown that...larks are happier! Morning people are generally happier with life and have fewer mental health problems. Owls are more at risk of depression.

But experts think that it is possible to change your type. If you want to become a lark, you can stop using digital devices in the evening, practice going to bed earlier, and give yourself an early-morning reward, for example, a delicious cup of coffee or some time on your tablet.

However, if you're happy being an owl but sometimes need to get up early, there's some good news: If you keep busy and motivated during the day, it might be easier to go to sleep earlier at night. So the next day, you can fly out of bed, happy as a lark!

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

d Focus on the two photos and check Sts understand what their jobs are (*entrepreneur* = a person who starts or manages businesses).

Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**, and tell them to go to

Communication My morning routine, A on p.107, **B** on p.113.

Go through the instructions for **a** with them carefully, and check that they understand their questions.

Get Sts to read their text and answer the questions with short notes on a separate piece of paper.

ANSWERS

Student A (about George Foreman)

- 1 5:30 a.m.
- 2 He sets five or six alarms.
- 3 He checks his phone.
- 4 Yes, he drinks coffee and eats a bowl of cereal or Greek yogurt with fruit.
- 5 7:30 a.m.
- 6 Between 11:00 p.m. and midnight
- 7 Students' own answers

Student B (about Ashley Eckstein)

- 1 5:00 a.m.
- 2 She sets an alarm.
- 3 She checks her phone.
- 4 Yes, she drinks coffee and eats cereal, yogurt, and fruit or toast.
- 5 Any time, but she tries to send any important emails first thing in the morning.
- 6 11:00 p.m., although her bedtime constantly changes because of all the traveling.
- 7 Students' own answers

Then sit Sts **A** and **B** face-to-face if feasible to do **b**. **A** tells **B** about George's routine, using their notes. Then in **c**, **B** tells **A** about Ashley's routine, using their notes.

When they have finished, they should answer the questions in **d** about George and Ashley and about themselves.

Get some feedback from various pairs.

ANSWER

Foreman seems more like an owl. (He has difficulty waking up in the morning and stays up late). Eckstein seems more like a lark. (She likes to go to bed early.)

Deal with any other new vocabulary. Model and drill the pronunciation of any tricky words.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **10B**.

e Read the questions with the class, making sure they understand all the words and can tell you the difference between *wake up* and *get up*.

Get Sts to discuss the questions in pairs. You could demonstrate the activity by answering some of the questions yourself.

Get some feedback from the class.

f Do this as a whole-class activity. Get some brief feedback from Sts about their partner.

2 VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR phrasal verbs

Vocabulary notes

Technically, a phrasal verb is a verb + particle. The particle can be a preposition or an adverb. However, at this level it is probably easier to call them *prepositions*, which many of them are, rather than confusing Sts with a new term.

Some Sts have a "phobia" of phrasal verbs and are convinced that they are impossible to learn. It is important to make Sts realize that at the end of the day, they are just more vocabulary items. They can often use an alternative verb (e.g., *continue* instead of *go on*); however, there are some concepts that can only really be expressed with a phrasal verb (e.g., *get up*, *get along with*), and native speakers often use them, so it is important for Sts to gradually increase their knowledge.

a Focus on the **Phrasal verbs** box and go through it with the class.

Now focus on the instructions. Put Sts in pairs and give them a few minutes to figure out what the highlighted verbs mean in the four sentences.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

goes off = rings

go back to sleep = start sleeping again

work out = exercise

stay up = remain awake and not go to bed

b Now elicit answers for questions 1–3. You might want to point out that *get along* is only followed by *with* before another person, e.g., *I don't get along very well with my brother*, but you can also say *My brother and I don't get along well*.

ANSWERS

- 1 look for 2 try on 3 get along with

c Tell Sts to go to **Vocabulary Bank Phrasal verbs** on p.171 and get them to do **a** individually or in pairs.

10.5 Now do **b** and play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers.

10.5

Phrasal verbs

- 9 The game will be over at about five thirty.
- 11 My alarm goes off at six o'clock every morning.
- 15 We set off for the airport at six thirty.
- 4 I want to give up chocolate.
- 1 Don't throw away that letter!
- 10 Turn down the music! It's very loud.
- 5 Turn up the TV! I can't hear.
- 7 He looked up the words in a dictionary.
- 2 Could you fill out this form?
- 13 I want to find out about hotels in Madrid.
- 8 It's bedtime – go and put on your pajamas.
- 12 Could you take off your boots, please?
- 3 My sister's looking after Jimmy for me today.
- 6 I'm really looking forward to vacation.
- 14 She works out every morning.

Now either use the audio to drill the pronunciation of the sentences, or model and drill them yourself. Give further practice of any words your Sts find difficult to pronounce. Focus on the information box explaining the three types of phrasal verbs and go through it with the class, making sure Sts understand the difference between them.

Now focus on **Activation**. For **a**, get Sts to cover the sentences and look at the pictures. They can test themselves or a partner. Encourage them to say phrases, e.g., *throw away a letter*, *fill out a form*, as learning phrasal verbs in context makes it easier to remember their meaning.

Now tell Sts to focus on **b**. Elicit the meaning of these phrasal verbs from Sts, or if you know your Sts' L1, translate them.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **10B**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **10B Vocabulary** photocopiable activity.

d Here Sts focus on the grammar of phrasal verbs. Focus on the photo and instructions.

Get Sts to compare which words they have underlined. Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 the alarm clock 2 the alarm clock 3 it

e Focus on the instructions and check Sts know the difference between a noun and a pronoun. Use the sentences in **d** to elicit the difference. Get Sts to read and complete the rules.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 noun 2 pronoun

f Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 10B** on p.152.

Grammar notes

Sts will probably ask *How do we know if a phrasal verb that takes an object is type 2 or type 3?* There is no easy rule. Tell them:

- 1 to always put new phrasal verbs into an example sentence, and if they are type 2, to write the object in the middle, e.g., *turn (the radio) down*.
- 2 in a dictionary, a type 2 phrasal verb will always be given with *sth / sb* between the verb and the particle, e.g., *turn sth down*.

Focus on the example sentences and play audio **10.6** for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class, and remind Sts that type 1 are the green phrasal verbs in the **Vocabulary Bank** on p.171; type 2 are red; and type 3 are blue.

Now focus on the exercises for **10B** on p.153. Sts do them individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

- a** 1 look after my little sister 2 go out this evening 3 ✓
4 looking for a new job 5 ✓ 6 try them on 7 ✓
8 get along with her 9 take it back 10 get up in the morning
b 1 them up 2 it on 3 it up 4 them out 5 it back
6 it on 7 it down

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **10B**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **10B Grammar** photocopiable activity.

3 LISTENING identifying reasons

a **10.7** Focus on the task and items 1–6. Point out that the first one has been done for them. Give them time to quickly read 2–6.

Play the audio once the whole way through.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then play the audio again if necessary.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 2 He exercises for 30 minutes.
- 3 He goes for a walk around a local park.
- 4 He starts work at 9:00 a.m.
- 5 He gets up at 5:20 a.m. on Thursdays to study German.
- 6 He works 70 hours a week.

10.7

(script in Student Book on p.132)

Tim Powell isn't a morning person. Which is surprising, because on weekdays he gets up very early. While most of us are still asleep, Powell wakes up at five forty-five, exercises for thirty minutes at his home gym, and has a big breakfast. Then he gets ready for work and drives to the office. When he gets to the building where he works, he goes for a walk around a local park, and then he goes inside to start work at nine. And on Thursdays he gets up even earlier, at five twenty a.m., to study German.

Powell is a lawyer. He works seventy hours a week, and he says that getting up early helps him to do more during the day. He isn't the only one – many busy, successful people get up very early.

b Now play the audio again for Sts to complete the sentence about Tim.

Check answers.

ANSWER

...it helps him to do more during the day.

c **10.8** Focus on the task. Point out that Sts are going to hear the next part of the show and give them time to read the three sentences.

Play the audio once the whole way through.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then play again if necessary.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 quiet 2 go to bed 3 do things, energy

10.8

(script in Student Book on p.132)

Experts agree that getting up early is a big help if you have a lot of things to do. There are three main reasons for this. The first reason why it's good to get up early is that the early morning is quiet. Nobody calls you at six a.m. There aren't any important emails or messages to answer. There aren't any meetings. There aren't any people. The morning is your time.

The second reason is that if you get up early, you go to bed early. Most people don't do anything useful in the evenings. People who go to bed late spend many hours watching TV, seeing their friends, and spending time on social media. So if you want to do a lot, it's better to go to bed early, and have shorter evenings and longer mornings.

The third reason is that it's better to do things in the morning, when you have energy. Most people are tired after a day at work or school.

And when you're tired, the last thing you want to do is to exercise, or to study, or to practice a musical instrument.

And if you find it impossible to get up early? Set your alarm five minutes earlier than you usually get up. And the next day set it five minutes earlier again. After three weeks, you'll have nearly two hours that you never had before!

- d Tell Sts to listen and write down examples the host gives for each reason in **c**. Sts should also listen for the advice she gives to people who have problems getting up early.

Play the audio again, pausing after each reason to give Sts time to write.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then play again if necessary.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 Nobody calls you at six a.m. There aren't any important emails or messages to answer. There aren't any meetings. There aren't any people.
- 2 Most people don't do anything useful in the evenings. People who go to bed late spend many hours watching TV, seeing their friends, and spending time on social media.
- 3 Most people are tired after a day at work or school. And when you're tired, the last thing you want to do is to exercise, study, or practice a musical instrument.

Now ask Sts what advice the expert gave for people who have problems getting up early.

ANSWER

Get up five minutes earlier every day.

Finally, ask Sts what they think of this advice.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to listen again with the scripts on p. 132, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

- e Do this as a whole-class activity. You could share your ideas with the class and also find out who gets up the earliest and who gets up the latest.

4 PRONUNCIATION linking

- a **10.9** Here Sts practice deciphering connected speech, and all the examples involve phrasal verbs. Write on the board as an example *get up* and remind Sts that when a word ends with a consonant sound and the next word begins with a vowel sound, they are linked together and sound like one word, especially when people speak quickly. Draw a linking mark on the board between the *t* in *get* and the *u* in *up*.

get up

Point out that the first one (*Please turn it off*) has been done for them. Play the audio once for Sts to hear the six sentences. Tell them just to listen, not to write.

Then play the audio again, pausing after each sentence to give Sts time to write.

Check answers, eliciting the sentences and writing them on the board and drawing the linking marks.

10.9

- 1 I can't concentrate with the radio on. Please **turn it off**.
- 2 There's a wet towel on the floor. **Pick it up**.
- 3 If you don't know what the word means, **look it up**.
- 4 Why have you taken your coat off? **Put it on!**
- 5 This book was very expensive. Please **look after it**.
- 6 Why are you wearing your coat in here? **Take it off!**

- b Play the audio again, pausing for Sts to repeat the sentences and copy the rhythm.

Put Sts in pairs and get them to practice saying the sentences.

5 SPEAKING

- a Go through the questionnaire with Sts, making sure they understand all the vocabulary.

Then give Sts some time to think about their answers.

- b Put Sts in pairs, and get them to interview each other with the questionnaire. Tell them to ask alternate questions, and to return the questions to each other with *What about you?*

Get some feedback from various pairs.

EXTRA SUPPORT Get Sts to choose a few questions to ask you before they interview each other.

Inventions that changed the world

G the passive

V people from different countries

P /ʃ/, /tʃ/, and /dʒ/

Lesson plan

This lesson focuses on inventions – first, things that were invented by different nationalities in different centuries, and in the final listening, things invented by women. The lesson begins with Vocabulary and Pronunciation, where Sts look at nationality adjectives and the three sounds: /ʃ/, /tʃ/, and /dʒ/.

Inventions through the ages provide the context for the introduction of the present and past passive in Grammar. Next, in Speaking, Sts ask each other quiz questions that use the passive. Finally, the lesson ends with a listening, where Sts watch a video about six things invented by women.

Video material

Pronunciation – /ʃ/, /tʃ/, /dʒ/

Listening – *Invented by women* (extracts, full video)

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar the passive p.213

Communicative General knowledge quiz p.258 (instructions p.227)

For students

Workbook 10C

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Write the following phrase on the board:

The most important invention in the last 100 years was...

Give Sts, in pairs, two or three minutes to complete the sentence.

Get feedback and write Sts' ideas on the board.

Then get Sts to vote, with a show of hands, for the most useful invention.

1 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION

people from different countries: /ʃ/, /tʃ/, and /dʒ/

Vocabulary notes

Talking about people of different nationalities is a complicated area in English. In this lesson we just focus on people in general from different countries, rather than individuals (*an Englishman, a Dane*, etc.).

the + nationality adjective: Remind Sts that while there are contexts (as in this lesson) in which it is fine to talk about people from a particular country, they should avoid stereotyping.

a Books open. Do this as a whole-class activity.

ANSWERS

- 1 American, Belgian, Italian (all end in *an*)
- 2 Chinese, Swiss, French, Dutch, Danish, Irish

b Focus on the **Talking about people from different countries** box and go through it with the class.

Focus on the countries in the list and get Sts to decide, in pairs, how to say the word for the people from each country.

c **10.10** Play the audio for Sts to listen and check. Check answers. Then either use the audio to drill the pronunciation of the words, or model them yourself.

EXTRA SUPPORT You could get Sts to mark where the main stress falls in each word.

ANSWERS

the English, the Brazilians, the Russians, the Vietnamese,
the Argentinians, the Moroccans, the Japanese, the Spanish

10.10

England, the English

Brazil, the Brazilians

Russia, the Russians

Vietnam, the Vietnamese

Argentina, the Argentinians

Morocco, the Moroccans

Japan, the Japanese

Spain, the Spanish

Pronunciation notes

The most common spelling of the /ʃ/ sound is *sh*.

However, *ti* and *ci* before another vowel are also

pronounced /ʃ/, as in *invention* and *musician*. Another

spelling of this sound is "ch" as in *machine*, particularly in words of French origin, e.g., *chef*, *chauffeur*, etc.

The most common spelling of the /tʃ/ sound is *ch* or *tch*.

The most common spelling of the /dʒ/ sound is *j*, *g* before *e*, *i*, or *y*, and *dge*.

d Focus on the three sound pictures and elicit the words and sounds: *shower* /ʃ/, *chess* /tʃ/, and *jazz* /dʒ/.

Now play the video for Sts to watch and repeat. Tell them to focus on the mouth position for the three sounds.



See sounds and words in Student Book on p.84

e **10.11** Focus on the task. Remind Sts that this type of activity is easier if they say the words aloud to themselves. Put Sts in pairs and give them time to complete the task. Play the audio for Sts to listen and check. Check answers.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Elicit the sounds before Sts listen to the audio.

ANSWERS

- 1 Chinese /tʃ/, invention /ʃ/
- 2 French /tʃ/, cheese /tʃ/, Spanish /ʃ/
- 3 Japanese /dʒ/, watch /tʃ/
- 4 German /dʒ/, technology /dʒ/
- 5 Belgian /dʒ/, musician /ʃ/

10.11

See sentences in Student Book on p.84

Now play the audio again, pausing after each sentence for Sts to listen and repeat.

Finally, put Sts in pairs and get them to practice saying the sentences.

2 GRAMMAR the passive

- a Focus on the instructions and the photos. Make sure Sts know the meaning of *a century* (= a period of 100 years) and *invent* (= to make or think of sth for the first time). Put Sts in small groups and tell them to complete sentences 1–9 with the things in the list.

EXTRA SUPPORT Before they do the task, get Sts to match each photo with one of the things in the list.

Tell them to look carefully at the verbs (*was / were*) to see if the item should be in the singular or plural.

Elicit some ideas, but don't tell Sts if they are right.

- b **10.12** Tell Sts they are now going to hear the answers as well as some extra facts about each item. First, they just need to listen and check their answers to a.

Play the audio, pausing after each item to check the answer.

ANSWERS

- 1 fireworks 2 glasses 3 the hot-air balloon 4 stamps
5 the saxophone 6 Lego 7 CDs 8 the cell phone 9 Siri

10.12

(script in Student's Book on p.132)

The ninth century

Fireworks were invented by the Chinese around the year eight hundred. Chinese festivals were celebrated with big fireworks displays. The Chinese believed that fireworks brought happiness and good luck.

The thirteenth century

Glasses were invented by the Italians in about twelve eighty-six. Sunglasses were invented even earlier, in the twelfth century.

The eighteenth century

The hot-air balloon was invented by two French brothers, Joseph and Jacques Montgolfier. The first flight with people was in seventeen eighty-three, and the balloon flew one point eight-six miles over Paris.

The nineteenth century

Stamps were invented by an English teacher, Rowland Hill. The first stamp, from eighteen forty, was called the Penny Black, and it showed the head of the young Queen Victoria.

The saxophone was invented by a Belgian musician in eighteen forty-six. His name was Adolphe Sax. Saxophones were first used mainly in military bands, but they are now used in all kinds of music.

The twentieth century

Lego was invented in nineteen thirty-two by a Danish businessman, Ole Kirk Christiansen. The name *Lego* comes from the Danish phrase *leg godt*, which means "play well." Twenty billion pieces of Lego are produced every year.

CDs were invented by a Dutch company, Philips, in nineteen seventy. Sony also worked on CDs, and they were designed to play seventy-four minutes of music because that was the length of Beethoven's *Ninth Symphony* – the Sony boss's favorite piece of music.

The cell phone was invented by an American company. It was first produced by the company Motorola. On April third, nineteen seventy-three, Martin Cooper, a Motorola researcher and executive, made the first cellular telephone call. His phone weighed two point four pounds.

The twenty-first century

The virtual assistant Siri was invented by three American engineers in twenty ten. They later sold it to Apple for two hundred million dollars. It speaks, recognizes voice commands, and can do things like answer questions, turn things on and off, and pay bills. The voice of Siri is

provided by different actors in different countries and, in addition to male and female voices, in twenty twenty-two Apple added a gender-neutral voice option, called Quinn.

- c Tell Sts they are going to listen again and they need to write down one more piece of information about each invention.

Play the audio again, pausing after each invention to give Sts time to write.

Elicit any information Sts understood about each invention.

ANSWER

See script 10.12

- d Focus on the task and the example. Tell Sts to write four more true sentences using information from each column once only.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

The first stamp was called the Penny Black.
Twenty billion pieces of Lego are produced every year.
The saxophone was invented by Adolphe Sax.
A gender-neutral voice option was added in 2022.

- e Focus on the two sentences, a and b, and read the three questions aloud to the class. Elicit answers from the whole class, getting a majority opinion on each one and confirming if it is right or wrong.

ANSWERS

1 yes 2 b 3 a

- f Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 10C** on p.152.

Grammar notes

This lesson provides an introduction to the passive and Sts are taught present and past forms only.

The form of the passive is not difficult for Sts as it is composed of known items: the verb *be* and a past participle.

The passive is often used in English where other languages use an impersonal subject.

Focus on the example sentences and play audio **10.13** for Sts to listen and repeat. Make sure they pronounce the *-ed* endings in the participles correctly, and encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the exercises for **10C** on p.153. Sts do the exercises individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

- a 1 was developed 2 are educated 3 was, discovered
4 was woken up 5 is played 6 were written 7 are made
8 are sung 9 aren't usually seen 10 was opened
b 1 St Paul's Cathedral was designed by Christopher Wren.
2 This olive oil is produced by an Italian company.
3 The first toothpaste was developed by the Egyptians.
4 The Star Wars movies weren't directed by Spielberg.
5 The *Mona Lisa* was painted by Leonardo da Vinci.
6 Glass wasn't invented by the French.
7 The Percy Jackson books were written by Rick Riordan.
8 Kia cars are made in South Korea.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **10C**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **10C Grammar photocopyable activity**.

3 SPEAKING

Put Sts into pairs, **A** and **B**, and tell them to go to

Communication Passives quiz, **A** on p.108, **B** on p.113.

Give Sts time to complete their sentences and circle the correct answers.

Get Sts to sit face-to-face if possible. **A** reads their sentences to **B**, who listens and says if **A**'s sentences are right or wrong, and corrects the wrong answers.

Sts then change roles.

Monitor and help as Sts do the task, making sure they are forming the passive and pronouncing the past participle correctly.

End the activity when the majority of pairs have finished.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **10C**.

4 LISTENING

using visual clues to understand specific information

- a** Focus on the photos and tell Sts to match the words and phrases to the photos.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

A dishwasher **B** disposable diapers **C** windshield wipers
D lipstick **E** solar technology **F** washing machine **G** life raft
H video doorbell **I** stockings

Then give Sts, in pairs, a couple of minutes to guess which six things were invented by women. Don't check answers yet.

- b**  Play the video for Sts to write the letters of the inventions next to each inventor 1–6. Tell them not to complete the texts yet, only watch and listen.

Check answers.

Get feedback to find out if Sts had guessed the six inventions correctly.

Make sure Sts understand what key words mean, e.g., *disposable* (= you throw it away after you have used it once). Model and drill pronunciation.

ANSWERS

1 B 2 A 3 C 4 H 5 G 6 E

- c** Give Sts time to read through the gapped texts so they can predict what information they need to try to catch.

Play the video all the way through for Sts to watch and complete the task. Pause after each invention to give Sts time to write their answers.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, then play the video again if necessary.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 cotton, eco-friendly
2 hotels, restaurants
3 open, windows, safer
4 nurse, husband, electrician
5 *Titanic*, survivors
6 technology, environment



Hello, and welcome to *Science Now*. When we think of famous inventors, we often think of men – like Alexander Graham Bell, Guglielmo Marconi, and Thomas Edison. But many of the things that make our lives easier or safer today were invented by women. And on today's show, we're going to look at six of them.

One invention that definitely improved the lives of millions of people was the disposable diaper. They were invented by a woman named Marion Donovan. Her father and uncle were inventors and, when she had young children, she invented a diaper that you could use and then throw away. Before her invention, babies wore diapers made of cotton – like these. And this meant a *lot* of washing. Although she invented the disposable diaper in the nineteen forties, it wasn't until nineteen fifty-one that an American company bought Donovan's idea. Today, millions of disposable diapers are used every day, and Donovan's invention is now more eco-friendly. You can buy biodegradable diapers!

And now another invention that has made life easier. The dishwasher was invented by a woman named Josephine Cochrane in eighteen eighty-six. She was a rich American who gave a lot of dinner parties. But she was annoyed that her servants often broke plates and glasses when they were washing the dishes after a party. Oops! So, Cochrane decided to invent a machine that could wash a lot of plates and glasses safely. She said, "If nobody else is going to invent a dishwasher, then I will!" She designed the machine, and then she found a company to make it. At first, only hotels and restaurants bought Cochrane's new machine, but today, the dishwasher is used in homes all over the world.

The car was invented by a man, but it was a woman, Mary Anderson, who solved one of the biggest problems of driving. On a trip to New York in nineteen oh three, Anderson noticed that drivers had to open their windows or stop to clean their windshields when it was raining. When she returned to her home in Alabama, she invented windshield wipers, which made driving a lot safer.

Our fourth invention made life safer for people living in apartments – video doorbells. They were invented in nineteen sixty-six by Marie Van Brittan Brown, a nurse who lived in New York. Her neighborhood was very dangerous and Brown was often at home alone, so she decided to invent something that would make her feel safer. With the help of her husband, an electrician, she developed a camera that you could put by the front door. This camera sent a picture of the person at the door to a screen inside the apartment, and there was also a microphone so you could talk to the person outside. If the person was a welcome visitor, you pushed a button to let them in. If not, you could push another button to contact a security company. This system is now common all over the world.

And now an invention that has saved a lot of lives. The modern life raft was invented by Maria Beasley in eighteen eighty and then improved in eighteen eighty-two. Before her invention, life rafts were just wooden platforms, and many people died in accidents at sea. Four of her life rafts were used on the *Titanic*, alongside the ship's normal lifeboats. When the *Titanic* sank in nineteen twelve, only seven hundred and six people survived, and nearly two hundred of them were in the life rafts designed by Beasley.

Our last invention is one of today's most important green technologies. Mária Telkes, a Hungarian-American scientist, worked at Massachusetts Institute of Technology in the United States in the nineteen forties.

She was so interested in the power of the sun that her nickname was "the Sun Queen." In nineteen forty-eight, she designed the first house that was heated completely by the sun. The solar technology we use today is very different from Telkes's invention, but – like all our female inventors – she showed the world what was possible. And today solar technology has the power to change our lives and save our environment.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

- d** Go through the questions with the class. Remind Sts that they should think about all the inventions on the page, in all the photos. Give them time to think, then put them in small groups to discuss. Alternatively do this as a whole-class activity.

If Sts worked in groups, get feedback from each group. You could also give your own opinion.

For instructions on how to use these pages, see p.49.

Video material

Can you understand these people? 9&10

More materials

For teachers

Oxford English Hub

Quick Test 10

File 10 Test

GRAMMAR

ANSWERS

1 b 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 c 6 a 7 c 8 a 9 c 10 a 11 c
12 b 13 b 14 c 15 b

VOCABULARY

ANSWERS

a 1 goat (the others are insects)
2 lion (the others are farm animals)
3 spider (the others live in the ocean)
4 retire (the others have to do with marriage)
5 sailing (the others are sports with a ball)
b 1 for 2 for 3 since 4 since 5 for
c 1 through 2 into 3 along 4 toward 5 past 6 off
7 up 8 down 9 forward 10 out
d 1 Japanese 2 French 3 Swiss 4 Moroccan 5 Spanish

PRONUNCIATION

ANSWERS

c 1 giraffe /dʒ/ 2 work /ər/ 3 divorce /ɔr/ 4 invention /ʃ/
5 Dutch /tʃ/
d 1 butterfly 2 retire 3 phobia 4 elephant 5 karate

CAN YOU understand this text?

ANSWERS

a 4 competitions 2 equipment 1 history 3 rules
5 top players
b 1 1976 2 skiing accident 3 wheelchair athlete
4 (tennis) wheelchair 5 twice 6 sport 7 four 8 talented

▶ CAN YOU understand these people?

ANSWERS

1 c 2 a 3 b 4 c 5 a



1 Bettina

I = interviewer, B = Bettina

I What animal would you most like to see in the wild, for example on a safari?

B Um, I've seen a lot of animals actually already, but probably a polar bear.

I Why?

B Because he lives where it's hard to get...to get to, like on the North Pole or in Greenland. So, it's tough to see them.

2 Mairi

I = interviewer, M = Mairi

I Do you have a phobia?

M I'm frightened of spiders.

I How long have you had this phobia?

M Um, since I was about five or six, I think, but I'm not sure.

I How does it affect your life?

M Um, I normally have to check a room to see if there's a big spider in it before I go to sleep, because, one time a spider, uh, joined me in my bed.

3 Dave

I = interviewer, D = Dave

I Who's the oldest person you know well?

D My great aunt is a hundred and four, living in California.

I What kind of life has she had?

D She has had a great life. She's still traveling at a hundred and four.

4 Sarah

I = interviewer, S = Sarah

I Do you play any sports or exercise?

S I run and I hike, and I do yoga.

I Do you enjoy it?

S I love hiking, hiking is my favorite, and I just love being in nature and outdoors, and experiencing nature on foot.

5 Kathy

I = interviewer, K = Kathy

I Are you a morning or evening person?

K Um, I'm a morning person. Um, I feel a lot more awake in the morning than in the evening, um, so I tend to get up early, even when I'm not at, even when I'm not at work. Um, and I prefer to go to bed earlier.

G *used to*

V school subjects: *history, geography, etc.*

P *used to / didn't use to*

Lesson plan

The context of this lesson is education and school experiences, and Sts learn to use *used to* to talk about repeated past actions. The lesson begins with a vocabulary focus on school subjects. Then Sts read an article about three famous people who have learning differences. Extracts from the article are used to present the grammar of *used to / didn't use to*. This is followed by a pronunciation focus on the linking in *used to*. In Listening and Speaking, Sts hear six people talking about whether they liked school or not and why, which leads into a speaking activity where Sts talk about their own experiences in elementary school, middle school, or high school. Finally, Sts develop their writing skills by producing a formal email to a language school.

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar used to / didn't use to p.214

Communicative My past p.259 (instructions p.227)

For students

Workbook 11A

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Write the following on the board: *math history biology*
Elicit that they are school subjects, i.e., things you study at school. Model and drill the pronunciation of *subjects* /'sʌbdʒɛkts/.

Then write these verbs on the board:

love like not mind not like hate

Put Sts into pairs and tell them to make a sentence about themselves for each subject, e.g., *I liked math, I didn't mind history, etc.*

Get feedback from different pairs.

1 VOCABULARY school subjects

a **11.1** Books open. Focus on the instructions. Tell Sts they are going to hear nine teachers in their classrooms. If you didn't do the optional lead-in, model and drill the pronunciation of *subjects* /'sʌbdʒɛkts/.

Play the audio for Sts to listen and number the lessons they hear.

Get Sts to compare with a partner.

11.1

T = teacher, SS = students, S = student

1

T OK, so now repeat after me – *du pain*.

S *du pain*

T *de la salade*

S *de la salade*

T *des saucisses*

2

T So last week, we looked at percentages, and today, we're going to look at fractions. Can someone give me an example of a fraction?

S Three quarters?

T Yes, exactly. And what would that be as a percentage?

S Seventy-five percent.

3

T Can anybody tell me the dates of World War I?

S Me! I can!

SS Aah.

T Angela?

S Um...nineteen thirty-nine to nineteen forty-five.

T No, that's World War II. Try again.

4

T So, we're going to start by defining a few words and phrases. I'm going to dictate the terms and I want you to write a short definition. So, for example, if I said the word *cookies*, what would you write?

S My favorite snack?

T Very funny, Carl. Anna?

S Uh, pieces of text that, uh, websites put onto your computer?

T That's right. And what do internet cookies do?

S They record details of the websites you've visited and, uh, how long you've spent on them.

5

T OK. Act three, scene one. Uh... Jack, you can be Hamlet. This is a very important speech. Are you ready?

S Yes. "To be, or not to be, that is the question."

6

T So I have a small piece of sodium here, about point zero six cubic inches, and we're going to see what happens when we add it to water. So, if you could all stand back a little...further back...OK... Here we go...

7

T Today, we're going to look at two self-portraits from different centuries. Take a look at these.

S The one on the right looks like you, Mrs. Baker!

T Thank you, Jasper. Now, I want you to start by thinking about two questions. When do you think the self-portraits were painted? And how old do you think the artists were when they painted them?

8

T OK, we're going to warm up. First, I want you to run around the track three times.

S Can we play soccer?

T No, come on, three times around the track. Ready, set, go!

9

T There are no active volcanoes in the eastern part of the US, but there are a lot in the western part of the US. Can anyone tell me a state that has active volcanoes?

S1 Texas?

T Not Texas, no...

S2 Hawaii? Hawaii has Kilauea.

T Yes, Hawaii. Kilauea is one of the world's most active volcanoes. In fact, Kilauea has erupted...

b **11.2** Play the audio for Sts to listen and check. Sts could note down the words that helped them identify them next to the subject list.

Check answers by asking the subject and which words helped Sts guess.

POSSIBLE ANSWERS

- 1 foreign languages (French): *repeat after me*, all French words
- 2 math: *percentages, fractions, three quarters, 75%*
- 3 history: *World War I, 1939 to 1945, World War II*
- 4 computer science: *cookies, website, computer, internet*
- 5 literature: *act, scene, Hamlet, speech*
- 6 science (chemistry) *sodium, add, water*
- 7 art: *self-portraits, painted, artists*
- 8 PE: *warm up, run, track, soccer*
- 9 geography: *active volcanoes, eastern part of the US, state, Kilauea*

11.2

- 1 foreign languages (see script 11.1)
- 2 math (see script 11.1)
- 3 history (see script 11.1)
- 4 computer science (see script 11.1)
- 5 literature (see script 11.1)
- 6 science (see script 11.1)
- 7 art (see script 11.1)
- 8 PE (see script 11.1)
- 9 geography (see script 11.1)

- c **11.3** Play the audio for Sts to listen and repeat the subjects.

11.3

See words in Student Book on p.88

Then repeat the activity, getting individual Sts to repeat.

- d Focus on the task and elicit answers to the first question.
Write the subjects on the board.
Now focus on the second question and the three options.
Point out the speech bubble and the use of *at* after *good*, *OK*, and *bad*.
Demonstrate the activity by talking about the subjects yourself.
Put Sts in pairs and give them a few minutes to talk to each other.
Get some feedback from various pairs.

2 READING

understanding and comparing specific information in short texts

- a Focus on the task and give Sts time to look at the title and photos. Elicit what the three people are famous for. Then ask the question to the whole-class, and elicit ideas.
- b Give Sts time to read the article to check their answer to a. Point out the **Glossary**.
Check answers.
Make sure Sts understand and can pronounce *neurodiverse* /,nɒrəʊdaɪ'vɜːs/ and the lexis for the learning differences: *dyslexia* /dɪs'leksiə/, *dyscalculia* /dɪskæl'kyuliə/, *ADHD* /,eɪ di 'eɪtʃ di/.

ANSWER

They are all neurodiverse – they think and learn differently. Michael Phelps has ADHD, Cher has dyslexia and dyscalculia, and Richard Branson has dyslexia.

- c Focus on the instructions and questions 1–7, making sure Sts understand all the lexis, e.g., *learning strategy*, etc. Highlight that some answers may refer to more than one of the three people.
Give Sts time to read the article again and answer the questions.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 C 2 MP, RB 3 C, RB 4 RB 5 MP 6 C 7 MP

Deal with any other new vocabulary. Model and drill the pronunciation of any tricky words.

- d If your Sts are from the same country or region, do this as an open class question. If not, put them in pairs and get feedback.

3 GRAMMAR

used to

- a Tell Sts to read the three sentences from the article and answer the questions.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 b 2 a

- b Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 11A** on p.154.

Grammar notes

Used to only exists in the past, and is used for past habits or states. Sts may not have an equivalent form in their language. If they do have an equivalent verb, it may also exist in the present (for present habits), which means Sts may try to say *I use to* for present habits when they should use the simple present and an adverb of frequency.
I usually go to the gym every Friday. NOT ~~*I use to go to the gym every Friday.*~~

Sts might confuse *used to* + base form with the past of the verb *use*, e.g., *I used my dictionary when I did my English homework.*

Focus on the example sentences and play audio **11.4** for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the ***used to or usually?*** box and go through it with the class.

Then focus on the exercises for **11A** on p.155. Sts do the exercises individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

- a 1 He used to have
2 He didn't use to wear
3 He didn't use to have
4 He used to play / like / love / be interested in
5 He didn't use to wear
- b 1 Angie used to hate math, but she loves it now.
2 Did you use to work hard when you were in college?
3 I didn't use to like reading when I was a child.
4 What did you use to do on summer vacation when you were young?
5 Americans didn't use to put a lot of ice in their drinks.
6 This restaurant used to be a movie theater in the 1960s.
7 Did your wife use to eat meat, or has she always been a vegetarian?
8 I didn't use to be interested in tennis, but now I always watch it.
9 Did you use to have a car when you were a student?
10 Telegrams used to be the quickest way to send important messages.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **11A**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **11A Grammar** photocopyable activity.

4 PRONUNCIATION *used to / didn't use to*

Pronunciation notes

As mentioned earlier, Sts might confuse *used to* + base form with the past of the verb *use*. As well as having a completely different meaning, the two verbs are also pronounced differently (*used to* is pronounced /'yustə/ and *used* (past of *use*) is /yuzd/).

The final /t/ in *used* and the /t/ in *to* are run together and make one /t/ sound. For this reason, *use to* or *used to* sound the same, and Sts sometimes write *Did you used to...*?

- a**  **11.5** Focus on the **Pronouncing *used to*** box and go through it with the class. Model and drill the pronunciation of *used to* /'yustə/.
Now focus on the task. Play the audio once for Sts just to listen.
Play the audio again for Sts to listen and repeat.

11.5

See sentences in Student Book on p.89

Then repeat the activity, eliciting responses from individual Sts.

- b**  **11.6** Focus on the task and the example. Tell Sts that for the first four sentences, they must make affirmative *used to* sentences; for the next four, negative ones; and questions for the final four.
Play the audio, pausing after each phrase to give Sts time to make the transformation.

11.6

Affirmative sentences

have a lot of friends (*ping*) I used to have a lot of friends.
be lazy (*ping*) I used to be lazy.
wear a uniform (*ping*) I used to wear a uniform.
play soccer (*ping*) I used to play soccer.

Negative sentences

like exams (*ping*) I didn't use to like exams.
do much homework (*ping*) I didn't use to do much homework.
be good at math (*ping*) I didn't use to be good at math.
enjoy PE (*ping*) I didn't use to enjoy PE.

Questions

work hard (*ping*) Did you use to work hard?
like school (*ping*) Did you use to like school?
play sports (*ping*) Did you use to play sports?
have long hair (*ping*) Did you use to have long hair?

Then repeat the activity, eliciting responses from individual Sts.

5 LISTENING & SPEAKING *understanding attitude*

- a** Focus on the instructions and make sure Sts understand what they have to do. Point out that the first one (P) has been done for them.
Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

No, not really. I didn't like it at all. **N**
I didn't hate school, but I don't think I liked it very much. **N**
Sometimes. Yeah, most of the time. **P**
Well, yes and no. **B**
Yes, overall, I really enjoyed school. **P**

- b**  **11.7** Focus on the task and tell Sts that all the speakers are answering the same question as in **a**, *Did you like school?*

Play the audio, pausing after each speaker to give Sts time to match the speaker to their answer in **a**. Play again if necessary.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

Speaker 4: I didn't like it – I absolutely loved it!

Speaker 2: No, not really. I didn't like it at all.

Speaker 1: I didn't hate school, but I don't think I liked it very much.

Speaker 5: Sometimes. Yeah, most of the time.

Speaker 3: Well, yes and no.

Speaker 6: Yes, overall, I really enjoyed school.

Speaker 4 enjoyed school the most.

11.7

(script in Student Book on pp.132–133)

I = interviewer, S = speaker

1

I Did you like school?

S1 I didn't hate school, but I don't think I liked it very much. I used to enjoy PE, I used to enjoy playing sports. Um, I liked English, but there were a lot of subjects I didn't like. I didn't like math very much, history was boring, and I found science difficult. I had a small group of friends – not many, but a close group of friends – and I used to spend time with them talking about sports, talking about music, so it wasn't too bad, but I didn't like it very much. I've never been back to school – I've never been to a school reunion, or anything like that.

2

I Did you like school?

S2 No, not really. I didn't like it at all.

I Why not?

S2 It was a boys' school and I got bored with just being with boys all the time. And I didn't really like any of the subjects.

3

I Did you like school?

S3 Well, yes and no. Some things I really loved, some things I thought "This isn't much fun," but I used to enjoy a lot of subjects.

I Like what?

S3 I liked English and I liked math.

I And what didn't you enjoy?

S3 I hated geography. And I hated PE. The PE teacher once caught me reading a book on the soccer field, and I was punished for that.

4

I Did you like school?

S4 I didn't like it – I absolutely loved it! I liked all the subjects, especially English and history. I remember one time when I was about six or seven, I got sick during spring break and I was really, really sad, and my mom thought I was sad because I was sick during vacation, but in fact, I was terrified that I'd never get better, and I'd never go back to school.

5

I Did you like school?

S5 Uh, sometimes. Yeah, most of the time.

I What did you like about it?

S5 Well, I had some good friends, and I liked learning things, but there were some subjects that I didn't like very much, and I hated PE. I used to invent a lot of excuses, like saying that I was sick, because I didn't want to do it.

6

I Did you like school?

S6 Yes, overall I really enjoyed school, though there were some things I didn't like.

I Like what?

56 In English, I found reading long texts very hard because I have dyslexia, and because of this, my handwriting was also slow and messy. And I struggle with numbers, too, so math and physics were very difficult for me.

I What things did you like?

56 Um... I discovered I was interested in history, because my teachers were passionate about what they taught, which made me want to learn. But I enjoyed visual and active learning much more, so subjects like drama, art, and cooking were some of my favorites.

- c Tell Sts that they are now going to hear the people again and they must make a list of the subjects they liked and disliked.

Play the audio again and then check answers. Elicit other details if possible.

ANSWERS

Speaker 1: He liked PE and English, but didn't like math, history, or science.

Speaker 2: He didn't really like any of the subjects.

Speaker 3: He liked English and math, but hated geography and PE.

Speaker 4: She liked all the subjects, especially English and history.

Speaker 5: She hated PE.

Speaker 6: She didn't like English, math, or physics because of her dyslexia and difficulty with numbers. But she was interested in history, and she enjoyed drama, art, and cooking.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to listen again with the script on pp.132–133, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

- d Focus on the instructions and give Sts time to think about their answers. Adult Sts should think about high school; younger Sts could remember elementary or middle school.
- e Put Sts in small groups of three and get them to tell each other about their answers to d.
- Get some feedback from various groups. You could also tell the class whether you used to like school.

6 WRITING a formal email

Tell Sts to go to **Writing Bank 11** on p.125.

- a Focus on the instructions and check Sts know all the words and phrases in the list. Get them to read the advertisement and email, and answer the question by checking three things in the list.
- Get Sts to compare with a partner.
- Check answers.

ANSWERS

Sts should check: combining courses; course dates and prices; accommodations

- b Tell Sts to read the email again and answer the questions about Ryo.
- Get Sts to compare with a partner.
- Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 Ryo is 31 and works in a library.
- 2 He is A2–B1 level right now.
- 3 He's good at reading English. He isn't very good at speaking and listening.
- 4 Three weeks.
- 5 He would like to study for five hours a day.
- 6 He wants to stay with a family.

Now focus on the **Formal language** box and go through it with the class.

- c Tell Sts to look at the highlighted phrases. Give Sts time to use these phrases to complete the chart.

Get Sts to check answers in pairs.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 Could you please confirm that this is possible?
- 2 Sincerely,
- 3 I look forward to hearing from you.
- 4 Could you please send me (the dates and prices)?
- 5 Dear Sir or Madam,
- 6 I would like to (do an English course next summer).
- 7 I am writing to ask for information about (your language courses).

- d Tell Sts they are going to plan their own email to the language school. They should answer the questions in b about themselves and make notes about the kind of course they want to do. Tell them to look at the list in a for ideas of things to ask the school about.
- Give Sts time to make notes. Monitor and deal with any difficulties.
- e When Sts are ready, assign the writing task for homework. Remind them to use their notes and formal language to write the email.
- f Sts check their work for mistakes before turning it in.

G *might***V** word building: noun formation, e.g., *decide* – *decision***P** diphthongs

Lesson plan

This lesson presents the modal verb *might*, used to express possibility through the context of a person who is very indecisive. The lesson begins with speaking, where Sts interview each other to find out whether they are indecisive. The grammar is then presented through watching a video drama of a couple who are packing for a vacation. In the **Grammar Bank**, Sts see that *may* is an alternative to *might*. Although both forms are common, in oral practice Sts are asked simply to use *might*, in order to avoid confusion. Then in Pronunciation, Sts work on some common diphthongs. This is followed by a listening that asks whether there is too much choice in today's world. Finally, in Vocabulary and Speaking, Sts get some practice in word building (formation of nouns).

Video material

Grammar – *might*

Pronunciation – diphthongs

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar *might* / *might not* (possibility) p.215Communicative *I might... but I might not* p.260 (instructions p.227)

For students

Workbook 11B

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Write *decide* on the board. Ask Sts what it means (= to think carefully about the different possibilities that are available and choose one of them) and which part of speech it is (verb, noun, etc.), and elicit that it's a verb. Ask where the stress is and mark it on the board (*decide*).

Then ask *What's the noun form of decide?* and elicit that it's *decision*. Teach / Elicit the phrase *make a decision*.

Then elicit / teach the adjective *decisive* and its meaning (it describes a person who can make decisions quickly), and then teach / elicit the opposite, *indecisive*.

Focus Sts on the title of the lesson and explain that *make up your mind* means *decide* and that you say it to someone when they are being indecisive.

1 GRAMMAR *might*

- a** Books open. Focus on the *Are you indecisive?* questionnaire and put Sts in pairs. If you didn't do the **Optional lead-in**, write *indecisive* on the board and underline the stressed syllable. Go through the questions and make sure Sts understand the phrase *change your mind* (= make a decision and then change it). Tell them they are going to interview each other to find out who is the more indecisive of the two of them.

Give Sts time to interview each other. Monitor and encourage them to ask for / give more information, and to illustrate their answers with examples.

Get feedback from various pairs to find out which of them is more indecisive, and find out (with a show of hands) if the majority of the class is indecisive or decisive.

EXTRA IDEA You could get Sts to interview you first. Give as many examples as you can.

- b** In this video, which presents the meaning and use of *might*, a woman is finishing her vacation packing. Her partner thinks she has packed several things that she is not going to need, but she explains why she thinks that perhaps she will want them.

Focus on the photo and elicit where the couple are and what's happening (they're in the bedroom and she's packing). Focus on the task. Play the video once the whole way through. Then get Sts to circle the items.

Get Sts to compare with a partner and check answers.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 sneakers 2 a raincoat 3 a hair dryer 4 three pairs of jeans



B = Brian, N = Nancy

B Have you finished packing? The taxi will be here in fifteen minutes.

N Uh, almost. I can't decide what to take.

B Well, hurry up. You don't need all that! You'll never close that suitcase. We can only take fifty pounds each.

N Yes, I know.

B You don't need your sneakers. We'll be on the beach most of the time!

N Well, I might go to the gym. There's one in the hotel.

B And why are you taking a raincoat? It's not going to rain in Greece in June.

N It might rain. It sometimes rains in the summer.

B And what's that?

N That's my hair dryer.

B But the hotel will have a hair dryer.

N It might not have one. Not all hotels have hair dryers. And I need it.

B And three pairs of jeans? We're only going to be there for a week.

N They're all different styles. I'm not sure which one I'll want to wear.

B You need to take some things out. Extra baggage costs a fortune. It's something like one hundred dollars.

N No, no, it'll be fine. I promise.

B Well, hurry up. The traffic might be bad because of the rain.

N OK, I'll be ready in five minutes...

B The taxi's here.

N OK, I'm ready. Can you take my suitcase downstairs?

B I'm sure this is more than fifty pounds. It's definitely heavier than my suitcase.

N I'm sure it will be OK...

- c** Tell Sts they are going to watch again and they must write down the reasons Nancy gives for wanting to take each item mentioned in **b**.

Play the video again, pausing after each reason is given.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers. Write the complete sentences on the board.

ANSWERS

- 1 go to the gym 2 rain 3 have one
4 different styles

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

- d** **11.8** Tell the class Brian and Nancy are now at the airport. Focus on the task. You could ask Sts what they think will happen there and elicit ideas.

Play the audio once the whole way through.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then play the audio again if necessary.

Check the answer.

ANSWER

Brian's luggage is too heavy.

11.8

(script in Student's Book on p.133)

A = assistant, B = Brian, N = Nancy

A Can you put your suitcase on the scales, please?

B I'll help you.

N No, I'm fine.

A That's thirty-five pounds. And your suitcase, sir? I'm afraid that's sixty-five pounds. You can only take fifty.

N Brian! What's in there?

A You need to go to the window over there and pay for the extra fifteen pounds. That'll be one hundred dollars.

B One hundred dollars?

N Maybe you can put some of your things in *my* suitcase. Let's take a look. What's all this? Why have you packed walking boots? We're going to be on the beach!

- e** Do this as a whole-class activity.

ANSWER

- 2 a possibility

- f** Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 11B** on p.154.

Grammar notes

Might and *may* are synonyms, but *might* is probably more frequent in spoken English, which is why the presentation focuses on this form. However, *may* is also commonly used, especially in writing, so it is important that this is pointed out to Sts.

At this level, *might* is taught more for recognition than production, as it is an example of "late assimilation" language. In conversation, Sts are more likely to try to express the same idea in another way, e.g., by using *maybe*, *possibly*, or *It's possible*.

Focus on the examples and play audio **11.9** for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the **may / may not** box and go through it with the class.

Then focus on the exercises for **11B** on p.155. Sts do them individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

- a** 1 H 2 G 3 A 4 C 5 B 6 I 7 F 8 E
b 1 might be sick 2 might be in a meeting 3 might not like it
4 might not have time 5 might have the pasta
6 might be cold

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **11B**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **11B Grammar** photocopiable activity.

- g** Focus on the task and the example in the speech bubbles. You could demonstrate the activity by answering a couple of the questions yourself.

Make sure Sts understand that they must give two possibilities each time and tell them to return the question with *What about you?* Put Sts in pairs and get them to ask and answer the five questions.

Get some feedback from various pairs.

2 PRONUNCIATION diphthongs

Pronunciation notes

A diphthong is a combination of two vowel sounds that run together to produce a new sound. For example, the diphthong /ɔɪ/ is a combination of /ɔ/ and /ɪ/.

- a** Look at the five picture words and sounds, and tell Sts to watch and listen to how they are pronounced and focus on the mouth position. Play the video once for Sts to just watch and listen.

Now play the video again for Sts to watch and repeat each sound. Play again if necessary, concentrating especially on any sounds your Sts find more difficult to make.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.



See sounds and words in Student Book on p.90

- b** Tell Sts to look at all the words in each category and to find the odd word out, i.e., the one that doesn't have the same diphthong sound. Remind Sts that this kind of exercise is easier if they say the words aloud to themselves.

Get Sts to compare with a partner.

- c** **11.10** Now play the audio for Sts to listen and check. Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 since 2 key 3 blouse 4 throw 5 town

11.10

See words in Student Book on p.90

Then play the audio, pausing after each line for Sts to listen and repeat.

- d** **11.11** Tell Sts they are going to hear one sentence for each of the five sounds in **b**. They must listen and repeat them.

Play the audio, pausing after each sentence for Sts to listen and repeat.

11.11

- 1 I might buy a white tie.
2 It may rain later.
3 We don't know where to go.
4 We're now in a small town in the south.
5 Those noisy boys are annoying me.

Then repeat the activity, eliciting responses from individual Sts.

3 LISTENING & SPEAKING

identifying the main points in a talk

- a Focus on the photos and the different styles of jeans, and make sure Sts know what they all are. Then put Sts in pairs or small groups to answer the questions.

Elicit some feedback from the class.

EXTRA IDEA You could mention more styles including *baggy, high-rise, low-rise, cropped, barrel leg, etc., especially if Sts are wearing any of these.*

- b **11.12** Focus on the task, but don't ask Sts their opinion as they will be giving it later.

Play the audio once the whole way through.

Check the answer.

ANSWER

yes

11.12

(script in Student Book on p.133)

Is too much choice making us unhappy?

Buying jeans isn't as easy as it used to be. Years ago, there was only one kind of jeans – probably Levi's. Nowadays, there are hundreds – different styles, different colors, different lengths, with buttons, with zips. There are so many options that you feel the perfect pair must be waiting for you somewhere...

And it isn't just jeans. In big supermarkets, we have to choose between thousands of products – my local supermarket has thirty-five different kinds of milk! When we're buying clothes or electrical gadgets, ordering a coffee in a café, looking for a hotel on a travel website, deciding which TV channel to watch, or even choosing a future partner on a dating website, we constantly have to choose from hundreds of possibilities.

People often think that being able to choose from a lot of options is a good thing. However, university researchers have discovered that too much choice is making us feel unhappy and dissatisfied. The problem is that we have so many options that we get stressed every time we have to make a decision because we're worried about making the wrong one. Then when we choose one thing, we feel bad because we think we are missing other opportunities, and this makes us dissatisfied with what we've chosen.

Research also shows that we feel happier when we have less choice. In a study, Professor Mark Lepper at Stanford University found that people who tried six kinds of jam and then chose one felt happier with their choice than those who were offered twenty-four jams to taste.

But if all this choice is bad for us, what can we do about it? Professor Lepper suggests that we should try to relax when we have to decide what to buy. "Don't take these choices too seriously or it will become stressful," he says. "If you pick a sofa from IKEA in thirty seconds, you'll feel better than if you spend hours researching sofas – because you won't know what you're missing."

- c Focus on the task and give Sts time to read the five main points and their options. Make sure Sts understand all the lexis.

Play the audio again.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Get Sts to choose their answers before they listen again.

ANSWERS

1 b 2 c 3 a 4 a 5 c

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to listen again with the script on p.133, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

- d Either put Sts in pairs or small groups and get them to discuss the two questions for each thing in the list.

Get some feedback from the class.

EXTRA SUPPORT Do this as a whole-class activity.

4 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING

word building: noun formation

Vocabulary notes

There are several ways of making nouns from verbs, but here we focus on the three most common endings: *-ion*, *-sion*, and *-ation*. More complicated for Sts is when the noun is a different word altogether – Sts learn six common examples here.

- a Do this as a whole-class activity. Model and drill pronunciation of each word.

ANSWERS

choose = verb; *choice* = noun

decide = verb; *decision* = noun

- b Focus on the **Making nouns from verbs** box and go through it with the class.

Now focus on the chart, point out the two sections, and make sure Sts know all the nouns. Highlight the *-ion* ending and the spelling changes. Point out that the first one (*decide*) has been done for them, and get Sts to continue in pairs.

- c **11.13** Play the audio for Sts to listen and check. Check answers.

ANSWERS

See script 11.13 below

Now get Sts to underline the stressed syllables in the verbs and nouns.

Check answers.

11.13

- 1 decide, decision
- 2 elect, election
- 3 confuse, confusion
- 4 invent, invention
- 5 compete, competition
- 6 educate, education
- 7 invite, invitation
- 8 pronounce, pronunciation
- 9 choose, choice
- 10 advise, advice
- 11 fly, flight
- 12 live, life
- 13 die, death
- 14 succeed, success

Now you could ask Sts what the rule is for the stress in nouns which end in *-ion*, *-sion*, *-ition*, and *-ation*.

ANSWER

With nouns ending in *-ion* or *-sion*, the stressed syllable is always the one before the ending, and for *-ation* or *-ition* it is on the *a* or *i* before the *-tion*.

Finally, play the audio one more time for Sts to listen and repeat.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Give Sts some more verb prompts to change into nouns, e.g., *celebrate – celebration, communicate – communication, explode – explosion, etc.*

d Focus on the task and give Sts time to complete questions 1–8 with nouns from **b**.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

1 decision 2 invitation 3 flight 4 invention 5 competition
6 advice 7 life, death 8 pronunciation

EXTRA SUPPORT Put Sts in pairs to complete the questions, and then check as a class.

e Put Sts in pairs and get them to ask and answer the questions in **d**. Tell them to give as much information as possible or to ask for more information.

Get some feedback from various pairs.

- G** so, neither + auxiliaries
V similarities and differences
P /ð/ and /θ/

Lesson plan

The topic of this lesson is twins. The lesson begins with a video about an online project called *Twin Strangers*, which helps you find your lookalike anywhere in the world. There is then an audio interview with a journalist who tried the site. This is followed by the vocabulary focus, which is on words and phrases used to express similarities and differences, e.g., *similar to*, *different from*, and the structure *So am I / Neither am I* is presented in Grammar through the case of identical twins who were separated at birth, but reunited 40 years later. The pronunciation focus is on the two possible pronunciations of *th*, /ð/ as in *neither*, and /θ/ as in *both*. The lesson ends with a speaking activity in which Sts first complete some sentences to make them true about themselves, and then try to find a classmate like them. At this level, Sts will find it hard to manipulate this structure with much fluency, so here they just practice using the present forms *So am I / do I* and *Neither am I / do I*.

Video material

Listening – *Twin strangers*
 Pronunciation – /ð/ and /θ/

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar so, neither + auxiliaries p.216
 Communicative So do I! p.261 (instructions p.227)

For students

Workbook 11C

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Write on the board the words: *twin*, *stranger*

Elicit the meaning of them both. Then write them up together: *twin stranger*

Ask Sts what they think this might mean. Elicit ideas, but don't tell them if they are right yet, as they will find out in a video documentary they are going to watch.

1 LISTENING using visual clues to understand a human-interest story

- a** Books open. Focus on the instructions and photos. Make sure Sts know the meaning of *identical twins* and *complete strangers*. If your Sts have been watching the video *Pictures of you* in the Practical English lessons, you could elicit that Ben and Emma are non-identical twins, as identical twins are always the same sex.

With a show of hands, find out which photo Sts think is of identical twins. Don't tell them if they are right or not.

- b**  This video is a documentary about the people who invented the website *Twin Strangers*. Part of the documentary is unsimplified footage from a TV show

about them and when they speak, Sts will find them more difficult to understand than the rest of the video voiceover. For this reason, we suggest that when you play it the first time, you switch on subtitles. This will also introduce Sts to the idea of watching videos in English with English subtitles, which is an excellent way of practicing their English.

Tell Sts they are going to watch a video called *Twin strangers* to check their answer.

Play the video once all the way through.

Then check the answer.

ANSWER

The second picture is of twins.

- c** Give Sts time to read questions 1–7. Check they understand all the vocabulary and tell them that the Irish name *Niamh* is pronounced /nɪv/, and it is the name of the woman in the video who set up the *Twin Strangers* website.

Now play the video again. Then put Sts in pairs to answer the questions.

Get Sts to compare answers with a partner.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 They decided to find their twin strangers in one month from anywhere in the world.
- 2 They advertised their project on social media.
- 3 It took two weeks before Niamh met Karen.
- 4 Niamh and Karen put on the same make-up and did their hair the same way for a photo.
- 5 Niamh's second “twin” was from Italy.
- 6 They met in Genoa.
- 7 Terence and Harry received some photos, but they weren't very like them.



Na = narrator, N = Niamh, T = Terence, H = Harry

Na There are two types of twins: non-identical twins, who don't look the same, and identical twins, who look exactly the same. But did you know that there are also “twin strangers” – people who look the same, but are not related at all?

Na They say we all have seven twin strangers in the world – seven people who are not our relatives, but who look nearly identical to us.

Na On March twentieth twenty fifteen, three friends from Dublin began a unique challenge.

N I'm Niamh.

T I'm Terence.

H And I'm Harry.

N And we're trying to find our twin strangers from anywhere in the world.

H Basically, we set ourselves a challenge, and we have one month starting from today, to find people who look really really like us, or almost completely identical.

Na The three friends advertised their project on social media. Soon messages and photos started coming in from everywhere in the world, especially for Niamh.

Na After two weeks, Niamh got to meet Karen, the first of her potential twin strangers. It was a very exciting meeting. Niamh and Karen decided to put on the same make-up and do their hair the same way for a photo.

N So guys, this is it. Make-up and hair. What do you think?

Na *Niamh continued to search for her other six twin strangers, and she found number two... in Italy!*

N So this lovely girl named Luisa got in touch on the site, so I had a crazy idea: why not go fly and meet her?

Na *So Niamh traveled to Genoa on the Italian Riviera.*

N So great to meet you and meet your face!

Na *So what, about the boys? Harry found two or three people like him, but they weren't as good as Niamh's "twin strangers." Terence received some photos, mainly from the US, but they weren't very much like him. He says, "I think there are definitely Black guys out there who look like me." Soon their online project became a website, and since then, many people have found their "twin" on TwinStrangers.com. Sara, from Sweden, found Shannon, from Ireland, after they both went on the site, and they met in Dublin. So, if you'd like to meet your twin stranger, all you need to do is go to their website, upload a photo, and... who knows? In just a few days, you might find someone who looks just like you!*

Deal with any other new vocabulary. Model and drill the pronunciation of any tricky words.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

d  **11.14** Focus on the task and make sure Sts understand the situation.

Play the audio once the whole way through for Sts to listen and answer the two questions.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

EXTRA SUPPORT Draw a picture of a head on the board with as many facial features as possible, e.g., face, eyes, nose, mouth, hair, lips.

Then elicit these words from Sts and write them on the board.

ANSWERS

Yes, Maggie found someone who looked very much like her. It was a strange feeling, but she's happy she found her "twin."

11.14

(script in Student Book on p.133)

I went on the Twin Strangers website. All you have to do is upload a photo of your face and then describe it – your nose, mouth, and eyes. I looked in a mirror and decided that I have an oval face, blue eyes, and, unfortunately, thin lips.

Immediately, I got a lot of photos of possible matches. My first reaction was, "They all look totally different from me." Then something interesting began to happen. Some of the people started to look familiar, like people in my family. I found one woman who looked just like my brother. I started to wonder, was there something there?

I called my husband to come and take a look at all these "twins." His first reaction was the same as mine, but then he went quiet. He pointed to one woman who, at first sight, looks completely different from me, but whose picture I had stopped at several times. He said, "She has the same mouth as you. In fact, she's a little like you." And he was right.

I decided to change my profile a little. Many people tell me I look younger than I really am, so I put my age as ten years younger, and then searched again. The result was surprising. Suddenly, there seemed to be a number of women a little like me. Especially one. I put her picture on my Facebook page and asked my friends what they thought. The first person to answer was my brother. "Yes," he wrote. "She looks like you and our sister."

It's a strange feeling. I keep looking at her picture. We're very similar, but not identical – for example, she has brown eyes, but mine are blue. But there's something there. Not just the blond hair and the thin lips. There's something in her eyes that I recognize. It's a very strange feeling, but I'm really happy that I found her. I sent her a message through the website, but she hasn't replied yet. I'm going to keep trying. I want to know who she is.

e Tell Sts they are going to listen to Maggie again and need to answer questions 1–8.

Give Sts time to read the questions.

Now play the audio again.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 She says "I have an oval face, blue eyes, and, unfortunately, thin lips."
- 2 She thought they all looked totally different from her.
- 3 Her brother.
- 4 Her husband thought one of the twins had the same mouth. Yes, she did.
- 5 She said she was ten years younger.
- 6 He thought she looked like Maggie and their sister.
- 7 They both have blonde hair and thin lips.
- 8 No, they haven't. Maggie sent her a message, but she hasn't replied.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to listen again with the script on p.133, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

f Put Sts in pairs and get them to discuss the questions.

Get some feedback from various pairs. You could tell the class your answers, too.

2 VOCABULARY similarities and differences

a Here Sts learn some different ways of expressing similarities. Focus on the sentences about the people in 1. Get Sts to fill in the blanks with words and phrases from the list. Point out that the stress is marked in the longer words.

b  **11.15** Play the audio for Sts to listen and check. Check answers.

11.15

- 1 Niamh and Karen were **both** very excited to meet.
- 2 The two girls looked **identical**.
- 3 The first photos Maggie looked at were totally **different from** her.
- 4 Maggie found one woman who looked **just like** her brother.
- 5 Her husband said, "She has **the same** mouth as you."
- 6 Maggie's "twin" looks very **similar** to her.

EXTRA CHALLENGE You may also want to teach the rules for the position of *both*, i.e., before the main verb, but after *be* (like adverbs of frequency).

c Say the sentences about yourself. Encourage Sts to ask for more information.

Then give Sts a few moments to complete the sentences with a family word.

! For 4, they need to add other words, too. They can use the same family member more than once.

Put Sts in pairs to discuss their answers.

Get feedback by eliciting different sentences from various pairs.

3 GRAMMAR *so, neither* + auxiliaries

- a Focus on the photo and ask Sts if the two men look similar. Elicit that they are twins.
Now focus on the instructions. Give Sts time to read the text and answer the questions.
Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 They are (American) identical twins.
- 2 Because they were adopted by two different families when they were babies
- 3 He decided to try to find his brother.
- 4 Six weeks

- b  **11.16** Either tell Sts to cover the conversation or get them to close their books. Tell Sts that the two men have a lot of things in common. They should listen to the conversation for at least three things.

Before playing the audio, you might want to tell Sts that *neither* can be pronounced /'naɪðər/ or /'niðər/. Play the audio once the whole way through. Play again if necessary.

Elicit answers from the class and write them on the board.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Tell Sts to try and hear as many things as possible that the men have in common.

ANSWERS

Sts should mention three of these:

Both men have been married twice, they both have a son named James Allan / Alan, neither went to college, they were both terrible students, they both have a dog named Toy, they don't do any exercise, they own the same car (a Chevrolet), and they both worked in a hamburger restaurant.

11.16

See conversation in Student Book on p.93 and answer key for c

- c Get Sts to look at the conversation. Tell them to listen again and to complete it. Play the audio once and then play it again if necessary.
Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 am 2 have 3 do 4 did 5 was 6 do 7 do 8 did

Finally, ask Sts which coincidence they find the most surprising.

- d Focus on the instructions and put Sts in pairs. Give them time to answer the questions.
Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 ☒ So am I, So have I, So was I, So do I, So did I
☐ Neither did I, Neither do I
- 2 The auxiliary verb changes to follow the tense or form used by the first speaker.

- e Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 11C** on p.154.

Grammar notes

The main problem Sts may have is thinking that *So (do) I* is used to agree with a statement and *Neither (do) I* to disagree. It is important to stress that both are used to say that two people have the same opinion or do the same thing, but we use *So...* when it is an affirmative thing and *Neither...* when it is a negative thing.

Sts will probably already know the expression *Me too*, which is a "shortcut" way to express *So do I*, etc. You may want to teach Sts the negative version, *Me neither*.

Focus on the example sentences and play audio  **11.17** for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the ***neither and nor*** box and go through it with the class.

Then focus on the exercises for **11C** on p.155. Sts do them individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

- a 1 am 2 did 3 was 4 do 5 have 6 can 7 would
8 did 9 would 10 can
b 1 So do I. 2 Neither am I. 3 So did I. 4 Neither have I.
5 Neither do I. 6 So can I. 7 So will I. 8 So am I.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **11C**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **11C Grammar** photocopiable activity.

- f  **11.18** Focus on the instructions and the example.
Explain that Sts are going to hear a sentence and they have to use *So...I* or *Neither...I* to say that they are the same. You might want to stress that Sts must not think about themselves, but simply answer so that they agree with the speaker.

Play the audio, pausing after the first sentence to elicit *So do I* from the whole class. Continue, pausing the audio after each sentence to elicit a response.

11.18

- 1 I take the bus to work. (ping) So do I.
- 2 I like chocolate. (ping) So do I.
- 3 I'm happy. (ping) So am I.
- 4 I'm not angry. (ping) Neither am I.
- 5 I don't like soccer. (ping) Neither do I.
- 6 I'm going out tonight. (ping) So am I.
- 7 I have a big family. (ping) So do I.
- 8 I'm not English. (ping) Neither am I.
- 9 I live in an apartment. (ping) So do I.

Then repeat the activity, eliciting responses from individual Sts.

EXTRA SUPPORT Write *So _____ I* and *Neither _____ I* on the board for Sts to focus on.

4 PRONUNCIATION /ð/ and /θ/

Pronunciation notes

/ð/ and /θ/

Sts should be aware by now of the small difference between these two sounds, as they occur in so many common words. Here they get some extra practice to help them hear the difference and produce the two sounds.

- a**  Focus on the two sound pictures, *mother* /ð/ and *thumb* /θ/, and play the video once for Sts just to watch and listen to the sounds and words. Encourage Sts to try to approximate the *th* sound as far as possible, and to hear the difference between the voiced sound /ð/ and the unvoiced sound /θ/, although they may find this quite difficult.

Then play the video again, pausing for Sts to listen and repeat the words and sounds.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.



See sounds and words in Student Book on p.93

- b**  **11.19** Focus on the instructions and tell Sts that this exercise is a dictation. They will first hear four more words to add to the *mother* group, and then four more to add to the *thumb* group.

Play the audio for Sts to listen and write.

Get Sts to compare with a partner.

Check answers by eliciting the words and writing them on the board.



11.19

mother /ð/ although, other, these, without
thumb /θ/ math, thing, thirsty, through

Then play the audio again, pausing after each word or group of words, and get Sts to repeat.

Put Sts in pairs and get them to practice saying the words.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Say some words for Sts to identify the sound, /ð/ or /θ/.

5 SPEAKING

- a** Focus on the instructions. Make sure Sts understand all the categories in parentheses, and give them a few minutes to complete the sentences.
- b** Go through the instructions and focus on the speech bubbles. Demonstrate by going to different Sts and saying *I love* (whatever kind of music you like) to individual Sts until somebody says *So do I*. If they don't like it, encourage them to say a whole sentence, e.g., *Really? I don't like it. I hate it*.

Tell Sts to stand up and start saying their sentences from **a** to each other to find someone who is the same. Monitor and make sure Sts are using *so, neither* + auxiliaries correctly. Stop the activity when one student has a name for all their sentences.

Get some feedback from the class.



Is this the end?

Practical English calling and leaving a message

Lesson plan

In this final Practical English episode, the functional language is calling and leaving messages.

After their argument at the end of Episode 5, Ben and Izzy are not speaking. In the first scene Ben imagines Carla, Emma, and Izzy talking to him about the situation and giving advice. In the second scene he decides to call Izzy, but is unable to reach her at home or at work. In the final scene Pamela, Izzy's landlady, notices Izzy is sad and has not gone to work. They go out for a walk in the park and Izzy tells her about the problems with Ben. Then they see Ben who is also walking in the park hoping to bump into Izzy. Ben and Izzy talk together about their feelings, and at the end of the episode, they decide to end the relationship.

The final season of *Pictures of you* is in *American English File Level 3*.

Video material

Pictures of you Episode 6

More materials

For teachers

Oxford English Hub

Quick Test 11

File 11 Test

For students

Workbook Practical English 6

Can you remember...? 1–11

THE STORY SO FAR (books closed)

▶ Play the first part of the video – the recap of Episode 5 (*Previously*) – to remind Sts of the previous episode of *Pictures of you* and use it to elicit from Sts what happened. At the end of the last Practical English lesson, Sts predicted what they thought was going to happen next. Ask them if they can remember their predictions, and tell them they will now find out if they were right.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Put Sts in pairs or small groups to remember the previous episode of *Pictures of you*. Then play the recap for them to check what they remembered.

1 BEN'S DILEMMA

a ▶ In this scene, Ben imagines the advice that Carla, Emma, and Izzy herself would give him as he decides what he should do.

Focus on the title and teach the word *dilemma* /dɪˈlemə/ (= a situation where you have to make a very difficult and important choice).

Elicit what Sts think Ben's dilemma is.

Focus on the photo and task. Give them time to read the question.

Then play the video once the whole way through for them to watch.

Get Sts to discuss the question with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

No, they aren't. They're in Ben's imagination.



C = Carla, B = Ben, E = Emma, I = Izzy

C Well, you know what you have to do. You should apologize.

B I have apologized! But she doesn't listen to me.

C Izzy's angry. Of course she's angry. She probably thinks that you don't trust her.

B I trust her! Of course I trust her.

E Do you trust her?

B Yes. Nothing happened between her and Max.

E But do you believe her?

B Yeah!

E Or do you just want to believe her?

B What do you mean?

E You think she's going to break up with you. That she might be happier without you.

B No, I don't.

E Or maybe, just maybe, you think you might be happier without her.

B I...no, that's not true. I want to stay with her.

E Then you'll have to change. But do you want to change?

B No.

I Ben. Love is sometimes hard work. Things don't always go to plan. People change. But it's always worth it if it's the right person. So ask yourself this: am I the right person?

B I don't know anymore.

b Focus on the different pieces of advice, and give Sts time to read through them and think who said what.

Play the video again so Sts can watch and write the correct names.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

1 Izzy 2 Carla 3 Emma

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

c Put Sts in pairs to discuss the question. Elicit ideas from some Sts.

2 CALLING AND LEAVING A MESSAGE

a ▶ In this scene Ben tries unsuccessfully to speak to Izzy on the phone.

Focus on the photos and the two questions.

Play the video once the whole way through.

Get Sts to compare answers with a partner.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 3 2 No, he doesn't.



IV = Izzy's voicemail, B = Ben, R = R receptionist, M = Max

IV I'm sorry. I can't take your call at the moment. Please leave a message and I'll get back to you.

B Hi, Izzy. It's Ben. Can you call me back, please?

R Light on London. How can I help you?

B Hi. Can I speak to Izzy Silva, please?

R Just a second, I'll put you through...

B Izzy?

R Sorry, she's not at her desk right now.

B Can I leave a message, please?

R Sure.

B Can you tell her Ben called? I'll call her back later.

R No problem, I'll give her the message.

B Thanks.

R Light on London, how can I help you?

B Hi. Can I speak to Izzy Silva, please?

R Just a second...I'm sorry, the line's busy. Do you want to hold?

B Yes. I'll hold.

M Hello, Izzy Silva's phone.

B Uh...Is Izzy there?

M Ben? Uh, no. She's taken the day off. Um...I'd give her some space if I were you.

B Thanks for the advice.

- b** Now focus on the conversations in the chart. Ask Sts *Who says the **You hear** sentences in each conversation?* and elicit that first it is Izzy's voicemail, then the receptionist at Izzy's workplace speaks to Ben twice, and finally Max picks up Izzy's phone.

Then ask *Who says the **You say** sentences?* and elicit that it is Ben. Tell Sts that if they want to make a call, they will need the **You say** phrases.

Give Sts a minute to read through the conversations and think what the missing words might be. Then play the video again, and get Sts to fill in the blanks. Play again if necessary.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

1 take 2 leave 3 put 4 give 5 busy 6 hold

Go through the conversations line by line with Sts, helping them with any words or expressions they don't understand. Make sure Sts understand *call someone back* and *put someone through*.

- c** Now focus on the **You say** phrases. Tell Sts they're going to hear the conversation again. They should repeat the phrases when the video pauses.

Play the video for Sts to repeat the phrases. Encourage them to copy the rhythm and intonation. (Note that the complete dialogue is on the unit page, but not on screen for the "listen and repeat" video.)



Same as previous video with pauses

Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**. Tell Sts **A** to read the parts on the left side of the chart, and Sts **B** to read Ben's part. In pairs, Sts read the conversation aloud.

Then ask Sts to change roles.

- d** Focus on role-play 1. In pairs, as before, Sts now role-play a conversation where **A** is the receptionist and **B** is Ben. Get Sts to read the instructions carefully.

When they are ready, student **A** starts the role-play by answering the phone: *Light on London. How can I help you?* Monitor and help if necessary.

EXTRA SUPPORT Demonstrate the activity by taking the role of the Ben yourself and getting a confident student to be the receptionist.

Sts change roles when they have finished and focus on role-play 2. This time, Ben holds to wait and speak to Izzy (but is not successful). Again, give Sts time to read the instructions carefully and think / prepare before they start the role-play.

When they have finished, you could get some pairs to perform in front of the class.

3 IN THE PARK

- a** In this final scene Ben and Izzy have realized that their relationship isn't working, and decide to separate.

Focus on the photos and the questions. You could do this as a whole class activity or put Sts in pairs to discuss.

Elicit ideas from the class or from different pairs.

Play the video once for them to find out what happened.



I = Izzy, P = Pamela, B = Ben

I Hi, Pamela.

P Hi, Izzy. I thought I heard you. Aren't you working today?

I No, I took the day off.

P Are you OK?

I No. Ben and I had a big argument last night.

P I'm sorry to hear that. Have you been out today?

I No.

P Come on. Let's go for a walk.

I It was so embarrassing...and...our relationship has been difficult recently. I just don't understand him anymore.

P Well...sometimes people are difficult to understand.

I What's his problem? I have this great job. I have this great opportunity.

P And...he's just starting his career.

I Yeah. I think you're right. I know what I want. I know who I am. Ben doesn't. He wants everything to stay the same. It can't all stay the same. Life isn't like that.

P So...Why don't you tell that to him?

B I thought you'd be here.

I Well, here I am.

B I'm sorry. I was an idiot.

I You were.

B I don't know why I didn't tell you about Max earlier. I didn't tell you how I was feeling.

I I'm not interested in Max. I never was. He's just my boss.

B I know. I know now.

I Look. It's my fault, too. I've been so busy with my new job, I didn't have enough time to think about us. I'm sorry.

B Sure, I get it. You've been busy and you're doing really well. I'm proud of you.

I Thanks. I'm sorry if you feel like I've left you behind. You're so talented. One day you're going to be a great photographer.

B Thanks. You know...when we met we were in the same place in life. Now we're in very different places.

I I think you're right. This new job is really important to me. It's what I've always wanted to do.

B Yeah. You've found the right place for you. But I don't think your job leaves enough time for us.

I Yeah. And...you need somebody who wants the same things as you want right now...I don't think I'm that person.

B So is this it? The end?

- I I think so.
 B I think so, too. We were really good together.
 I We were.
 B You know that now my back's better, I could beat Max in a race, right?
 I I know.

- b** Focus on the sentence beginnings 1–6 and the endings a–f and give Sts time to read them. Check they know all the vocabulary. You could elicit / teach the difference between *a job* and *a career* /kəˈrɪr/ (= your area of work, e.g., a teaching career).
 Play the video once the whole way through for Sts to watch and do the matching task.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Put Sts in pairs to match the sentence beginnings and endings before they watch the video again. Then play the video for them to check.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then play again if necessary.
 Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 b 2 e 3 c 4 a 5 f 6 d

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

4 SOCIAL ENGLISH

- a** Focus on the phrases in the chart and go through them with the class.
 Now give Sts time to match a phrase in **A** with a response in **B**. They can do this individually or in pairs.
- b**  Play the video for Sts to watch and check.
 Check answers. Elicit / Teach the meaning of *We're in very different places* in this context (= we are at different stages of our lives and want different things).
 If you know your Sts' L1, you could get them to translate the phrases.

ANSWERS

1 No, I took the day off. 2 I'm sorry to hear that. 3 Well, here I am. 4 You were. 5 I think you're right. 6 I think so.

Now play the video again, pausing as necessary, for Sts to watch and repeat.

- c** Focus on the instructions and put Sts in pairs, making sure they understand what they have to do.
 Monitor and help. Make sure they change roles. If there's time, you could get Sts **B** to close their books and respond from memory, and then change roles.

WHAT DO YOU THINK?

Put Sts in pairs and get them to discuss the questions about *Pictures of you*. You can decide if Sts should answer the questions briefly or have a more elaborate class discussion about them.

Elicit some feedback from the class. Motivate them to keep learning English by telling them that Season 3 is in *American English File Level 3*!

- G** past perfect
V time expressions
P the letter *i*

Lesson plan

In this lesson the past perfect is presented through the context of strange but true stories from around the world. The lesson begins with Reading and Vocabulary, where Sts read three stories from the news. They put the events in the stories in the correct order, and study time expressions in them. Then in Grammar, a sentence from one of the stories is used to present the past perfect. In Pronunciation, Sts look at two pronunciations of the letter *i* and learn some spelling and pronunciation rules. The lesson finishes with Speaking, where Sts read two more strange, but true stories, and retell them to each other.

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar past perfect p.217

Communicative What had happened? p.262 (instructions p.228)

For students

Workbook 12A

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Review irregular past participles by saying a verb from the **Irregular verbs** list on p.172 and eliciting the simple past and past participle. Then ask Sts *When do you use past participles?* and elicit in the present perfect (with *have*) and the passive (with *be*). Now tell Sts they're going to learn another form where the past participle of the verb is used.

1 READING & VOCABULARY understanding the order of events in a story; time expressions

- a** Books open. Focus on the pictures and headlines, and elicit some ideas about the stories from the class. Don't tell them if they are right or not.
- b** Now tell Sts to read the stories and match them to the headlines. Point out the **Glossary**.
 Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers, making sure Sts understand the meaning of each headline.

ANSWERS

1 False alarm 2 In the mail 3 Left behind

- c** Tell Sts to read the stories again and then put the events in each story in the correct order. Point out that the first one in *Story 1* has been done for them.
 Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

Story 1

- 3 The police arrived at the apartment.
 1 The neighbors heard someone screaming.
 4 The man explained what had happened.
 2 The man killed the spider.

Story 2

- 2 Julie put up posters.
 1 Julie lost her cat.
 4 The vet contacted Julie.
 3 The cat jumped out of the box.

Story 3

- 3 Walter got back into the car and drove off.
 4 Walter realized that Claudia wasn't there.
 2 Claudia went into the store.
 1 Walter used the restroom.

- d** Tell Sts to look at the stories and find the time expressions to complete sentences 1–5.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 immediately 2 suddenly 3 right away 4 Meanwhile
 5 eventually

- e** Get Sts to match the time expressions in **d** with definitions 1–4.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 suddenly 2 eventually 3 meanwhile 4 immediately, right away

Deal with any other new vocabulary, making sure that Sts understand *notice* and *realize* in the third story, as these are verbs often followed by the past perfect, which they are about to focus on. Model and drill the pronunciation of any tricky words.

Finally, ask Sts which of the three stories they liked best.

2 GRAMMAR past perfect

- a** Focus on the sentence and get Sts to number the sentences, or do it as a whole-class activity.
 Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 2 Walter realized that Claudia wasn't in the car.
 1 Walter drove 60 miles.

- b** Do this as a whole-class activity and elicit answers. Some Sts may think that it is the contraction of *would*. Point out that this is impossible as *would* is followed by the base form, not the past participle. Explain that this form (*had* + past participle) is called the past perfect.

ANSWER

'd is a contraction of *had*; *driven* is a past participle.

- c** Give Sts time to look for two more examples of the past perfect in each story. You could tell Sts that stories 2 and 3 have a lot of examples, but they only need to underline two in each.
 Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

POSSIBLE ANSWERS

Story 1

The callers had heard a woman screaming...; The officer told the man that his neighbors had heard shouting and screaming...

Story 2

...that she had bought on eBay...; The cat, named Cupcake, had gotten into the box eight days earlier...; Julie didn't notice that Cupcake had climbed into the box and [had] fallen asleep; ...the cat had survived the 260-mile journey with no food or water; Julie had been very sad about losing her cat; She had put up posters and [had] looked for Cupcake for days.

Story 3

Claudia had been asleep in the back seat; when she came back outside, she found that her husband had left without her.

d Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 12A** on p.156.

Grammar notes

The form and use of the past perfect is not normally problematic for most Sts, but the concept may be difficult if Sts do not have the same grammatical structure in their L1.

The past perfect is very common after verbs like *realized*, *remembered*, *saw*, etc., e.g., *I suddenly realized that I'd forgotten my sister's birthday*.

Focus on the example sentences and play audio 12.1 for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the **had or would?** box and go through it with the class.

Then focus on the exercises for **12A** on p.157. Sts do them individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

a 1 G 2 D 3 A 4 F 5 E 6 B

b 1 Katie had changed a lot, and I didn't recognize her.

2 My friend called to tell me that I had left my coat in his car.

3 When I turned on the radio, the news had already finished.

4 She didn't lend me the game because she hadn't played it yet.

5 The store had closed by the time we arrived.

6 When we got home, we saw that somebody had broken the kitchen window.

7 When we got up in the morning, we saw that someone had been in our yard.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **12A**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **12A Grammar photocopiable activity**.

e Give Sts time to complete the five sentences with their own ideas. Make sure they use the past perfect.

f Put Sts in pairs and get them to compare their sentences with a partner.

Get some Sts to read their sentences to the class.

POSSIBLE ANSWERS

1 I'd left my passport at home.

2 all our plants had died.

3 I'd already seen it.

4 hadn't studied.

5 where we had parked.

g Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**, and tell them to go to **Communication What had happened?**, **A** on p.108, **B** on p.114.

Demonstrate the activity by writing in large letters on a piece of paper the following sentence:

I wasn't very happy because my boyfriend had eaten all the cookies.

Don't show the piece of paper to the Sts yet. Then write on the board:

I wasn't very happy because my boyfriend _____ all the cookies. ☞

Tell Sts that what's missing is an affirmative form of a verb in the past perfect (*had eaten*). Tell them that they must guess the exact sentence that you have written on the piece of paper. Elicit ideas. If they are wrong, say *Try again*, until someone says the correct answer. Then show them your piece of paper with the sentence on it.

Tell Sts to look at instruction **a**. Give them a few minutes to think of how to complete their sentences in a logical way, and remind them not to write anything yet. Explain that their partner has the same sentences already completed and the idea is to try and complete the sentences in the same way. Emphasize, too, that they must use a verb in the past perfect. Monitor and help while they are doing this.

Now tell Sts to look at instruction **b**. **A** must read out their first sentence and **B** tells them if they have completed the sentence correctly. If not, **A** has to guess again. When the guess is correct, **A** writes the answer in the blank.

When **A** finishes, **B** reads their sentences to **A**, etc.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **12A**.

3 PRONUNCIATION the letter i

Pronunciation notes

There are several clear spelling / pronunciation rules for words with the letter *i*, but there are a few common exceptions, like *live* (v), *drive* / *driven*, etc., that trip Sts up sometimes.

a Focus on the box **The letter i** and go through it with the class.

Now focus on the activity and elicit the two sounds and words, *fish* /ɪ/ and *bike* /aɪ/.

Give Sts two minutes to put the words in the correct group.

Get Sts to compare with a partner.

b 12.2 Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.

Check answers.

12.2

fish /ɪ/ driven, kill, miracle, notice, signal

bike /aɪ/ alive, arrive, outside, spider, surprise, survive, while, wife

Now ask Sts which two words in the /ɪ/ row don't follow the rules.

ANSWERS

Driven and *notice* don't follow the rules.

Play the audio again for Sts to listen and repeat.

Then play the audio again, eliciting responses from individual Sts.

Finally, put Sts in pairs and get them to practice saying the words.

4 SPEAKING

- a** Focus on the instructions and the pictures. Make sure Sts know *shark*, *waves*, and *a luggage belt*.

Then either put Sts in pairs to discuss what they think the stories are about, or do it as a whole-class activity.

If Sts worked in pairs, elicit some ideas from the class.

Don't tell Sts if they are right.

- b** Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**, and tell them to go to **Communication Two more stories, A** on p.109, **B** on p.114.

Go through the instructions with them carefully.

Give Sts time to read their stories and answer the questions. Monitor and check their answers while they do this, to make sure they are answering the questions correctly.

ANSWERS

Student A

- 1 The swimming pool was in Sydney, close to the ocean; it was an outdoor pool.
- 2 The pool assistant shouted, "Get out..." because there was a shark in the pool.
- 3 A large wave had carried the shark into the pool.
- 4 No one was hurt. The shark was put back into the ocean.

Student B

- 1 The airport was in Stockholm, Sweden.
- 2 The airport workers were surprised because they saw an old lady on the luggage belt.
- 3 She had gotten on the luggage belt with her suitcase because she was confused.
- 4 She only traveled a few feet.

When they are ready, sit **A** and **B** face-to-face. **A** tells their story to **B**. Then **B** tells **A** their story.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **12A**.

- c** Ask the questions to the class and elicit opinions and any stories they may have heard.

- G** reported speech
V say or tell?
P double consonants

Lesson plan

This lesson provides a clear introduction to reported (or indirect) speech. Sts simply learn to deal with reported statements – reported questions are taught in *American English File Level 3*. The context for the lesson is the topic of gossiping. The lesson begins with Listening, where Sts listen to a conversation between two women, Pam and Sue, who are gossiping about a conversation one of them overheard between a young couple, Jack and Emma, who live next door. However, after watching a video, Sts find out later that Pam had completely misunderstood what she heard, as is often the case! The grammar section presents reported speech by contrasting what Emma actually said with how Pam reported it to her friend. After practicing the grammar, in Vocabulary, Sts focus on how *say* and *tell* are used, and in Speaking, they practice reporting what other Sts have said. Pronunciation focuses on how double consonants are pronounced, and how they affect the preceding vowel sound. The lesson finishes with a traditional story about the harmful effect of gossip, and Sts talk about the subject.

Video material

Listening – *What really happened?*

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar reported speech p.218
Communicative The celebrity interview p.263
 (instructions p.228)

For students

Workbook 12B

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Write the word *gossip* on the board. Elicit the meaning and tell Sts that it's a noun and a verb.

Ask *Who do people often gossip about? How do you feel when people gossip about you?* Elicit ideas and opinions. You could also tell them what you think.

1 LISTENING using visual clues to understand a conversation

- a** Focus on the question and picture, and elicit some ideas from the class.
- b** **12.3** Focus on the instructions.
 Now play the audio once the whole way through. Play it again if necessary.
 Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

Jack and Emma are Pam's neighbors. She thinks they have broken up.

1 a 2 c 3 b 4 c

12.3

(script in Student Book on p.133)

S = Sue, P = Pam

- S** Hello, Pam. How are you this morning?
P Hello, Sue. I'm fine thanks, but you'll never guess what's happened. Jack and Emma have broken up!
S No! That can't be true... Jack and Emma, your neighbors? I saw them last week and they looked really happy.
P No, it's definitely true. I heard them shouting. Hm. They were having a terrible argument.
S No! When?
P Last night. After he came home from work.
S What did they say?
P Well, I wasn't really listening...
S Of course not.
P But I couldn't help hearing. She was talking so loudly, and of course, the walls are very thin...
S So...what did they say?
P Well, she said that she was going to stay with her mom! She told him that she wouldn't come back.
S Ooh, tsk, how awful. What about the children?
P She said she'd taken them to her sister's. I suppose she'll take them with her in the end. And anyway, then five minutes later, I saw her leaving the house with a suitcase!
S No! Why do you think she's leaving him? Is he seeing somebody else?
P Hm, I don't know...
S I have to go and tell Janet at number fourteen. She always thought there was something...something strange about him.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to listen again with the script on p.133, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

- c** **12.3** This video is a dramatized version of what really happened between Jack and Emma.

Now tell Sts they are going to find out what was really happening when Pam overheard Jack and Emma. Focus on the photos and the instructions.

Play the video once the whole way through. Play it again if necessary.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWER

No, Pam wasn't right. She only heard part of the conversation. In fact, Emma isn't leaving Jack; she's going to look after her mother, who has had an accident.



J = Jack, E = Emma

- J** Hi, Emma. I'm back. Where are you?
E I'm upstairs in the bedroom. I'm packing.
J Packing? Why? Where are you going?
E I'm going to stay with my mom.
J Your mom? What's happened?
E She's had an accident. She fell on the street and she's broken her leg.
J How awful. Poor thing. Can I make you a cup of tea?
E That'd be lovely, thanks. I've told my work I need the time off.

- J How long do you think you'll have to stay?
 E I won't come back...until the weekend, I don't think.
 J Sorry, until when?
 E Until the weekend. I'll have to make sure she's OK. I've taken the children to my sister's. She'll take them to school tomorrow morning. Can you pick them up after school?
 J Of course I can. Now don't worry about anything. OK? Everything is going to be fine. Here's your tea and I'll take your suitcase downstairs.
 E Thanks, Jack. The taxi will be here in five minutes.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Ask Sts some comprehension questions, e.g., *Why was Emma packing?* (to go and stay at her mother's), *Why was she going to her mother's?* (because her mother had broken her leg), etc.

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

- d Put Sts in pairs and get them to discuss the questions.
 Get some feedback from various pairs.

2 GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY reported speech, say or tell?

- a Focus on the instructions and the extracts. Give Sts time, in pairs, to underline the words that are different.
 Check answers.

ANSWERS

She said that she was going to stay with her mom.
 She told him that she wouldn't come back.
 She said that she'd taken the children to her sister's.

- b Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 12B** on p.156.

Grammar notes

This is an introduction to reported (or indirect) speech. The reporting of sentences with *say* and *tell* is covered here, but not reported questions, e.g., *He asked me if I lived near here.*

When people report a past tense statement, they sometimes do not make the change to the past perfect, e.g.,

- direct speech: "I saw Jack at the party."
- reported speech: Jane told me she saw / had seen Jack at the party.

However, this may confuse Sts, who prefer to be given one rule, so you may not want to highlight it at this level.

Sts tend to confuse the verbs *say* and *tell*, and may try to use *say* with a person. *He told me that he was tired.* NOT *He said me that he was tired.*

Focus on the example sentences and play audio **12.4** for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Focus on the exercises for **12B** on p.157. Sts do the exercises individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

- a 1 Ana said that she was hungry.
 2 Jun told her he didn't like dogs.
 3 He said he would call the doctor.
 4 Adi told us that he had bought a new phone.
 5 She said that she lived downtown.
 6 They said that they couldn't do it.
 7 Youngchae said that she had seen a great movie at Cineplex.
 b 1 I'm studying German.
 2 My car has broken down. / My car broke down.
 3 I'll send you an email.
 4 We're in a hurry. / They're in a hurry.
 5 I haven't finished my essay yet.
 6 I won't arrive on time.
 7 I've just arrived in Lima. / I just arrived in Lima.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **12B**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **12B Grammar photocopiable activity**.

- c **12.5** Focus on the instructions and examples. Tell Sts that they must begin the sentences with *He said that* or *She said that*, depending on whether they hear a male voice or a female voice. Do the first two as a class.
 Play the audio, pausing after the direct speech sentence for the class to make the transformation into reported speech.

12.5

- 1 I'm in a hurry. (ping) She said that she was in a hurry.
 2 I'll write. (ping) He said that he would write.
 3 I didn't see it. (ping) She said that she hadn't seen it.
 4 I'm hungry. (ping) He said that he was hungry.
 5 I'll be late. (ping) She said that she would be late.
 6 I've finished. (ping) He said that he had finished.
 7 I'm coming. (ping) She said that she was coming.
 8 I'll do it again. (ping) He said that he would do it again.
 9 I had a great time. (ping) She said that she had had a great time.
 10 I'm tired. (ping) He said that he was tired.

Then repeat the activity, eliciting responses from individual Sts.

- d Focus on the task and give Sts time to complete the sentences.
 Get them to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 said 2 told 3 said 4 told 5 said 6 tell 7 say
 8 tell, say

3 SPEAKING

- a Focus on the task. Give Sts a minute or so to think about their answers. Remind them that the information must be true, except for one answer which they must invent.
 b Put Sts into pairs and give them time to interview each other. Remind Sts that the person listening must take some notes.
 Make sure Sts change roles.
 c Get Sts to change partners, and explain that they must now tell their new partner what their first partner told them. To do this, they must change the information into reported speech.
 Give Sts time to report their conversations to their new partners and to decide together which answer their previous partners invented.

EXTRA IDEA To help Sts to get the idea of the activity, begin by whispering a piece of real or invented gossip to one student. Then get the class to ask the student *What did he / she say?* Now encourage the student to report what you said, using reported speech.

- d** Then Sts should go back to their original partners and find out which answer they invented.
Get feedback by asking individual Sts to report one exchange.

4 PRONUNCIATION double consonants

Pronunciation notes

Here Sts learn two clear rules about double consonants. First, vowel sounds are normally short before a double consonant. This is the reason why we double the final consonant before adding *-er* in comparatives, and *-ed* in past tenses – that is, to maintain the short vowel sound. Second, double consonants (e.g., *ss*, *rr*, etc.) are usually pronounced exactly the same as a single consonant, unlike in many other languages, where they are different.

- a** Tell Sts to look at the five vowel sound pictures and to match each one to a group of words 1–5.
b  **12.6** Play the audio for Sts to listen and check.
Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 /ɑ/ clock 2 /ʌ/ up 3 /ɪ/ fish 4 /æ/ cat 5 /ɛ/ egg

12.6

- 1 **clock** /ɑ/ gossip, college, opposite, bottle, robber
2 **up** /ʌ/ luggage, runner, funny, summer, butterfly
3 **fish** /ɪ/ written, miss, bitten, different, middle
4 **cat** /æ/ happy, married, accident, rabbit, baggage
5 **egg** /ɛ/ letter, leggings, message, umbrella, tennis

Play the audio again, pausing after each group of words for Sts to listen and repeat.

Put Sts in pairs and get them to practice saying the words.

- c** Focus on the **Double consonants** box and go through it with the class.

Tell Sts, in pairs, to try to pronounce the words in the list. Then they should look them up and find out how to pronounce them and what they mean.

Check answers.

ANSWERS

kettle /'kɛtl/ = a kitchen appliance used for boiling water
nanny /'næni/ = a person who takes care of young children in the children's own home
pillow /'pɪləʊ/ = a piece of cloth filled with soft material, e.g., feathers, used to rest your head on in bed
pottery /'pɒtəri/ = pots, dishes, etc., made with clay that is baked in an oven
supper /'sʌpər/ = the last meal of the day, either a main meal or a snack before you go to bed, sometimes used as an alternative to dinner

Still in pairs, Sts practice saying the words.

5 READING & SPEAKING identifying text type, understanding the moral of a story

- a** This is a traditional story that exists in slightly different versions in many countries. Focus on the title and make sure Sts know what it means. Use the artwork to teach the word *feather*.

Now tell Sts to read the text and answer the two questions.

Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWER

It's *b* (a traditional story) because it starts with "Once upon a time," the characters have no names, and the time and place aren't specific.

- b** Focus on the task and make sure Sts know the meaning of the noun *moral* (= a practical lesson that a story teaches you).
Tell Sts to read the story again. Then ask Sts what they think the moral of the story is. Elicit ideas, but don't tell Sts if they are right.

Now tell Sts to go to **Communication Blowing in the wind** on p.109. Give Sts time to read the ending of the story.

Finally, ask Sts what the message of the story is.

ANSWERS

The message is that gossip can't be controlled. It can travel a long way and do a lot of damage – so think before you speak.

Deal with any other new vocabulary. Model and drill the pronunciation of any tricky words.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **12B**.

- c** Focus on the instructions and questions 1–5, making sure Sts understand all the lexis, e.g., *celebrity*, *spread*, etc.
Put Sts in pairs to discuss the questions.
Get some feedback from various pairs.

6 WRITING a review

Tell Sts to go to **Writing Bank 12** on p.126.

- a** Tell Sts they are going to read a review of a short story called *The Sound Machine*. Focus on the questions. Get Sts to read the review.

Elicit Sts answers to the questions. Make sure they try to answer why or why not.

- b** Now go through questions 1–4 with Sts. Get them to read the review again and answer the questions.
Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 Roald Dahl wrote the story. It is about a man named Klausner who studies sound.
2 The story takes place in Klausner's garden and the park across from his house. Klausner built a machine that helps him hear sounds that people can't usually hear. As he uses it, he hears horrible sounds coming from the flowers his neighbor is cutting.
3 The writer likes the message in the story most.
4 The writer thinks the story is incredible because it really makes us think.

- c Focus on the **Using adjectives and adverbs to make your writing more interesting** box and go through it with the class. Give Sts time to find the adjectives in the review and underline two phrases with adverbs. Make sure they look for adverbs that make the text more interesting, rather than just adverbs in general. Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 scary 2 horrible 3 beautiful 4 clever 5 incredible
6 amazing

Phrases with adverbs: his neighbor is working happily in her garden; we need to treat it carefully

- d Focus on the instructions. Do the first sentence with the Sts as an example, eliciting whether they need the adjective or adverb. Give Sts time to circle the correct words. Get them to check their answers with a partner. Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 It's about an important event that happened in the past.
2 He answered the questions politely.
3 The writer describes the situation well.
4 I love the interesting plot.
5 She quickly ran back to the house.
6 What I liked most was the surprising ending.

- e Get Sts to read the questions in **b** again and use them to make notes for their own review of *Blowing in the Wind* or another short story.
- f Assign the writing in class or for homework. Focus on the highlighted phrases in the review. Tell Sts to use these, with adverbs and adjectives to make their writing interesting.
- g Make sure Sts check their reviews for mistakes before turning them in.

EXTRA IDEA Sts could read each other's reviews and identify adjectives and adverbs. They could also say if the review makes them want to read the story and why.

- G** questions without auxiliaries
V review of question words
P /w/ and /h/

Lesson plan

In this final lesson Sts learn to use questions without auxiliaries (*Who painted this picture?*, etc.) and contrast them with questions with auxiliaries (*When did he paint it?*). The lesson begins with a review of question words in Pronunciation and Vocabulary. The grammar is presented through a quiz that tests Sts' memory on information that has come up in the book. If your Sts have only used the second half of *American English File Level 2* (i.e., Multipack B), they should just do the second half of the quiz, i.e., questions 8–15. Then in Speaking, Sts practice making questions with or without auxiliaries, and then ask and answer them with a partner. Finally, the lesson finishes with a video listening of a trivia quiz, and Sts join in to answer the questions in teams.

Video material

Pronunciation – /w/ and /h/
 Listening – Trivia quiz

More materials

For teachers

Photocopiables

Grammar questions with and without auxiliaries p.219
Communicative Hollywood quiz p.264 (instructions p.228)

For students

Workbook 12C

OPTIONAL LEAD-IN (BOOKS CLOSED) Ask eight different Sts these questions and tell them to answer them. Tell the rest of the class to listen carefully and note down just the answers to the questions.

- *How did you get to class today?*
- *What's your favorite TV show?*
- *When do you usually get up?*
- *Where would you like to go for your next vacation?*
- *Which do you prefer, coffee or tea?*
- *Who do you live with?*
- *Whose bag is that?* (pointing to another student's bag)
- *Why are you learning English?*

Then tell Sts that you asked eight questions with eight different question words. Tell them, in pairs, to look at the eight answers and try to write down the eight question words you used.

Then get Sts to open their books and check the list in 1a.

1 PRONUNCIATION & VOCABULARY

/w/ and /h/, review of question words

- a** Books open. Now focus on the activity and elicit the two sounds and words, *witch* /w/ and *house* /h/.
 Give Sts two minutes to put the words in the correct group.
 Get Sts to compare with a partner.

- b** ▶ Play the video for Sts to watch and check.
 Check answers.



witch /w/ what, when, where, which, why
house /h/ how, who, whose

Play the video again, pausing after each group of words for Sts to watch and repeat. Tell them to focus on the mouth position for the two sounds.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Elicit any other words beginning with *wh* that Sts know, e.g., *whale, whole, wheel, while*, and ask Sts how they are pronounced.

- c** Give Sts time to complete the questions with the question words from **a**.
 Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

1 How 2 Who 3 What 4 How 5 whose 6 How
 7 where 8 When / What 9 Which 10 Why

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

- d** Put Sts in pairs and get them to ask and answer the questions in **c**.
 Get some feedback from various pairs.

2 GRAMMAR questions without auxiliaries

- a** Focus on the instructions and tell Sts that the questions in the quiz are based on lessons (Files 1–12) in the Student Book.
 Put Sts in pairs and set a time limit for them to answer as many questions as possible from memory. Tell Sts to use the pictures to help them. (See **Lesson plan** above if you are using Multipack B.)
- b** When the time limit is up, ask Sts how many questions they could answer from memory.
 Now tell them that they must find the answers to the questions they couldn't answer by looking back at lessons in Files 1–12. Tell them not to look for the answers they have already given.
 Check answers. Find out which pair(s) got the most answers correct.

EXTRA CHALLENGE You could do **2a** as a competition and when the time limit is up, find out which pair(s) got the most answers correct.

ANSWERS

1 Vermeer (File 1C) 2 In his jacket pocket (File 2A)
 3 Ecuador (File 2B) 4 Ordering lots of clothes and returning them (File 4B) 5 95% (File 5A) 6 Tokyo (File 5B) 7 Murphy's Law (File 8B) 8 O. Henry (File 8C) 9 Deer, wasps and bees, dogs, cows, snakes (File 9A) 10 A fear of public speaking (File 9B)
 11 Denzel Washington (File 9C) 12 Lark (File 10B) 13 Adolphe Sax (File 10C) 14 Dyslexia (File 11A) 15 His twin brother, Jim Lewis (File 11C) 16 A cat named Cupcake (File 12A)

- c Now tell Sts to only focus on the quiz and to answer questions 1–4.
Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 Who
- 2 Sam
- 3 In question 1, *painted* is the simple past form with no auxiliary. In question 2, we use the auxiliary *did* + the base form *find*.
- 4 Questions 5, 6, 8, 11, 13, and 16 are similar to 1.

Highlight that when the question word (usually *who* or *which*) is the subject of the sentence, the usual word order in questions (question word, auxiliary, subject, base form) does not apply because the question word and the subject are the same.

- d Tell Sts to go to **Grammar Bank 12C** on p.156.

Grammar notes

Sts will already have met questions without auxiliaries, e.g., *Who knows the answer?*, etc., but until now, this type of question has not been focused on.

Highlight that:

- the vast majority of questions in the past and present follow the order: question word, auxiliary, subject, base form.
- the only question words that can be the subject of a question, and may not need an auxiliary verb, are:
 - *Who...?*, e.g., *Who wrote the song?*
 - *Which...?*, e.g., *Which singer sang "My Way"?*
 - *What...?*, e.g., *What happened?*
 - *How many / much...?*, e.g., *How many students came?*
- questions beginning with *When*, *Why*, *Where*, *How long*, etc. always need an auxiliary.

Focus on the example sentences and play audio 12.7 for Sts to listen and repeat. Encourage them to copy the rhythm. Then go through the rules with the class.

Now focus on the exercises for **12C** on p.157. Sts do the exercises individually or in pairs.

Check answers, getting Sts to read the full sentences.

ANSWERS

- a 1 happened 2 does this word mean 3 came 4 goes
5 won 6 did the teacher say 7 made
- b 1 did Serena Williams win (7)
2 starts (Kenya)
3 did George R.R. Martin write (*A Song of Ice and Fire*, *A Game of Thrones*, etc.)
4 died (Pelé)
5 uses (Ping-Pong / table tennis)
6 did the 2024 Olympics take place (Paris)
7 lived (Frida Kahlo)

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **12C**.

EXTRA PRACTICE OPTION Use the **12C Grammar photocopyable activity**.

3 SPEAKING

Put Sts into pairs, **A** and **B**, and get them to sit face-to-face if possible. Tell them to go to **Communication General knowledge quiz, A** on p.109, **B** on p.114.

Focus on the instructions and make sure Sts are clear about what they have to do. Remind Sts that the correct answer is the one in bold. Highlight that all the questions in the quiz are questions without auxiliaries.

Give Sts time to complete their questions. Monitor and make sure Sts are forming the questions correctly.

EXTRA SUPPORT You could elicit the verbs first, making sure that Sts can pronounce the past tense forms correctly.

ANSWERS

Student A

- 1 lost 2 starred 3 wrote 4 won 5 said 6 created
7 cut 8 discovered

Student B

- 1 became 2 played 3 became 4 painted 5 wrote
6 used 7 refused 8 invented

Now tell Sts **A** to ask their questions first. Highlight that they should give the three alternatives each time.

Then Sts change roles.

Get feedback to see who got the most answers correct.

Tell Sts to go back to the main lesson **12C**.

EXTRA CHALLENGE You could get Sts **A** (and later Sts **B**) to ask their questions first without the three alternatives. If **B** gets the answer correct, they get three points. If not, **A** gives them the three alternatives, and this time if **B** gets it correct, they get one point.

4 LISTENING understanding topic-based questions

- a Do this as a whole-class activity. Tell Sts if you ever play trivia games and whether you enjoy them.
- b  Focus on the task and either put Sts in teams of three or four, or have them work individually.
Now play the video for Sts to watch and answer the questions in their teams or by themselves.
Check answers.

ANSWERS

Round 1 Sports

- 1 The New York Knicks 2 ten 3 three 4 a basketball
5 Serena Williams

Round 2 Music

- 1 Adam Levine 2 Lady Gaga 3 four 4 South Korea
5 Ludwig

Round 3 Geography

- 1 Toronto 2 the Amazon 3 the Atlantic Ocean 4 Bangkok
5 Venezuela



Welcome to this week's quiz. As always, here are a few rules: You'll hear each question twice. Enter your answers into your phone app. And remember: you *must not* use your phones or electronic devices to Google *any* of the answers! And finally, have fun!

Let's begin with round one – sports!

Question one: Which American basketball team plays at Madison Square Garden? Which American basketball team plays at Madison Square Garden?

Question two: How many events are there in the decathlon? How many events are there in the decathlon?

Question three: How many times did Usain Bolt win the Olympic hundred-meter race?

How many times did Usain Bolt win the Olympic hundred-meter race?

Question four: Which is the biggest, a soccer ball, a volleyball, or a basketball?

Which is the biggest, a soccer ball, a volleyball, or a basketball?

Question five: Which American tennis player won more than twenty Grand Slam singles titles?

Which American tennis player won more than twenty Grand Slam singles titles?

How did you do? Are you ready for the next round? Let's continue with round two – music.

Question one: What's the name of the lead singer in the band Maroon Five? What's the name of the lead singer in the band Maroon Five?

Question two: Which famous singer-songwriter's real name is Stefani Joanne Angelina Germanotta? Which famous singer-songwriter's real name is Stefani Joanne Angelina Germanotta?

Question three: How many strings does a violin have? How many strings does a violin have?

Question four: Which country does K-pop come from? Which country does K-pop come from?

Question five: What was Beethoven's first name? What was Beethoven's first name?

And now for the final round – geography. Are you ready?

Question one: In which North American city could you visit the CN Tower and the Skydome? In which North American city could you visit the CN Tower and the Skydome?

Question two: Which South American rainforest covers an area of almost two point three million square miles? Which South American rainforest covers an area of almost two point three million square miles?

Question three: Which ocean is on the east coast of the United States? Which ocean is on the east coast of the United States?

Question four: What is the capital of Thailand? What is the capital of Thailand?

Question five: Angel Falls is the world's highest waterfall. Which country is it in? Angel Falls is the world's highest waterfall. Which country is it in?

Do you think you got them right? Now for the answers.

Here are the answers for round one: Sports. How confident do you feel?

One: Which American basketball team plays at Madison Square Garden? The New York Knicks

Two: How many events are there in a decathlon? Ten.

Three: How many times did Usain Bolt win the Olympic hundred-meter race? Three times.

Four: Which is the biggest, a soccer ball, a volleyball, or a basketball? A basketball.

Five: Which American tennis player won more than twenty Grand Slam singles titles? Serena Williams.

Did you get them all? And here are the answers for round two: Music.

One: What's the name of the lead singer in the band Maroon Five? Adam Levine.

Two: Which famous singer-songwriter's real name is Stefani Joanne Angelina Germanotta? Lady Gaga.

Three: How many strings does a violin have? Four strings.

Four: Which country does K-pop come from? South Korea.

Five: What was Beethoven's first name? Ludwig.

How did you do? And finally...Here are the answers for round three: Geography.

One: In which North American city could you visit the CN Tower and the Skydome? Toronto.

Two: Which South American rainforest covers an area of almost two point three million square miles? The Amazon.

Three: Which ocean is on the east coast of the United States? The Atlantic Ocean.

Four: What is the capital of Thailand? Bangkok.

Five: Angel Falls is the world's highest waterfall. Which country is it in? Venezuela.

Thanks for playing! Post your scores and join us next week for a new quiz to test your trivia knowledge!

VIDEO See pp.20–21 for a list of suggestions for different ways to exploit videos in the classroom.

EXTRA SUPPORT If there's time, you could get Sts to watch again with subtitles, so they can see exactly what they understood / didn't understand. Translate / Explain any new words or phrases.

For instructions on how to use these pages, see p.49.

Video material

Can you understand these people? 11&12

More materials

For teachers

Oxford English Hub

Quick Test 12

File 12 Test

Progress Test Files 7–12

End-of-course Test

GRAMMAR

ANSWERS

1 b 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 a 6 c 7 c 8 b 9 a 10 c 11 a
12 c 13 a 14 c 15 c

VOCABULARY

ANSWERS

a 1 invention 2 decision 3 choice 4 invitation 5 death
b 1 literature / theater / drama 2 math 3 geography
4 science (biology) 5 history
c 1 identical 2 as 3 similar 4 like 5 both
d 1 suddenly 2 Meanwhile 3 immediately 4 eventually
5 right away
e 1 Tell 2 say 3 say 4 say 5 tell

PRONUNCIATION

ANSWERS

c 1 math /θ/ 2 spider /aɪ/ 3 neither /ð/ 4 break /eɪ/
5 written /r/
d 1 competition 2 identical 3 immediately 4 neighbor
5 accident

CAN YOU understand this text?

ANSWERS

They both happened in / near an airport.

b 1 F (They got stuck in traffic on the way to the airport.) 2 T
3 F (They were not allowed to board the plane.) 4 T
5 F (He bought the card in a store near the airport.) 6 T 7 T
8 F (He had not decided how to spend the money.)

▶ CAN YOU understand these people?

ANSWERS

1 a 2 b 3 a 4 a 5 c



1 Brian

I = interviewer, B = Brian

I Did you like school?

B No, I did not like school very much. I didn't fit well into the structure, but I do really love learning. So, I take time out of my... um... day to learn as much as possible.

I What were your best and worst subjects?

B My best subject was anthropology. The worst was definitely math... any type of math class.

2 Caroline

I = interviewer, C = Caroline

I Did you have a favorite or least favorite teacher at school?

C Um, let me think about that. Yes, I, um, liked the French teacher.

She was probably my favorite, favorite teacher because, um, she was French and she taught us to speak with a very good French accent.

I Did she inspire you?

C She did, and I'm still learning French and go, I live in Australia, um, and I go to France every year and I go to French language schools.

3 John

I = interviewer, J = John

I Do you have a problem making decisions? What about?

J It depends what sort of decision it is. If it's a sort of instant decision, I make pretty good instant decisions, but the longer you think about them, then I probably decide, or try to decipher, which is the best decision. So, instant decisions is a better way for me.

4 Morad

I = interviewer, M = Morad

I Do you know any twins? Are they identical?

M I am a twin. I'm an identical twin. Um, we're one minute apart. Um, we live on... coast to coast. He's in California now, and I'm here.

I How can people tell you apart?

M Um, I'm half an inch taller and it's noticeable. And he has a freckle, uh, right on his cheek and I have one right here.

5 Kathy

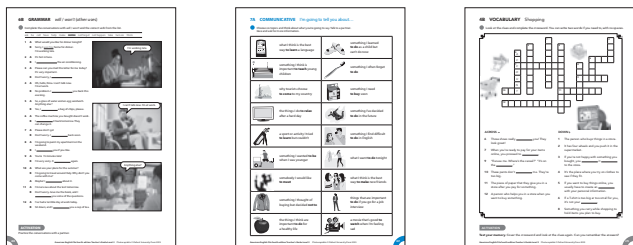
I = interviewer, K = Kathy

I Who do you think gossip more, men or women? Why?

K I think stereotypic-, stereotypically people say women gossip more, um, but I actually think men gossip quite a lot as well. I think, I think men gossip more in a factual way, whereas women gossip more, maybe, in more of a personal, emotional way, so maybe in kind of a nastier way than what men do, I would say. But I would say that they probably gossip the same, or in a similar way.

Photocopiable activities

Introduction



- There is a **Grammar activity** for each main (A, B, and C) lesson of the Student Book.
- There is a **Communicative activity** for each main (A, B, and C) lesson of the Student Book.
- There is a **Vocabulary activity** for each section of the Vocabulary Bank in the Student Book.

All the photocopiable materials are also available on **Oxford English Hub** (englishhub.oup.com) under the Resources tab.

Using extra activities in mixed ability classes

Some teachers have classes with a very wide range of levels, and where some Sts finish Student Book activities much more quickly than others. You could give these fast finishers a photocopiable activity (Grammar, Vocabulary, or Communicative) while you help slower Sts. Alternatively, some teachers might want to give faster Sts extra oral practice with a communicative activity while slower Sts consolidate their knowledge with an extra grammar activity.

Tips for using Grammar activities

- The grammar activities are designed to give Sts extra practice in the main grammar points from each lesson. How you use these activities depends on the needs of your Sts and the time available. They can be used in the lesson if you think all of your class would benefit from the extra practice or you could assign them as homework for some or all of your Sts.
- Before using the worksheets in class, check for any vocabulary that may be either new or difficult for your Sts.
- All of the activities start with a writing stage. If you use the activities in class, get Sts to work individually or in pairs. Allow Sts to compare before checking answers.
- If Sts are having trouble with any of the activities, make sure they refer to the relevant Grammar Bank in the Student Book.
- All of the activities have an **Activation** section. Some of them have a task that gets Sts to cover the sentences and test their memory. If you are using the activities in class, Sts can work in pairs and test their partner. If you assign them for homework, encourage Sts to use this stage to test themselves. Alternatively, you could assign the main activity for homework and then get Sts to do the **Activation** at the start of the next class.

- Make sure that Sts keep their worksheets and that they review any difficult areas regularly. Encourage them to go back to activities and cover and test themselves.

Tips for using Communicative activities

- Before using the worksheets in class, check for any vocabulary that may be either new or difficult for your Sts.
- We have suggested the ideal number of copies for each activity. However, you can often manage with fewer, e.g., one worksheet per pair instead of one per student.
- When Sts are working in pairs, if possible get them to sit face-to-face. This will encourage them to really talk to each other and also means they can't see each other's worksheet.
- If your class doesn't divide into pairs or groups, take part yourself, get two Sts to share one role, or get one student to monitor, help, and correct.
- If some Sts finish early, they can change roles and do the activity again, or you could get them to write some of the sentences from the activity.

Tips for using Vocabulary activities

- These worksheets are intended to recycle and consolidate Sts' understanding of the vocabulary in the Student Book Vocabulary Banks. As such, we suggest not using them directly after doing these exercises. Instead, get Sts to do them in a subsequent lesson.
- If Sts are having trouble with any of the activities, make sure they refer to the relevant Vocabulary Bank page.
- You could ask Sts to check their answers by referring to the relevant Student Book Vocabulary Bank.
- All the activities are suitable for use in class. However, you may wish to assign some of the tasks for homework.
- Most of the Vocabulary worksheets have an **Activation** task and this can be treated in a similar way to the Grammar ones.
- Make sure that Sts keep their worksheets and that they review any difficult areas regularly. Encourage them to go back to activities and cover and test themselves.

Grammar activity answers

1A word order in questions

- a** 2 What year were you born?
3 How are you today?
4 How many brothers and sisters do you have? / How many sisters and brothers do you have?
5 Do you live with your family?
6 What do your parents do?
7 Why are you learning English?
8 When did you start learning English?
9 Can anyone in your family speak English?
10 What kind of movies do you like?
11 How often do you go out for dinner?
12 Are you reading a book right now?
13 Where did you go for your last vacation?
14 Did you play any sports yesterday?
15 Where were you at ten o'clock last night?

1B simple present

- 2 do you see; visit
3 Does it snow; rains
4 does Sam's new girlfriend look like; has
5 do you go; don't like
6 Is; doesn't eat
7 does your Italian class finish; finishes
8 looks; doesn't talk
9 's your English teacher like; 's
10 Do you always do; forget
11 don't get along; Do they make
12 does the grocery store open; don't know

1C simple present or present continuous?

- 1 2 want 3 don't understand 4 play
5 love 6 'm selling 7 want
2 8 Do...need 9 'm just looking 10 Are...looking
11 'm thinking 12 have 13 wear
3 14 're reading 15 don't believe 16 hate 17 need
18 's studying 19 's walking 20 isn't walking 21 's flying

2A simple past: regular and irregular verbs

- 1 2 did...stay 3 stayed 4 booked 5 arrived
6 didn't like 7 left 8 rented 9 were 10 started
11 didn't finish 12 loved
2 13 was 14 wasn't 15 didn't sleep 16 watched
17 did...like 18 was 19 had 20 met 21 didn't want
22 Did...take 23 took
3 24 Did...have 25 was 26 stayed 27 thought
28 didn't go 29 did...do 30 Did...go 31 visited
32 argued 33 bought 34 didn't buy

2B past continuous

- a** 2 was traveling; met
3 found; were cleaning
4 were waiting; saw
5 started; were biking
6 ran; was driving
b 2 woke up 3 was 4 was shining 5 felt 6 didn't need
7 decided 8 were working 9 was visiting 10 went
11 arrived 12 was 13 were sunbathing 14 were playing
15 were swimming 16 was enjoying 17 put 18 began
19 shouted 20 couldn't 21 saw 22 didn't attack
23 swam 24 didn't stay 25 went

2C time sequencers and connectors

- a** 2 d; because 3 e; although 4 a; so 5 i; but
6 h; because 7 j; so 8 f; but 9 b; although 10 c; but
b 2 when 3 although / but 4 because 5 but
6 One evening 7 so 8 Although 9 suddenly
10 so 11 two minutes later 12 so 13 because
14 The next day 15 but

3A be going to (plans and predictions)

- a** 2 Are...going to do 3 'm not going to do
4 're going to visit 5 are...going to go
6 're going to get 7 's going to work
8 Is...going to take
b 2 're going to crash 3 's going to make
4 's going to cry 5 aren't going to win
6 is going to eat 7 's going to be late
8 's going to break

3B present continuous (future arrangements)

- 3 Who's he taking to the hospital on Tuesday? He's taking his mom.
4 When is he working? He's working on Monday morning and Wednesday afternoon.
5 Is he having dinner with Frank on Monday? Yes, he is.
6 What's he doing on Sunday morning? He's meeting Ellie at the airport.
7 What's he doing on Friday night? He's going to Frank's party.
8 When is he going to the dentist? He's going on Friday morning.
9 What's he doing on Saturday morning? He's going shopping / buying Ellie's present.
10 When is he playing tennis? He's playing tennis on Tuesday afternoon.
11 Who's he seeing on Saturday afternoon? He's seeing George.
12 When is he helping his dad? He's helping his dad on Thursday afternoon.
13 Is he going to the theater on Wednesday? Yes, he is.
14 Is he meeting George at the museum? No, he isn't. He's meeting him at a café.
15 What's he doing on Sunday afternoon? He's driving to Boston with Ellie.

3C defining relative clauses

- a** 2 who cuts 3 where...borrow 4 where...sleep
5 that keeps 6 that changes 7 who designs
8 where...see 9 where...look at 10 that help
11 where...buy 12 that has 13 that opens
14 who flies 15 who visits

4A present perfect + yet and already

- a** 2 He's been on vacation.
3 They've arrived.
4 She's washed her hair.
5 He's bought a ring.
6 We've already had lunch.
b 3 He hasn't done the ironing yet.
4 He hasn't taken out the garbage yet.
5 He's already done the shopping.
6 He's already done the laundry.

- 7 He hasn't cleaned the windows yet.
- 8 He hasn't cleaned his desk yet.
- 9 He's already set the table.
- 10 He hasn't made his bed yet.

4B present perfect or simple past? (1)

- a 2 I've never flown in a helicopter.
- 3 Has she ever been late for work?
- 4 Luke hasn't answered my messages.
- 5 She's met a lot of famous people.
- 6 We've never been to South America.
- 7 She's won a lot of prizes for her novels.
- 8 Have you ever lost a credit card?
- 9 I've never worked in a store or a restaurant.
- 10 Have you ever sold something online?
- b 2 have 3 went 4 've...wanted 5 Did...enjoy
- 6 had 7 were 8 loved 9 Have...heard 10 have
- 11 Have...ever seen 12 saw 13 Was

4C something, anything, nothing, etc.

- 2 anywhere; somewhere
- 3 anything; nowhere
- 4 nobody
- 5 something
- 6 anywhere
- 7 Somebody; anybody
- 8 anything; nothing; anything
- 9 somewhere
- 10 Somebody; anything; anybody

5A comparative adjectives and adverbs, *as...as*

- a 2 Belgium is hotter than France.
- 3 Surfing is more exciting than fishing.
- 4 Amira plays tennis better than Lily.
- 5 Sydney is further / farther from London than Delhi.
- 6 Jason gets up earlier than his brother.
- 7 Soraya works harder than Ivy.
- 8 The traffic is worse at 8:30 than at 9:30.
- 9 Nasser writes more quickly than Enzo.
- 10 Life in the city is more stressful than life in the country.
- b 2 France isn't as hot as Belgium.
- 3 Fishing isn't as exciting as surfing.
- 4 Lily doesn't play tennis as well as Amira.
- 5 Delhi isn't as far from London as Sydney.
- 6 Jason's wife doesn't get up as early as him.
- 7 Ivy doesn't work as hard as Soraya.
- 8 The traffic at 9:30 isn't as bad as at 8:30.
- 9 Enzo doesn't write as quickly as Nasser.
- 10 Life in the country isn't as stressful as life in the city.

5B superlatives (+ *ever* + present perfect)

- a 2 the cheapest
- 3 the most boring
- 4 the meanest
- 5 the most impatient
- 6 the quietest
- 7 the emptiest
- 8 the laziest
- 9 the furthest / farthest
- 10 the easiest
- 11 the least stressed
- 12 the healthiest
- b 2 What's the most difficult language you've ever learned?
- 3 What's the best restaurant you've ever eaten at?
- 4 What's the most expensive thing you've ever bought?
- 5 What's the hardest thing you've ever learned to do?
- 6 What's the longest journey you've ever made?

- 7 What's the most interesting historic building you've ever visited?
- 8 What's the most beautiful place you've ever been to?
- 9 What's the most exciting movie you've ever seen?
- 10 What's the furthest / farthest you've ever run?
- 11 What's the coldest place you've ever been to?
- 12 What's the most important exam you've ever taken?

5C quantifiers, *too*, (*not*) *enough*

- 2 a lot of 3 too 4 enough money 5 much
- 6 too 7 a little 8 a few 9 much 10 patient enough
- 11 Too much 12 many 13 too much 14 enough time
- 15 too many 16 a few 17 well enough 18 very little
- 19 a little 20 too many

6A *will* / *won't* (predictions)

- 2 h; won't understand 3 g; won't be 4 i; won't have
- 5 a; won't get 6 e; 'll feel 7 k; 'll lose 8 l; 'll get
- 9 d; 'll wear 10 f; 'll be 11 c; 'll pass 12 j; 'll love

6B *will* / *won't* (other uses)

- 2 'll turn on 3 won't forget 4 'll call 5 'll have
- 6 'll take 7 'll be 8 'll help 9 won't happen 10 'll think
- 11 'll ask 12 'll make

6C review of verb forms: present, past, and future

- 2 doesn't work; 'll call
- 3 haven't made
- 4 'm going to sell
- 5 did...get; got
- 6 'll help
- 7 was driving
- 8 don't drink
- 9 Have...spoken
- 10 came; weren't; was having
- 11 won't hurt
- 12 'm not working
- 13 've...offered
- 14 are...doing; Do...want
- 15 did...take; was walking

7A uses of the infinitive

- 2 to pass 3 not to tell 4 to build 5 to use 6 to print
- 7 to turn off 8 to go 9 to be 10 to swim
- 11 not to worry 12 to learn 13 to lock 14 to see
- 15 to get 16 to rain 17 to make 18 to say
- 19 to ask 20 not to remember

7B infinitive or gerund?

- 3 to come 4 not talking 5 to see 6 to earn
- 7 relaxing; not doing 8 to give 9 to learn 10 winning
- 11 not to hit 12 drinking; talking 13 to go 14 stopping
- 15 going 16 to be 17 to go 18 Eating
- 19 not to understand 20 remembering

7C *have to*, *don't have to*, *must*, *must not*, *can't*

- 2 don't have to pay 3 must / have to wear
- 4 must not / can't touch 5 can't / must not put
- 6 must not / can't take 7 have to / must be
- 8 can't / must not play 9 don't have to pay
- 10 don't have to come 11 must / have to drive
- 12 must / have to wear

8A *should* / *shouldn't*

- 2 should ask 3 should tell 4 should get 5 shouldn't sit
- 6 should get up 7 shouldn't think 8 shouldn't go
- 9 should learn 10 should go

8B if + present, *will* / *won't* + base form (first conditional)

- 1 3 get 4 'll catch 5 catch 6 won't do 7 don't do
8 won't get
2 9 lend 10 'll buy 11 have 12 'll start 13 have
14 'll lend 15 lend 16 can buy
3 17 can't 18 won't go 19 don't go 20 won't meet
21 don't meet 22 'll never get 23 don't get
24 won't be able to
4 25 talk 26 'll miss 27 miss 28 'll be 29 'm 30 will be
31 is 32 'll lose

8C possessive pronouns

- a 2 her 3 your; my 4 ours 5 My; Our 6 yours; mine
b 2 you; My; it; it; me 3 She; her; her 4 They; their; them
5 your; mine; hers 6 Our; we

9A if + past, *would* / *wouldn't* + base form (second conditional)

- a 2 would you say; asked; 'd say
3 wouldn't have; went
4 knew; 'd tell
5 'd bike; lived
6 'd buy; had; 'd have; didn't go
7 won; would you spend; 'd buy
8 'd sleep; didn't cry
b 3 studied 4 'll lend 5 weren't / wasn't
6 don't see 7 won't say 8 don't hurry up
9 wouldn't go 10 would...do

9B present perfect + *for* and *since*

- a 2 has...worked; 's worked; for
3 have...been married; 've been married since
4 has...been; 's been; since
5 have...known; 've known; for
6 have...lived; 've lived; since
7 have...had; 've had; since
8 have...played; 've played; since

9C present perfect or simple past? (2)

- a 1 've loved; was; started
2 Has...finished; finished; hasn't decided
3 've lived; lived; did...leave; retired; wanted
4 saw; told; Have...lived; 've never been; 's visited
5 Have...heard; 've separated; thought
6 's been; met; got; were

10A expressing movement

- 2 down 3 under 4 around 5 toward 6 along
7 through 8 up 9 into 10 across 11 out of / through
12 down

10B word order of phrasal verbs

- a 2 putting on 3 writing down 4 picking up
5 going away 6 throwing away 7 looking for
8 getting up 9 taking off 10 getting along
b 2 turn it up 3 looking after them 4 call her back 5 ✓
6 pick them up 7 look for them 8 pay me back

10C the passive

- a 2 was designed 3 are spoken 4 was rebuilt
5 are shown 6 was discovered 7 weren't used
8 were written 9 was invented 10 is played
11 was painted 12 is visited

11A *used to* / *didn't use to*

- a 3 She used to play 4 She used to wear
5 She didn't use to wear 6 She didn't use to have
7 She didn't use to wear 8 She didn't use to play
9 He used to watch 10 He didn't use to do
11 He didn't use to wear 12 He used to have
13 He used to be 14 He used to wear
15 He didn't use to eat 16 He used to have

11B *might* / *might not* (possibility)

- a 2 might be 3 might like 4 might not go 5 might meet
6 might buy 7 might not take 8 might call
9 might go 10 might (not) tell 11 might be

11C *so, neither* + auxiliaries

- a 3 Neither can I 4 Neither am I 5 So have I
6 Neither did I 7 So was I 8 Neither do I 9 So am I
10 So do I 11 Neither do I 12 So did I 13 So was I
14 Neither have I 15 So do I 16 Neither will I 17 So am I
18 So would I 19 So will I 20 So do I

12A past perfect

- 2 was; hadn't worn
3 didn't work; hadn't turned it on
4 couldn't take; had forgotten
5 'd never flown; were
6 arrived; hadn't brought
7 wasn't; 'd just had
8 had to; 'd lost
9 ran; hadn't paid
10 arrived; had put out
11 could; 'd learned
12 was; 'd been

12B reported speech

- a 2 he didn't like the music
3 he'd cleaned up his room
4 it would be expensive
5 she wasn't going to the party
6 he'd lost the match
7 he loved her
8 she'd found his keys
b 2 "It won't hurt."
3 "It's my mother's car."
4 "I've finished my homework."
5 "I can't swim."
6 "I'll always love you."
7 "We want to check out."
8 "I'm lost."

12C questions with and without auxiliaries

- 2 Martin Scorsese
3 Who painted *The Scream*? Edvard Munch
4 Where do manga comics come from? Japan
5 Which country produces more coffee? Brazil
6 Which country has a blue and yellow flag? Sweden
7 When did World War II end? 1945
8 Which country won the most gold medals at the 2021 Olympics? the US
9 Which character did Robert Ludlum create? Jason Bourne
10 How many states belonged to the original United States in 1786? 13
11 Which company did Kevin Systrom and Mike Krieger start? Instagram
12 Where do people speak Yorùbá? West Africa
13 Which movie won the Oscar for best film in 2024? *Oppenheimer*
14 Which fruit contains more sugar? an orange

1A GRAMMAR word order in questions

a Put the words in order to make the questions.

Personal information

1 name / your / 's / what *What's your name?* Luca.

2 year / what / you / born / were

_____?

2001.

3 how / you / are / today

_____?

Fine, thank you.

Family

4 have / and / do / brothers / you / sisters / how / many

_____?

Two brothers and one sister.

5 with / your / do / family / you / live

_____?

No, I live alone.

6 your / what / do / parents / do

_____?

My mom's an engineer and my dad's a teacher.

English

7 English / why / are / learning / you

_____?

Because I need it for my job.

8 learning / English / did / when / start / you

_____?

When I was 12 years old.

9 speak / your / anyone / in / English / can / family

_____?

Yes, my brother speaks English really well.

Free time

10 do / of / what / kind / like / movies / you

_____?

I love action movies.

11 do / out / go / how / dinner / you / often / for

_____?

Once or twice a month.

12 a / book / reading / are / now / right / you

_____?

Yes, I'm reading some short stories in English.

Past time

13 your / go / vacation / did / last / where / you / for

_____?

I went to Thailand.

14 play / did / you / any / yesterday / sports

_____?

Yes, I played soccer

15 last / you / were / where / night / ten o'clock / at

_____?

I was at my friend's house.

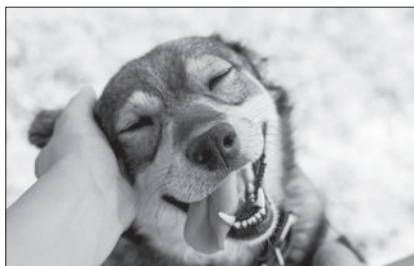
b Cover the questions and look at the answers. Can you remember the questions?

ACTIVATION

Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions.

1B GRAMMAR simple present

Complete the conversations with the simple present form of the verbs in parentheses.



- 1 A Your dog is very friendly. (be)
B Yes, he likes everyone! (like)
- 2 A How often _____ your grandparents? (you / see)
B I usually _____ them twice a year. (visit)
- 3 A _____ here in winter? (it / snow)
B No, but it _____ a lot. (rain)
- 4 A What _____? (Sam's new girlfriend / look like)
B She _____ long blond hair and big dark brown eyes. (have)
- 5 A How often _____ to the gym? (you / go)
B Hardly ever! I _____ doing exercise. (not like)
- 6 A _____ your husband a vegetarian? (be)
B No, but he _____ much meat. (not eat)
- 7 A What time _____? (your Italian class / finish)
B It _____ at seven o'clock. (finish)
- 8 A Your daughter _____ very shy. (look)
B Yes, she _____ much. (not talk)
- 9 A What _____? (your English teacher / be like)
B She _____ really kind and funny. (be)
- 10 A _____ your English homework? (you / always do)
B No, I sometimes _____.! (forget)
- 11 A We _____ very well with our neighbors. (not get along)
B Why not? _____ a lot of noise? (they / make)
- 12 A What time _____? (the grocery store / open)
B I _____. Look online. (not know)

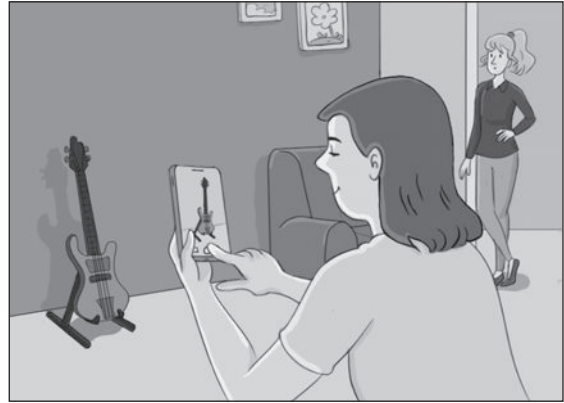
ACTIVATION

Write three sentences about what you do on the weekend, and three sentences about what a person in your family does. Use adverbs or expressions of frequency.

1C GRAMMAR simple present or present continuous?

Complete the conversations with the simple present or present continuous form of the verbs in parentheses.

- 1
- A** Why ¹ are you taking (take) a photo of your guitar?
- B** I ² _____ (want) to sell it online.
- A** Why? I ³ _____ (not understand).
You ⁴ _____ (play) your guitar every day!
You ⁵ _____ (love) it!
- B** I ⁶ _____ (sell) my old one because
I ⁷ _____ (want) to buy a new one.
- A** Oh, OK.



- 2
- A** Hi. ⁸ _____ you _____ (need) any help?
- B** No, thanks. I ⁹ _____ (just look).
- A** ¹⁰ _____ you _____ (look) for anything in particular?
- B** Yes, I ¹¹ _____ (think) of getting a jacket.
- A** This is one of our bestsellers. It's real leather. I ¹² _____ (have) it, and
I ¹³ _____ (wear) it all the time.
- B** Yes, it's great. Where can I try it on?



- 3
- A** You ¹⁴ _____ (read) a book about modern art! I ¹⁵ _____ (not believe) it!
You ¹⁶ _____ (hate) modern art!
- B** I know. But now I ¹⁷ _____ (need) to learn about it.
- A** Why?
- B** Because my girlfriend ¹⁸ _____ (study) it in college this year, and she loves it.
- A** What's that picture on the left? Can I see it?
- B** It's a woman, and I think she ¹⁹ _____ (walk) in a garden... I don't really know.
- A** Let me see... No, she ²⁰ _____ (not walk).
She ²¹ _____ (fly).
- B** Oh, yes!



ACTIVATION

Practice the conversations with a partner.

2A GRAMMAR simple past: regular and irregular verbs

Complete the conversations with the simple past form of the verbs in parentheses.

- 1
- A** Is this your first time in the US, Alisha?
- B** No, I ¹*had* (have) a vacation in Maine last year.
- A** Really? I love Maine! Where ² _____ you _____ (stay)?
- B** We ³ _____ (stay) in Bar Harbor. We ⁴ _____ (book) a hotel online, but unfortunately when we ⁵ _____ (arrive) we ⁶ _____ (not like) it. So we ⁷ _____ (leave) that hotel and ⁸ _____ (rent) an apartment. It was great! What about you? When ⁹ _____ (be) you in Maine?
- A** Oh, a long time ago. I ¹⁰ _____ (start) a college degree there. I ¹¹ _____ (not finish) the degree, but I ¹² _____ (love) Maine!



- 2
- A** Hi, Oscar. Welcome home! How ¹³ _____ (be) your flight?
- B** Hi, Mom. It ¹⁴ _____ (not be) bad. I ¹⁵ _____ (not sleep) much, but I ¹⁶ _____ (watch) some good movies.
- A** And ¹⁷ _____ you _____ (like) New Zealand?
- B** Yes! It ¹⁸ _____ (be) fantastic. I ¹⁹ _____ (have) a great time. It's a really beautiful country and I ²⁰ _____ (meet) some amazing people. I ²¹ _____ (not want) to come home!
- A** ²² _____ you _____ (take) many photos?
- B** Yes, I ²³ _____ (take) a lot. I can show you when we get home.



- 3
- A** Daria! You're back! ²⁴ _____ you _____ (have) a good vacation?
- B** No. It ²⁵ _____ (be) awful.
- A** Why? What happened?
- B** We ²⁶ _____ (stay) in a horrible apartment, and Leo ²⁷ _____ (think) the city was dangerous at night, so we ²⁸ _____ (not go) out much in the evening.
- A** What ²⁹ _____ you _____ (do) during the day? ³⁰ _____ you _____ (go) sightseeing?
- B** Yes, we ³¹ _____ (visit) all the famous places. But we ³² _____ (argue) a lot. Leo ³³ _____ (buy) very expensive souvenirs for all his family! I ³⁴ _____ (not buy) anything.

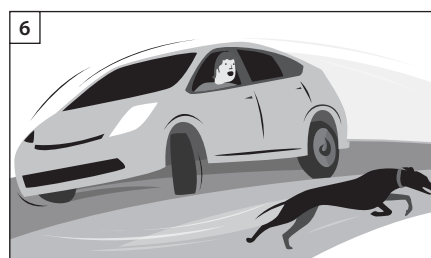
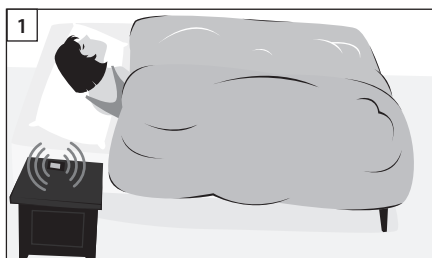


ACTIVATION

Test your memory. Cover the conversations and look at the pictures. Try to remember what happened to Alisha, Oscar, Daria, and Leo.

2B GRAMMAR past continuous

- a** Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with the simple past and past continuous form of the verbs in parentheses.



- 1 I was sleeping when you sent me the message. (sleep, send)
- 2 Susan _____ around Italy when she _____ her boyfriend. (travel, meet)
- 3 We _____ some old photos when we _____ the house. (find, clean)
- 4 They _____ for the bus when they _____ the accident. (wait, see)
- 5 It _____ to rain when they _____ to school. (start, bike)
- 6 A dog _____ into the road when I _____ home. (run, drive)

- b** Complete the story with the simple past or past continuous form of the verbs in parentheses.



Last summer, I ¹ was living (live) in Hawaii. One Saturday morning, I ² _____ (wake up) early, and it ³ _____ (be) a beautiful day. The sun ⁴ _____ (shine), and I ⁵ _____ (feel) really happy. I ⁶ _____ (not need) to go to work that day, so I ⁷ _____ (decide) to go surfing. Most of my friends ⁸ _____ (work) and my girlfriend ⁹ _____ (visit) her parents, so I ¹⁰ _____ (go) to the beach alone. When I ¹¹ _____ (arrive), the beach ¹² _____ (be) already crowded. A lot of people ¹³ _____ (sunbathe), children

¹⁴ _____ (play) games and people ¹⁵ _____ (swim) in the ocean. Everyone ¹⁶ _____ (enjoy) the lovely summer day. I ¹⁷ _____ (put) my things down on the beach, and then I ¹⁸ _____ (begin) walking to the ocean with my surfboard. Suddenly, a man ¹⁹ _____ (shout), "Shark! Shark! Get out of the water!" At first, I ²⁰ _____ (not can) see anything, but then I ²¹ _____ (see) a big shark. Luckily, it ²² _____ (not attack) anyone and ²³ _____ (swim) away quickly. I ²⁴ _____ (not stay) at the beach after that, and I ²⁵ _____ (go) home without going surfing!

ACTIVATION

Test your memory. Cover the sentences in **a** and look at the pictures. Try to remember the sentences.

2C GRAMMAR time sequencers and connectors

a Match the sentence halves and circle the correct word: **so**, **but**, **because**, or **although**.

- | | | |
|---|--|---|
| 1 The weather was awful, | ☒ g | a so / but I invited her to dinner. |
| 2 I didn't give him my phone number | ☐ | b because / although it had a happy ending. |
| 3 Paul came to work | ☐ | c but / so we couldn't find the house. |
| 4 It was her birthday, | ☐ | d because / although I didn't want him to call me. |
| 5 Jake is an intelligent student, | ☐ | e although / because he was sick. |
| 6 I ran to the store | ☐ | f so / but we had a wonderful evening. |
| 7 They didn't want to dance, | ☐ | g but / (so) we didn't go out. |
| 8 We didn't go anywhere special, | ☐ | h although / because I was in a hurry. |
| 9 It was a sad story | ☐ | i because / but he's very lazy. |
| 10 We drove along the street very slowly, | ☐ | j so / because they left the club early. |

b Complete the story with the time sequencers and connectors from the list.

although (x2) because (x3) but (x2) the next day one evening so (x3) suddenly two minutes later when

Don't always listen to the GPS...

Oscar Peters never wanted a GPS ¹because he didn't like technology. And ²_____ his brother gave him one as a birthday present, it directed him into a difficult situation.

"My brother Jez loves gadgets and technology. Last year, he gave me a GPS for my birthday, ³_____ he knew I didn't really want one. Jez uses his GPS all the time ⁴_____ he likes listening to instructions, ⁵_____ I prefer using a map.

⁶_____, a friend of a friend called. She needed my help, ⁷_____ I agreed to drive to her house. ⁸_____ I had a map in the car, I decided to use the GPS to find her town. It was dark, and I wanted to get there as quickly as possible.

Everything was going fine. I was almost there, but then ⁹_____ I saw there was a small river on the left. I could see that there was a road which



went through the water to the other side of the river. The GPS said "Turn left," ¹⁰_____ I followed the instruction and turned left into the water. The GPS said "Go straight," but ¹¹_____ my car was completely stuck in the mud. I had my phone with me, ¹²_____ I called my friend and she came to the river to help. I felt terrible ¹³_____ she got very cold and wet in the water. ¹⁴_____ a tractor pulled my car out of the river, ¹⁵_____ it was completely ruined by the water. I can't believe I made such a stupid – and expensive – mistake!"

ACTIVATION

Complete the sentences with your own ideas.

Although Jack was very good looking,...

The party was really boring, so...

I enjoyed the movie, but...

We decided to eat out because...

Louisa met her husband when...

I was watching TV when suddenly...

3A GRAMMAR *be going to* (plans and predictions)

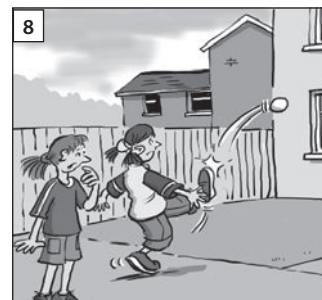
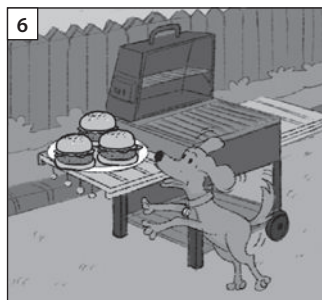
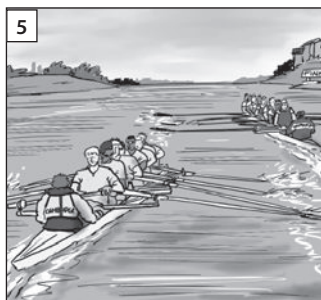
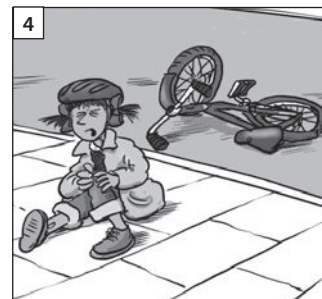
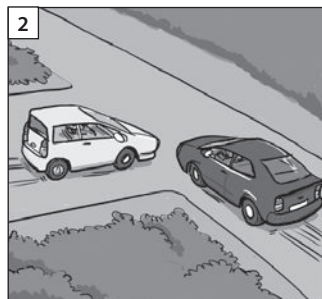
a Complete the conversations with the correct form of *be going to* and a verb from the list.

do get (x2) go not do take visit work

- 1 **A** What are you doing?
B I ¹ *'m going to get* a cart. I can't carry all these bags.
- 2 **A** ² _____ you _____ your homework this evening?
B No, I'm not. I'm really tired. In fact, I ³ _____ anything – just sleep!
- 3 **A** So, do you like it here in New York?
B Yes, we love it! But we're only here for a short time. We ⁴ _____ lots of different places.
A Where ⁵ _____ you _____ next?
B Washington, DC. We ⁶ _____ the train there.
- 4 **A** How's your daughter?
B She's fine, thanks.
A Does she have any plans for the summer?
B Yes. She ⁷ _____ in a bookstore for six weeks.
A ⁸ _____ she _____ a vacation?
B No, I don't think she is.

b What's going to happen? Write a sentence with *be going to* and a verb from the list for pictures 1–8.

be late break crash cry eat make miss not win



- 1 He's *going to miss* the bus.
- 2 They _____.
- 3 He _____ a cake.
- 4 She _____.
- 5 They _____ the race.
- 6 The dog _____ the burgers.
- 7 He _____ for work.
- 8 She _____ the window.

ACTIVATION

Test your memory. Practice the conversations in **a** with a partner. Then cover sentences 1–8 in **b**. Look at the pictures and remember the sentences.

3B GRAMMAR present continuous (future arrangements)

Look at Luke's calendar. Write the questions and the answers. Use the present continuous.

MONDAY	TUESDAY	WEDNESDAY	THURSDAY
Work 9:00 a.m.–12:00 p.m. Dinner with Frank 8:00 p.m.	10:00 a.m. Take Mom to the hospital 3:00 p.m. Tennis	Work 4:00–6:00 p.m. 7:30 p.m. Theater with Yaz and Omar	10:00 a.m. Meet Sam to study 2:00 p.m. Help Dad with the yard
FRIDAY	SATURDAY	SUNDAY	
Dentist 11:30 a.m. Party at Frank's! 8:00 p.m.	9:00 a.m. Go shopping – buy Ellie's present 4:00 p.m. George – Café Tivoli	10:30 a.m. Meet Ellie at airport! 5:00 p.m. Drive to Boston – with Ellie	

1 he / meet Sam on Monday?

"Is he meeting Sam on Monday?" "No, he isn't."

2 When / he / go to the airport?

"When is he going to the airport?" "He's going to the airport on Sunday."

3 Who / he / take to the hospital on Tuesday?

4 When / he / work?

5 he / have dinner with Frank on Monday?

6 What / he / do on Sunday morning?

7 What / he / do on Friday night?

8 When / he / go to the dentist?

9 What / he / do on Saturday morning?

10 When / he / play tennis?

11 Who / he / see on Saturday afternoon?

12 When / he / help his dad?

13 he / go to the theater on Wednesday?

14 he / meet George at the museum?

15 What / he / do on Sunday afternoon?

ACTIVATION

Write down one arrangement that you have each day next week.
Tell a partner. Use the present continuous.

3C GRAMMAR defining relative clauses

- a Complete the definitions with *who*, *that*, or *where* and the correct form of a verb from the list.

borrow build buy change cut design fly have help keep look at open see sleep visit



- 1 A **builder** is a person *who builds* houses.
- 2 A **hair stylist** is somebody _____ your hair.
- 3 A **library** is a place _____ you can read or _____ books.
- 4 A **campsite** is a place _____ people _____ in tents.
- 5 A **refrigerator** is something _____ food cold.
- 6 A **remote control** is something _____ TV channels.
- 7 An **architect** is someone _____ buildings.
- 8 A **movie theater** is a place _____ you can _____ a movie.
- 9 An **art gallery** is a place _____ you _____ paintings.
- 10 **Glasses** are things _____ you to see well.
- 11 A **bookstore** is a place _____ you _____ books.
- 12 A **giraffe** is an animal _____ a very long neck.
- 13 A **key** is something _____ a door.
- 14 A **pilot** is a person _____ planes.
- 15 A **tourist** is a person _____ another town or country.

☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐
☐

ACTIVATION

Test your memory. Cover the definitions and look at the pictures. Can you remember the definitions?

4A GRAMMAR present perfect + *yet* and *already*

a Write sentences for the pictures. Use the present perfect.



1 She / make / breakfast

She's made breakfast.

2 He / be on vacation



3 They / arrive

4 She / wash her hair



5 He / buy a ring

6 A Would you like a cupcake?

B No, thanks. We / have already lunch



b Write sentences for the picture. Use present perfect + *yet* or *already*.



1 do / the dishes

He hasn't done the dishes yet.

2 clean / the floor

He's already cleaned the floor.

3 do / the ironing

6 do / the laundry

7 clean / the windows

8 clean / his desk

4 take out / the garbage

9 set / the table

5 do / the shopping

10 make / his bed

ACTIVATION

Work with a partner. Look at the picture in **b** and ask and answer questions.

Has he done the dishes yet?

No, he hasn't.

4B GRAMMAR present perfect or simple past? (1)

a Write sentences in the present perfect.

1 you / ever eat / octopus

Have you ever eaten octopus?

2 I / never fly / in a helicopter

3 she / ever be / late for work

4 Luke / not answer / my messages

5 she / meet / a lot of famous people

6 we / never be / to South America

7 she / win / a lot of prizes for her novels

8 you / ever lose / a credit card

9 I / never work / in a store or a restaurant

10 you / ever sell / something online

b Complete the conversations with the present perfect or simple past form of the verbs in parentheses.

- 1
- A** ¹ *Have you ever been* (ever / be) to the US?
- B** Yes, I ² _____. I ³ _____ (go) to New York last summer.
- A** I ⁴ _____ always _____ (want) to go to New York! ⁵ _____ you _____ (enjoy) it?
- B** Yes, I ⁶ _____ (have) a great time.
- A** What ⁷ _____ (be) your favorite places?
- B** I really ⁸ _____ (love) Central Park and Fifth Avenue.



- 2
- A** ⁹ _____ you _____ (hear) this band?
- B** Of course I ¹⁰ _____. They're my favorite band.
- A** Really? ¹¹ _____ you _____ (ever / see) them in concert?
- B** Yes, I ¹² _____ (see) them at the Hollywood Bowl last month.
- A** Lucky you! ¹³ _____ (be) it a good concert?
- B** It was amazing! They were fantastic.



ACTIVATION

Practice the conversations in **b** with a partner. Then ask each other questions beginning *Have you ever been to...* (place)? and *Have you ever heard...* (a song or a musician)? and have short conversations.

4C GRAMMAR *something, anything, nothing, etc.*

Complete the conversations with the words from the list. Write in the column on the right.

anybody (x2) anything (x4) anywhere (x2) nobody (x2) nothing
nowhere ~~somebody~~ somebody (x2) something somewhere (x2)



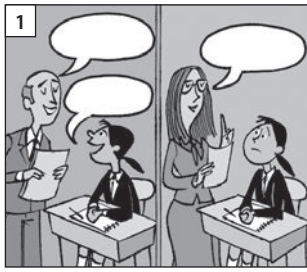
- 1 A Why are you looking out of the window?
B I think there's in the house across the street. somebody
A But has lived there for years! nobody
B I know! That's why I'm looking.
- 2 A Are you going this summer?
B We haven't decided yet. But my wife wants to go nice and hot.
- 3 A I'm so bored. There isn't to do in this town!
B That's not true. There are lots of things to do.
A But there's for young people to go.
- 4 A I called your office at 2:00 today, but answered.
B Sorry, there was a problem with the phone lines.
- 5 A I'm hungry. I need to eat.
B Well, there's food in the refrigerator.
- 6 A Where did you go last night?
B I didn't go . I was too tired. I stayed home.
- 7 A told me that their new album is very good.
B Really? I don't know who likes it.
- 8 A Did you buy this afternoon?
B No, . I didn't see that I liked.
- 9 A Where are my car keys?
B I think they're in the kitchen.
- 10 A told Eva about the party. Was it you?
B Me? No, I haven't said to .

ACTIVATION

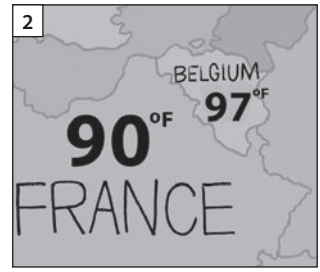
Test your memory. Work with a partner. Cover the column on the right. Read the conversations aloud with the missing words.

5A GRAMMAR comparative adjectives and adverbs, *as...as*

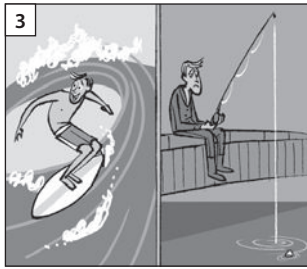
a Write sentences about the pictures using comparative adjectives and adverbs.



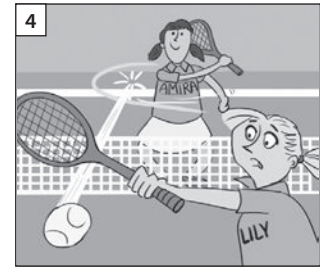
1 French / easy to learn / Russian
French is easier to learn than Russian.



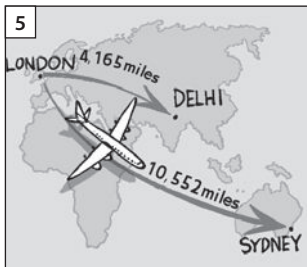
2 Belgium is / hot / France.



3 Surfing is / exciting / fishing



4 Amira plays tennis / well / Lily



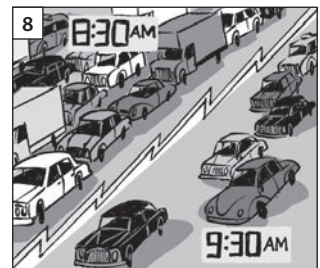
5 Sydney is / far from London / Delhi



6 Jason gets up / early / his brother



7 Soraya works / hard / Ivy



8 The traffic is / bad at 8:30 / at 9:30



9 Nasser writes / quickly / Enzo



10 Life in the city is / stressful / life in the country

b Rewrite the sentences from **a** using *not as...as*.

1 Russian *isn't as easy as French*.

6 Jason's wife _____.

2 France _____.

7 Lily _____.

3 Fishing _____.

8 The traffic at 9:30 _____.

4 Lily _____.

9 Enzo _____.

5 Delhi _____.

10 Life in the country _____.

ACTIVATION

Test your memory. Cover the sentences and look at the pictures. For each picture, say a sentence with a comparative adjective or adverb from **a** and *not as...as* from **b**.

5B GRAMMAR superlatives (+ ever + present perfect)

a Write the opposite superlatives.

- | | |
|--|------------------------------|
| 1 the most unfriendly <u>the friendliest</u> | 7 the most crowded _____ |
| 2 the most expensive _____ | 8 the most hardworking _____ |
| 3 the most exciting _____ | 9 the closest _____ |
| 4 the nicest _____ | 10 the most difficult _____ |
| 5 the most patient _____ | 11 the most stressed _____ |
| 6 the loudest _____ | 12 the most unhealthy _____ |

b Write the questions using the superlative form of the adjective + ever + present perfect.

- 1 Who / generous person you / meet
Who's the most generous person you've ever met?
- 2 What / difficult language you / learn
_____?
- 3 What / good restaurant you / eat at
_____?
- 4 What / expensive thing you / buy
_____?
- 5 What / hard thing you / learn to do
_____?
- 6 What / long trip you / make
_____?
- 7 What / interesting historic building you / visit
_____?
- 8 What / beautiful place you / be to
_____?
- 9 What / exciting movie you / see
_____?
- 10 What / far you / run
_____?
- 11 What / cold place you / be to
_____?
- 12 What / important exam you / take
_____?



ACTIVATION

Work with a partner. Ask and answer the questions in **b**.

5C GRAMMAR quantifiers, too, (not) enough

Choose the correct word or phrase for each sentence. Circle the correct form.



- 1 Jackie spends **too many** / **too much** money on shoes.
- 2 A good diet can prevent **lot of** / **a lot of** illnesses.
- 3 "How was the job interview?" "It was OK. I wasn't **too** / **enough** nervous."
- 4 I think I have **enough money** / **money enough** to pay for this.
- 5 How **much** / **many** fruit do you eat?
- 6 Can you help me? This case is **too** / **too much** heavy.
- 7 Could I have **a little** / **a few** milk, please?
- 8 I'm going away on vacation for **a few** / **a little** days next week.
- 9 You don't do **many** / **much** exercise. Why don't you come jogging with me?
- 10 I can't teach children. I'm not **patient enough** / **enough patient**.
- 11 **Too much** / **Too many** chocolate isn't good for you.
- 12 How **many** / **much** hours do you work a day?
- 13 I spend **too much** / **too many** time at the computer.
- 14 I couldn't finish the report because I didn't have **time enough** / **enough time**.
- 15 I have **too many** / **too much** clothes. I can never decide what to wear.
- 16 We're going to buy **a little** / **a few** things for our new apartment today.
- 17 Are you **enough well** / **well enough** to go to work today?
- 18 I'm going to have **very little** / **very few** free time this weekend.
- 19 My husband does **a few** / **a little** housework every day.
- 20 We buy **too many** / **too much** vegetables. We never eat them all!

ACTIVATION

Look at the sentences and say if they are true for you. Compare with a partner.

I watch too much TV.

I spend too much time on social media.

I don't drink enough water.

I have too many clothes.

I don't do enough exercise.

I drink too much caffeine.

I'm not organized enough.

I don't eat enough fruit and vegetables.

Yes, I watch too much TV.

How many hours a day?

Maybe three hours. What about you?

I don't watch much TV.

6A GRAMMAR *will / won't* (predictions)

Read sentences 1–12 and match them to predictions a–l. Complete the predictions with *will / won't*. Use the verbs in parentheses.

1 "The meeting starts at 2:30."

☒ b

2 "John is going to see a movie in French tonight."

☐

3 "There's a new drink machine in the office."

☐

4 "The teacher isn't going to be here today."

☐

5 "My brother's going to sell his car."

☐

6 "I've started going swimming every day."

☐

7 "Esther's going to buy another phone."

☐

8 "My daughter has a degree in computer science."

☐

9 "My new coat was really expensive!"

☐

10 "I don't believe it. I've broken my brother's laptop."

☐

11 "I'm taking my driving test tomorrow."

☐

12 "We're going to Brazil next month."

☐

a "He _____ much money for it. It's very old." (not get)

b "Yes, and I'm sure it ll be really boring!" (be)

c "Don't worry. You _____ easily." (pass)

d "Yes, but you _____ it a lot." (wear)

e "That's good. You _____ much healthier." (feel)

f "Oh no! He _____ really angry." (be)

g "The coffee _____ very good." (not be)

h "He _____ anything!" (not understand)

i "Great! We _____ the exam!" (not have)

j "Lucky you! You _____ the people and the scenery." (love)

k "She _____ it, just like the other two." (lose)

l "She _____ a good job, I'm sure." (get)

ACTIVATION

Work with a partner. **A** read sentences 1–12. **B** read the predictions. Then change roles.

6B GRAMMAR *will / won't* (other uses)

Complete the conversations with *will / won't* and the correct verb from the list.

ask be call have help make ~~not be~~ not forget not happen take turn on think

- 1 **A** What would you like for dinner tonight?
B Sorry, I *won't be* home for dinner.
I'm working late.
- 2 **A** It's hot in here.
B I _____ the air conditioning.
- 3 **A** Please can you mail this letter for me today?
It's very important.
B Don't worry, I _____.
- 4 **A** Oh, hello, Nina. I can't talk now.
I'm at work.
B No problem. I _____ you back this evening.
- 5 **A** So, a glass of water and an egg sandwich.
Anything else?
B Yes, I _____ a bag of chips, please.
- 6 **A** The coffee machine you bought doesn't work.
B I _____ it back tomorrow. They can exchange it.
- 7 **A** Please don't go!
B Don't worry. I _____ back soon.
- 8 **A** I'm going to paint my apartment on the weekend.
B I _____ you if you like.
- 9 **A** You're 15 minutes late!
B I'm very sorry. It _____ again.
- 10 **A** What are your plans for the summer?
B I'm going to travel around Italy. Why don't you come with me?
A Maybe! I _____ about it.
- 11 **A** I'm nervous about the test tomorrow.
B Don't worry. Give me the book, and I _____ you some of the questions.
- 12 **A** I've had a terrible day at work today.
B Sit down, and I _____ you a cup of tea.



ACTIVATION

Practice the conversations with a partner.

6C GRAMMAR review of verb forms: present, past, and future

Complete the conversations with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses: simple present, present continuous, simple past, past continuous, present perfect, *be going to* + infinitive, *will* / *won't* + infinitive.

- 1 A *Does* your sister sometimes *get* (get) angry with you?
B Only if I take her clothes without asking.
- 2 A Can I speak to Anna, please?
B Sorry, she _____ (not work) on Wednesdays.
A OK, thanks. I _____ (call) back tomorrow then.
- 3 A I _____ (not make) anything for dinner yet.
B That's OK. I'm not very hungry.
- 4 A Have you decided what to do with your car?
B Yes. I _____ (sell) it next month.
- 5 A How _____ you _____ (get) home last night?
B I _____ (get) a taxi.
- 6 A Oh dear, I'm not very good at filling out forms.
B Don't worry. I _____ (help) you.
- 7 A Did you hear about the election result?
B Yes, I heard it on the news when I _____ (drive) home.
- 8 A Soft drinks aren't very good for you, you know.
B Well, I _____ (not drink) very many – just one or two cans a day.
- 9 A _____ you ever _____ (speak) to your mother about the problem?
B Yes, I have. But that was a long time ago.
- 10 A I _____ (come) to see you last night, but you _____ (not be) at home.
B No, I _____ (have) dinner at my parents' house.
- 11 A I'm a little nervous about the injection, Doctor.
B Don't worry. It _____ (not hurt).
- 12 A Hi, can you talk now?
B Sure, I _____ (not work) right now.
- 13 A You look happy!
B I am. They _____ just _____ (offer) me the job in Los Angeles.
- 14 A What _____ you _____ (do) tomorrow evening?
B Nothing. Why?
A _____ you _____ (want) to see a movie?
- 15 A Wow! This is a great photo. Where _____ you _____ (take) it?
B When I _____ (walk) in the Himalayas.

20

16–20 Excellent. You can use the past, present, and future very well.

11–15 Good, but check the rules in the Grammar Bank (Student Book pp.134–144) and look at the exercise again.

1–10 This is difficult for you. Read the rules in the Grammar Bank (Student Book pp.134–144). Then ask your teacher for another photocopy and do the exercise again at home.

7A GRAMMAR uses of the infinitive

Complete the sentences with *to* + a verb from the list. Write in the **INFINITIVE** column.

ask be build get go learn ~~leave~~ lock make not remember
not tell not worry pass print rain say see swim turn off use

INFINITIVE

- 1 I was ready when my phone rang. to leave
- 2 It isn't difficult the first year exam. _____
- 3 Promise anyone about this. It's a secret. _____
- 4 They're planning a supermarket there. _____
- 5 Can you show me how the new photocopier? _____
- 6 You need your boarding pass before you go to the airport. _____
- 7 Don't forget the computer when you leave. _____
- 8 Does Fabio know where when he arrives? _____
- 9 She won't pretend happy if she isn't. _____
- 10 Is it safe in this river? _____
- 11 Try about your driving test. I'm sure you'll pass. _____
- 12 What's the best way a new language? _____
- 13 Did you remember the front door when you left? _____
- 14 It was really nice you again after all this time. _____
- 15 I can't decide what my girlfriend for her birthday. _____
- 16 It started , so we came home early from the beach. _____
- 17 It's really important a good impression on your first day in a new job. _____
- 18 He called her that he was sorry. _____
- 19 I have a problem, but I don't know who for advice. _____
- 20 It's fairly normal your dreams. _____

ACTIVATION

Test your memory. Cover the **INFINITIVE** column. Read the sentences aloud with the missing infinitives.

7B GRAMMAR infinitive or gerund?

Complete the sentences with the gerund (-ing form) or infinitive of the verbs in parentheses.

- 1 I can't promise to be (be) on time.
- 2 Swimming (swim) is better exercise than running.
- 3 Would you like _____ (come) to a concert on Saturday?
- 4 Do you mind _____ (not talk) so loudly?
- 5 It was very interesting _____ (see) my old school friends again.
- 6 Duncan works on weekends _____ (earn) more money.
- 7 On Sundays, Emma likes _____ and _____ (relax, not do) anything.
- 8 We were unhappy with the service, so the restaurant offered _____ (give) us a free dinner.
- 9 Is it difficult _____ (learn) Japanese?
- 10 James is very competitive. He thinks _____ (win) is the most important thing.
- 11 She tried _____ (not hit) the tree, but she was driving too fast.
- 12 We spent all evening _____ coffee and _____ (drink, talk).
- 13 Excuse me, I need _____ (go) to the bathroom.
- 14 They drove without _____ (stop) for six hours.
- 15 We're thinking of _____ (go) to Mexico for our vacation next year.
- 16 I'm very happy _____ (be) here again.
- 17 We've decided _____ (go) camping this summer because it's cheaper.
- 18 _____ (eat) just before you go to bed can make it difficult to sleep.
- 19 The man pretended _____ (not understand) the police officer.
- 20 Are you good at _____ (remember) people's names?

20

16–20 Excellent. You can use the infinitive and the gerund form very well.

11–15 Good, but check the rules in the Grammar Bank (Student Book p.146) and look at the exercise again.

1–10 This is difficult for you. Read the rules in the Grammar Bank (Student Book p.146). Then ask your teacher for another photocopy and do the exercise again at home.

7C GRAMMAR *have to, don't have to, must, must not, can't*

Complete the sentences with *have to, don't have to, must, must not, or can't* + a verb from the list.

be come drive pay (x2) put take touch ~~turn off~~ wear (x2)



1 You must turn off your phone.



2 Children _____.



3 You _____ a jacket.



4 You _____ the door.



5 You _____ your feet on the seats.



6 You _____ photos.



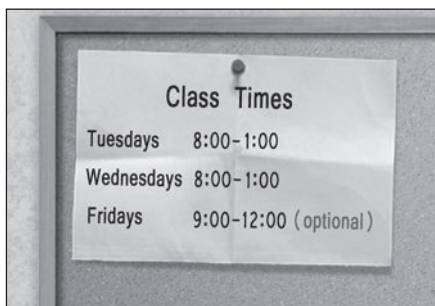
7 You _____ over 18 to see this movie.



8 You _____ soccer here.



9 You _____ anything now.



10 You _____ to class on Fridays.



11 You _____ in one direction.



12 You _____ athletic shoes here.

ACTIVATION

Test your memory. Cover the sentences. Look at the signs and remember the sentences.

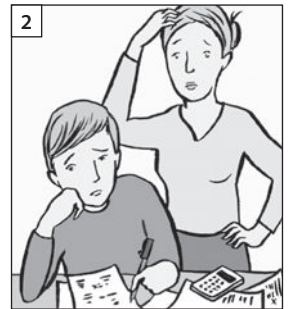
8A GRAMMAR *should / shouldn't*

Look at pictures 1–10. Complete the conversations with *should / shouldn't* + a verb from the list.

ask get get up go(x2) learn sit tell think ~~use~~



- 1 A What are you doing?
B I'm trying to open this package.
A You shouldn't use a knife! You'll cut yourself!



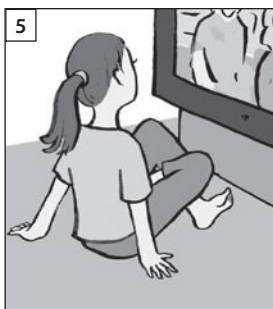
- 2 A I can't do this exercise. It's too difficult.
B You _____ the teacher for some help.



- 3 A I'm really annoyed with Paula.
B Why?
A Because she's always on the computer. She never talks to me!
B You _____ her how you feel. Maybe she doesn't know.



- 4 A Angela's leaving work at the end of the month. She's going to have a baby.
B We _____ her a present.



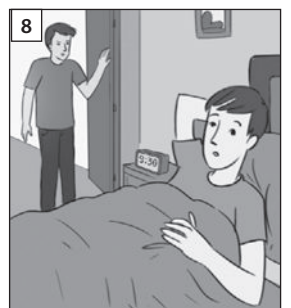
- 5 A You _____ so close to the television.
B Why not?
A It isn't good for your eyes.



- 6 A I miss the bus for school nearly every day.
B You _____ earlier.



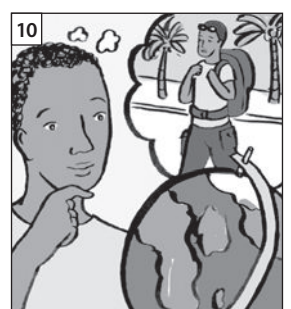
- 7 A Good luck for the match!
B Thanks, but I'm sure I'm going to lose.
A You _____ like that! Be positive! Say to yourself, "I'm going to win! I'm going to win!"



- 8 A Come on. Get up. It's 9:30.
B But I'm tired.
A You _____ to bed so late.



- 9 A Can you make me an omelette, please?
B Make it yourself!
A I don't know how to.
B You _____ how to cook, then!



- 10 A I'd love to travel around the world.
B Do you have enough money for the trip?
A Well, yes.
B Then I think you _____!

ACTIVATION

Test your memory. Cover the conversations. Look at the pictures and remember the advice.

8B GRAMMAR *if + present, will / won't + base form (first conditional)*

Complete the stories with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

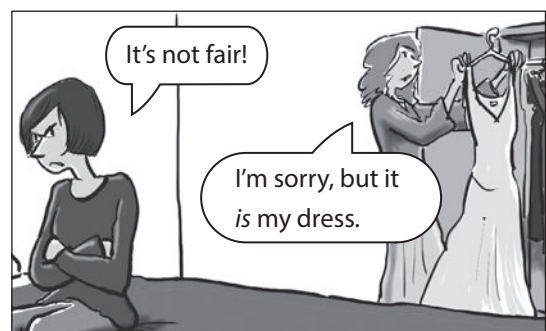
- 1 If you ¹ *don't take* an umbrella, you ² *will get* wet.
(not take, get)
- If you ³ _____ wet, you ⁴ _____ a cold.
(get, catch)
- If you ⁵ _____ a cold, you ⁶ _____ well
on your exam tomorrow. (catch, not do)
- If you ⁷ _____ well on your exam, you
⁸ _____ into college. (not do, not get)



- 2 If you ⁹ _____ me \$3,000, I ¹⁰ _____
a good computer. (lend, buy)
- If I ¹¹ _____ a good computer, I ¹² _____
my own business. (have, start)
- If I ¹³ _____ my own business, I ¹⁴ _____
you some money. (have, lend)
- If I ¹⁵ _____ you some money, you ¹⁶ _____
a new car. (lend, can buy)



- 3 If I ¹⁷ _____ borrow your dress,
I ¹⁸ _____ to the party. (not can, not go)
- If I ¹⁹ _____ to the party, I ²⁰ _____
anyone. (not go, not meet)
- If I ²¹ _____ anyone, I ²² _____ married.
(not meet, never get)
- If I ²³ _____ married, you ²⁴ _____ come
to my wedding. (not get, not be able to)



- 4 If I ²⁵ _____ to you now, I ²⁶ _____
the train. (talk, miss)
- If I ²⁷ _____ the train, I ²⁸ _____
late for work. (miss, be)
- If I ²⁹ _____ late for work, my boss
³⁰ _____ angry with me. (be, be)
- If my boss ³¹ _____ angry with me,
I ³² _____ my job. (be, lose)



ACTIVATION

Test your memory. Cover the sentences and look at the pictures. Try to remember the situations.

- 1 If you don't take an umbrella,...
- 2 If you lend me \$3,000,...
- 3 If I can't borrow your dress,...
- 4 If I talk to you now,...

8C GRAMMAR possessive pronouns

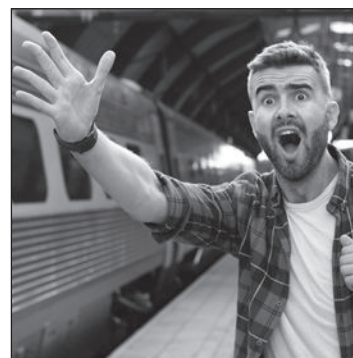
a Circle the correct word in the conversations.

- 1 **A** Is that the neighbors' cat?
B No, **their** / **theirs** is brown, not black.
- 2 **A** Where does your girlfriend live?
B She lives downtown with **her** / **hers** parents.
- 3 **A** Can you move **your** / **yours** car, please?
B That's not **my** / **mine** car.
- 4 **A** Is that Mateo's camera?
B No, it's **our** / **ours**. Why?
- 5 **A** **My** / **Mine** son just got a new job in Seattle.
B Oh, really? **Our** / **Ours** daughter's working there now, too.
- 6 **A** I love this motorcycle! Is it **your** / **yours**?
B No, it's not **my** / **mine**, unfortunately.



b Complete the sentences with the correct subject or object pronouns (*I, me*, etc.) and possessive adjectives or pronouns (*my, mine*, etc.).

- 1 If Yusuf doesn't leave soon, he'll miss the train. I think you should tell him to hurry.
- 2 **A** What are _____ looking for, Mom?
B _____ purse. I can't find _____ anywhere.
A _____'s on the table in the dining room.
B Oh, great! Can you get _____ for _____?
- 3 Do you know where Mia is? _____ isn't at _____ desk, and one of the administrators is looking for _____.
- 4 My brothers are very lazy. _____ spend most of _____ free time sleeping or watching TV. My dad's always angry with _____.
- 5 **A** Is that _____ umbrella, Lucy?
B No, it isn't _____. Ask Anita. I think it's _____.
- 6 My sister and I work in the same office. _____ hours are the same, so _____ often have lunch together.



ACTIVATION

Write four sentences that are true for you using *I, me, my*, and *mine*.

9A GRAMMAR *if + past, would / wouldn't + base form (second conditional)*

a Complete the conversations with the second conditional forms of the verbs in parentheses.

- 1 **A** Look at Hannah. She's always on her phone.
B I know. If the boss came in now, she wouldn't be very happy. (come, not be).
- 2 **A** What _____ if Adam _____ you out on a date? (you say, ask)
B I think I _____ "yes!" (say)
- 3 **A** Ouch! My tooth hurts.
B You _____ so many problems with your teeth if you _____ to the dentist more often. (not have, go)
- 4 **A** Is the answer to number 5 A or B?
B If I _____ the answer, I _____ you. But I don't! (know, tell)
- 5 **A** Why don't you bike to work?
B I _____ if I _____ closer to the office, but I live too far away. (bike, live)
- 6 **A** Wow! Those shoes are great.
I _____ them if I _____ more money. (buy, have)
B Well, you _____ more money if you _____ shopping so often. (have, not go)
- 7 **A** If you _____ the lottery, how _____ the money? (win, you spend)
B I _____ a big house in the countryside. (buy)
- 8 **A** I'm so tired!
B We _____ much better if the neighbors' baby _____ all night. (sleep, not cry)



b First or second conditional? Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in parentheses.

- 1 What will we do tomorrow if it rains (rain)?
- 2 If I had a lot of money, I'd buy (buy) a horse.
- 3 She'd pass her exams if she _____ (study) harder.
- 4 I'm sure she _____ (lend) you the money if you ask her nicely.
- 5 I'd like your dog more if he _____ (not be) so noisy!
- 6 If I _____ (not see) you this evening, I'll see you on Friday.
- 7 I _____ (not say) anything to James if you don't want me to.
- 8 If you _____ (not hurry up), we'll miss the train.
- 9 If I were you, I _____ (not go) to the northeast US in the winter.
- 10 What _____ you _____ (do) if you found a snake in your bed?

ACTIVATION

Complete the sentences with your own ideas.

If I could live in another country, I...

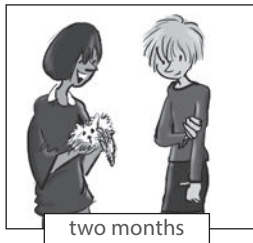
If the weather is good this weekend, I...

If I saw a bear in the street, I...

If I get bored this evening, I...

9B GRAMMAR present perfect + *for* and *since*

a Complete the conversations with the present perfect form of the verb + *for* or *since* if necessary.

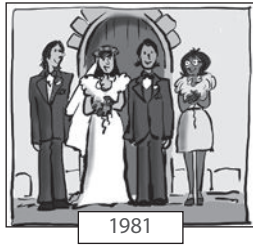


have

- 1 **A** How long have you had your cat?
B I've had him for two months now.

work

- 2 **A** How long _____ your daughter _____ in New York?
B She _____ there _____ four years.



be married

- 3 **A** How long _____ you _____?
B I _____ 1981.

be

- 4 **A** How long _____ your mom _____ a journalist?
B She _____ a journalist _____ she graduated from college.

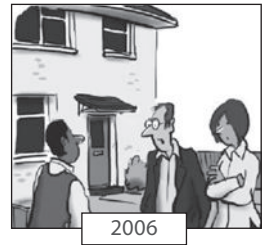


know

- 5 **A** How long _____ they _____ each other?
B They _____ each other _____ 50 years.

live

- 6 **A** How long _____ you _____ here?
B We _____ here _____ 2006.



have

- 7 **A** How long _____ you _____ this phobia?
B I _____ it _____ about 2010.

play

- 8 **A** How long _____ you _____ for this team?
B I _____ for them _____ I was 17.



b **Test your memory.** Cover the conversations and look at the pictures. Can you remember the conversations?

ACTIVATION

Write four sentences about yourself, two with the present perfect + *for*, and two with the present perfect + *since*.

9C GRAMMAR present perfect or simple past? (2)

- a** Complete the conversations with the present perfect or the simple past form of the verbs in parentheses.

- 1 **A** How long have you played (play) the violin?
B Since I was (be) four. I _____ (love) music all my life.
A Was it a difficult instrument to learn?
B It _____ (be) very hard when I _____ (start).
- 2 **A** _____ your brother _____ (finish) college?
B Yes, he _____ (finish) three weeks ago.
A What's he going to do now?
B He _____ (not decide) yet.
- 3 **A** Where do your parents live?
B In Miami. They _____ (live) there since last year. Before that they _____ (live) in Atlanta.
A Why _____ they _____ (leave) Atlanta?
B Because my dad _____ (retire), and they _____ (want) to live near the beach.
- 4 **A** I _____ (see) Oliver yesterday. He _____ (tell) me about your plans to move to Australia.
B Yes, I'm very excited...and a little nervous too.
A _____ you ever _____ (live) abroad before?
B No, never. I _____ (never be) very interested in traveling.
A How about your wife?
B Oh, Ava loves traveling! She _____ (visit) lots of different countries.
- 5 **A** _____ you _____ (hear) about Andy and Francesca?
B No. What?
A They _____ (separate).
B Really? That's a shame. I _____ (think) they were very happy together.
- 6 **A** Is your brother married?
B Yes, he _____ (be) married forever – about ten years. He _____ (meet) his wife Sarah when they were both in high school. They _____ (get) married when they _____ (be) only 18.

- b** Practice the conversations with a partner.

ACTIVATION

Complete the sentences with information about real people (either people you know or famous people).

- 1 _____ and _____ were married for about _____ years.
2 _____ and _____ have been married since _____.
3 _____ lived in _____ for about _____ years.
4 _____ have / has lived in _____ for about _____ years.

10A GRAMMAR expressing movement

Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with a preposition of movement.



- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 A police helicopter flew <u>over</u> the houses. | 7 The road goes _____ the town. |
| 2 The robber fell _____ the stairs. | 8 The boy is climbing _____ the tree. |
| 3 A bird flew _____ the bridge. | 9 He jumped _____ the swimming pool. |
| 4 They danced _____ the fire. | 10 The dog swam _____ the river. |
| 5 The police officer walked _____ the car. | 11 The rock star threw a TV _____ the window. |
| 6 The cat ran _____ the wall. | 12 The skiers are skiing _____ the mountain. |

ACTIVATION

Test your memory. Cover the sentences and look at the pictures. Say the sentences.

10B GRAMMAR word order of phrasal verbs

- a** What are the people doing? Complete each sentence with a phrasal verb. Use one word from each list.

get (x2) go look pick put take throw ~~turn~~ write

along away (x2) down for off ~~on~~ up (x2)



1 She's turning on the TV.

2 He's _____ his shoes.



3 They're _____ the questions.

4 He's _____ her books.



5 She's _____ for the weekend.

6 He's _____ the newspaper.



7 She's _____ her phone.

8 He's _____ early.



9 She's _____ her coat.

10 They're _____ well.



- b** Circle the right answer. Check (✓) if both are correct.

- Can I **try on this jacket** / **try this jacket on**, please? ✓
- I can't hear the music. Can you **turn it up** / **turn up it**?
- They're my sister's children. I'm **looking after them** / **looking them after**.
- Jane called when you were out. Can you **call her back** / **call back her**?
- Turn off your cell phones** / **Turn your cell phones off** before the exam begins.
- Your clothes are all over the floor. Please **pick up them** / **pick them up**.
- I can't find my car keys. Can you help me **look for them** / **look them for**?
- If I lend you the money, when will you **pay me back** / **pay back me**?

ACTIVATION

Test your memory. Cover the sentences in **a**. Look at the pictures and say what's happening.

10C GRAMMAR the passive

- a Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with the present or past passive form of the verbs in parentheses.



- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 The movie <i>Dune</i> <u>is based</u> on the book by Frank Herbert. (base) | |
| 2 The symbol of the Olympic Games _____ | in 1913. (design) |
| 3 Four national languages _____ | in Switzerland. (speak) |
| 4 Part of Notre-Dame Cathedral in Paris _____ | after a fire in 2019. (rebuild) |
| 5 About 400 movies _____ | at the Toronto International Film Festival every year. (show) |
| 6 Kerberos is a very small moon of Pluto, which _____ | in 2011. (discover) |
| 7 Seat belts _____ | in planes until the 1930s. (not use) |
| 8 <i>The Hunger Games</i> books _____ | by Suzanne Collins. (write) |
| 9 The first smartphone _____ | in 1992 by IBM. (invent) |
| 10 <i>Pétanque</i> _____ | a lot all over France. (play) |
| 11 <i>The Two Fridas</i> _____ | by Frida Kahlo in 1939. (paint) |
| 13 The Eiffel Tower _____ | by about seven million people a year. (visit) |

- b Cover the sentences and look at the pictures. Can you remember the sentences?

ACTIVATION

- Write two past passive sentences about inventions or discoveries made by someone from your country.
- Write two present passive sentences about things that are produced, grown, or made somewhere in your country.

11A GRAMMAR *used to / didn't use to*

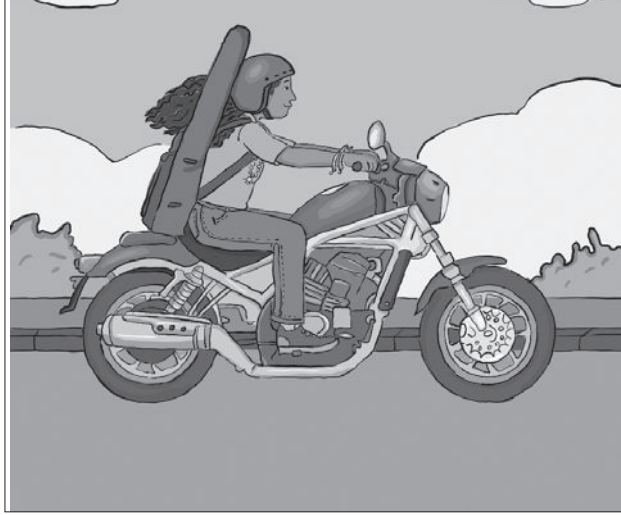
- Look at how Grace and Deepak have changed. For each person, write eight sentences using *used to / didn't use to* about what they were like in the past.

Grace in 2018



- 1 She used to wear dresses.
- 2 She didn't use to ride a motorcycle.
- 3 _____ the violin.
- 4 _____ glasses.

Grace now



- 5 _____ jewelry.
- 6 _____ very long hair.
- 7 _____ jeans and T-shirts.
- 8 _____ the guitar.

Deepak in 2018



- 9 _____ TV all day.
- 10 _____ any sports or exercise.
- 11 _____ a suit and tie.
- 12 _____ a beard and
a mustache.

Deepak now



- 13 _____ a little overweight.
- 14 _____ tracksuits and T-shirts.
- 15 _____ healthy food.
- 16 _____ long hair.

ACTIVATION

- 1 Look at the pictures. Make sentences with *used to* and *didn't use to* about Grace and Deepak.
- 2 Write two sentences with *used to* and two sentences with *didn't use to* about yourself.

11B GRAMMAR *might / might not* (possibility)

- a** Complete the conversations with *might / might not* and a verb from the list.

be (x2) buy fall go (x2) like meet call tell take

- 1 **A** Look, Mommy, I can ride a bicycle without using my hands!
B Oh, be careful! You *might fall*!
- 2 **A** Are you going to go to the party?
B I'm not sure. My ex-husband _____ there, and I really don't want to see him.
- 3 **A** What's this? It looks very strange.
B It's a special dish from my country. Try it, you _____ it.
- 4 **A** I _____ to class tomorrow. I think I'll have to work late.
B OK. I'll text you and tell you if there's any homework.
- 5 **A** Are you going to be at home this evening?
B I'm not sure. I _____ some friends for coffee.



- 6 **A** I think I _____ buy this T-shirt.
B Don't be silly. It's much too small for you.
- 7 **A** Where are you going for your vacation?
B I don't know. I'm really busy at work, so I _____ a vacation this year.
- 8 **A** Are you going to send Adam an email?
B No, I think I _____ him. It's quicker.
- 9 **A** How are you going to get there?
B I _____ by train...but maybe it's better to drive...I don't know...
A Come on – you need to make a decision!
- 10 **A** Are you going to tell Anna about seeing Mike with that woman in the restaurant?
B I _____ her. I'm not sure.
- 11 **A** I _____ late for class tomorrow. I'm seeing the doctor at 8:30.
B OK. Thanks for telling me.

- b** Practice the conversations in **a** with a partner.

ACTIVATION

Write two things you might do next weekend, and two things you might not have time to do tomorrow.

11C GRAMMAR *so, neither + auxiliaries*

a Complete the conversations with *so + auxiliary + I* or *neither + auxiliary + I*.



- | | |
|--|--|
| <p>1 A I don't like that new building much.
B <i>Neither do I</i>. It looks like a spaceship.</p> <p>2 A I passed the exam!
B <i>So did I!</i> I got 92%.</p> <p>3 A I can't swim, I'm afraid.
B _____. Perhaps we should take lessons.</p> <p>4 A I'm not very hungry.
B _____. I'll just have a sandwich.</p> <p>5 A I've finished college.
B _____. I'm looking for a job now!</p> <p>6 A I didn't like the movie.
B _____. It was too slow.</p> <p>7 A I was born in 1989.
B Really? _____.</p> <p>8 A I don't have any brothers or sisters.
B _____. But I have a lot of cousins.</p> <p>9 A I'm going to stay at home this evening.
B _____. I'm very tired.</p> <p>10 A I have to go to work on Saturday.
B _____. I hate working on the weekend.</p> | <p>11 A I don't get along with Lydia very well.
B _____. We don't really have much in common.</p> <p>12 A I got married in 2015.
B _____. But I got divorced a year later!</p> <p>13 A I was working in Chicago last year.
B _____. What a coincidence!</p> <p>14 A I haven't been to South America.
B _____, but I'd love to go.</p> <p>15 A I want to go to the beach today.
B _____. It's a beautiful day.</p> <p>16 A I won't go to that restaurant again.
B _____. The food was awful.</p> <p>17 A I'm going to stop using social media so much.
B _____. I spend too much time on it.</p> <p>18 A I'd like to go to New Zealand.
B _____. They say it's beautiful.</p> <p>19 A I'll do my homework on the bus.
B _____. It's very easy.</p> <p>20 A I have a twin sister.
B _____. That's amazing!</p> |
|--|--|

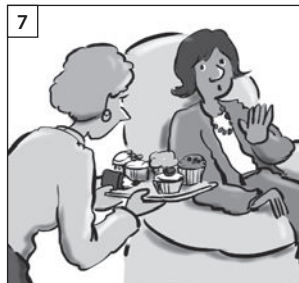
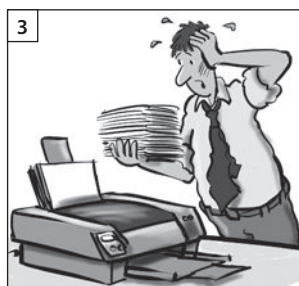
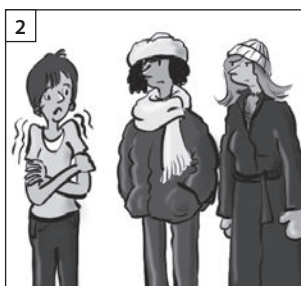
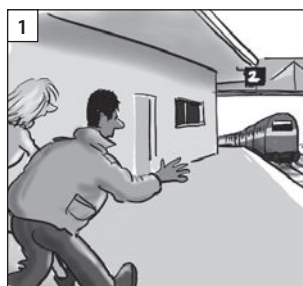
b Practice the conversations in **a** with a partner.

ACTIVATION

Write a two-line conversation with *so + auxiliary + I*, and another with *neither + auxiliary + I*.

12A GRAMMAR past perfect

Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with the simple past and past perfect form of the verbs in parentheses.



- 1 When they got (get) to the station the train had already left (already leave).
- 2 Kate _____ (be) very cold because she _____ (not wear) her coat.
- 3 The printer _____ (not work) because he _____ (not turn it on).
- 4 I _____ (not can) take a photo of the crocodile because I _____ (forget) to charge the battery.
- 5 They _____ (never fly) before and they _____ (be) very nervous.
- 6 When he _____ (arrive) at the pool he realized he _____ (not bring) his swimsuit.
- 7 She _____ (not be) hungry because she _____ (just have) dinner.
- 8 She _____ (have to) pay again because she _____ (lose) her ticket.
- 9 The manager _____ (run) after him because he _____ (not pay) the check.
- 10 The fire engine _____ (arrive) after the men _____ (put out) the fire.
- 11 They _____ (can) speak French because they _____ (learn) it at school.
- 12 She _____ (be) tired because she _____ (be) in the line all night.

ACTIVATION

Continue these sentences with the past perfect.

I didn't recognize him because...

My father was really angry because...

When I got to work / school today I realized that...

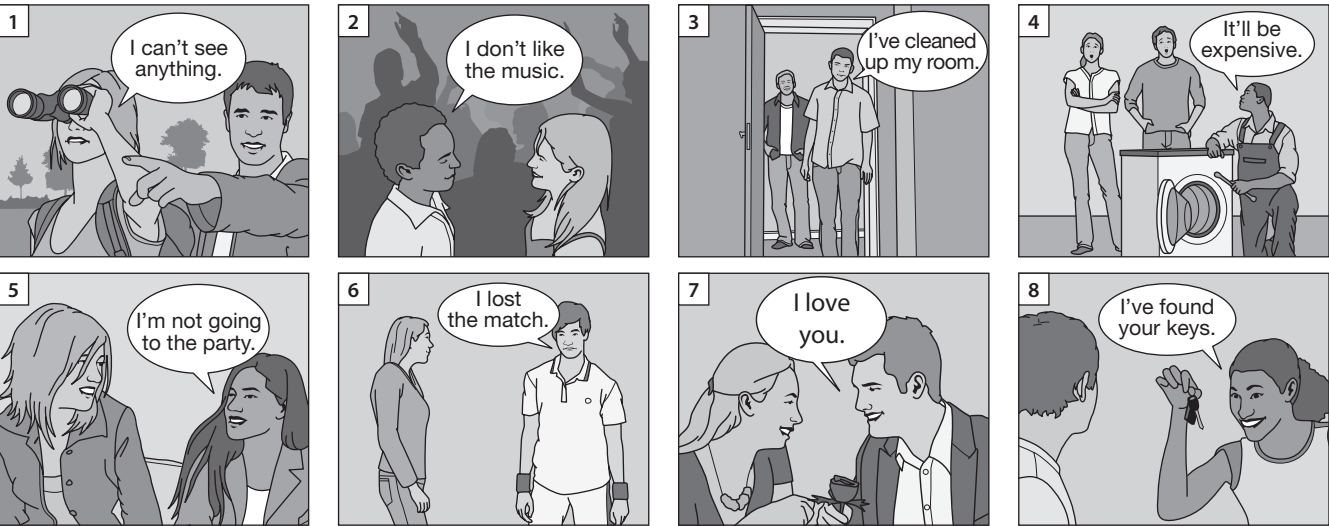
We couldn't get a table at the restaurant because...

I didn't want anything for dinner because...

I didn't want to go to the movies because...

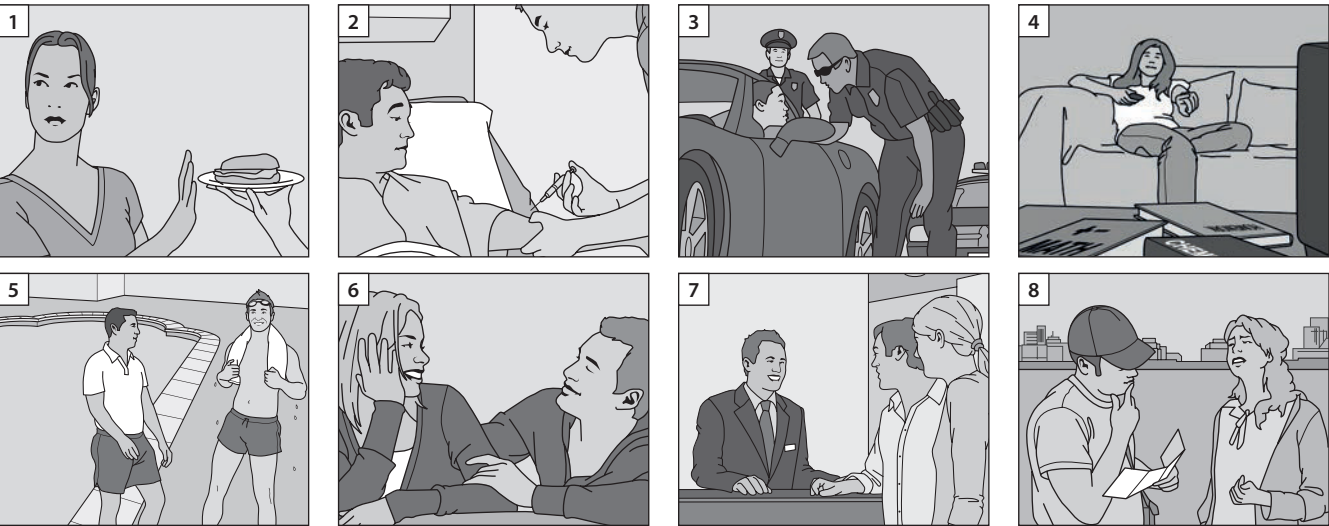
12B GRAMMAR reported speech

a Look at the pictures. Change the direct speech to reported speech.



- 1 She said that *she couldn't see anything*.
- 2 He told her that _____.
- 3 He told his father that _____.
- 4 The man said that _____.
- 5 She said that _____.
- 6 He told his wife that _____.
- 7 He told her that _____.
- 8 She said that _____.

b Look at the pictures. Change the reported speech to direct speech.



- 1 She said that she wasn't very hungry.
"I'm not very hungry."
- 2 The nurse told the man that it wouldn't hurt.

- 3 He told the police that it was his mother's car.

- 4 She said that she had finished her homework.

- 5 He told the instructor that he couldn't swim.

- 6 He told her that he would always love her.

- 7 They said that they wanted to check out.

- 8 He told the woman that he was lost.

ACTIVATION

Test your memory. Cover the sentences and look at the pictures in a and b. Use reported speech to say what each speaker said.

She said that she couldn't see anything.

12C GRAMMAR questions with and without auxiliaries

Make questions using the simple present or simple past. Then circle the correct answer.

1 Where / polar bears / live

Where do polar bears live?

the North Pole / the South Pole

2 Who / direct / the movie *Killers of the Flower Moon*

Who directed the movie *Killers of the Flower Moon*?

Martin Scorsese / Francis Ford Coppola

3 Who / paint / *The Scream*

_____?

Gustav Klimt / Edvard Munch

4 Where / manga comics / come from

_____?

Japan / China

5 Which country / produce / more coffee

_____?

Brazil / Colombia

6 Which country / have / a blue and yellow flag

_____?

Greece / Sweden

7 When / World War II / end

_____?

1945 / 1955

8 Which country / win / the most gold medals at the 2021 Olympics

_____?

China / the US

9 Which character / Robert Ludlum / create

_____?

James Bond / Jason Bourne

10 How many states / belong to / the original United States in 1786

_____?

6 / 13

11 Which company / Kevin Systrom and Mike Krieger / start

_____?

Instagram / Snapchat

12 Where / people / speak / Yorùbá

_____?

West Africa / East Africa

13 Which movie / win / the Oscar for best film in 2024

_____?

Barbie / *Oppenheimer*

14 Which fruit / contain / more sugar

_____?

a pineapple / an orange

ACTIVATION

Test your memory. Cover the questions and look at the answers. Can you remember the questions?

Communicative activity instructions

1A Student profile

A pairwork activity

Sts interview each other and complete a profile of their partner. The profile reviews question forms and provides the teacher with useful information about Sts. Copy one sheet per student.

LANGUAGE

Word order in questions

What's your name? What do you do? Where were you born?, etc.

- Give out the sheets. Check that students know they need to look at the form in b to form the questions. If necessary, do the first one together. Focus on the question beginnings in **a**. Give Sts, in pairs, a few minutes to decide what each question should be.

EXTRA SUPPORT Remind Sts about the present continuous and its question form. Tell Sts that they need it for question 8.

- Check answers. Model and drill the questions for Sts to copy the rhythm.

ANSWERS

- 1 What's your first name?
- 2 What's your last name?
- 3 Where are you from?
- 4 Where do you live?
- 5 What's your email address?
- 6 What do you do?
- 7 Where were you born?
- 8 Why are you learning English?
- 9 What languages do you speak?
- 10 What do you like doing in your free time?

- Now focus on **b**. Demonstrate the activity by getting Sts to ask you the first two questions. Encourage them to ask you to spell your name and last name. Put Sts in pairs to interview each other and tell them to write the information in the profile. You could tell Sts that they can invent their address and email address if they want to.
- You could collect the forms for your own reference.

EXTRA CHALLENGE Get Sts to interview each other. They could cover the questions and ask them from memory.

1B Ask me some questions...

A group board game

Sts practice making questions using the simple present tense. Make one copy for every three or four Sts. You will also need one die per group, and one token per student.

LANGUAGE

*What does your mother look like?
What do you do to relax?, etc.*

- Put Sts in groups of three or four. Give each group a copy of the board game, a die, and some tokens. Demonstrate the activity by writing on the board *What time / you get up? Where / your mother work?* Elicit the completed

questions and write *do* and *does* in the missing spaces. Ask a few Sts the questions.

- In their groups, Sts take turns rolling the die and move the token. They then ask the questions to the student on their right.
- Encourage Sts to ask for and give as much information as possible.
- When Sts have finished, get some feedback from various groups.

EXTRA IDEA If you want to make the game longer, Sts can play with coins (heads = move 1 square, tails = move 2).

1C What are they doing?

A class guessing activity

Sts draw on the board and the others have to guess. Copy and cut up one sheet per 18 Sts.

LANGUAGE

Present continuous

Prepositions of place, clothes

He's wearing a big hat.

- Draw a man walking in the park. Ask *What is the man doing?* Elicit the answer and only accept *A man is walking in the park*. Give each student one card.
- Call Sts to the board and let them draw what they have on their cards. Give other Sts a minute or two to guess. Sts guess the sentence until someone gets it exactly right. Remind Sts that they must get the sentence exactly right.

NON-CUT ALTERNATIVE Fold it in half and Sts play in pairs, taking turns to draw and guess.

2A Truth or lie?

A group guessing activity

Sts create two stories, one real and one false, while practicing the simple past. Copy and cut up one sheet per group of four or five Sts.

LANGUAGE

Simple past: regular and irregular verbs

I lost my phone at the train station.

- Write on the board: *A time when I was late to work* and *A time when I argued with my brother*. Tell them a short story about those two times and tell them one is true and one isn't. Let Sts decide which one they think is true and give them the correct answer. Tell them they are going to tell two similar stories in their groups.
- Put Sts in groups of four or five. Give each group a set of cards and tell Sts to take two cards each. Give Sts time to look at their cards and think of two stories.
- Sts tell each other the stories and try to guess which ones are true and which ones are false.
- Get some feedback from various groups.

2B Who did it?

A group mingle activity

Sts try to find out who is guilty by asking and answering questions using the past continuous. Copy and cut up one sheet per 12 Sts.

LANGUAGE

Past continuous

At four o'clock, I was taking a bath.

- Read the paragraph from the top of the sheet. Elicit the relevant information from Sts and write on the board. Tell Sts that they are all characters in this mystery and they have to find out who stole Sophie Hatcher's money. Elicit from Sts the questions they should ask: *What's your name? What do you do? Why are you in the hotel?* Now tell them the police are interested in two times: four o'clock and 4:30. Elicit the question: *What were you doing at...?* Leave the questions on the board for Sts to refer to. Tell them they all have to tell the truth, except for the thief.
- Now give out the cards. **Tell Sts they shouldn't show their cards to other Sts!** You could choose a stronger student to play Alex Cameron (the thief). If you have fewer than 12 Sts, make sure one of them is Alex Cameron (the thief). If you have more than 12 Sts, make two big groups and have them work separately – make sure one student in each group is the thief. Give Sts a couple of minutes to look at their cards and think about their answers to the questions on the board. This also gives the thief time to invent one lie.
- Give Sts a fixed amount of time, e.g., ten minutes, to move around asking questions. Encourage them to write down the information they find out.
- When the time runs out, give Sts a couple of minutes to decide, using their information, who stole Sophie's money.
- Find out who Sts think is the thief. Reveal who stole the money. If any Sts guessed correctly, they win!

2C Sentence race

A group activity

Sts race to complete sentences. Copy and cut one sheet per four or five Sts.

LANGUAGE

Connectors: *so, because, but, although*

- Put Sts in groups of four or five. Give each group one strip, face down. Put the other strips on your desk in separate piles for each group.
- Tell Sts they have to finish the sentence as quickly as they can in a logical and correct way and then bring it to you. If it is correct, they will get another one. If it isn't, they will have to correct it.
- Say *Go!* and tell Sts to turn over their strip and start writing.

- Check sentences when Sts bring them to you. If the sentence is correct, give them another one. If it isn't, let them take it back and try to correct it. When the time limit is up (or when one group has completed 20 sentences), stop the activity. The group with the most correct sentences is the winner.

NON-CUT ALTERNATIVE

Put Sts in pairs and give them a sheet face down. Tell Sts they have to finish the sentences as quickly as they can in a logical and correct way. Say *Go!* and tell Sts to turn over their sheet and start writing. Set a time limit and monitor while Sts are writing. When the time limit is up or a pair has finished, stop the activity and check answers. The pair with the most correct sentences is the winner.

3A A day in...

A pairwork / group activity

Sts choose a city and plan a day using the information given. Copy one sheet per pair.

LANGUAGE

be going to

We're going to have breakfast at Broadway Bagels.

- Put Sts in pairs. Tell them they're going to plan a day in Paris or New York. Give each pair a sheet.
- Explain that first they should decide together whether they want to go to New York or Paris. Then, they can choose any activities from the list, or any of the shopping options, but they have to pay attention to the time they take (in parentheses) and the times they have on the schedule. Give them a set time, e.g., ten minutes, to plan their day. Monitor to make sure they're doing the activity correctly.
- Now put two pairs of Sts together. Sts have to explain their plan for the day to the other group using *be going to* and, where appropriate, explain why they have decided to do each of the things in their plan. Put an example on the board: *We're going to visit the museum of modern art because it's one of the best art museums in the world.* Elicit further questions from Sts, e.g., *Where are you going to go after that? What are you going to do there?* Encourage them to ask extra questions.
- Now ask Sts to talk about the plan they heard in pairs and decide if they would like to go on that trip or not, and why. Get feedback.

EXTRA IDEA

Cut the sheet in half, so half the groups will do Paris and the other half New York. Get some Sts to explain their plan to the class.

3B Come fly with me!

A pairwork information gap activity

Sts complete questions and ask each other for some missing information. Copy one sheet per pair and cut into **A** and **B**.

LANGUAGE

Present continuous (future arrangements)

Who are you flying with? How much are you taking?

Travel vocabulary

- Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**, and give out the sheets. Sit Sts face-to-face. Explain that they have a completed boarding pass and one with missing information.
- Give Sts time to read both boarding passes and deal with any vocabulary problems.
- Focus on the questions in **a**. Tell Sts to look at the boarding pass with the missing information and point out that the first question has been done for them. They have to complete questions 2–7 individually using the present continuous to find out the missing information from their partner.
- Check all the questions before starting the activity. Write them on the board if necessary.

ANSWERS

- 2 Where are you flying from?
- 3 Where are you flying to?
- 4 When are you leaving?
- 5 What time are you leaving?
- 6 What time are you arriving?
- 7 Where are you sitting?

- Now focus on **b**. **A** asks **B** their questions and completes their boarding pass with the missing information. Then Sts change roles in **c**.

EXTRA IDEA Fast finishers could look at the boarding passes, cover the questions, and ask the questions from memory.

3C Can you explain the word?

A group card game

Sts practice giving definitions using relative pronouns. Copy and cut up one set of cards per group of four Sts.

LANGUAGE

Defining relative clauses

It's a thing that... / a person who... It's a kind of... It's like... You do it when...

- If necessary, review language for giving definitions before you start. Put Sts in groups of four. Give each group a set of cards face down or in an envelope.
- Demonstrate the activity. Pick up a card and describe the word/phrase until Sts guess it. Insist they say the exact word/phrase on the card with the correct pronunciation before showing them the card.
- Sts play the game, taking turns to take a card and define the word. Tell Sts they must not use the word on the card. The first student in the group who says the word or phrase correctly gets the card. The winner is the student with the most cards.

NON-CUT ALTERNATIVE Copy one sheet per pair and cut in half. Put Sts in pairs and give them one half each. **A** begins by defining one of the words on their sheet. If **B** can say the word, then it's **B**'s turn to give a definition.

4A Find the response

A pairwork activity

Sts match sentences to appropriate responses. Copy one sheet per student.

LANGUAGE

Present perfect

yet, already

I haven't met her yet. They've already gone home.

- Give out the sheets and focus on **a**. Point out that the first one (1h) has been done for them. Now get Sts to match 1–14 to responses a–n.
- Check answers.

ANSWERS

2 e 3 a 4 m 5 k 6 n 7 b 8 l 9 c 10 j 11 i
12 g 13 f 14 d

- Now focus on **b**. Elicit or teach the meaning of *fold*, and tell Sts that they should fold their sheets vertically.
- Put Sts in pairs **A** and **B**. Ask them to look only at the sentences and not to look at the responses. Read out the first one and see who can remember what the response was, e.g., *Have you done your English homework? (Yes, I've finished it.)*
- Sts continue in pairs. Sts **A** read out the sentences first and Sts **B** have to remember what the responses were (without looking at the sheet).
- They then change roles. Monitor and check pronunciation.

4B Have you ever...?

A group activity

Sts practice making questions from prompts and describe events, contrasting the present perfect and the simple past. Copy and cut up one sheet per group of three or four Sts.

LANGUAGE

Have you ever + past participle...?

Past and present tense follow-up questions

Past tense ☐ and ☐ forms

Have you ever been to London? Yes, I have. No, I haven't.

When did you go there?

- Copy the exchange in the **Language** box on the board and elicit that this is a typical exchange that begins in the present perfect, and then goes on to the simple past to ask for details.
- Put Sts in groups of three or four and give each group an envelope with a copy of the strips. Sts take turns taking a strip out of the envelope and asking the other Sts in their group the question and follow-up questions.
- Demonstrate the activity first by getting a student to ask you the question they've drawn out of the envelope. Answer the question and elicit a follow-up question.
- Encourage Sts to ask more follow-up questions.
- Get some feedback from various groups.

NON-CUT ALTERNATIVE Make one copy per pair and cut in half horizontally after strip 6. Give Sts half the sheet each and get them to ask and answer the questions.

4C The same or different?

A pairwork activity

Sts compare information about their lifestyle and practice using *something, anything, nothing*, etc. They agree with or contradict a series of statements and explain why. Copy one sheet per student.

LANGUAGE

something, nothing, anything, somebody / someone, anyone, etc.

I don't usually watch anything on TV in the evenings.

- Put Sts in pairs and give out the sheets. Focus on **a**. Demonstrate the activity by completing the first sentence, *I always have something to eat...*, and writing it on the board.
- Ask Sts to complete the sentences individually or in pairs. Give Sts enough time to complete their sheets.
- Check answers and write them on the board if necessary.

ANSWERS

1 something 2 anywhere 3 something 4 anything
5 anything 6 nobody / no one 7 somewhere 8 anything
9 something 10 nothing 11 nobody / no one
12 anywhere 13 anybody / anyone 14 somewhere
15 nowhere 16 anything 17 somebody / someone
18 somewhere

- Now focus on **b**. Demonstrate the activity by telling the class about the first statement, e.g., *Sentence 1 isn't true for me because I never eat anything before school*. Encourage the class to ask for more information, e.g., *What do you drink? When do you have something to eat?*
- Sts talk about each statement and say if it's true or not true for them and why not.
- Stop the activity when most pairs seem to have finished and get some feedback.

5A Which do you prefer? Why?

A pairwork / group speaking activity

Sts say which of two things or activities they prefer and why. Personalize the activity by writing local things to compare on the last two cards. Copy and cut up one sheet per group of four or five Sts.

LANGUAGE

Comparative forms

I prefer swimming in a pool because it's cleaner.

- Put Sts in groups of four or five and give out a set of cards face down.
- Demonstrate the activity by asking a student to pick a card and ask you. Sts take turns to pick a card and ask the other Sts: *Which do you prefer, ... or ...? Why?*
- Monitor while Sts are talking, correcting any mistakes with comparative forms. When Sts have finished, get feedback from a few pairs or groups.

NON-CUT ALTERNATIVE Give out one uncut sheet to each pair or group. Get them to discuss the topics on each card, saying which they prefer and why.

5B Superlative questions

A pairwork quiz

Sts practice forming superlatives to complete questions to ask their partner. Copy one sheet per pair and cut into **A** and **B**.

LANGUAGE

Superlatives: *the biggest, the heaviest, etc.*

- Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**, and give out the sheets.
- Focus on **a** and tell Sts to complete the questions using the superlative form of the adjective in parentheses. Explain that sometimes the question asks about the superlative in the world / history and sometimes it's the superlative from the three options (*Which of these...*). Point out that the answer is in bold.

ANSWERS

A 1 the richest 2 the most populated 3 the most dangerous
4 the largest 5 the most recent 6 the most popular
B 1 the noisiest 2 the smallest 3 the most popular
4 the largest 5 the youngest 6 the longest

- Sts **A** ask Sts **B** their questions, giving the three options. When **A** has finished, they change roles. The student with the most correct answers wins.

5C How much / How many...?

A group activity

Sts read out and answer questions using *How much / How many*. Copy and cut up one sheet per group of three or four.

LANGUAGE

Quantifiers: *how much / how many, too much / (not) enough*

- Write on the board: *How ____ classes do you teach a week?* Elicit the missing word (*many*) and ask Sts to guess. Write down possible answers as they say them (*a lot, not many, too many, not enough, a few*). Give them the answer and write possible answers on the board for Sts to use as reference.
- Put Sts in groups of three or four and give each group a set of cards. Each student takes a turn taking a card, asking the question (using *much* or *many*) to the student to their left. Then they ask the follow-up questions for more information. Sts take cards and ask questions until the cards or the time run out.

6A Positive or negative?

A group activity

Sts practice making positive predictions. Copy one sheet per pair or per student.

LANGUAGE

will / won't (predictions)

It'll be great! It won't work.

- Give out one sheet per pair or per student. Go through sentences 1–12 in **You say** and **The optimist says**.

- Tell Sts to imagine that they are all optimists. Focus on sentence 1 and elicit a prediction, e.g., *Don't worry. I'm sure you'll find it.*
- Sts continue in pairs, writing positive predictions. Monitor and help.
- When Sts have finished, get them to mingle (alone or in pairs) and read sentences from **You say** to another student / pair and listen to their answers.
- Get feedback. You could get Sts to tell you which answer they liked best or get them to volunteer their own answers.

EXTRA IDEA Repeat the activity, but ask Sts to be pessimists this time. Give them some alternative starts *That's not good, That sounds awful / boring, Oh no!*, etc. Give them enough time to write the responses. Monitor and help. You could get Sts to decide which sentences (optimistic or pessimistic) they would use.

6B Guess my sentence

A pairwork activity

Sts practice *will* sentences by trying to guess the missing part of the sentence. Copy one sheet per pair and cut into **A** and **B**.

LANGUAGE

will + verb

I think I'll buy them.

I'll call you on your cell phone.

- Demonstrate the activity. On a piece of paper, write the sentence, *I'm very tired. I think I'll sit down for half an hour.* Then write on the board the sentence: *I'm very tired. I think I _____ for half an hour.*
- Tell the class they have to guess the missing phrase, which is a verb or a verb phrase with *'ll*. Elicit a possibility, making sure Sts say the whole sentence. If their guess is not the same as you have on your piece of paper, say *Try again* until someone says your sentence. Then show them your piece of paper and say *That's right.*
- Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**, and give out the sheets. Sit **A** and **B** face-to-face if possible.
- Focus on the sheets and explain that half of their sentences have blanks, and their partner has the complete sentences.
- Give Sts a minute or so to read their sentences and think of possible completions, but not to write them in the blanks.
- Sts take turns guessing the missing parts of the sentences. Stress that Sts should say the whole sentence each time, not just the missing words. Their partner should help and prompt if necessary. When a student correctly guesses the exact sentence, they write in the missing words.

6C Talk about it

A group board game

Sts review past, present, and future forms. Make one copy of the board game for groups of three or four Sts. You also need one die per group and one place marker or coin per student.

LANGUAGE

Review of verb forms: present, past, and future

- Put Sts in small groups of three or four. Give each group a copy of the board game and a die.

! If you don't have a die, give each group a coin. Sts toss the coin for their turn and move 1 for heads and 2 for tails.

- Explain the rules of the game. Sts throw a die and move the corresponding number of circles on the board. When they land on a circle, they must talk for 30 seconds about the topic. Then each of the other Sts in the group must ask them a question about the topic.
- Sts play the game in their groups. The game finishes when someone reaches the *Finish* circle.

7A I'm going to tell you about...

A pairwork discussion activity

Sts choose six topics to discuss with a partner. Copy one sheet per student.

LANGUAGE

Verb + *to*

- Put Sts in pairs and give out the sheets.
- Focus on the instructions. Tell Sts to choose six topics they want to talk about with a partner. Tell them to think about what they want to say. Set a time limit.
- Tell Sts to discuss the topics, taking turns choosing the topic. Encourage Sts to ask for and give as much information as possible.
- Monitor and help where necessary, particularly with the verb forms.
- When Sts have finished, get feedback on some of the topics.

7B Questions with gerunds

A pairwork question and answer activity

Sts complete the questions and then ask a partner. Copy one sheet per pair and cut into **A** and **B**.

LANGUAGE

Verb + *-ing*

Do you enjoy reading in bed? Are you good at cooking?

- Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**, and give out the sheets.
- Focus on **a**. Give Sts time to complete their questions with verbs from the list in the gerund. Then check answers.

ANSWERS

A 1 getting up 2 flying 3 waiting 4 going 5 reading
6 cooking 7 doing 8 doing
B 1 walking 2 doing 3 going 4 going 5 playing
6 eating 7 getting 8 being

- Elicit that the answer to the question *Do you mind...?* is either *No, I don't mind* or *Yes, I hate it.*
- Focus on **b**. Sts take turns asking their questions and asking for more information.

7C In the US

A pairwork speaking activity

Sts decide if sentences about laws in the US are true or false, and then talk about the situation in their own country. Copy one sheet per student.

LANGUAGE

*You have to... You don't have to... / You must not...
You must...*

- Put Sts in pairs and give out the sheets.
- Focus on **a** and give Sts a few minutes to read all the sentences and make sure they understand them. Set a time limit, e.g., ten minutes, for pairs to discuss each sentence and decide if it is true or not true.
- Now focus on **b** and elicit ideas. Find out if any pair identified all the false sentences.

ANSWERS

1 T 2 T 3 T 4 F 5 F (Nobody has to do community service.) 6 T 7 T 8 F 9 T 10 F 11 F (You have to be 18.) 12 T 13 F 14 F 15 T 16 T 17 T 18 T

- Finally, focus on **c**. Tell Sts to go through each law and say if the laws are the same or different in their country, and which ones they'd like to have in their country.
- Get some feedback from various pairs.

8A I need some advice

A group speaking activity

Sts practice giving advice to each other. Copy and cut up one sheet per group of four or five Sts.

LANGUAGE

What should I do? I think you should... You shouldn't...

- Put Sts in groups of four or five. Give each group a set of cards, face down.
- Sts take turns reading the situations. Each student in the group has to give a different piece of advice. The person who the reader thinks gave the best advice keeps the card. Demonstrate by picking up a card and reading the problem. Let Sts give you advice, getting as many to talk as possible. Then choose one of the options and say *I'll do that*.
- Sts continue until the cards are finished. The student with the most cards is the winner.

NON-CUT ALTERNATIVE Copy one sheet per pair and cut it in half. Put Sts in pairs and give them half each. They alternate reading their problems and giving advice.

8B Conditionals race

A pairwork activity

Sts complete first conditional sentences as fast as they can and then compare them with a different pair. Copy one sheet per pair.

LANGUAGE

First conditional

If we win, we'll go out and celebrate.

- Write on the board: *If I give you an exercise...* and elicit different answers (e.g., *we'll do it / we won't know how to do it / we won't have a break*).
- Put Sts in pairs and give them a copy of the sheet. Sts then try to complete the sentences in **a** as fast as they can. Declare the first pair to finish the winners (but make sure you give an extra minute or so for all the pairs to finish).
- Now focus on **b** and put two pairs together. Get them to compare their sentences and choose the ones they like best. Get some feedback.
- Finally, in **c**, get the pairs to fold the second part of the conditional and try to remember their sentences.

EXTRA IDEA Make this into a group activity by cutting up the sentences and giving each group one sentence at a time. When they complete a sentence they have to bring it to you and, if it's correct, get another sentence. The first group to complete all the sentences are the winners.

8C Reading questionnaire

A pairwork activity

Sts answer questions about their reading habits. Copy one sheet per pair.

LANGUAGE

Talking about reading tastes / habits

Do you read online? Are you a fast or a slow reader?

- Put Sts in pairs. Give out the sheets and focus on the pictures. Ask *What / Who can you see?*
- Give Sts a time limit to read the questions. Help with any vocabulary problems.
- Get one student to ask you the main question, *Do you like reading books?* Answer *Yes, I do* or *No, I don't*. Then get Sts to ask you the first question (depending on what you said). Answer the question giving as much information as possible and encourage Sts to ask follow-up questions.
- Sts **A** ask the main question and then ask all the questions in the **Yes** or **No** column to Sts **B** with follow-up questions, if possible. They then change roles.
- Get feedback from the class.

9A I think you'd...

A pairwork activity

Sts practice second conditional sentences by trying to complete sentences about their partner. Copy one sheet per pair and cut into **A** and **B**.

LANGUAGE

Second conditional

If you bought a new car today, I think you'd buy a...

- Demonstrate the activity by writing on the board: *If somebody offered you a sandwich now, I think you'd order a _____.*
- Elicit that you need to complete the sentence with a noun. Then tell Sts to guess which sandwich you'd order. Elicit answers and then tell the class which sandwich you'd really order.

- Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**, face-to-face if possible, and give out the sheets. Focus on **a** and tell Sts to complete the sentences, trying to guess how their partner would complete each one. They must not look at what their partner writes. Monitor and check that they are using the right words.
- Now focus on **b** and tell Sts to take turns reading their completed sentences to their partner, who tells them if they have guessed correctly or not. Encourage them to react by contradicting what their partner has said, and then giving the real answer if the guess is wrong, e.g., *No, I wouldn't. I don't like cats! But I love dogs.*
- Get feedback from various pairs and find out who in the pair had more correct guesses.

EXTRA CHALLENGE If you want to give more practice, get Sts to repeat the activity, but change roles **A** and **B**.

9B Famous phobias

A pairwork speaking activity

Sts practice using the present perfect + *for* or *since* by reading about famous people and their phobias. Copy one sheet per pair and cut into **A** and **B**.

LANGUAGE

Present perfect + *for* or *since*

- Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**, and give out the sheets. Tell Sts not to look at each other's sheets.
- Set a time limit for Sts to read about the famous people and their phobias. Monitor and help with any comprehension or pronunciation problems.
- You can write *How long have they had the phobia?* on the board for students to answer while they are reading.
- Now get **A** to tell **B** about their three people. Encourage Sts to improvise and only look at their sheet if absolutely necessary. Then **A** and **B** decide together which phobias are true.
- Sts then change roles.
- Get feedback to find out which ones they think are true.

ANSWERS

They are all true.

9C Like father, like son

A pairwork information gap activity

Sts question each other to discover missing biographical information about a famous father and son using the present perfect and simple past. Copy one sheet per pair and cut into **A** and **B**.

LANGUAGE

Simple past and present perfect

- Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**, and give out the sheets. Tell them not to look at each other's sheets. Explain that they have one complete biography and one with missing information.
- Give Sts time to read both biographies. Monitor and deal with any vocabulary problems.
- Focus on the questions in **b**. Tell Sts **A** and **B** to read their incomplete biography again and to complete questions

1–7. Set a time limit. Monitor and check that Sts are writing the correct questions.

ANSWERS

Bob Dylan

- 1 When was he born?
- 2 Where did he go to in 1961?
- 3 What was his real last name?
- 4 How did Joan Baez help him become famous?
- 5 How many albums has he recorded?
- 6 What kind of books has he written?
- 7 What prize did he win / receive in 2016?

Jakob Dylan

- 1 What does he do?
- 2 When was he born?
- 3 How many brothers and sisters does he have?
- 4 How many albums have The Wallflowers released?
- 5 Which David Bowie song have they recorded?
- 6 Who has Jakob Dylan composed music for?
- 7 How long has he been married?

- Now focus on **c** and get Sts to ask and answer their questions to complete their biographies.

10A The race

A pairwork activity

Sts practice giving instructions using prepositions of movement. Copy one sheet per pair and cut into **A** and **B**.

LANGUAGE

Prepositions of movement: *into, over, through, past, etc.*

- Put Sts into pairs, **A** and **B**, and give out the sheets. If possible, put Sts face-to-face.
- Focus on the instructions in **a**. Tell Sts that they have a map with a route on it. Their routes are different. They have to describe their routes to each other and draw their partner's route on their second map.
- Give Sts time to plan how to describe the route.
- Sts take turns describing their route to their partner, who draws it on the blank map. Monitor and help.
- When they have finished, get Sts to compare routes to see if they drew them correctly.

EXTRA IDEA Get Sts to use pencil when they draw. They can then erase the route on the blank map and draw their own routes.

10B Phrasal verb conversations

A pairwork activity

Sts practice using phrasal verbs by choosing the correct response to a situation. Copy one sheet per pair and cut into **A** and **B**.

LANGUAGE

Phrasal verbs: *fill out, take off, take back, etc.*

- Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**. Tell them to look at sentences 1–8 and especially the phrasal verb sentences. Give them a minute or two.
- Sts **A** start by reading the first sentence. Sts **B** choose an answer from the speech bubbles. They both decide if they think it's right or wrong. Student **A** reads all their sentences and then they change roles. Monitor to make sure Sts are doing the activity correctly.

ANSWERS

A reads, B responds

- 1 OK, I'll pick it up.
- 2 Sorry, I'll give it back tomorrow.
- 3 Sorry. I'll turn it down.
- 4 Look it up in the dictionary!
- 5 Sorry, I threw it away.
- 6 It will be over in ten minutes, I promise!
- 7 Don't worry. I'll look after him.
- 8 Why don't you take it back?

B reads, A responds

- 1 I think you should give it up.
- 2 Don't worry, I'll take them off.
- 3 Yes, I get along very well with her.
- 4 We've run out.
- 5 Yes, I'm really looking forward to it.
- 6 I'll help you look for it.
- 7 OK, I'll put them away.
- 8 Sorry, I'll fill it out now.

- Now focus on **c**. Sts **A** read their sentences again and this time Sts **B** respond without looking at their sheet. Then they change roles.

10C General knowledge quiz

A pairwork general knowledge quiz

Sts practice using the simple present passive and simple past passive by asking and answering questions. Copy one sheet per pair and cut into **A** and **B**.

LANGUAGE

Questions in the simple present passive and simple past passive

*Which month is named after a Roman emperor?
In which city was the Titanic built?*

- Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**. Get them to sit face-to-face and make sure that they can't see each other's questions.
- Set a time limit, e.g., five minutes, for Sts to read their questions. Monitor and help if necessary.
- Sts **A** start. Highlight that they should give the three alternatives each time and note down which answers **B** gets right. (The correct answers are in **bold** on the sheet.) Sts then change roles.
- Get feedback to see who got the most correct answers.

11A My past

A pairwork speaking activity

Sts complete some boxes and then use the information to talk about past habits using *used to* and *didn't use to*. Copy one sheet per student.

LANGUAGE

Used to

I used to listen to Justin Bieber, but I don't now.

- Put Sts in pairs and give out the sheets. Sit them so they can't see each other's sheets. Focus on **a**. Go through phrases 1–14 and make sure Sts know what they have to do. Demonstrate by giving some personal examples for 1–3. Make it clear that Sts only have to do this with words or phrases, e.g., *spiders*, *a Barbie doll*, *Justin Bieber*, and not complete sentences.
- Give Sts time to write something in as many boxes as they can (sometimes they may not be able to think of anything). Monitor and

- Focus on **b**. Sts use what they have written in the boxes to tell their partner about their past habits using *I used to* / *I didn't use to*. Again, demonstrate the activity yourself and give more information, e.g., *I used to have a cat. He was black, and his name was Max*. If necessary, remind Sts of the pronunciation of *used to* / *didn't use to*.
- Sts work together, talking about their past habits.
- Get some feedback from various pairs.

11B I might...but I might not

A board game activity

Sts practice using *might* and *might not* by completing sentences. Copy one sheet per group of three or four Sts. You will also need one token per student and one die per group.

LANGUAGE

He might lose his job. We might not find it.

- Write the first sentence on the board: *The weather is really nice today. We...* and ask Sts to complete it using *might*. Choose an answer and write it on the board. Now ask Sts to complete the sentence using *might not*. Choose an answer and write it on the board.
- Put Sts in groups of three or four. Give out the sheets and tell Sts to take turns to roll the die and then create two sentences for each prompt, one with *might* and one with *might not*. If they can't make two sentences, they go back to their previous square. Monitor and help.

POSSIBLE ANSWERS

- 1 might go to the beach. / might not need a jacket.
- 2 might forget it. / might not remember it.
- 3 might stay at home more. / might not go out very much.
- 4 might be angry with me. / might not have her phone.
- 5 might get hungry. / might not find a restaurant.
- 6 might go to Spain. / might not go abroad.
- 7 might win. / might not lose.
- 8 might see the new *Star Wars* film. / might not go.
- 9 might wear the black dress. / might not wear the pink dress.
- 10 might stay in bed. / might not go to work tomorrow.
- 11 might order takeout. / might not have dinner.
- 12 might go to bed. / might not watch it today.
- 13 might throw it away. / might not tell her I don't like it.
- 14 might go to the park. / might not go out.
- 15 might take it back. / might not read it.

- Sts play until one of them finishes or time runs out.

11C So do I!

A class mingle activity

Sts practice agreeing using *So do I* / *Neither do I* and disagreeing. Copy and cut up one sheet per group of six Sts.

LANGUAGE

So can I. / Neither have I.

- Give each student a card. Ask them to fill in the blanks with things that are true for them.
- Write *I like...* and complete the sentence with an animal. Get Sts to agree or disagree with you. Elicit *So do I. / I don't*. Now write *I didn't go out yesterday*. Elicit *Neither did I. / I did*.
- Get Sts to stand up and mingle, reading their sentences to each other and agreeing or disagreeing. Monitor and help.
- Students should write the name of one person who agrees with them on the line opposite each sentence.
- Get feedback about things Sts agreed / disagreed with.

NON-CUT ALTERNATIVE Cut the sheet in half and put Sts in pairs. Give each student half a sheet and ask them to complete the sentences. They can then read the sentences to their partner and agree / disagree with their choices.

12A What had happened?

A group activity

Sts practice using the past perfect by giving reasons for situations they read on cards. Copy and cut up one sheet for groups of four or five Sts.

LANGUAGE

Past perfect

We couldn't use our car because someone had stolen it.

- Write on the board *I went to see my brother yesterday. He was sad because...* and try to elicit answers using the past perfect (e.g., *his football team had lost / his dog had died*). Now put Sts in groups of four or five and give them a set of cards, face down.
- Sts take turns picking a card, reading the situation and completing the sentence. Remind Sts that they must use the past perfect. The rest of the group decides if the sentence is correct and thinks of alternatives. Monitor and help.
- Sts repeat the activity until they run out of cards. Sts then decide in their groups who was the best at inventing reasons.

POSSIBLE ANSWERS

- 1 I left the house in a hurry, and when I got to the airport, I suddenly remembered that I had forgotten my passport.
- 2 I was angry with my partner because he / she hadn't taken out the garbage.
- 3 When I looked at my phone, I realized that Sarah had called me ten times.
- 4 I couldn't read the menu because I had left my glasses at home.
- 5 I didn't do well on my exam because I hadn't studied very hard.
- 6 I couldn't use my credit card because I had forgotten my PIN.
- 7 The burglars got into our house while we were on vacation because we had left the door open.
- 8 The police got to the bank very quickly, but the robbers had already left.
- 9 My dad was very happy when he arrived because his team had won the game.
- 10 I went back to the store to buy you that shirt you liked, but it had gone.
- 11 When we got to Joe and Hannah's house we were very surprised because they hadn't gotten up yet.
- 12 We decided not to go to the Empire State Building that day because we had heard it was very crowded.
- 13 I was incredibly tired that day because I had watched TV until really late.
- 14 The moment I pressed "send" I realized that I had sent the message to the wrong person.
- 15 When I saw Mary at the school reunion, I didn't recognize her because she had lost weight.

LANGUAGE

Reported statements

Bruno Mars said that his best work had been his album, 24K Magic.

- Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**, and give out the sheets. Focus on the instructions and tell Sts to choose a famous person. They will then give an interview as that famous person.
- Give Sts some time to read the questions and imagine the answers their famous person would give.
- Sts **B** start by asking Sts **A** the questions and writing down the answers. Then they change roles.
- Make Sts change partners. They now talk about their interview using the answers their first partner gave and putting them in reported speech. Monitor and help.
- You could get confident Sts to report their interview to the class.

EXTRA IDEA Ask Sts to write an article about their partner's celebrity using the information they have and reported speech.

12C Hollywood quiz

A pairwork information gap activity

Sts practice forming simple past and subject and object quiz questions to ask their partner. Copy one sheet per pair and cut into **A** and **B**.

LANGUAGE

Questions with and without auxiliaries

Which actor appeared in most of Hitchcock's movies?

- Put Sts in pairs, **A** and **B**, and give out the sheets. Give Sts time to complete the questions.
- Check answers, but don't write them on the board.

ANSWERS

Student A

1 lived / lives 2 did / does an actor say 3 did Walt Disney win 4 appeared / appears 5 did / does Marty McFly go 6 did / does Tony fall 7 played / plays 8 does Batman have

Student B

1 did Peter Jackson film 2 appeared / appears 3 does an Oscar weigh 4 played / plays 5 won 6 played / plays 7 did / does Arnold Schwarzenegger say 8 directed

- Sts **A** start by asking Sts **B** the questions, without giving the three options (the option in bold is the correct answer). If **B** can answer correctly, they get two points. If **B** can't answer, **A** gives them the three options. If **B** gets the correct answer, they get one point.
- **A** asks all of their questions first. Sts then change roles.
- Find out who scored the most points in the class.

12B The celebrity interview

A pairwork speaking activity

Sts practice using reported speech by interviewing their partner and then telling another student about the interview. Copy one sheet per pair and cut into **A** and **B**.

1A COMMUNICATIVE Student profile

a Complete the questions you need to ask to fill out the form.

- 1 What _____?
- 2 What _____?
- 3 Where _____?
- 4 Where _____?
- 5 What _____?
- 6 What _____?
- 7 Where _____?
- 8 Why _____?
- 9 What languages _____?
- 10 What _____ in your free time?

b Interview a partner and complete the form. Ask him / her to spell names and places if necessary.

STUDENT PROFILE

.....

- 1 First name
- 2 Last name
- 3 Nationality
- 4 Address
- 5 Email address
- 6 Occupation
- 7 Place of birth
- 8 Reason for learning English
- 9 Languages
- 10 Interests

1B COMMUNICATIVE Ask me some questions...

START	What / you usually have for breakfast?	/ you have a best friend?	/ you have any brothers or sisters?
	/ you have breakfast with other people?	What / he or she do?	How old / they?
/ you often stressed?	How often / you listen to music?	What / your mother look like?	How often / you eat out?
What / you do to relax?	What kind of music / you like?	/ you look like her?	/ you prefer cooking or going to a restaurant?
DO DOES IS ARE			
/ you have a favorite aunt or uncle?	/ you exercise or play any sports?	What / your parents do in their free time?	What phone / you have?
Where / he or she live?	What / do? How often / you do it?	/ you have similar hobbies?	How / you usually communicate with your friends?
How / you come to class?	/ you watch movies at home or in the movie theater?	How many people / you live with?	Where / you usually go with your friends?
/ you often use public transportation?	What kind of movies / you like?	/ your house big or small?	What / you do there?
FINISH			

1C COMMUNICATIVE What are they doing?

A man is reading the newspaper.	A baby is crying.
A woman is wearing a long dress.	An old woman is carrying a bag.
A girl is looking at a painting.	A boy is standing next to a girl.
A man is sitting behind a desk.	A man is eating an apple.
A man is buying a tie.	A girl is cleaning her shoes.
A dog is drinking under a table.	A cat is sleeping on a couch.
A man is wearing socks and sandals.	A woman is dancing in the kitchen.
A baby is sitting in the garden.	A woman is opening a window.
A man is wearing a big hat.	A boy is waiting for a bus.

A time when I lost my phone...

- When?
- How did you lose it?
- Did you find it?



A time when I sent an email or text message to the wrong person...

- Who did you send it to?
- Who did you want to send it to?
- What happened?
- When was this?



A time when I bought something and then decided that I didn't like it...

- When?
- What was it?
- Where did you buy it?
- What did you do with it?



A time when I found something in the street...

- What did you find?
- When?
- Where?
- What did you do with it?



A time when I broke something really valuable...

- How old were you?
- What did you break?
- What happened?



A time when I won a prize / competition...

- What did you win?
- How did you win it?
- What did you do with what you won?



A time when I forgot an important date...

- When?
- What date did you forget?
- What happened?



A time when I lent something to a friend and he / she didn't give it back...

- When?
- What was it?
- Who did you lend it to?
- What happened in the end?



A time when I found a large insect in my house...

- What was it?
- How did you feel?
- What did you do?



A time when I ate something really horrible...

- When?
- Where?
- What did you eat?
- Why did you eat it?



2B COMMUNICATIVE Who did it?

You're all staying at the Empire City Hotel. Sophie Hatcher, a famous model, is staying there too. At 3:55 p.m., Sophie left her room. She didn't close the door. She came back at 4:45 p.m. and her purse with all her money and credit cards wasn't there! She called the manager of the hotel and he has put everyone who is staying in the hotel in this meeting room. One of you stole Sophie Hatcher's money! Help the police find out who it was.

John Snow	Cath Snow	Eric Pyke	Jane Smith
You're a photographer. You're married to Cath Snow and you're on vacation together, but you aren't very happy. 4:00 p.m. – (argue) with your wife in your hotel room. 4:30 p.m. – (call) your mother on your cell phone in the hotel lobby.	You're a teacher. You're married to John Snow and you're on vacation together, but you aren't very happy. 4:00 p.m. – (argue) with your husband in your hotel room. 4:30 p.m. – (cry) in the hotel restaurant. Ella Chandler, a friend of Sophie's, was there too.	You're an architect. You are Sophie Hatcher's boyfriend. You're on vacation with her and her friend Ella Chandler. 4:00 p.m. – (listen) to music in your hotel room. 4:30 p.m. – (talk) to Jane Smith, a woman you met in the hotel, on the patio.	You're a flight attendant. You're staying in the hotel for work. 4:00 p.m. – (play) games on your phone in your room. 4:30 p.m. – (talk) to Eric Pyke, Sophie's boyfriend, on the patio.
Mary Rivers	Emily Davies	Ella Chandler	Edward Strong
You're a singer. You're in the hotel to write some songs. 4:00 p.m. – (play) the piano in the dining room. 4:30 p.m. – (drink) coffee in the dining room with Edward Strong, a journalist.	You're a police officer. You're on vacation with your friend Lydia Brown. 4:00 p.m. – (exercise) in the gym with Lydia Brown. 4:30 p.m. – (watch) a movie in your room.	You're an artist. You are Sophie Hatcher's best friend. You're on vacation with her and her boyfriend, Eric Pyke. 4:00 p.m. – (do) yoga in your room. 4:30 p.m. – (dance) in the hotel restaurant. Cath Snow, a teacher, was there.	You're a journalist. You're in the hotel because you want to write an article about Sophie and her life. 4:00 p.m. – (write) some notes in your room. 4:30 p.m. – (drink) coffee in the dining room with Mary Rivers, a singer.
David Hill	Lydia Brown	Peter Stone	Alex Cameron
You're a security guard. You're on vacation in the hotel. 4:00 p.m. – (give) Peter Stone, a lawyer, advice about security cameras in the hotel lobby. 4:30 p.m. – (talk) with the receptionist in the hotel lobby.	You're an engineer. You're on vacation with your friend Emily Davies. 4:00 p.m. (exercise) in the gym with Emily Davies. 4:30 p.m. – (swim) in the pool with Alex Cameron, a man you met in the hotel.	You're a lawyer. You're on vacation at the hotel. 4:00 p.m. – (ask) David Hill, a security guard, for advice about security cameras in the hotel lobby. 4:30 p.m. – (write) an email in your room.	You're a car salesman. You're on vacation and staying at the hotel. You sold Sophie Hatcher a car but she hasn't paid you. You stole her purse! 4:00 p.m. – (steal) Sophie Hatcher's purse from her room. 4:30 p.m. – (swim) in the pool with Lydia Brown, a woman you met in the hotel.

2C COMMUNICATIVE Sentence race

1	I'm a vegetarian, so...
2	I'm really happy today because...
3	My friend invited me to dinner, but...
4	Although my job isn't very well paid,...
5	Nora felt really sick, so...
6	My brother doesn't go to his English class very often, so...
7	Although her written English is excellent,...
8	Maria didn't buy the jeans because...
9	Pavel has a lot of money, but...
10	It was really sunny yesterday, so...
11	Jack is a little overweight because...
12	Although Danika is very attractive,...
13	It's a great restaurant, although...
14	The game was really boring, so...
15	We enjoyed our vacation, although...
16	They live together, but...
17	I can't go to the party tonight because...
18	It isn't a great movie, but...
19	I live with my parents because...
20	I didn't like David when I first met him, but...

A DAY IN New York!



Schedule for tomorrow:

Breakfast

10 a.m.

11:30 a.m.

Lunch

3:30 p.m.

6 p.m.

Dinner

Sightseeing:

Statue of Liberty (1h 30), Museum of Modern Art (1h), Central Park (1h), American Museum of Natural History (1h), NYC bus tour (1h 30), New York Public Library (30 mins), Empire State Building (30 mins), Bronx Zoo (1h), see a musical (*The Lion King*) (2h 30), Yankee Baseball Stadium (1h), Chinatown (1h)

Shopping:

- SoHo (small independent stores, some souvenirs)
- Fifth Avenue (famous luxury stores, lots of souvenirs)

Places to eat:

- Delmonico's (American food, burgers)
- Lombardi's Pizza (Italian food)
- Red Farm (Chinese food)
- Broadway Bagels (sandwiches, breakfast and lunch)
- Café Blossom (has vegetarian food)

A DAY IN Paris!



Schedule for tomorrow:

Breakfast

10 a.m.

11:30 a.m.

Lunch

3:30 p.m.

6 p.m.

Dinner

Sightseeing:

Louvre Museum (1h 30), Boat trip on River Seine (1h), Arc de Triomphe (30 mins), Notre-Dame Cathedral (1h), Eiffel Tower (1h 30), Musée d'Orsay (1h), Paris bus tour (1h), Latin Quarter (1h), Luxembourg Gardens (30 mins), Versailles Palace (2h 30), Picasso Museum (1h)

Shopping:

- Rue Saint Honoré (luxury stores)
- Marché aux puces (outdoors, lots of small stores)
- The Marais (shopping streets, souvenirs, international stores)
- Galeries Lafayette (big department store)

Places to eat:

- Hanoi Corner (Vietnamese food)
- Midi 12 (French food)
- Pizza Julia (Italian food)
- Breton (crêpes, breakfast and lunch)
- Trombone (café, has vegetarian food)

3B COMMUNICATIVE Come fly with me!

Student A

FLIGHT INFORMATION A

BOARDING PASS	
PASSENGER Brad Washington	DATE SEP 09
AIRLINE American Airlines	FLIGHT AA6149
FROM New York JFK	DEPARTURE TIME 8:40 PM
TO London Gatwick	ARRIVAL TIME 5:30 AM
	SEAT NUMBER 15D

FLIGHT INFORMATION B

BOARDING PASS	
PASSENGER Eva Perez	DATE _____
AIRLINE _____	FLIGHT BA334
FROM _____	DEPARTURE TIME _____
TO _____	ARRIVAL TIME _____
	SEAT NUMBER _____

a Look at the missing information on boarding pass **B**. Write the questions you need to ask **B** to complete boarding pass **B**.

- Who are you flying with? (fly)
- Where _____ from? (fly)
- Where _____ to? (fly)
- When _____? (leave)
- What time _____? (leave)
- What time _____? (arrive)
- Where _____? (sit)

b Ask **B** the questions and complete boarding pass **B**.

c Now **B** will ask you for the information on boarding pass **A**. Answer his / her questions.

Student B

FLIGHT INFORMATION A

BOARDING PASS	
PASSENGER Brad Washington	DATE _____
AIRLINE _____	FLIGHT AA6149
FROM _____	DEPARTURE TIME _____
TO _____	ARRIVAL TIME _____
	SEAT NUMBER _____

FLIGHT INFORMATION B

BOARDING PASS	
PASSENGER Eva Perez	DATE 03 MAR
AIRLINE JetBlue	FLIGHT B6 623
FROM New York JFK	DEPARTURE TIME 07:00 AM
TO Los Angeles LAX	ARRIVAL TIME 10:20 AM
	SEAT NUMBER 5E

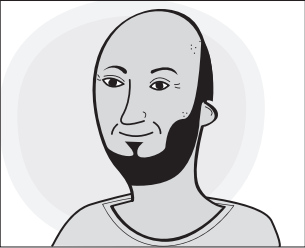
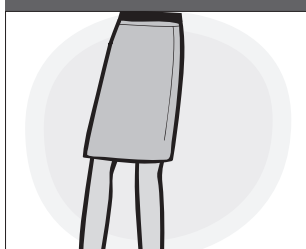
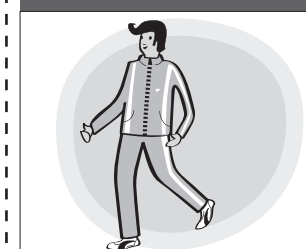
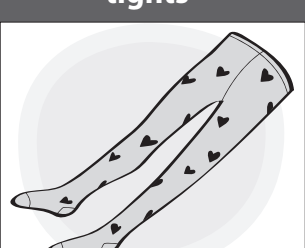
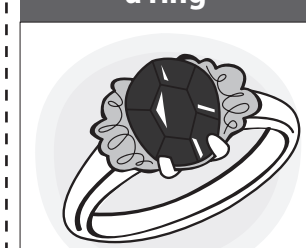
a Look at the missing information on boarding pass **A**. Write the questions you need to ask **A** to complete boarding pass **A**.

- Who are you flying with? (fly)
- Where _____ from? (fly)
- Where _____ to? (fly)
- When _____? (leave)
- What time _____? (leave)
- What time _____? (arrive)
- Where _____? (sit)

b **A** will ask you for the information on boarding pass **B**. Answer his / her questions.

c Now ask **A** the questions and complete boarding pass **A**.

3C COMMUNICATIVE Can you explain the word?

bald 	a beard 	a mustache 	talkative 
thin 	a skirt 	a tracksuit 	sneakers 
tights 	a necklace 	a ring 	souvenirs 
noisy 	a cap 	go surfing 	go camping 
comfortable 	crowded 	foggy 	go sightseeing 
take photos 	baggage claim 	a cart 	fall in love 

4A COMMUNICATIVE Find the response

a Match the sentences with the responses and then check your answers with your teacher.

1 Have you done your English homework?	☒ h	a She's already left.
2 Do you want to come and see the new <i>Mission: Impossible</i> movie?	☐	b No, not yet. I'm going to clean it later.
3 What time's your mother leaving?	☐	c Thanks. I haven't worn them yet.
4 Would you like a cup of coffee?	☐	d You're too late. They've already gone home.
5 Have you booked your flight?	☐	e I've already seen it.
6 What's his new girlfriend like?	☐	f Don't worry! I've already been to the supermarket.
7 Have you cleaned your room yet?	☐	g Yes, I know. I haven't gotten up yet.
8 What's your English class like?	☐	h Yes, I've finished it.
9 I love those shoes!	☐	i I can't. I haven't been to the ATM yet.
10 How was that book?	☐	j I don't know. I haven't read it yet.
11 Can you lend me some money?	☐	k No, not yet. I'm going to do it tonight.
12 You look really sleepy.	☐	l I haven't started it yet. It starts tomorrow.
13 Don't forget to buy some milk!	☐	m No, thanks. I've already had one.
14 Where are Pete and Andrew?	☐	n I don't know. I haven't met her yet.

b Fold the paper in half. **A** say sentences 1–14. **B** can you remember the responses? Then change roles.

4B COMMUNICATIVE Have you ever...?

1	/ ever speak English to somebody outside class? Who / speak to? What about?
2	/ ever break your arm or your leg? How / break it?
3	/ ever do an extreme sport? Which one / do?
4	/ ever be to an English-speaking country? Which country / go to? / speak English there?
5	/ ever live abroad? Where / live? Why / live there?
6	/ ever do volunteer work? What / do? How long / do it for?
7	/ ever sing or play an instrument in public? What / do? How / feel?
8	/ ever run a marathon or a half marathon? When / run it? / finish it?
9	/ ever post a selfie online? Where / post it? Where / take the photo?
10	/ ever complain in a hotel or restaurant? Why / complain?
11	/ ever sleep outside all night? Where / sleep? / sleep well?
12	/ ever speak in public? What / speak about? How / feel?

4C COMMUNICATIVE The same or different?

- a** Complete the sentences with *something, anywhere, nobody*, etc.



- 1 I always have _____ to eat before I go to work / school.
- 2 I never have problems sleeping on buses or planes. I can sleep _____.
- 3 I usually watch _____ on TV in the evening.
- 4 When I watch movies in English, I don't usually understand _____.
- 5 I don't usually do _____ interesting on weekends.
- 6 In my family, _____ speaks any English except me!
- 7 I went _____ really exciting last weekend.
- 8 I never read _____ in English except my textbook.
- 9 There's _____ I really want to buy right now, but I don't have any money.
- 10 I love doing _____ on Sunday mornings, just staying in bed late.
- 11 I hate smoking, and luckily _____ in my family smokes.
- 12 I don't want to go _____ this weekend. I just want to stay at home.
- 13 I don't know _____ in this class very well.
- 14 There's _____ I really want to go on vacation.
- 15 In my town, there's _____ for young people to go at night. It's really boring here.
- 16 I never say _____ in English in class. I'm worried about making mistakes.
- 17 I met _____ very interesting last weekend.
- 18 I always go _____ quiet when I want to study.

- b** Talk to a partner. Tell him / her if the sentences are true or not true for you, and why.

5A COMMUNICATIVE Which do you prefer? Why?

swimming in the ocean OR swimming in a pool	a vacation with your family OR a vacation with friends
watching a movie in your language OR watching a movie with subtitles	watching a movie at the movie theater OR watching a movie at home
texting OR emailing	watching sports OR playing sports
doing English homework OR doing housework	reading a traditional book OR reading a book on screen
eating in a restaurant OR eating at home	buying things in a store OR buying things online
going on vacation in your country OR going on vacation abroad	listening to music with headphones OR listening to music without headphones
going clothes shopping alone OR going clothes shopping with another person	
studying during the day OR studying at night	

5B COMMUNICATIVE Superlative questions

Student A

a Complete the questions with the superlative form of the adjective in parentheses.

- Which of these people is _____? (rich)
a Michael Bloomberg, founder of Bloomberg **b** Amancio Ortega, the founder of Zara
c Mark Zuckerberg, the founder of Meta
 Mark Zuckerberg has a fortune of over 177 billion dollars.
- Which of these is _____ city? (populated)
a Tokyo in Japan **b** New Delhi in India **c** Mexico City in Mexico
 Over 37 million people live in Tokyo's metropolitan area.
- Where is _____ road in the world? (dangerous)
a Russia **b** Australia **c Bolivia**
 Thousands of people have died on the Camino de la Muerte (Death Road) in Bolivia.
- Which is _____ lake in the world? (large)
a Lake Superior in North America **b** Lake Baikal in Russia **c** Lake Victoria in Africa
 Lake Superior has an area of 31,700 square miles.
- Which of these inventions is _____? (recent)
a glasses **b** the microscope **c the telescope**
 The telescope was invented by Galileo Galilei in 1609.
- Which of these cities is _____ with tourists? (popular)
a Istanbul in Türkiye **b New York in the US** **c** Bangkok in Thailand
 More than 61 million people visit New York every year.

b Ask **B** your questions, reading the three options. Tell **B** if he / she is right or wrong (the correct answer is in **bold**) and give the extra information. Then try to answer **B**'s questions.

Student B

a Complete the questions with the superlative form of the adjective given.

- Which is _____ city in the world? (noisy)
a Madrid in Spain **b** Cairo in Egypt **c Mumbai in India**
 The noise in Mumbai is often over 100 decibels. That's as loud as a plane flying near you.
- Which of these is _____ planet? (small)
a Mercury **b** Venus **c** Mars
 Mercury has a radius of 1,516 miles.
- Which of these video games is _____? (popular)
a Super Mario Bros **b** Minecraft **c Tetris**
 Tetris has sold 520 million copies.
- Which is _____ museum in the world? (large)
a The National Gallery in London **b** The National Museum of China **c The Louvre in Paris**
 The Louvre has an area of 652,300 square feet.
- Who is _____ person to win a Nobel Prize? (young)
a Guglielmo Marconi for inventing the telegraph **b Malala Yousafzai for fighting for women's right to education** **c** Marie Curie for discovering radioactivity
 Malala Yousafzai won the Nobel Peace Prize when she was 17 years old.
- Which was _____ movie to win an Oscar for Best Film? (long)
a *The Lord of the Rings: The Return of the King* **b Gone with the Wind** **c** *Titanic*
Gone with the Wind lasts 3 hours and 58 minutes.

b Try to answer **A**'s questions. Then ask **A** your questions, reading the three options. Tell **A** if he / she is right or wrong (the correct answer is in **bold**) and give the extra information.

5C COMMUNICATIVE How much / How many...?

How _____ people are there in your (workplace / class)?

- Do you think it's a good number?
- Is it a big place or is it small?
- Do you enjoy working / studying there?
- How many of your colleagues / classmates do you know well?

How _____ time do you spend in front of a computer every day?

- Is it for work or for pleasure?
- What kind of things do you normally do on your computer?
- Do you enjoy doing them?
- Do you think you're good with computers? Why (not)?

How _____ different drinks do you have a day?

- What's your favorite drink?
- How often do you have it?
- When you go out with your friends, what do you normally drink?
- What do you normally drink for breakfast?

How _____ fast food do you eat?

- What's your favorite fast-food restaurant?
- What things do you normally order?
- How long do you have to wait for it?
- How much money do you normally spend when you eat there?

How _____ times a week do you see your friends?

- How many friends do you normally meet with?
- Where do you normally go?
- What do you normally do?

How _____ luggage do you usually take on vacation?

- Is it usually enough or too much?
- Do you often forget to take something?
- Do you buy a lot of things when you are on vacation?
- What kind of things do you buy?

How _____ music do you listen to in a day?

- What do you normally use to listen to music (your phone / the radio, etc.)?
- What is your favorite song right now?
- How often do you listen to it?
- Do you have a favorite band?

How _____ do the movies cost in your town / city?

- Do you think it's expensive?
- How often do you go to the movies?
- What was the last movie you saw in the movie theater?
- Did you enjoy it? Why (not)?

How _____ hours a week do you spend doing housework?

- What housework do you usually do?
- Do you live alone or with other people?
- How much of the housework do they do?
- What housework do you hate doing?

How _____ time do you have for yourself every day?

- Do you think it's enough?
- What do you like doing when you have free time?
- Do you think you're going to have more or less free time in the future? Why?

How _____ times do you use social media in a day?

- Do you like social media? Why (not)?
- What social media sites / apps do you use?
- What do you use them for?
- Do you have a lot of friends or followers?

How _____ do you travel during the year?

- Would you like to travel more?
- What places would you like to visit? Why?
- How do you prefer to travel?
- Do you ever travel for your work / studies?

6A COMMUNICATIVE Positive or negative?

a Complete **THE OPTIMIST SAYS** column with positive predictions.

YOU SAY	THE OPTIMIST SAYS
1 I lost my wallet in the street yesterday.	Don't worry. _____
2 I broke up with my partner.	Cheer up! I'm sure _____
3 We bought a dog – a Labrador!	Congratulations! _____
4 I have a really difficult exam tomorrow.	Good luck! I'm sure _____
5 We're going to see the new <i>Spider-Man</i> movie!	Fantastic! _____
6 I'm going to start going to the gym next week!	That's great! _____
7 I have a date tonight. I'm really nervous!	Don't worry. I'm sure _____
8 I'm going to study in the US next year.	That's really good. _____
9 My team is playing an important game today.	That's fantastic! _____
10 I'm going to Mary's party tonight.	Great! I'm sure _____
11 I lost my job.	Cheer up! _____
12 My plane leaves in ten minutes. I can't find my passport!	Don't worry. _____



b Talk to other students. Read a **YOU SAY** sentence and listen to their **THE OPTIMIST SAYS** prediction.

6B COMMUNICATIVE Guess my sentence

Student A

- 1 I like these shoes. I think I _____ them.
 - 2 **I'll pick you up at eight o'clock. I'll call you before I leave home.**
 - 3 Please don't worry, Mom. I _____ you when I get to Paris.
 - 4 **Your suitcase looks really heavy. I'll carry it.**
 - 5 I _____ you the money for Maria's present tomorrow.
 - 6 **I'll help you with your English homework. I can see you're having problems.**
 - 7 It's really hot in here. I _____ the air conditioning.
 - 8 **There's somebody at the door. I'll go and see who it is.**
 - 9 I _____ for lunch today. You paid last time.
 - 10 **Don't worry! I'll remember to phone the bank tomorrow. I have a good memory.**
 - 11 The phone's ringing. I _____ it.
 - 12 **Have you forgotten your book? Don't worry. I'll lend you mine.**
 - 13 I need to go now. I _____ you tomorrow.
 - 14 You do the cooking and I'll do the dishes.
-

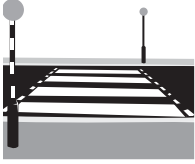
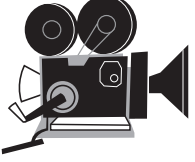
Student B

- 1 **I like these shoes. I think I'll buy them.**
- 2 I'll pick you up at eight o'clock. I _____ you before I leave home.
- 3 **Please don't worry, Mom. I'll text you when I get to Paris.**
- 4 Your suitcase looks really heavy. I _____ it.
- 5 **I'll give you the money for Maria's present tomorrow.**
- 6 I _____ you with your English homework. I can see you're having problems.
- 7 **It's really hot in here. I'll turn on the air conditioning.**
- 8 There's somebody at the door. I _____ and see who it is.
- 9 **I'll pay for lunch today. You paid last time.**
- 10 Don't worry! I _____ to call the bank tomorrow. I have a good memory.
- 11 **The phone's ringing. I'll answer it.**
- 12 Have you forgotten your book? Don't worry. I _____ you mine.
- 13 **I need to go now. I'll see you tomorrow.**
- 14 You do the cooking and I _____ the dishes.



7A COMMUNICATIVE I'm going to tell you about...

- Choose six topics and think about what you're going to say. Talk to a partner.
Give and ask for more information.

	what I think is the best way to learn a language		something I learned to do as a child but can't do now
	something I think is important to teach young children		something I often forget to do
	why tourists choose to come to my country		something I need to buy soon
	the things I do to relax after a hard day		something I've decided to do in the future
	a sport or activity I tried to learn but couldn't		something I find difficult to do in English
	something I wanted to be when I was younger		what I want to do tonight
	somebody I would like to meet		what I think is the best way to make new friends
	something I thought of buying but decided not to		things that are important to do if you go for a job interview
	the things I think are important to do for a healthy life		a movie that's good to watch when I'm feeling sad

7B COMMUNICATIVE Questions with gerunds

Student A

- a** Complete the questions with the *-ing* form of the verbs from the list.

cook do (x2) fly get up go read wait

- 1 Do you like _____ early?
- 2 Are you afraid of _____?
- 3 Do you mind _____ for people who are late?
- 4 Did you hate _____ to school when you were younger?
- 5 Do you enjoy _____ in bed?
- 6 Are you good at _____?
- 7 Have you started _____ a new activity recently?
- 8 Do you think _____ housework is boring?

- b** Ask **B** your questions. Ask for more information.

Student B

- a** Complete the questions with the *-ing* form of the verbs from the list.

be do eat get go (x2) play walk

- 1 Do you spend much time _____ in the country?
- 2 Have you stopped _____ an activity recently?
- 3 Do you enjoy _____ to the movies alone?
- 4 Do you feel like _____ out tonight?
- 5 Do you think _____ computer games teaches you anything?
- 6 Did you like _____ fruit and vegetables when you were a child?
- 7 Are you thinking of _____ a new haircut soon?
- 8 Do you dream of _____ famous?

- b** Ask **A** your questions. Ask for more information.

7C COMMUNICATIVE In the US

a Work in pairs. Read the sentences about the US and decide if they are true or false.



		True	False
1	You must not ride a bike on the interstate.	☐	☐
2	Stores must not sell tobacco to anyone under the age of 18.	☐	☐
3	You don't have to pay to use most highways.	☐	☐
4	All dogs and cats must have a microchip with the name and address of their owner.	☐	☐
5	Everybody has to do six months of community service.	☐	☐
6	You have to wear a helmet when you ride a motorcycle in most states.	☐	☐
7	You don't have to have an ID card.	☐	☐
8	All stores must close on Sundays.	☐	☐
9	You must not leave a child under 12 alone at home.	☐	☐
10	You can't play loud music in your house after 9:00 p.m.	☐	☐
11	You have to be 17 years old to vote in a presidential election.	☐	☐
12	You don't have to vote in a presidential election.	☐	☐
13	You have to be over 16 to have a Meta account.	☐	☐
14	If you have a dog, you must have a special license.	☐	☐
15	TV shows before 10:00 p.m. must not include bad language.	☐	☐
16	You don't have to study a foreign language in high school.	☐	☐
17	You must not text and drive in most states.	☐	☐
18	Parents don't have to send their children to school. They can educate them at home.	☐	☐

b Check your answers with your teacher.

c Work with a partner. Are the laws the same or different in your country?
Which of these rules would you like to have in your country?

8A COMMUNICATIVE I need some advice

I have a job interview in English next week. I really want the job. How should I prepare for it?	I want to get in shape, but I don't really like going to the gym. What should I do?
Some friends are coming over for dinner and I don't have time to cook. What should I do?	Another company has offered me a job. The salary is lower than my current job, but the work is much more interesting. What should I do?
I had an argument with my best friend yesterday. It was my fault. Now she's not talking to me. What should I do?	I don't like my brother's new girlfriend, but he is very happy with her. What should I say to him?
I want to buy a present for my grandmother. She's 90 and she likes reading, traveling, and classical music. What should I buy?	I want to learn another foreign language so I can get a good job. Which one should I learn?
I'd like to learn to play a musical instrument. Which one should I choose?	My family wants to get a pet. We have a small house and we're all very busy. What kind of pet should we get?
I have two tickets for a concert. My dad and my sister really like the band and want to come with me. Who should I take to the concert?	I'm really bad with money. I always spend more than I have, especially when I go out. What should I do?
My friend wants to be a singer, but I don't think he sings very well. What should I say to him?	My partner's mother doesn't like me very much. What should I do?
I can't sleep at night. What should I do?	I want to go on vacation to a really beautiful place this summer. I love the beach. Where should I go?
I want to become a vegetarian, but my family really loves meat. What should I do?	My cousin is coming to visit me. He's allergic to cats and I have a cat. What should I do?

8B COMMUNICATIVE Conditionals race

a Complete the conditional sentences. Make them as interesting as you can!

1 We're playing really well, it's 3-1.	If we win, _____
2 The movie starts at 6:30.	If we don't leave now, _____
3 There are a lot of things I want to buy!	If I don't have enough money, _____
4 We don't have any sandwiches for the trip.	If we're hungry later, _____
5 We really need a vacation.	If we can get a cheap flight, _____
6 It's getting really late.	If we don't go to the supermarket now, _____
7 It's going to be really cold tomorrow.	If it snows, _____
8 I can't see my car keys anywhere.	If I don't find them, _____
9 That exam was really hard.	If I don't pass it, _____
10 You look tired.	If you don't want to go out this evening, _____
11 My girlfriend is working late today.	If she doesn't finish work before 9:00 p.m., _____
12 We're at the station, waiting for Pablo.	If he doesn't come soon, _____
13 I've bought a lot of food for the party.	If we don't eat it all, _____
14 The teacher has just told us the date of the exam.	If you don't write it down, _____
15 I know you don't like Evie, but I think she's coming to the party.	If she comes, _____

b Compare your answers with another pair. Who do you think wrote more interesting sentences?

c Fold the paper and look at the first part of the sentences. Try to remember what you wrote.



Do you like reading books?

YES

NO

- 1 Do you have a favorite place or time of day to read? Why do you like it?
- 2 What kind of books do you like reading?
- 3 Do you have a favorite author? How many of their books have you read?
- 4 Do you prefer to read traditional books or e-books? Why?
- 5 What was the last book you bought? Where did you buy it?
- 6 Are you a fast reader or a slow reader?
- 7 Do you sometimes read more than one book at a time?
- 8 Is there a book everyone liked but you hated? Which one?
- 9 Have you ever started reading a book but not finished it? Why not?
- 10 Whose advice on books do you always listen to?
- 11 How do you choose books to read / buy?
- 12 Do you ever read books more than once?

- 1 Do you read any magazines or newspapers? Which ones?
- 2 Do you read online? What do you read?
- 3 How do you find out about the news?
- 4 Did your parents read to you when you were a child? What kind of books did they read?
- 5 Did you read comics when you were a child? Which ones?
- 6 Is there anybody in your family who likes reading? Who?
- 7 Have you ever written a blog? Do you like reading blogs? Why?
- 8 Do you think women like reading more than men? Why?
- 9 If somebody gives you a book as a present, what do you do?
- 10 Did you have a favorite book when you were a child?
- 11 Do you think that people today read more or less than 20 years ago? Why?
- 12 Do you follow many people on social media? Do you like reading what they post?

9A COMMUNICATIVE I think you'd...

Student A

a Complete the sentences about **B**.

- 1 If you could be anywhere in the world right now, I think you'd choose to be in _____.
- 2 If you bought a new car today, I think you'd buy a _____.
- 3 If you didn't study English, I think you'd like to study _____.
- 4 If we had lunch together, I think we'd go to _____.
- 5 If you could go to a concert tonight, I think you'd go and see _____.
- 6 If you could go to an English-speaking country, I think you'd go to _____.
- 7 If you could choose your ideal job, I think you'd like to be a / an _____.
- 8 If you tried a new sport / hobby, I think you'd like to do / play _____.
- 9 If you bought a new apartment or house, I think you'd buy one in _____.
- 10 If you got a new pet, I think you'd get a _____.

b Read your sentences to **B**. Were you right?

c Listen to **B**'s sentences about you. Tell him / her if they are right or wrong, and why.

Student B

a Complete the sentences about **A**.

- 1 If you had a big problem, I think you'd speak to _____.
- 2 If you could be an animal, I think you'd like to be a / an _____.
- 3 If you sang karaoke, I think you'd sing _____.
- 4 If you had enough money, I think you'd buy a _____.
- 5 If somebody wanted to buy you a present, I think you'd love a / some _____.
- 6 If you could change one thing in your house or apartment, I think you'd _____.
- 7 If you could learn to play a musical instrument well, I think you'd choose _____.
- 8 If someone invited you to a very expensive restaurant, I think you'd order _____.
- 9 If you could appear on a TV show, I think you'd appear on _____.
- 10 If you could meet a famous person, I think you'd like to meet _____.

b Listen to **A**'s sentences about you. Tell him / her if they are right or wrong, and why.

c Read your sentences to **A**. Were you right?

Student A



Scarlett Johansson This famous American actress has katsaridaphobia, which means she's afraid of cockroaches. She's had the phobia since she was a child, but it got worse when she lived in New York at the beginning of her career. Once, she woke up with a cockroach on her face and another one in her shoe! Since then, she's absolutely hated them. She's also very afraid of birds, which was a little bit of a problem for her while filming *We Bought A Zoo*.

True or false?



Orlando Bloom Have you seen *Pirates of the Caribbean*? If you have, then you'll probably remember this actor who appears in the movie. But this "brave" actor has a serious phobia, which is swinophobia. This means that he is afraid of pigs. He has been afraid of them since he was a teenager. Although this phobia isn't very common, it's had a direct effect on his career. A director asked him to be in the movie *Animal Farm* but Orlando said no because it meant that he had to work with a pig.

True or false?



Oprah Winfrey This American talk show host and producer is one of the most influential women in the world. However, she suffers from chiclephobia, which means she has a fear of chewing gum. Apparently, she has banned people from chewing gum at her production studio. She has had the phobia since she was a child. It started when she saw her grandmother putting her chewing gum in the kitchen cupboards.

True or false?

Student B



Justin Timberlake This singer and actor is from the US. He has to travel a lot because of his job, and sometimes the arachnophobia he suffers from is a problem for him. He's been afraid of spiders for a long time. He thinks his phobia started at the age of seven or eight when he found a spider in his bed. Last year, he was staying in a hotel and saw a spider in the bathroom. He couldn't kill it, so he asked the receptionist to come and kill it for him!

True or false?



Rihanna This famous singer and actress comes from the island of Barbados. So maybe it's strange that she has ichthyophobia – she is afraid of fish and other sea animals. She's had this phobia for a long time. Once, she was on a beach in Barbados and she went in the water. She could see lots of small fish swimming around her feet. She was so afraid that a man had to take her out of the water. Since then, she's been really afraid of them.

True or false?



Robert De Niro This Hollywood megastar is probably one of the greatest actors of all time. However, many of us have something in common with him. He has dentophobia, which means he's afraid of the dentist. He has suffered from it since he made the film *Cape Fear*. Before filming, he paid a dentist \$5,000 to make his teeth look bad enough for the role of Max Cady in the movie. Then, after filming, he paid a dentist \$20,000 to repair his teeth. That's dedication to his job!

True or false?

Student A

- a Read the biographies.



Bob Dylan is a singer and songwriter who was born in Minnesota in ¹_____. In 1960, he left college, and the following January, he went to ²_____. His real last name was ³_____, but he changed it to Dylan in 1962 after the famous Welsh poet Dylan Thomas. He became very famous in the 60s with songs like *The Times They Are a-Changin'* and *Blowin' in the Wind*, which inspired people to protest against war and injustice. The folk singer Joan Baez helped him become famous because ⁴_____. In 1965, he married Sara Lownds and they had five children, but they divorced in 1977. He has recorded ⁵_____ studio albums, and he still writes music and plays in concerts. He's also an artist; he has produced nine books of ⁶_____. In 2016, he received the ⁷_____.



Jakob Dylan is a singer and songwriter. He was born in New York in 1969. His father is the famous musician Bob Dylan. He has two brothers and two sisters. When he was in high school, Jakob played the guitar in several bands. In 1988, he moved to New York to study Art, but he started writing songs instead. He formed a band, The Wallflowers, and they have released seven albums and won two Grammy awards. They also recorded a version of David Bowie's song *Heroes* for the soundtrack of the movie *Godzilla*. Jakob has composed some music for TV shows and other musicians. He has also recorded two solo albums. He's been married to his wife Paige since 1992, and they have four children together.

- b Complete the questions you need to ask **B** to find out the missing information about Bob Dylan.

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 When _____ born? | 5 How many studio albums _____? |
| 2 Where _____ to in 1961? | 6 What kind of books _____? |
| 3 _____ his real last name? | 7 What prize _____ in 2016? |
| 4 How _____ him become famous? | |

- c Ask **B** the questions and complete Bob Dylan's biography. Answer **B**'s questions about Jakob Dylan. What do the father and son have in common?

Student B

- a Read the biographies.



Bob Dylan is a singer and songwriter who was born in Minnesota in 1941. In 1960, he left college, and the following January, he went to New York. His real last name was Zimmerman, but he changed it to Dylan in 1962 after the famous Welsh poet Dylan Thomas. He became very famous in the 60s with songs like *The Times They Are a-Changin'* and *Blowin' in the Wind*, which inspired people to protest against the government. The folk singer Joan Baez helped him become famous because she sang his songs and made them popular. In 1965, he married Sara Lownds and they had five children, but they divorced in 1977. He has recorded more than 40 studio albums, and he still writes music and plays in concerts. He's also an artist; he has produced nine books of paintings and drawings. In 2016, he received the Nobel Prize in Literature.



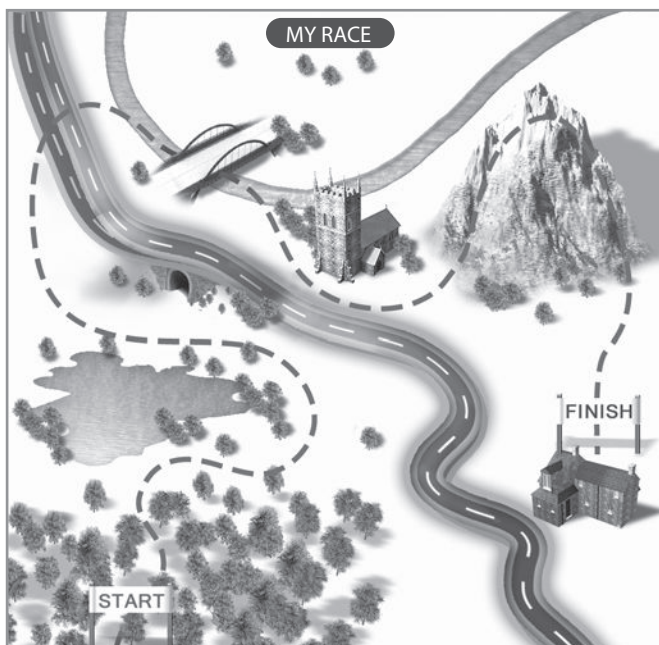
Jakob Dylan is a ¹_____. He was born in New York in ²_____. His father is the famous musician Bob Dylan. He has ³_____ brothers and _____ sisters. When he was in high school, Jakob played the guitar in several bands. In 1988, he moved to New York to study Art, but he started writing songs instead. He formed a band, The Wallflowers, and they have released ⁴_____ albums and won two Grammy awards. They also recorded a version of David Bowie's song ⁵_____ for the soundtrack of the movie *Godzilla*. Jakob has composed some music for ⁶_____. He has also recorded two solo albums. He's been married to his wife Paige since ⁷_____ and they have four children together.

- b Complete the questions you need to ask **A** to find out the missing information about Jakob Dylan.

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 1 What _____ do? | 5 Which David Bowie song _____? |
| 2 When _____ born? | 6 Who _____ music for? |
| 3 How many brothers and sisters _____? | 7 How long _____ married? |
| 4 How many albums _____? | |

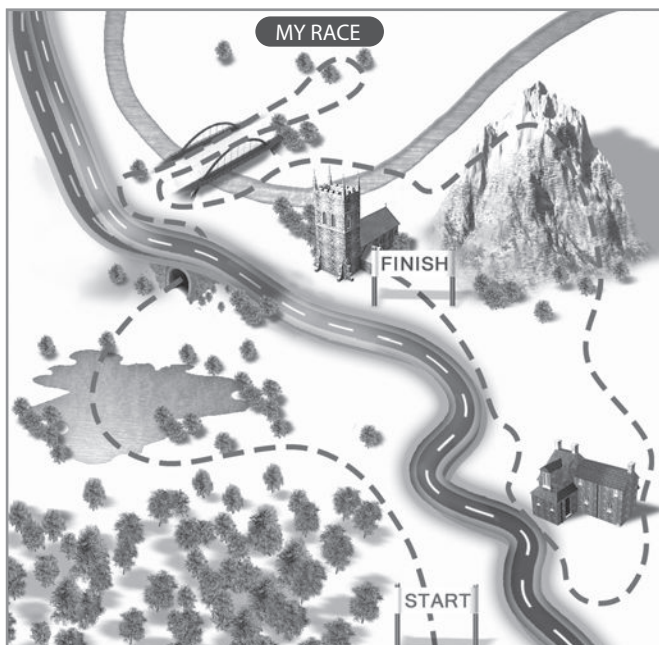
- c Answer **A**'s questions about Bob Dylan. Ask **A** the questions and complete Jakob Dylan's biography. What do the father and son have in common?

Student A



- You are going to run an extreme race! You can climb, run, or swim. Describe the route on the **MY RACE** map to **B**.
- Listen to **B** describe a route and draw it on your second map.
- Compare your maps with **B**'s. Did you draw the route correctly? Did **B**?

Student B



- Listen to **A** describe a route and draw it on your second map.
- You are going to run an extreme race! You can climb, run, or swim. Describe the route on the **MY RACE** map to **A**.
- Compare your maps with **A**'s. Did you draw the route correctly? Did **A**?

Student A

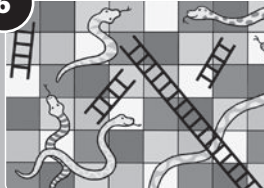
- a** Read these sentences to **B** and listen to his / her answers. Do they go together?
- You've left your towel on the floor again.
 - I really need the book that you borrowed from me.
 - The music is too loud!
 - I don't know what this word means.
 - Where is that letter from the bank?
 - Are you watching a movie? I want to watch the news!
 - I don't want to leave my dog alone this weekend.
 - This T-shirt that I bought doesn't fit.
- b** Listen to **B**'s situations and answer them using one of the phrasal verb sentences below.
- We've run out.* *Yes, I'm really looking forward to it.*
- Yes, I get along very well with her.* *Don't worry, I'll take them off.*
- I think you should give it up.* *I'll help you look for it.*
- Sorry, I'll fill it out now.* *OK, I'll put them away.*
- c** Now repeat the activity, but try to remember (not read) the phrasal verb sentences. Can you both remember your answers?

Student B

- a** Listen to **A**'s situations and answer them using one of the phrasal verb sentences below.
- It will be over in ten minutes, I promise!.* *Sorry, I threw it away.*
- Why don't you take it back?* *OK, I'll pick it up.*
- Sorry, I'll turn it down.* *Don't worry, I'll look after him.*
- Sorry, I'll give it back tomorrow.* *Look it up in the dictionary!*
- b** Now read these sentences to **A** and listen to his / her answers. Do they go together?
- I think I drink too much coffee.
 - Don't come in here in those dirty boots!
 - Do you like your boss?
 - I can't find any eggs in the refrigerator.
 - Are you excited about going to Rome?
 - I can't find my phone!
 - You've left all your clothes on the bed!
 - You forgot to complete this form.
- c** Now repeat the activity, but try to remember (not read) the phrasal verb sentences. Can you both remember your answers?

11A COMMUNICATIVE My past

a How have you changed? Write a name or phrase in as many boxes as you can.

1 	2 	3 	4 
14 	1 Something you used to be afraid of 2 A favorite toy you used to have 3 A singer or band you used to listen to 4 A kind of food or drink you didn't use to like 5 Something you used to collect		5 
13 	6 A game you used to play a lot 7 A pet you used to have 8 A place where you used to go to on vacation with your family 9 A friend you used to have in school		6 
12 	10 A subject you used to be very bad at 11 A TV show you used to love 12 A teacher at school you didn't use to like 13 A house / an apartment you used to live in 14 An instrument you used to play		7 
11 	10 	9 	8 

b Compare your boxes with a partner's. Ask for and give more information about how and why you've changed.

**might...
might not...**

- The weather is really nice today. We...
- I have to write this down. If I don't...
- I don't have a lot of money this month. I...
- Laura hasn't answered my texts. She...
- We should take some sandwiches for our trip. We...
- We haven't decided where to go on vacation, but we...
- It's going to be a difficult game, but we...
- We can't decide which movie to see. I think we...
- I don't know what to wear to the party. I...
- I don't feel very well. I...
- We haven't made dinner yet and it's late. I...
- There's an interesting show on TV tonight, but I'm really tired. I...
- My mother-in-law gave me a really ugly painting. I...
- It's very cold, but it's sunny. We...
- I've bought a new book, but my friend says it's boring. I...

Start
Finish

11C COMMUNICATIVE So do I!

I love _____. (a kind of food or drink) I wouldn't like to _____. (an activity) I can't _____ very well. (a skill)	Who else? _____ _____ _____
I'm a big fan of _____. (an actor) I often watch _____. (a TV show) I haven't been to _____. (a city or country)	Who else? _____ _____ _____
I'm really good at _____. (an activity) I didn't go out last _____. (a day of the week) I've always wanted to try _____. (an activity)	Who else? _____ _____ _____
I can't play _____. (a musical instrument) I like reading _____. (a kind of book / magazine) I'd like to go to _____. (a country)	Who else? _____ _____ _____
I haven't seen _____. (a famous movie) I can _____ very fast. (an action) I'm not interested in _____. (a sport)	Who else? _____ _____ _____
I went to _____ last weekend. (a place) I don't like traveling by _____. (a kind of transportation) I'm going to have _____ for dinner today. (a kind of food)	Who else? _____ _____ _____

12A COMMUNICATIVE What had happened?

1 I left the house in a hurry, and when I got to the airport, I suddenly remembered that...

2 I was angry with my partner because...

3 When I looked at my phone, I realized that...

4 I couldn't read the menu because...

5 I didn't do well on my exam because...

6 I couldn't use my credit card because...

7 The burglars got into our house while we were on vacation because we...

8 The police got to the bank very quickly, but...

9 My dad was very happy when he arrived because his team...

10 I went back to the store to buy you that shirt you liked, but...

11 When we got to Joe and Hannah's house, we were very surprised because they...

12 We decided not to go to the Empire State Building that day because...

13 I was incredibly tired that day because I...

14 The moment I pressed "send" I realized that...

15 When I saw Mary at the school reunion, I didn't recognize her because she...

12B COMMUNICATIVE The celebrity interview

Student A

- a** Imagine that you are a famous person (e.g., an actor, musician, etc.). You are going to be interviewed on TV. Look at the questions. Try to imagine how the famous person you chose would answer.

- 1 Where are you living right now?
- 2 What countries have you been to?
- 3 What's the most interesting thing you've ever done?
- 4 What's the most expensive thing you've ever bought?
- 5 What do you like doing in your free time?
- 6 What are you going to do next?
- 7 What do you like best about your career?
- 8 What are you preparing for right now?
- 9 What's your ambition?
- 10 What do you do to relax?



- b** Tell **B** who you are. Now answer **B**'s questions.

I'm Dua Lipa.

Hi, Dua! Thank you for agreeing to this interview.

- c** Ask **B** your questions and write down his / her answers.

- d** Now change partners. Tell them about **B**'s answers and listen to theirs.

Dua Lipa said that what she liked best about her career was traveling around the world.

Student B

- a** Imagine that you are a famous person (e.g., an actor, musician, etc.). You are going to be interviewed on TV. Look at the questions. Try to imagine how the famous person you chose would answer.

- 1 Where are you living right now?
- 2 What countries have you been to?
- 3 What's the most interesting thing you've ever done?
- 4 What's the most expensive thing you've ever bought?
- 5 What do you like doing in your free time?
- 6 What are you going to do next?
- 7 What do you like best about your career?
- 8 What are you preparing for right now?
- 9 What's your ambition?
- 10 What do you do to relax?



- b** Ask **A** your questions and write down his / her answers.

I'm Ryan Gosling.

Hi, Ryan! Thank you for agreeing to this interview.

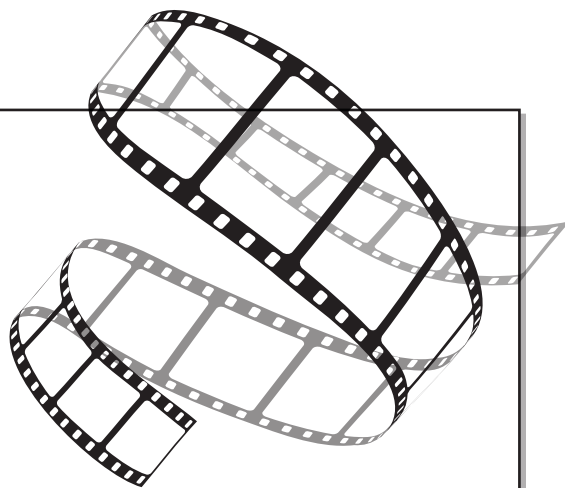
- c** Tell **A** who you are. Now answer **A**'s questions.

- d** Now change partners. Tell them about **A**'s answers and listen to theirs.

Ryan Gosling said that what he liked best about his career was traveling around the world.

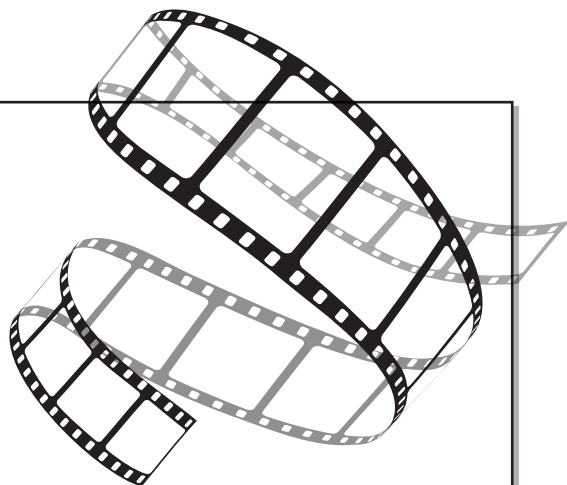
Student A

- Which fictional family _____ at 4 Privet Drive? (live)
a The Dursleys **b** The Griffins **c** The Simpsons
- In which movie series _____ "May the force be with you?" (an actor / say)
a *Star Trek* **b** *Back to the Future* **c** *Star Wars*
- How many Oscars _____ in his life? (Walt Disney / win)
a 2 **b** 12 **c** 22
- Who _____ as Doctor Strange in many of the Marvel superhero movies? (appear)
a Robert Downey Jr **b** **Benedict Cumberbatch** **c** Chris Evans
- What year _____ to in *Back to the Future*? (Marty McFly / go)
a **1955** **b** 1975 **c** 1985
- In which movie _____ in love with Maria? (Tony / fall)
a *West Side Story* **b** *PS: I Love You* **c** *Love Actually*
- Who _____ Willy Wonka in the 2023 movie, *Wonka*? (play)
a Ben Whishaw **b** Cillian Murphy **c** **Timothée Chalamet**
- What superpower _____? (Batman / have)
a immortality **b** **none** **c** invisibility



Student B

- In which country _____ *The Lord of the Rings* trilogy? (Peter Jackson / film)
a England **b** Australia **c** **New Zealand**
- Which of these actors _____ in most of Hitchcock's movies? (appear)
a **Alfred Hitchcock** **b** James Stewart **c** Cary Grant
- How much _____? (an Oscar / weigh)
a 5.5 pounds **b** **8.8 pounds** **c** 15.5 pounds
- Which actor _____ James Bond in more movies? (play)
a Sean Connery **b** **Roger Moore** **c** Daniel Craig
- Which series of movies _____ more Oscars? (win)
a **The Lord of the Rings** **b** *The Hunger Games* **c** *The Avengers*
- Which actress _____ the part of Ariel in the 2023 Disney movie *The Little Mermaid*? (play)
a Scarlett Johansson **b** Natalie Portman **c** **Halle Bailey**
- In which movie _____ "Hasta la vista, baby?" (Arnold Schwarzenegger / say)
a **Terminator 2** **b** The Terminator **c** Terminator 3
- Who _____ *Barbie*? (direct)
a **Greta Gerwig** **b** Steven Spielberg **c** Margot Robbie



Vocabulary activity instructions

1B Describing people

A pairwork vocabulary race

Sts look at photos and definitions and complete the missing words. Copy one sheet per pair or one sheet per student.

LANGUAGE

Appearance and personality adjectives

- Put Sts in pairs and give out the sheets. Tell Sts to read the definitions, look at the photos and write as many words as they can within a time limit. The lines indicate how many letters are in each word. Set the time limit.
- The first pair to complete all the words correctly is the winner. Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 mustache 2 funny 3 slim 4 bald 5 cheap
6 medium-height 7 blond 8 beard 9 cold
10 hardworking 11 overweight 12 curly 13 dark
14 quiet 15 nice

- Now focus on **Activation** and get Sts to cover the words on the right and say the words.

1C Things you wear

A pairwork brainstorm activity

Sts think of one, two, three, or four words connected to clothes. Copy one sheet per pair or one sheet per student.

LANGUAGE

Clothes

- Put Sts in pairs and give out the sheets. Don't go through all the questions, but demonstrate the activity, eliciting the answer to the first question (*gloves*).
- Set a time limit, and tell Sts to start. Give more time if you can see that Sts need it.
- When the time limit is up, check answers and find out which pair has the most correct answers.

POSSIBLE ANSWERS

1 gloves 2 blouse 3 hat, cap 4 sandals, boots, shoes, socks 5 pants, jeans 6 scarf, tie 7 leggings, tights 8 necklace, bracelet, ring 9 T-shirt, shorts, sneakers, tracksuit 10 hat, jacket, sweater, hoodie

- Now focus on **Activation** and point out the example. Give Sts time to write five sentences about what they are wearing. Make sure they include colors.
- Finally, put Sts in pairs and get them to read their sentences to each other.

2A Vacations

A fill-in-the-blank activity

Sts complete three texts connected to vacations. Copy one sheet per student.

LANGUAGE

Vacation verbs and phrases

- Give out the sheets. Tell Sts to complete the texts with an appropriate word or verb in the correct form. Point out that the first letter(s) is given to help them.
- Set a time limit for Sts to complete the task.
- Get Sts to compare with a partner and then check answers.

ANSWERS

Story 1

1 away 2 go 3 stay 4 book 5 camping

Story 2

1 skiing 2 rented 3 rent 4 had

Story 3

1 sightseeing 2 swimming 3 sunbathe
4 spend 5 take

- Now focus on **Activation** and give Sts time to write about their last vacation.
- Finally, put Sts in pairs and get them to read their texts to each other. You could get some Sts to read their text in front of the class.

2B Prepositions *at, in, on*

A preposition fill-in-the-blank activity

Sts complete sentences which have missing prepositions. Copy one sheet per student.

LANGUAGE

Prepositions of time and place

- Give out the sheets. Tell Sts to write the correct preposition in the **PREPOSITION** column. They should complete as many sentences as they can. Set a time limit.
- Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 in 2 in 3 at 4 at 5 on 6 in 7 in 8 on 9 at 10 in 11 at
12 in 13 on 14 at 15 at 16 on 17 at 18 in 19 on 20 in

- Now focus on **Activation** and tell Sts to cover the **PREPOSITION** column and say the sentences.

3B What's the preposition?

An error correction activity

Sts correct preposition mistakes. Copy one sheet per student.

LANGUAGE

Prepositions

- Put Sts in pairs and give out the sheets. Point out that the first two have been done for them.
- Sts continue in pairs. Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 3 ✓
4 ✓
5 ✗ Can you ask the teacher **for**...?
6 ✗ When I arrived **at**...
7 ✓
8 ✓
9 ✗ He worries **about**...
10 ✗ Does this coat belong **to**...?
11 ✓
12 ✗ How often do you speak **to**...?
13 ✗ Maria's invited me **to**...
14 ✗ She's fallen in love **with**...
15 ✓

- Now focus on **Activation** and make sure Sts understand all the lexis, e.g., *arguments*. Give Sts time to complete the five sentences.
- Put Sts in pairs and get them to read their sentences to each other. Find out if any pairs completed a sentence in the same way.

4A Housework, *make* or *do*?

A fill-in-the-blank review activity

Sts complete sentences with the correct form of the verb. Copy one sheet per student.

LANGUAGE

Housework phrases, *make* or *do*

- Put Sts in pairs and give out the sheets. Make sure Sts know they have to use the right form of the verb. Elicit the answer to 1 (*make*).
- Tell Sts to complete as many sentences as they can.
- Check answers.

ANSWERS

- 1 make 2 puts 3 doing 4 does 5 made 6 do 7 set
8 do 9 made 10 doing 11 make 12 making
13 clean 14 take 15 did 16 pick 17 make
18 do 19 do 20 made

- Now focus on **Activation** and give Sts time to write their sentences.
- Finally, put Sts in pairs and get them to read their sentences to each other.
- Find out if any Sts do or don't do the same housework.

4B Shopping

A crossword puzzle activity

Sts read clues and complete the crossword. Copy one sheet per student or one sheet per pair.

LANGUAGE

Shopping and online shopping

- Explain to Sts that they are going to complete a crossword. Make sure Sts understand *across* and *down*.
- Either give each student a sheet or put Sts in pairs and give each pair a sheet. Tell Sts to write the words in the crossword. Point out that the first one (*account*) has been done for them.
- Give Sts time to complete the crossword.
- Check answers.

ANSWERS

ACROSS 6 suit 7 checkout 9 shelf 10 fit
11 receipt 12 salesperson

DOWN 1 customer 2 cart 3 take...back
4 fitting room 6 size 8 basket

- Now focus on **Activation** and get Sts to cover the crossword and read the clues. Can they remember the answers? You could put Sts in pairs. **A** reads a clue from the sheet and **B** (not looking at the sheet) guesses the word. Make sure they change roles.

5B Describing a town or city

A fill-in-the-blank activity

Sts read the blog posts and complete the missing words. Copy one sheet per student or one sheet per pair.

LANGUAGE

Adjectives and nouns connected to towns and cities

- Either give each student a sheet or put Sts in pairs and give each pair a sheet. Tell Sts to complete the blog posts with the correct words. The first letter is given and the lines indicate how many letters are in each word. Set a time limit.
- Check answers.

ANSWERS

Valencia: 1 coast 2 interesting 3 crowded
4 noisy 5 historic 6 town hall 7 cathedral

Shanghai: 1 south 2 modern 3 Temple
4 Museum 5 exciting 6 market 7 harbor

St Petersburg: 1 Palace 2 lake
3 Department Store 4 mall 5 Bridge

- Now focus on **Activation** and put Sts in pairs to discuss the questions.
- With a show of hands, find out which city Sts would most like to visit. Ask a few Sts to say why.

6A Opposite verbs

A memory activity

Sts read the sentences and write the opposite of the verb in bold. Copy one sheet per student or one sheet per pair.

LANGUAGE

High frequency verbs and their opposites

- Either give each student a sheet or put Sts in pairs and give each pair a sheet. Elicit the answer to 1 (*lent...to*). Point out that the verb must be in the correct form.
- Give Sts time to complete the task.
- Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 lent...to 2 failed 3 lose 4 pull 5 forgets
6 got / received...from 7 arrive 8 finishes / ends
9 teach 10 sell 11 Turn on 12 lost 13 fixing
14 miss 15 drop...off 16 upload

- Now focus on **Activation** and put Sts in pairs to test each other. **A** reads a sentence or just says a verb from the sheet to **B**, who (not looking at the sheet) says the opposite verb. Make sure they change roles.

7B Verbs + infinitive and verbs + gerund

A sentence completion activity

Sts complete the sentences in conversations with the correct form of the verb. Copy one sheet per student.

LANGUAGE

Verbs + infinitive and verbs + gerund: *like, want*, etc.

- Give out the sheets. Tell Sts to complete the conversations with the verbs from the list. Point out that these verbs are either followed by an infinitive or a gerund. Point out that the first one (*started*) has been done for them.
- Give Sts time to complete the task.
- Get Sts to compare with a partner, and then check answers.

ANSWERS

2 stop 3 want 4 like 5 try 6 mind 7 Remember
8 forget 9 promise 10 spend 11 feel like 12 need
13 hoping 14 offer 15 go on 16 wants

- Now focus on **Activation** and get Sts to practice the conversations in pairs.

8A get

A sentence completion activity

Sts complete sentences with the correct form of *get* and a word from the list. Copy one sheet per student or one sheet per pair.

LANGUAGE

get + its different collocations, e.g., *get divorced, get colder, get a job, get up, get home, get a text message*

- Give out the sheets. In pairs or individually, Sts choose the correct word from the list and the correct form of *get* to complete the sentences.
- If Sts did the activity individually, get them to compare answers.
- Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 get in shape 2 got divorced 3 get...present
4 get home 5 getting up 6 get tickets
7 get lost 8 get married 9 get along
10 get...nervous 11 Get better
12 get...newspaper 13 gets colder 14 get to
15 getting worse 16 get...job 17 got...message
18 gets...angry

- Now focus on **Activation** and get Sts to discuss the questions in pairs.
- Get some feedback from various pairs.

8B Confusing verbs

A vocabulary discrimination activity

Sts circle the correct verb. Copy one sheet per student or one sheet per pair.

LANGUAGE

Verbs with similar meanings

- Either give each student a sheet or put Sts in pairs and give each pair a sheet. Give Sts time to circle the verbs.
- If Sts did the activity individually, get them to compare answers.
- Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 won 2 wearing 3 met 4 watching 5 bring
6 looks like 7 found 8 telling 9 take 10 lend
11 hope 12 missed 13 known 14 looking at
15 earn 16 look 17 looking for 18 carrying
19 said 20 waiting 21 borrow 22 lose 23 hear
24 expect

- Now focus on **Activation** and give Sts time to write their six sentences.
- Put Sts in pairs and get them to read their sentences to each other.
- Get some feedback from various pairs.

9A Animal quiz

A pairwork vocabulary quiz

Sts read a series of definitions and write the words. Copy one sheet per student or one sheet per pair.

LANGUAGE

Animals

- Put Sts in pairs and give out the sheets. Tell Sts that they have to write as many words as they can. Set a time limit.
- Check answers.

ANSWERS

1 kangaroo 2 bee 3 dolphin 4 camel 5 rabbit
6 jellyfish 7 giraffe 8 cows / goats 9 sheep
10 mosquito 11 mouse 12 crocodile 13 elephant
14 snake 15 horse 16 lion 17 tiger 18 pig
19 bull 20 bat

- Now focus on **Activation** and get them to cover the **ANIMAL** column and read the definitions. They can test themselves or a partner.

10A Expressing movement

A pairwork vocabulary race

Sts race to think of 1, 2, or 3 answers to questions containing a preposition of movement. Copy one sheet per student or one sheet per pair.

LANGUAGE

Expressing movement

- Put Sts in pairs and give out the sheets. Tell Sts to read the questions and write down the answers. Set a time limit, but give Sts more time if you see they need it.
- Check answers.

POSSIBLE ANSWERS

1 river, swimming pool
2 stairs, hill, mountain
3 a road, a room
4 tennis, badminton, volleyball
5 a lipstick, keys, phone
6 a (white) rabbit, flowers
7 movie theater, opera
8 bus, train
9 marathon
10 tree, umbrella
11 Empire State Building, Statue of Liberty
12 waiter, driver
13 NASCAR, track and field
14 monkey, cat, bear
15 chess

- Now focus on **Activation** and put Sts in pairs. **A** asks a question about something on the sheet to **B**, who (not looking at the sheet) answers. Elicit an example. Make sure they change roles.

10B Phrasal verbs

A vocabulary discrimination activity

Sts circle the correct phrasal verb. Copy one sheet per student or one sheet per pair.

LANGUAGE

Phrasal verbs

- Either give each student a sheet or put Sts in pairs and give each pair a sheet. Point out that the first one (*look after*) has been done for them. Set a time limit for Sts to circle the phrasal verbs.
- If they did the activity individually, get them to compare answers with a partner.
- Check answers.

ANSWERS

2 set off 3 throw it away 4 turn the music down
5 give it up 6 fill out 7 try it on 8 run out of
9 look after 10 looking forward to 11 turn up
12 find out 13 go off 14 go on 15 put on
16 send it back 17 drop you off 18 write down
19 looking for 20 looked it up

- Now focus on **Activation** and give Sts time to think of their answers.
- Put Sts in pairs and get them to tell each other their answers.
- Get some feedback from various pairs.

1B VOCABULARY Describing people

● Work with a partner. Look at the pictures and the definitions. Write the words.



- 1 picture a _____
- 2 a person who can make other people laugh _____
- 3 another way of saying **thin** _____
- 4 picture b _____
- 5 an adjective to describe **someone who doesn't like spending money** _____
- 6 **not tall, not short** _____
- 7 another word for **fair** _____
- 8 picture c _____
- 9 **not friendly, not warm** _____
- 10 the opposite of **lazy** _____
- 11 **heavier** than is healthy _____
- 12 picture d _____ (hair)
- 13 the opposite of **light** brown hair _____
- 14 **somebody who doesn't talk a lot** _____
- 15 a person who's friendly and kind _____

ACTIVATION

Test your memory. Cover the words on the right and look at the pictures and the definitions. How many words can you remember?

Can you think of...?

1 **one** thing you wear on your hands in winter

2 **one** synonym for shirt

3 **two** things you can wear on your head

4 **two** things you wear on your feet

5 **two** things that men or women wear on their legs

6 **two** accessories you can wear around your neck

7 **two** things that women wear on their legs under a skirt or dress

8 **three** pieces of jewelry

9 **three** things you wear to play sports

10 **four** things you can wear if you're cold



ACTIVATION

Write down five things you are wearing, with their colors.

I'm wearing a blue shirt.

2A VOCABULARY Vacations

Complete the texts with one word in each blank.

- 1 I love going ¹a _____ for the weekend with my friends. We usually ²g _____ by car to a town or city and ³st _____ in a hotel. We don't have much money, so we always ⁴b _____ our hotel months before, as sometimes it's cheaper that way. We never go ⁵c _____ because we want to be comfortable, and we don't like sleeping in tents.



- 2  Last winter, my best friend and I decided to go ¹sk _____ in the Alps. I didn't have any skis, so I ²r _____ some when I got there. We decided to ³r _____ a small apartment near the ski slopes, and we ⁴h _____ a very good time. We'll definitely go back there next year.

- 3 If you like the beach and big cities, go to Barcelona! In the mornings, you can go ¹s _____ and see all the museums and monuments. In the afternoons, you can go ²sw _____ in the ocean or simply ³s _____ on the beach. You don't have to ⁴sp _____ a lot of money on food – there are cheap lunch menus everywhere you go in Spain. Make sure you ⁵t _____ a lot of photos!



ACTIVATION

Write a short text describing your last vacation.

2B VOCABULARY Prepositions *at, in, on*

Complete each sentence with the correct preposition. Write in the **PREPOSITION** column.

	PREPOSITION
1 The children are playing the park.	_____
2 I love sunbathing the yard.	_____
3 He's studying physics college.	_____
4 Let's meet the bus stop.	_____
5 Look! That's a Picasso the wall.	_____
6 The class starts May.	_____
7 My grandfather died 2012.	_____
8 I was born October 25th.	_____
9 We have lunch work.	_____
10 Do you go skiing winter?	_____
11 Will you be home tonight?	_____
12 Do you have a big meal the evening?	_____
13 My English classes are Tuesdays and Thursdays.	_____
14 My son usually does his homework night.	_____
15 The flight leaves 7:00 a.m.	_____
16 They got married Valentine's Day. How romantic!	_____
17 I have to go pick up my son his school.	_____
18 I think you left your bag the kitchen.	_____
19 I'm always very busy the weekend.	_____
20 I live downtown Los Angeles.	_____

ACTIVATION

Test your memory. Cover the **PREPOSITION** column and say the sentences. Can you remember the prepositions?

3B VOCABULARY What's the preposition?

Are the prepositions in **bold** right (✓) or wrong (X)? Correct the wrong ones.



- 1 What time did your plane arrive **in** Chicago? ☒
- 2 It's your birthday. I'll pay ~~to~~ ^{for} dinner tonight. ☒
- 3 Sally waited 30 minutes **for** the bus. ☐
- 4 I completely agree **with** you. ☐
- 5 Can you ask the teacher **to** a photocopy? ☐
- 6 When I arrived **to** the museum, it was closed. ☐
- 7 Do you spend a lot of money **on** clothes? ☐
- 8 She writes **to** him every day. ☐
- 9 He worries **with** not passing the exam. ☐
- 10 Does this coat belong **with** you? ☐
- 11 I can't think **about** anybody except Pete right now! ☐
- 12 How often do you speak **at** your sister on a video call? ☐
- 13 Maria's invited me **for** a concert, but I don't want to go. ☐
- 14 She's fallen in love **to** her sister's boyfriend! ☐
- 15 Sometimes I walk to work, but it depends **on** the weather. ☐

ACTIVATION

Complete the sentences with a preposition and your own ideas.

Before going on vacation, I often worry...*about finishing all of my work.*

When we have family arguments, I usually agree...

We were really happy when we arrived...

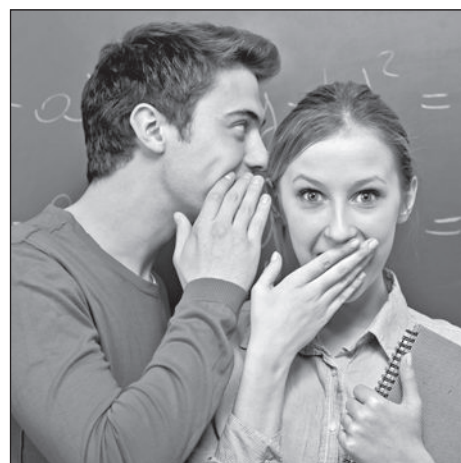
If I don't like the food in a restaurant, I usually speak...

How I usually spend my vacation depends...

4A VOCABULARY Housework, *make* or *do*?

Complete the sentences with the correct form of a verb (e.g., *put*, *do*, *make*).

- 1 Shhh, don't _____ a noise. The baby's asleep.
- 2 She's very messy. She never _____ away her clothes.
- 3 I don't like _____ the ironing.
- 4 My mother _____ the laundry on Mondays.
- 5 When I was little, I always _____ my bed before I went to school.
- 6 Can you _____ the shopping for me, please?
- 7 Please _____ the table! We're eating in five minutes.
- 8 How often do you _____ yoga?
- 9 My children have _____ a lot of friends at their new school.
- 10 I broke a glass while I was _____ the dishes.
- 11 Can I use your phone? I need to _____ a call.
- 12 Do you like _____ plans for the future?
- 13 Please _____ your room. There are books and clothes all over the floor.
- 14 It's my job to _____ out the garbage at night.
- 15 When was the last time you _____ something nice for someone else?
- 16 You've left your towel on the floor. Please _____ it up.
- 17 I don't have time to _____ lunch. Let's eat out.
- 18 Did you _____ anything exciting on the weekend?
- 19 Please can you _____ exercise 1 on page 46?
- 20 I _____ the mistake of telling her my secret.



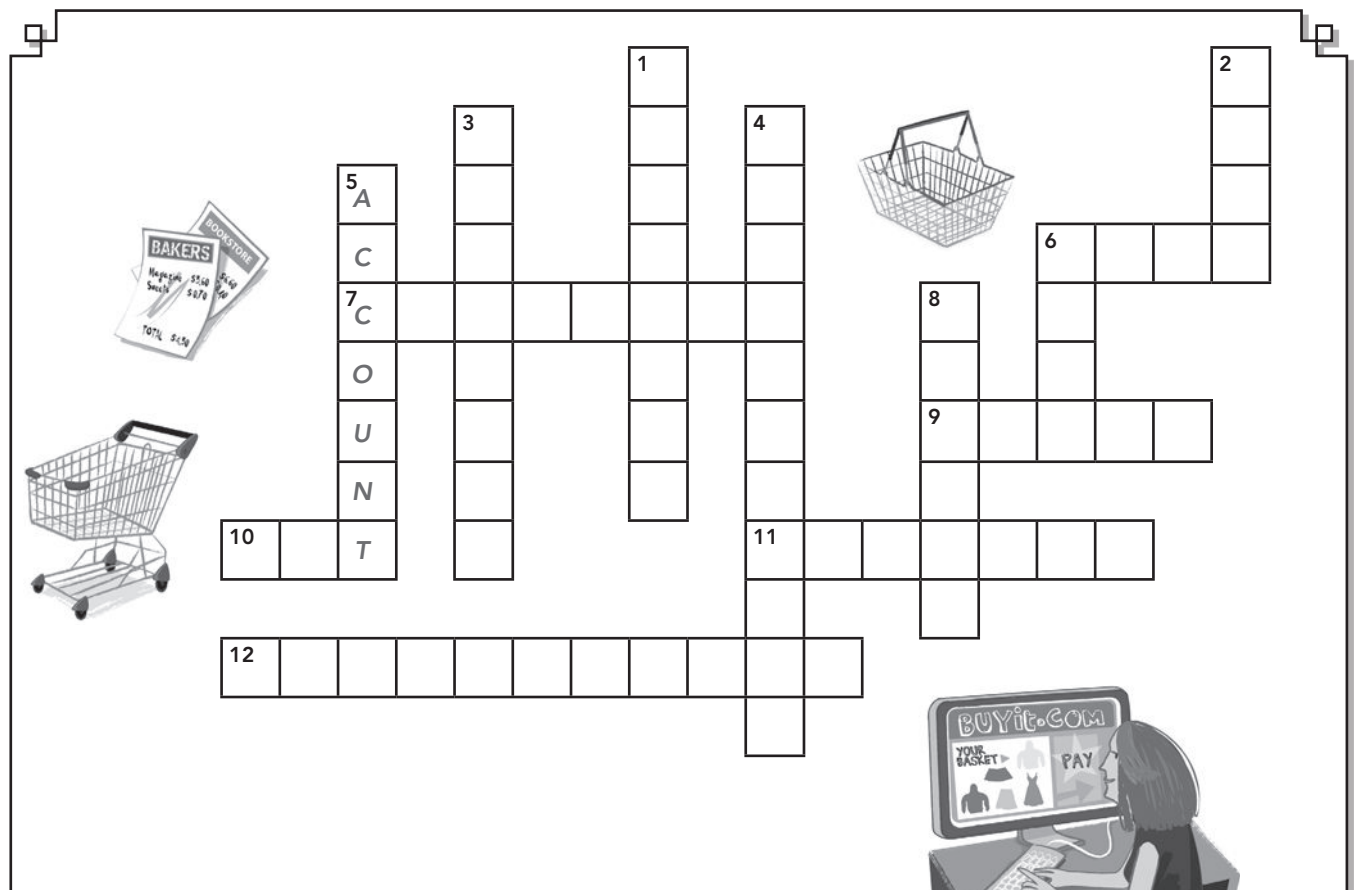
ACTIVATION

Write six sentences about:

- one housework task you do at home
- two housework tasks you never do
- three things you often make

4B VOCABULARY Shopping

Look at the clues and complete the crossword. You can write two words if you need to, with no spaces.



ACROSS →

- 6 Those shoes really _____ you! They look great!
- 7 When you're ready to pay for your items online, you proceed to _____.
- 9 "Excuse me. Where's the cereal?" "It's on the _____."
- 10 These pants don't _____ me. They're too big.
- 11 The piece of paper that they give you in a store after you pay for something.
- 12 A person who helps you in a store when you want to buy something.

DOWN ↓

- 1 The person who buys things in a store.
- 2 It has four wheels and you push it in the supermarket.
- 3 If you're not happy with something you bought, you _____ it _____ to the store.
- 4 It's the place where you try on clothes to see if they fit.
- 5 If you want to buy things online, you usually have to create an _____ with your personal information.
- 6 If a T-shirt is too big or too small for you, it's not your _____.
- 8 Something you carry while shopping to hold items you plan to buy.

ACTIVATION

Test your memory. Cover the crossword and look at the clues again. Can you remember the answers?

5B VOCABULARY Describing a town or city

Complete the blog posts with the missing words. The first letters are given.

Traveling Jo

Join | Login | Contact | **Blog** | Search

Traveling Jo

About me

Hi! My name's Jo. I love traveling and discovering new places! I created my blog to share all my adventures with you. I hope you enjoy reading about all the cities I visit!

XXX

VALENCIA is a city on the east ¹c _____ of Spain. It isn't as big as Madrid, but it isn't small. It's an ²i _____ city, with lots of museums, galleries, and culture. It has a festival called Fallas, which takes place in March. During Fallas, Valencia is very ³cr _____ because lots of people visit the city. It's also very ⁴n _____ because there's music and fireworks in the street all night. Valencia has many new buildings, but it has some ⁵h _____ buildings downtown, for example, the post office and the ⁶t _____ h _____. It has some really old religious buildings, too! There are some beautiful churches, especially the ⁷c _____.



SHANGHAI is a very large city in China. It's 745 miles ¹s _____ of Beijing on the Yangtze river. Shanghai's a really ²m _____ city with lots of very tall buildings. It has many beautiful things to see, for example, the City God ³T _____ and the Yuyuan Gardens. There is also the China Art ⁴M _____, which is the largest in Asia. Shanghai is an ⁵e _____ city – there are so many things happening and so much to see... and eat! Go to an outdoor ⁶m _____ and try some of the delicious street food, like noodles, rice balls, and pancakes. For the best views in the city, take a walk around the beautiful ⁷h _____ and enjoy looking at the boats and the lovely tall buildings!



ST. PETERSBURG is one of the largest cities in Russia. Apart from the world-famous Hermitage Museum, it has many interesting things to see. If you want to visit an amazing building, go to see Gatchina ¹P _____, which was a summer residence for the Russian tsars. It's full of interesting art, and you can then walk around Gatchina Park and enjoy the ²l _____ and its beautiful clear water. When you get back to St. Petersburg, you can go shopping for souvenirs in Svetlanovsky ³D _____. St _____. If you want more shopping, you can visit the Galleria shopping ⁴m _____, which also has a movie theater and a lot of different restaurants. To complete a fabulous day, take a walk to the mysterious Egyptian ⁵Br _____ over the Fontanka river and take photos of the amazing Egyptian statues on it!



ACTIVATION

Work with a partner. Which of the three cities would you like to visit most? Why?

6A VOCABULARY Opposite verbs

- In each sentence, change the verb in **bold** to the opposite verb in the same form. Write in the **OPPOSITE** column.



	OPPOSITE
1 Have you ever borrowed money from a friend?	_____
2 I passed my final exams last week.	_____
3 Do you think the Eagles are going to win the game?	_____
4 You need to push the door to open it.	_____
5 Leyla always remembers people's names.	_____
6 I sent an email to my sister yesterday.	_____
7 What time does the plane leave ?	_____
8 The concert starts at 9:00 p.m.	_____
9 This summer I'm going to learn French in Paris.	_____
10 This is a good website if you want to buy something.	_____
11 Turn off your computer!	_____
12 I found my car keys in the yard.	_____
13 Maria's very good at breaking things.	_____
14 Do you think I'll catch the five o'clock train if I leave now?	_____
15 I'll pick Alfie up at the airport at six o'clock.	_____
16 This video is taking a long time to download .	_____

ACTIVATION

Test your memory. Cover the sentences and look at the **OPPOSITE** column. How many verbs can you remember from the sentences?

7B VOCABULARY Verbs + infinitive and verbs + gerund

Complete the conversations using the correct form of the verbs in the list.

1

like mind ~~start~~ stop try want

- Isla** I ¹started going to the gym last week. I hate it!
- Maya** You have to ²_____ being negative! Do you ³_____ me to go with you?
- Isla** The problem is I don't ⁴_____ doing exercise there. It's really boring!
- Maya** I agree that gyms are boring! Why don't we ⁵_____ to do something different together? There's a swimming pool near my house...
- Isla** Oh, that's a good idea! I don't ⁶_____ swimming.



2



feel like forget promise remember spend

- Mother** OK, I'm leaving. ⁷_____ to load the dishwasher, please.
- Boy** Yes, Mom.
- Mother** And don't ⁸_____ to call me if anything happens. And you ⁹_____ to take out the trash, don't you?
- Girl** Yes, Mom!
- Mother** And you won't ¹⁰_____ all evening playing video games, right?
- Boy** No, Mom.
- Mother** You know, maybe I don't ¹¹_____ going to this party...
- Boy / Girl** MOM!

3

go on hope need offer want

- Marco** I really ¹²_____ to make some money this summer. I'm ¹³_____ to go on a trip around Europe before I go to college next year.
- Sam** Wow. What kind of job are you thinking of?
- Marco** Well, I thought I could ¹⁴_____ to walk dogs for people. And I sometimes help a friend with his café in the evenings. I can probably ¹⁵_____ doing that for the summer. But I need another small job...
- Sam** I have an idea! My dad really ¹⁶_____ to learn Italian. He loves the language, and my parents often go there on vacation. You can speak Italian, right? You could teach him for a couple of hours every day.
- Marco** That's a great idea!



ACTIVATION

Work with a partner. Practice the conversations.

8A VOCABULARY *get*



Complete the sentences with the correct form of *get* and a word or phrase from the list.

angry better colder divorced in shape home job lost married
message nervous newspaper along present tickets to up worse

- 1 What's the best way to _____? Yoga or aerobics?
- 2 They were married for 20 years, but they _____ last year.
- 3 It's Diana's birthday next week. Should we _____ her a _____?
- 4 How long does it take you to _____ after work?
- 5 I don't like _____ early on Sunday mornings.
- 6 You need to _____ for the concert soon. They say it's going to sell out quickly.
- 7 We've been to your house before, so we won't _____.
- 8 In the US, you can _____ in a religious building or in a city hall.
- 9 Do you _____ well with your parents?
- 10 Most people _____ really _____ before taking an exam.
- 11 _____ soon! And don't come back to work till you feel 100%.
- 12 I didn't _____ a _____ yesterday, so I read the news online.
- 13 It _____ after 6 p.m. Temperatures go down to -10°C .
- 14 What time do you usually _____ school?
- 15 I think the unemployment situation in my country is _____ and not better.
- 16 How did the interview go? Did you _____ the _____?
- 17 I _____ a _____ from Pete to say he's going to be late.
- 18 Lucy _____ very _____ when people park in her parking space.

ACTIVATION

Work with a partner. Can you think of a time when...?

- you got angry with a friend
- you got to school / work really late
- you got a present you didn't like
- you got lost

8B VOCABULARY Confusing verbs

Circle the correct verb to complete each sentence.

- 1 Have you ever **won** / **earned** a prize or trophy for something?
- 2 I love those shoes you're **wearing** / **carrying**.
- 3 Mark and Charlotte **met** / **knew** at a party last year.
- 4 Can you help me, or are you **watching** / **looking at** the news on TV?
- 5 Did you **bring** / **take** me anything back from New York?
- 6 She **looks** / **looks like** her mother. They have the same eyes.
- 7 Alba's **looked for** / **found** a new job. She starts next week.
- 8 I'm not very good at **saying** / **telling** jokes.
- 9 It's going to rain later, so I'll **bring** / **take** an umbrella with me.
- 10 Would you **lend** / **borrow** a lot of money to a good friend?
- 11 I **hope** / **wait** the weather is good tomorrow.
- 12 We got to the airport late, so we **missed** / **lost** the plane.
- 13 I've **known** / **met** my best friend for ten years.
- 14 Do you like **watching** / **looking at** photos of yourself?
- 15 How much money do you **win** / **earn** a month?
- 16 You **look** / **look like** really sad. What's wrong?
- 17 Can you help me? I'm **looking for** / **finding** my keys.
- 18 He's **wearing** / **carrying** a really heavy bag.
- 19 Nicky **said** / **told** that she was sorry for what happened.
- 20 Do you mind **hoping** / **waiting** for a few minutes? I'm not ready yet.
- 21 We had to **lend** / **borrow** money from the bank to buy our new car.
- 22 I always **miss** / **lose** my glasses.
- 23 Did you **listen to** / **hear** that noise? I think it was a car crash.
- 24 Paul is always late. I **expect** / **hope** he'll be late again today.



ACTIVATION

Write six true sentences about you using the verbs in the list.

borrow earn hope lend wait win

9A VOCABULARY Animal quiz

● Read the definitions and write the animals in the **ANIMAL** column.

ANIMAL

1 This animal lives in Australia and carries its baby in a pocket.

2 It's an insect that makes honey. It's yellow and black.

3 This animal lives in the ocean and is very smart.

4 It's an animal that can live for two weeks with no water.

5 The cartoon character Bugs Bunny is one of these.

6 They're soft round sea animals. If one touches you, it really hurts!

7 This animal has a very long neck and lives in Africa.

8 These animals give milk that people drink.

9 This animal lives on a farm and has a warm white coat.

10 It's a very small insect that bites people at night.

11 The plural of this animal is *mice*.

12 This animal lives in rivers. It's green or gray and has a lot of teeth.

13 It's a very big gray animal from Africa or India.

14 This animal is a long thin reptile, and many people are scared of it.

15 People rode this animal before they had cars.

16 This animal is "the king of the jungle."

17 It's a very big orange and black cat.

18 This animal lives on a farm and has a curly tail.

19 People say this animal will attack you if you're wearing something red.

20 This animal comes out at night. It can fly, but it isn't a bird.



ACTIVATION

Test your memory. Cover the **ANIMAL** column and look at the definitions 1–20. Can you remember the animals?

10A VOCABULARY Expressing movement

● Work with a partner. Read the questions and write the words.

Can you think of...?

- 1 **two** things you can **swim across**

- 2 **two** things you can **go up**

- 3 **two** places you can **walk across**

- 4 **three** sports where you **hit** something **over** a net

- 5 **three** objects you sometimes **put into** your pocket

- 6 **one** thing a magician **takes out of** a hat

- 7 **two** places you can't **go into** without a ticket

- 8 **two** forms of transportation you can **get on** or **get off**

- 9 **one** Olympic sport where you **run around** a city

- 10 **two** things you can **stand under** if it's raining

- 11 **two** things you might see if you **fly over** New York City

- 12 **two** jobs where people **take** things **from** one place **to** another

- 13 **two** sports where you **go around and around** a track

- 14 **two** animals that can **climb up** trees

- 15 **one** game where you **move** pieces **across** a board

ACTIVATION

Test your partner.

Can you remember...?

10B VOCABULARY Phrasal verbs

Circle the correct phrasal verb to complete each sentence.

- 1 Can you look after our cat? We're **going away** / **going out**.
- 2 We have to **be over** / **set off** at 6:00 if we want to get to the movie theater in time.
- 3 I really can't cook. I tried to make a cake last week, but we had to **throw it away** / **give it up**.
- 4 Could you **turn the music down** / **turn the music up**? I'm trying to sleep!
- 5 I think I drink too much coffee. I should **give it up** / **look it up**.
- 6 To get a passport you have to **write down** / **fill out** two forms.
- 7 **A** That's a really nice shirt.
B They have it in your size. Why don't you **turn it on** / **try it on**?
- 8 Could you go to the supermarket? We've **run out of** / **put on** eggs and oil.
- 9 I had to **look for** / **look after** my mother last week because she was sick.
- 10 **A** When's your birthday?
B Next Saturday! I'm really **looking forward to** / **looking around** it because I'm having a big party.
- 11 I can't hear what they're saying on the news! Could you **turn up** / **turn off** the volume?
- 12 Can you send me a link to that travel blog? I want to **find out** / **set off** things to do in Valencia.
- 13 The alarm will **go off** / **be over** at 7:00 tomorrow morning because I need to be at work by 8:00. Sorry!
- 14 I don't like this book very much, but Martin says I should **go on** / **get off** reading it because it gets better.
- 15 It's snowing! Are you going outside? You should **put on** / **take off** a warm jacket.
- 16 I bought this skirt online, but I don't like it. I think I'm going to **give it back** / **send it back**.
- 17 Do you want to go home now? I'm leaving and I could **drop you off** / **take you out** on the way.
- 18 I need to **write down** / **look up** his phone number or I'll forget it!
- 19 Nicola is **looking for** / **looking up** a new apartment. She doesn't like where she's living now.
- 20 I didn't know how to pronounce "quiet" until I **looked it up** / **turned it up** in the dictionary.

ACTIVATION

Work with a partner. Can you think of two things you can...?

- turn up or down
- look after
- run out of
- put on or take off

Workbook answer key

1A

1 VOCABULARY

- a** 2 f 3 h 4 c 5 g 6 b 7 a
8 e 9 d
b 2 do 3 sports 4 music 5 lunch
6 pets 7 live 8 do / learn / study
9 do 10 born

2 GRAMMAR

- a** 2 can I
3 were you
4 Do the children want
5 Did you see
6 does your boyfriend do
7 did she learn
8 do you get up
b 2 Is your girlfriend a student?
3 What do you do on the weekend?
4 How often do you go out?
5 Where did you go last Saturday?
6 Did you have a nice time?
c 2 What did you do last night?
3 What TV shows do you watch?
4 When is your birthday?
5 Where are you from?
6 Where did you go on vacation last year?
7 What kind of books do you read?
d Students' own answers

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a** 2 R 3 B 4 P 5 K 6 M 7 I
c 2 A 3 U 4 P 5 O 6 Y

1B

1 VOCABULARY

- a** 2 big 3 long 4 bald
b 2 funny 3 friendly 4 lazy 5 cold
6 serious 7 shy 8 quiet
c 2 bald 3 extroverted 4 beard,
mustache 5 curly 6 thin,
overweight 7 hardworking
8 talkative 9 warm 10 cheap

2 GRAMMAR

- a** 2 Does, want 3 doesn't, rain
4 watches 5 Does, speak
6 Do, work 7 don't play 8 loves
b 2 You're **never** too old to get married.
3 Candice sees her boyfriend **every**
day.
4 Alicia **sometimes** meets people on
the internet.
5 It's **always** fun to go on a date.
6 I **hardly ever** see my wife these
days.
7 I **never** go out during the week.
c 2 earns 3 study 4 want
5 lives 6 share 7 have
8 doesn't come 9 doesn't like
10 prefer 11 don't see
12 get along

- d** 2 a Where do you live?
b Where does Anna live?
3 a Who do you live with?
b Who does Anna live with?
4 a Do you like going to dinner with
friends?
b Does Anna like going to dinner
with friends?
5 a Are you shy or extroverted?
b Is Anna shy or extroverted?
e Students' own answers

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a** 2 lives 3 likes 4 starts 5 leaves
6 cooks

1C

1 VOCABULARY

- a** 2 leggings 3 hoodie 4 jacket
5 cap 6 tracksuit 7 shoes 8 belt
9 coat 10 dress 11 tie 12 shorts
b 2 a 3 i 4 h 5 f 6 c 7 b 8 g
9 j 10 d
c 2 behind 3 between 4 in front of,
on 5 next to 6 above 7 under

2 PRONUNCIATION

- a** /ə/ bracelet cardigan jacket
necklace problem
/ər/ skirt sweater third T-shirt
world

3 GRAMMAR

- a** 2 'm looking 3 's taking
4 's wearing 5 isn't smiling
b 2 drives 3 are sleeping 4 's raining
5 drinks 6 wears 7 're studying
8 live
c 2 are, playing 3 is, doing
4 is, wearing 5 is, wearing
6 is, carrying 7 is, wearing
8 is, doing
d 2 playing soccer
3 is riding a bike
4 She's wearing a tracksuit and
sneakers.
5 The woman on the right is wearing a
dress, a jacket, and boots.
6 She's carrying a bag.
7 He's wearing shorts, a T-shirt, socks,
and sneakers.
8 He's sleeping.

Practical English 1

1 CALLING RECEPTION

- a** 2 put 3 send 4 bother 5 this
6 's
b 2 There's a problem with the shower
3 I'll send somebody up to look at it
right now
4 I'm sorry to bother you again

- 5 I have another problem
6 I'll put you through to my colleague

2 I'LL

- 2 a 3 d 4 b

3 SOCIAL ENGLISH

- a** 2 for 3 How's 4 nice 5 a lot
b 1 too 2 free, can't 3 going, great
4 Actually, just 5 heard, Me

Can you remember...? 1

1 GRAMMAR

- 1 are you doing 2 don't think
3 can I 4 She's always 5 do
6 works

2 VOCABULARY

- 1 slim 2 height 3 generous
4 warm 5 jeans 6 tights

3 PRONUNCIATION

- 1 sandals 2 painter 3 A 4 dates
5 likes 6 glasses

4 GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY

- 1 b 2 a 3 c 4 b 5 c 6 a
7 b 8 b 9 a 10 a

2A

1 GRAMMAR

- a** **Regular:** arrived, asked, invited, rented,
stayed, studied
Irregular: bought, could, chose, ate, felt,
said
b 2 didn't buy 3 weren't 4 didn't
swim 5 didn't rent 6 didn't spend
c 2 wanted 3 booked 4 took
5 arrived 6 went 7 asked
8 looked 9 couldn't 10 went
d 2 did they want 3 did they book
4 did they arrive 5 did the woman
6 did they go

2 PRONUNCIATION

- a** 2 wanted 3 booked 4 invited
5 waited

3 VOCABULARY

- a** 2 go for a walk 3 book a flight online
4 go abroad 5 go swimming
6 go out at night 7 stay in a hotel
8 go sightseeing 9 sunbathe on the
beach 10 go away for the weekend
b 2 sunny 3 crowded 4 noisy
5 unhelpful 6 basic 7 friendly
8 lovely 9 cloudy 10 luxurious
c 2 How did you get there?
I went by plane.
3 Where did you stay?
I stayed in a hotel.

- 4 How long did you stay?
I stayed for ten days.
- 5 What did you do?
I went swimming.
- 6 What was the weather like?
It was sunny.
- d Students' own answers

2B

1 VOCABULARY

- a 2 in, in 3 on 4 in 5 on, at, in, at,
on 6 on 7 at, in, on 8 In, in, in
- b 2 on, in 3 on, in, on 4 in, on 5 at
6 on 7 at, in 8 at
- c b in c in d on e on f at
g on h at
- d 2 a 3 h 4 e 5 c 6 b 7 f 8 g

2 GRAMMAR

- a 2 Were, working 3 were you doing
4 wasn't raining 5 wasn't living
6 was getting
- b 2 Anya was talking on the phone
when she got a message.
3 The children were playing computer
games when the visitors arrived.
4 We were having a barbecue when it
started to rain.
5 I was writing a report when my
computer crashed.
- c 2 We were trying to find the exit.
3 I was closing the windows.
4 We were washing the coffee cups.
5 I was counting the money.
6 Students' own answer

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a 2 U 3 U 4 S, S 5 U, S, S 6 U

2C

1 GRAMMAR

- a 2 The next day 3 when
4 Suddenly 5 Two minutes later
6 After that
- b 2 a 3 b 4 a 5 b
- c 2 but 3 Although 4 so
5 Although 6 because 7 but

2 PRONUNCIATION

- a 1 First syllable stressed: awful, birthday,
evening, hurry, perfect, quickly,
summer
- 2 Second syllable stressed: again,
along, although, because, before,
behind, invite

3 VOCABULARY

- a 2 g 3 f 4 b 5 h 6 a 7 e 8 c
- b 2 waiting 3 invited 4 'm
5 driving 6 played 7 ran 8 gave
- c Students' own answers

3A

1 VOCABULARY

- a 2 elevators 3 gates 4 cart
5 customs 6 arrivals 7 terminal
8 departures
- b 2 security check 3 passport control
4 gate number 5 bag drop
- c 2 elevators 3 departures 4 bag
drop 5 gate 6 passport control
7 baggage claim 8 cart 9 customs
10 arrivals

2 PRONUNCIATION

- a 2 change 3 bigger 4 foggy
5 region 6 gate
- c Sentence 3 also has the same *g* sounds.

3 GRAMMAR

- a 2 d 3 a 4 b 5 g 6 e 7 f
- b 2 'm going to book
3 isn't going to sleep
4 are, going to stay
5 isn't going to fly
6 is, going to get
- c 2 Sam isn't going to buy a new
suitcase today.
3 Dave's going to meet Claire at
Terminal 2 at 12:30.
4 Amara's going to fly from London to
New York on Wednesday.
5 Esme's going to book an airport taxi
this evening.
- d Students' own answers

3B

1 VOCABULARY

- a 2 about 3 on 4 for 5 for 6 at
7 in 8 to
- b 2 to 3 with 4 for 5 on 6 to
7 about
- c 2 arrived in 3 depends on
4 waiting for 5 agree with
6 think about

2 PRONUNCIATION

- a 2 L 3 L 4 Not L 5 Not L
- c 2 depends on 3 forgot about
4 worried about 5 talk about

3 GRAMMAR

- a 2 Are you staying 3 we're having
4 I'm flying 5 I'm traveling
6 are you getting 7 Maria's coming
8 Is she going 9 she isn't going
10 are you taking
- b 2 Both forms possible
3 it's going to snow
4 he's going to get
5 aren't going to miss
6 Both forms possible
7 Both forms possible
8 he's going to have

- c 2 he's going to New York
3 On Wednesday, he's working at
home.
4 On Thursday, he's having dinner with
Cassie.
5 On Friday, he's listening to a new
pianist.
6 On Saturday, he's having a barbecue.
- d Students' own answers

3C

1 GRAMMAR

- a 2 a 3 d 4 h 5 b 6 g 7 e
8 c
- b 2 where 3 that 4 that 5 that
6 where 7 that
- c 2 that 3 who 4 that 5 where
6 who 7 that
- d Sentences 2, 4, and 7
- e Students' own answers

2 VOCABULARY

- a 2 play 3 cap 4 wallet 5 blouse
6 teacher 7 hotel
- b 2 opposite 3 similar 4 like
5 something 6 example
7 somebody 8 somewhere
- c 2 a 3 g 4 d 5 b 6 h 7 e
8 l 9 j 10 i 11 f 12 k

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a 2 cute 3 hate 4 plane 5 cut
6 note 7 plan 8 bite 9 not
10 bit

Practical English 2

1 PROBLEMS AT A RESTAURANT

- a 2 How would you like your steak?
3 Are you ready to order?
4 I think there's a mistake here.
5 Would you like that with salad
or chips?
6 Can I get you something to start
with?
7 Can I have the bill, please?
8 I asked for my steak rare.
- b 2 Can I get you something to start
with?
3 Would you like that with salad
or chips?
4 How would you like your steak?
5 I asked for salad, not chips.
6 I asked for my steak rare
7 Can I have the bill, please?
8 I think there's a mistake here.

2 SOCIAL ENGLISH

- a 2 worry 3 How 4 guess
5 Actually
- b 2 No problem
3 Actually
4 How was your evening
5 Don't worry

Can you remember...?

1-3

1 GRAMMAR

1 a 2 c 3 b 4 c 5 a 6 c

2 VOCABULARY

1 sightseeing 2 comfortable
3 leggings 4 rent 5 train station
6 lazy

3 PRONUNCIATION

1 R 2 forget 3 smart 4 misses
5 sandals 6 arrived

4 GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY

1 b 2 c 3 c 4 b 5 a 6 b
7 b 8 c 9 a 10 b

4A

1 VOCABULARY

- a** 2 dust the furniture
3 do the shopping
4 make lunch
5 do the vacuuming
6 set the table
7 load the dishwasher
8 take out the garbage
- b** 2 make 3 clean up 4 clear
5 clean 6 do 7 put away
- c** 2 make 3 make 4 do 5 do
6 make 7 do 8 make

2 GRAMMAR

- a** 2 Have you done 3 I haven't made
4 I've cut 5 I've made
- b** 2 Have you made any plans for the weekend yet?
3 We haven't finished lunch yet.
4 Daniel has already cleaned up his room.
5 I've already done the ironing.
6 Have you been to the supermarket yet?
7 I haven't cleaned the bathroom yet.
8 Kenji has already taken out the garbage.
- c** 2 He's fallen off his bike.
3 They've won the championship.
4 I've cleaned the floor.
5 She's set the table.
6 She's done the dishes.
- d** 2 I haven't started yet.
3 I've already been to the store.
4 I've cleaned the apartment.
5 I've already set the table.
- e** Students' own answers

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a** 2 Have you gotten a new job yet?
3 A lot of young people like jazz.
4 Do you want your yellow jacket?
5 Did Jess say yes or no?

4B

1 VOCABULARY

- a** 2 cart 3 fitting rooms 4 sale
5 shopping bag 6 customer
7 salesperson 8 register 9 receipt
- b** 2 suit 3 try 4 back 5 fit 6 size
- c** 2 changing 3 checkout 4 receipt
5 size 6 fit 7 back 8 salespeople
- d** 2 create 3 choose 4 click 5 add
6 continue 7 give 8 review
9 give 10 place

2 PRONUNCIATION

- a** 2 chemistry 3 clothes 4 machine

3 GRAMMAR

- a** 2 I haven't brought my credit card.
3 Have Anna and Kay been / gone shopping?
4 Has your sister ever worked as a salesperson?
5 I've been to the shopping mall twice today.
6 We haven't sold anything on eBay recently.
- b** 1 did you buy, bought
2 Have you ever been, have, went, did you stay, found
3 Have you ever bought, you've never worn, have, did you buy, bought
4 Have you ever lost, have, did you lose, left
5 Have you ever done, haven't, tried, met
- c** 2 Dan's booked a flight online.
3 Dan's never rented a house or an apartment.
4 Rahim and Mia have never bought something on eBay.
5 Rahim and Mia have never booked a flight online.
6 Rahim and Mia have rented a house or an apartment.
- d** 2 Have you ever booked a flight online?
3 Have you ever rented a house or an apartment?
- e** Students' own answers

4C

1 VOCABULARY

- a** 2 boring 3 excited 4 relaxed
5 frightened 6 interesting
7 relaxing
- b** 2 relaxing 3 boring 4 depressed
5 interested 6 exciting
7 depressing 8 frightening
9 bored 10 excited

2 GRAMMAR

- a** 2 anybody 3 nowhere 4 anywhere
5 somebody 6 something
7 nobody 8 somewhere

- b** 2 T
3 T
4 F There's something on the ground.
5 T
6 F The woman who's cooking is wearing something on her head.
7 F There is somebody in the water.
- c** 2 The children were bored because there was nothing to do.
3 Yoko thought the party was a little boring because she didn't know anyone.
4 Tim is relaxed because there isn't any homework. He isn't doing anything.
- d** Students' own answers

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a** /ɛ/ dress friendly never sweater website
/oʊ/ coat don't goes home photos
/ʌ/ funny gloves lunch nothing something

5A

1 VOCABULARY

- a** 2 fifty-two percent
3 five thousand
4 three point eight
5 one thousand eight hundred and fifty
6 two hundred and ten thousand
- b** 2a 28, 2b twenty-eight
3a ¾, 3b three-quarters
4a 1,750, 4b one thousand seven hundred and fifty
5a 50%, 5b fifty percent

2 GRAMMAR

- a** 2 fluently 3 good 4 carefully
5 easy 6 bad 7 well 8 clearly
- b** 2 more slowly 3 hotter 4 harder
5 further 6 better 7 more dangerous 8 more quickly
- c** 2 Her handbag wasn't as expensive as her shoes.
3 My office isn't as big as my sister's (office).
4 Japan didn't play as well as Mexico.
5 I don't drive as carefully as you.
6 Elena doesn't look as relaxed as Beto.
- d** 2 more popular than
3 expensive as
4 smaller than they were five years ago
5 is worse than it was five years ago
6 are less happy than they were five years ago / aren't as happy as they were five years ago

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a** 2 not as old as 3 along
4 as good as 5 more than
6 usually
c 2 His last book wasn't as good as his first one.
3 Please have Edward show me the problem again.
4 You can buy that kind of thing online.
5 I don't spend as much time working as before.
6 This test isn't as easy as it looks.

5B

1 VOCABULARY

- a** 2 west 3 east 4 across from
5 Ocean 6 beach
b 2 polluted 3 safe 4 noisy
5 boring 6 crowded
c 2 art gallery 3 town hall
4 synagogue 5 square
6 shopping mall
d 1 hill, harbor 2 bridge, canals
3 ruins, lake, temples, statues

2 GRAMMAR

- a** 2 the friendliest
3 The safest
4 the least attractive
5 the wettest
6 the furthest / farthest
b 2 It's the most beautiful building we've ever seen.
3 That's the most expensive thing I've ever bought.
4 It's the best photo you've ever taken.
5 That's the worst flight we've ever had.
c 2 What's the worst hotel you've ever stayed in?
3 What's the best vacation you've ever had?
4 What's the most interesting museum you've ever visited?
5 What's the nicest restaurant you've ever been to?
d Students' own answers

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a** 2 What's the funniest movie you've ever seen?
3 What's the most famous building you've ever seen?
4 What's the most interesting thing you've learned this year?
5 What's the best meal you've ever had?

5C

1 VOCABULARY

- a** 2 muscles 3 heart 4 blood
5 bone 6 diseases
b 1 teeth 2 bones 3 muscles
4 heart 5 blood

2 GRAMMAR

- a** 2 a few 3 many 4 much
5 a little 6 a lot of 7 A little
8 a few
b 2 d 3 e 4 f 5 a 6 b
c 2 too much soda
3 go to bed early enough
4 enough sleep
5 too many cookies
6 enough fruit and vegetables

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a** 2 muscle 3 enough 4 blood
5 none
c 2 Being in the hospital wasn't much fun.
3 I like to give blood every few months.
4 We all need to get enough sun.
5 I don't really do much runnung.

Practical English 3

1 TAKING SOMETHING BACK

- a** 3 **A** Just a minute. I'll go and check.
4 **B** Thank you.
5 **A** Here you are. These are a 9.
Do you want to try them on?
6 **B** No thanks. I'm sure they'll be fine.
7 **A** That will be \$70.
8 **B** Oh, it says \$85.99.
9 **A** Yes, they're on sale.
10 **B** Oh. Great! Thank you.
11 **A** Thank you.
b 2 problem 3 too 4 size 5 take
6 need 7 price 8 refund 9 pair
10 receipt 11 Here

2 SOCIAL ENGLISH

- a** 2 Of course 3 a surprise
4 hopefully 5 can't wait
6 How are things
b 2 Can't wait
3 How are things with you
4 Let's say seven
5 What a surprise
6 Of course I do

Can you remember...? 1–5

1 GRAMMAR

- 1 come 2 anything 3 yet 4 as
5 because 6 taking

2 VOCABULARY

- 1 arriving 2 excited 3 lake
4 dangerous 5 shelves 6 campsite

3 PRONUNCIATION

- 1 card 2 large 3 nowhere
4 nothing 5 joke 6 always

4 GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY

- 1 b 2 a 3 a 4 c 5 b 6 a
7 a 8 c 9 b 10 b

6A

1 VOCABULARY

- a** 2 learn 3 pass 4 pull 5 break
6 borrow 7 lose 8 turn on
9 send
b 2 start 3 sell 4 pick up 5 find
6 upload 7 forget 8 catch

2 GRAMMAR

- a** 2 nobody will buy
3 it'll rain
4 You won't miss
5 I'll finish
6 I'll pass, I won't get
7 Our meeting won't finish
b 2 won't win 3 'll forget 4 'll pass
5 Will, catch 6 won't find
7 won't sell
c 2 I won't visit South America next year.
3 I'll get married when I am 30.
4 I won't get in the shape in the summer.
5 I'll buy a new laptop.
6 I won't pass my exams.
d Students' own answers

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a** 2 He'll meet somebody new.
3 You'll have a good time.
4 She won't get the job.
5 They won't lend you the money.
6 We won't arrive on time.
c 2 won't 3 won't 4 want 5 won't
6 want

6B

1 GRAMMAR

- a** 2 f 3 a 4 e 5 d 6 b
b 2 D 3 P 4 O 5 O 6 D
c 2 I'll, carry 3 will do 4 'll look
5 won't say
d 2 I'll, lend you some money.
3 I'll have the chicken, please.
4 I'll, take your coat.
5 I won't forget to feed the dog.
6 I'll, turn on the air conditioning.

2 PRONUNCIATION

- a** 2 decide, email, promise
3 practice, listen, repair
4 borrow, forget, agree
5 sunbathe, invite, complain

3 VOCABULARY

- a** 2 b 3 f 4 a 5 e 6 d
b 2 send, back 3 Give, back
4 call, back 5 go back
6 paid, back 7 take, back

6C

1 GRAMMAR

- a 2 b 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 c 7 b
8 a 9 b
- b 1 going to go
2 do, go, read
3 will win, 'll lose
4 were, doing, was watching
5 Have, dreamed, 've, had
6 are, doing, 'm reading
7 are, leaving, 's coming
8 Did, sleep, woke up
9 Is, buying, got
10 Have, seen, met
- c 2 have done / are doing 3 works
4 did 5 helped 6 chose
7 discovered 8 had 9 saw
10 were watching

2 VOCABULARY

- a 2 really 3 not very 4 fairly 5 little
6 incredibly
- b 2 drives really dangerously
3 's taking / going to take me to a very
expensive restaurant
4 was incredibly interesting
5 was really busy
6 was a little boring

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a 5
- c 2 sweater 3 wear 4 dream

7A

1 VOCABULARY

- a 2 offered 3 didn't want
4 pretended 5 needed
6 promised 7 planned 8 decided
9 forgot 10 learned
- b 2 learn 3 tell 4 improve 5 close
6 rain 7 go 8 stay

2 GRAMMAR

- a 2 difficult to talk 3 easy to buy
4 great to hear 5 fun to be
- b 2 to see 3 not to finish 4 to find
5 not to tell 6 to rent 7 to take out
- c 2 when to call 3 how many to
buy 4 where to go 5 what to study
6 how much to make 7 who to take
- d 2 I'm hoping to play tennis with
my friends.
3 I'm planning to stay in.
4 I'm trying to learn Japanese.
5 To get a better job.
6 It's difficult to remember vocabulary.
- e Students' own answers

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a 2 I really don't know what to do.
3 She learned to swim when she was
very young.
4 He told us not to come tonight.
5 Do you want to send Tom a card?
6 I think I forgot to turn my phone off.

7B

1 VOCABULARY

- a 2 d 3 b 4 a 5 e 6 f
- b 2 start 3 spend 4 hates 5 love
6 likes 7 don't mind 8 go on
9 feel like 10 stop

2 GRAMMAR

- a 2 studying 3 writing 4 going
5 getting 6 listening
- b 2 a 3 d 4 f 5 e 6 b
- c 3 imagining 4 driving 5 listening
6 Staying 7 reading 8 Not
getting up 9 taking 10 going
11 working 12 having 13 walking
14 feeling 15 not talking
16 Turning off 17 leaving
- d Students' own answers
e Students' own answers

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a 2 ironing 3 going shopping
4 doing
- c 2 c 3 b 4 a

7C

1 GRAMMAR

- a 1 don't have to, have to
2 Do, have to, have to, don't have to
3 Do, have to, don't have to, have to
4 Does, have to, doesn't have to,
has to
- b 2 You must 3 You must not
4 You must not 5 You must
6 You must not
- c 2 must not 3 must not 4 don't
have to 5 must not 6 don't have to
5 must not
- d 2 have to 3 must 4 don't have to
5 must not

2 VOCABULARY

- a 2 good at 3 good at 4 bad for
5 bad at 6 good for
- b 2 from 3 of 4 with 5 of 6 in
7 to
- c 1 full of 2 famous for, afraid of
3 different from, nicer to
4 good at, angry with
- d 2 he's still bad at doing homework.
He's interested in reading English
magazines. He must work harder.
3 She's good at speaking, but is still
bad at grammar. She's interested
in watching English / American
movies. She must read more.
- e Students' own answers

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a 3 and 7

Practical English 4

1 AT THE PHARMACY

- 2 arm 3 hurt 4 allergic
5 medication 6 pain 7 take
8 every 9 better 10 much

2 WHAT'S THE MATTER?

- 2 My stomach hurts.
3 I have a pain in my arm.
4 Tariq has hurt his foot.
5 How did you hurt your hand?
6 Erika has a pain in her leg.

3 SOCIAL ENGLISH

- a 2 you later 3 I'll be OK
4 what you mean
5 What's the matter
- b 2 I think I'll be OK
3 What's the matter with your back
4 I don't know what you mean
5 Just out of breath

Can you remember...? 1-7

1 GRAMMAR

- 1 b 2 a 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 c

2 VOCABULARY

- 1 hate 2 depressing 3 harbor
4 clean 5 beard 6 do the ironing

3 PRONUNCIATION

- 1 thank 2 likes 3 general
4 going 5 put 6 break

4 GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY

- 1 b 2 b 3 a 4 b 5 c 6 b
7 a 8 b 9 a 10 c

8A

1 GRAMMAR

- a 2 shouldn't drink (F)
3 should go (A)
4 should see (B)
5 should tell (G)
6 shouldn't give (E)
7 should call (D)
- b 2 should wear 3 shouldn't buy
4 should visit 5 shouldn't have
6 should get

2 PRONUNCIATION

- a 2 could 3 soup 4 book

3 VOCABULARY

- a 2 a 3 c 4 c 5 b 6 c 7 d
8 a 9 b 10 d
- b 2 getting up 3 got lost
4 get in shape 5 getting worse
6 got tickets 7 get along
8 got, message 9 get to work
10 getting ready
- c 2 She should get a new job.
3 She should get up earlier.
4 She shouldn't get stressed.
5 She should get in shape.
6 She should get the bus.
- d Students' own answers

8B

1 GRAMMAR

- a** 2 e 3 a 4 f 5 b 6 d
b 2 you see 3 we use 4 won't get
5 don't take 6 isn't
c 2 find, put, 'I'll bring, C
3 walk, 'I'll have, E
4 throw, ask, will come, A
5 catch, won't be, F
6 break, 'I'll have, B

2 VOCABULARY

- a** 2a looking at 2b watching
3a looking for 3b found 4a wins
4b earns 5a heard 5b listened to
b 2 lost, missed 3 tell, says
4 waiting, hope 5 met, known
6 borrow, lend 7 take, bring
c 2 lost 3 look at 4 listen 5 won
d Students' own answers

3 PRONUNCIATION

- b** 2 wear 3 sea 4 wore 5 write
6 meet 7 weight 8 one

8C

1 PRONUNCIATION

- a** 2 Version b 3 Version a 4 Version b
5 Version a

2 GRAMMAR

- a** 2 yours
3 Whose laptop is that?, his
4 Whose keys are those?, hers
5 Whose car is that?, ours
6 Whose coats are those?, yours
7 Whose house is that?, theirs
b 2 yours, ours 3 his, His
4 yours, theirs
c 2 my 3 his 4 her 5 ours
6 yours 7 hers 8 their

3 VOCABULARY

- a** 2 slowly 3 lazy 4 serious 5 sad
6 completely
b 2 quietly 3 seriously 4 lazily
5 dreamily 6 calmly
c 2 mine, completely 3 Ours, calmly
4 Mine, well 5 ours, seriously
6 Mine, quietly

9A

1 VOCABULARY

- a** 2 jellyfish 3 whale 4 bear
5 snake 6 monkey 7 spider
8 bee 9 sheep 10 horse
b 2 mosquito and shark
3 goat and pig
4 bee and wasp
5 bird and bat
6 dolphin
c 2 bulls 3 elephants 4 kangaroos
5 flies 6 camels

2 PRONUNCIATION

- a** 2 monkey tiger giraffe
3 butterfly kangaroo mosquito
4 camel dolphin lion ✓
5 spider rabbit chicken ✓

3 GRAMMAR

- a** 2 saw, she'd scream
3 We'd have, we didn't travel
4 wasn't, he'd get
5 I lived, I'd learn
6 would you do, attacked
7 I got, I'd choose
8 I saw, I'd swim
b 2 had, would you get
3 would you do, saw
4 would you feel, asked
5 would you do, found
6 was, would you do
c Students' own answers

9B

1 VOCABULARY

- a** 2 terrified 3 freeze 4 scared of
5 panic 6 a fear 7 suffer from
b 1 panic 2 freeze 3 suffer from
4 fear

2 GRAMMAR

- a** 2 've had 3 have you lived
4 's worked 5 haven't heard
6 've had
b 2 Valeria's hated spiders since she was
a child.
3 How long has your brother been an
actor?
4 We've been married for ten years,
and we're very happy.
5 My cousin's been in the US since
February.
6 He's had the same job for eight
years.
7 I've had this bike for a long time.
c 2 've only had him since
3 hasn't rained for
4 've been together for
5 hasn't been on vacation for
6 've lived here since
7 haven't eaten anything since
8 's played in the band for
d Students' own answers
e 2 How long have you known your
best friend?
3 How long have you had your
computer or tablet?
4 How long have you lived where you
live now?
5 How long have you been in your
English class?
6 How long have you used social
media?
f Students' own answers

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a** 2 studied English, three
3 We've lived, six months
4 How long have they been
5 How long has she known
6 How long have you worked

9C

1 VOCABULARY

- a** 2 d 3 b 4 f 5 g 6 h 7 e
8 a
b 2 separated, got divorced
3 have children 4 go, college
5 fell in love 6 retired
7 high school 8 died

2 PRONUNCIATION

- a** 2 married 3 graduate
4 elementary 5 children 6 retire
7 college 8 separate
c 2 and 5

3 GRAMMAR

- a** 2 U 3 U 4 F 5 U 6 F 7 U
8 F
b 2 did, get, 've been
3 has, worked, graduated
4 have, had, bought
5 did, meet, 's known
6 have, lived, arrived
c 2 Where did you live when you were
a child?
3 When did you go to elementary
school?
4 Did you enjoy school?
5 Where did you go to high school?
6 Where do you live now?
7 How long have you lived there?
8 Where do you work or study?
9 How long have you been there?
d Students' own answers

Practical English 5

1 FOLLOWING DIRECTIONS

- a** 2 get off 3 line 4 stops
5 eastbound 6 change to
b 2 change to 3 eastbound
4 get off 5 line
c 2 e 3 a 4 c 5 b
d 2 to get to 3 Get the 4 change to
5 get off at 6 two stops
7 Turn right 8 straight ahead about
9 the second right 10 on the left

2 SOCIAL ENGLISH

- 2 see, said 3 annoyed, course
4 going, come 5 like, fair
6 who, what

Can you remember...? 1-9

1 GRAMMAR

- 1 b 2 c 3 c 4 a 5 b 6 c

2 VOCABULARY

- 1 retired 2 get in shape 3 goat
4 cheap 5 terminal 6 dirty

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a** 1 beard 2 blood 3 were
b 1 along 2 beautiful 3 practice

4 GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY

1 b 2 b 3 a 4 a 5 c 6 a
7 c 8 b 9 a

10A

1 VOCABULARY

- a** 2 basketball 3 windsurfing
4 sailing 5 gymnastics 6 track and field 7 karate 8 baseball
b 2 play 3 play 4 do 5 do 6 do
7 play 8 do
c 2 down 3 up 4 toward 5 across
6 out of 7 around 8 into 9 past
10 through 11 along 12 under

2 PRONUNCIATION

- a** 2 gymnastics karate basketball
3 cycling handball hockey ✓
4 soccer baseball tennis ✓

3 GRAMMAR

- a** 2 around 3 past 4 across
5 under, toward 6 up 7 away
8 through
b 2 hit, over 3 threw, into 4 kicked,
under 5 went through 6 ran across
c 2 hit the ball over the net
3 ride up and down hills
4 run around the track
5 kick the ball into the goal
6 throw the ball through the hoop

10B

1 VOCABULARY

- a** 2 over 3 after 4 off 5 out 6 on
b 2 throw 3 turn 4 look 5 get
6 set 7 go 8 take 9 stay
10 work
c 2 give it up 3 looking forward to it
4 try it on 5 turn it off 6 goes off
7 drop you off, pick you up 8 run out

2 GRAMMAR

- a** 2 c 3 g 4 d 5 f 6 a 7 e 8 j
9 h 10 i
b 2 ✓ 3 look after her 4 ✓ 5 ✓
6 take them off
c 2 The teacher will give them back on Friday.
3 Are you looking forward to it?
4 I called her back when I arrived at the train station.
5 We don't get along with them.
6 Can you turn it on?
d 2 get up 3 set off 4 go out
5 go away
e Students' own answers

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a** 2 turn it on 3 Take it off
4 look after it 5 try it on
6 throw it away

10C

1 VOCABULARY

- | a Country | Adjective | People |
|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| China | Chinese | the Chinese |
| Morocco | Moroccan | the Moroccans |
| Brazil | Brazilian | the Brazilians |
| Japan | Japanese | the Japanese |
| Spain | Spanish | the Spanish |
| Italy | Italian | the Italians |
| England | English | the English |
| Argentina | Argentinian | the Argentinians |
| Thailand | Thai | the Thais |
| Canada | Canadian | the Canadians |
- b** 2 Thais 3 English 4 Americans
5 Brazilians 6 Argentinians
7 Japanese

2 PRONUNCIATION

- a** 2 British 3 shop 4 shut 5 cheap
c 2 This shop sells Belgian chocolate.
3 She showed me the shoes.
4 Which garage has a cash machine?
5 The cheese I chose was cheap.

3 GRAMMAR

- a** 2 is bought 3 is spoken
4 is called, make
5 were the Pyramids built, built
6 gave
b 2 Contact lenses were invented by a Czech chemist.
3 Where are olives grown?
4 The VW Beetle was designed in the 1930s.
5 Diamonds are found in many different colors.
6 When were vitamins discovered?
c 2 were made 3 is grown
4 was built 5 was invented
d 2 The first photograph was taken by Joseph Niépce in 1826.
3 The first car was driven by Karl Benz in 1886.
4 The first X-ray was taken by Wilhelm Röntgen in 1895.
5 The first airplane was flown by the Wright brothers in 1903.

11A

1 VOCABULARY

- a** 2 j 3 e 4 b 5 a 6 f 7 i 8 d
9 g 10 h 11 k
b 2 g 3 c 4 a 5 b 6 i 7 f 8 d
9 e 10 h 11 k
c 2 literature 3 Math 4 art
5 history 6 computing
7 geography 8 biology
9 education 10 chemistry
11 physics

2 GRAMMAR

- a** 2 didn't use to work
3 used to wear
4 Did you use to have
5 didn't use to study

- 6 used to be
7 didn't use to play
8 Did your teachers use to give
b 2 Jon used to go
3 We didn't use to understand
4 Did you use to
5 School used to
6 Did your friends use to help
c 2 What subject did you use to like most?
3 What subjects did you use to hate?
4 Which teacher did you use to like most?
5 Did you use to work hard?
6 What sports did you use to play?
7 What did you use to do after school?
d Students' own answers

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a** 2 We used to hate the history teacher.
3 My sister didn't use to like school.
4 We didn't use to wear a uniform.
5 I used to love languages.
6 Did you use to play soccer in PE?

11B

1 GRAMMAR

- a** 2 might get 3 might have
4 might miss 5 might not be
6 might not come 7 might go
8 might fail 9 might not give
10 might rain
b 2 might succeed 3 might see
4 might not be 5 might learn
6 might start 7 might lose
8 might begin 9 might have

2 PRONUNCIATION

- a** 2 buy 3 scared 4 although
5 souvenir 6 boy 7 sure

3 VOCABULARY

- a** 2 confusion 3 decision 4 death
5 competition 6 education
7 invitation 8 life 9 invention
10 flight 11 success 12 election
13 advice 14 pronunciation
b 2 death 3 invite 4 flight 5 life
6 decide 7 invention 8 success
c 2 might, competition
3 might, education
4 might not, flight
5 might not, advice
6 might, pronunciation

11C

1 VOCABULARY

- a** 2 as 3 both 4 similar 5 like
6 from
b 2 as 3 like 4 identical 5 different
6 both

2 GRAMMAR

- a** 2 a 3 b 4 d 5 f 6 c 7 e

- b** 2 Neither was I 3 So am I
4 So would I 5 So am I
6 Neither have I
c 2 So did I. 3 Neither have I.
4 So did I. 5 Neither am I.
6 Neither can I. 7 So would I.
8 Neither do I. 9 Neither did I.
10 So do I.

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a** 2 father 3 think 4 throw
5 sunbathe
c 3 So would I. 4 So did I.
5 Neither have I. 6 Neither can I.
7 So am I. 8 Neither did I.
9 So have I. 10 Neither do I.

Practical English 6

1 CALLING AND LEAVING A MESSAGE

- a** 2 c 3 c 4 a 5 b 6 c 7 b
8 b 9 c 10 c
b 1 leave, call, back
2 desk, tell, give, message
3 help, speak, line, busy, hold, leave
4 there, through
c 2 It's [student's name] (here).
3 How can I help you?
4 Can I leave a message, please?
5 OK, I'll hold.
6 I'll call back later.
7 Can you tell him [student's name] called.

2 SOCIAL ENGLISH

- 2 hear 3 so 4 off 5 I am
6 right

Can you remember...? 1-11

1 GRAMMAR

- 1 c 2 c 3 c 4 a 5 a 6 c

2 VOCABULARY

- 1 classroom 2 sightseeing
3 exciting 4 quickly 5 garbage
6 cap

3 PRONUNCIATION

- 1 bath 2 near 3 part 4 Greek
5 arrived 6 arrive

4 GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY

- 1 c 2 b 3 a 4 a 5 c 6 b
7 a 8 b 9 a 10 a

12A

1 VOCABULARY

- a** 2 e 3 b 4 a 5 c
b 2 Suddenly 3 Meanwhile
4 Eventually 5 right away

2 GRAMMAR

- a** 2 hadn't closed 3 had started
4 hadn't flown 5 'd read
6 had taken
b 2 I opened 3 had broken
4 had already left 5 hadn't stolen
6 I hadn't lost 7 I'd seen 8 I'd left
9 I'd put
c Students' own answers

3 PRONUNCIATION

- a** 2 surprise 3 kill 4 while

12B

1 GRAMMAR

- a** 2 a 3 d 4 b 5 c
b 2 didn't like his wife's parents
3 was getting divorced
4 'd been to the hospital
5 hadn't met her brother's girlfriend yet
6 'd seen James with another woman
7 couldn't cook
8 wouldn't tell anyone
9 'd speak to her boss
10 had a lot of work to do
c 2 I want a cup of coffee
3 We haven't seen our new neighbors yet
4 I don't want to go to the movies
5 We'll come to the party
6 I've broken my arm
7 The building is very old
8 We can't help you

2 VOCABULARY

- a** 2 tell 3 said 4 said 5 told
6 said 7 say 8 told 9 said
10 tell
b 2 told 3 told 4 said 5 told
6 said 7 said 8 said 9 told
10 told
c 2 b 3 e 4 a 5 d
d Students' own answers

3 PRONUNCIATION

- 2 e 3 a 4 b 5 c

12C

1 PRONUNCIATION

- a** 2 ✓ 3 - 4 - 5 ✓ 6 ✓ 7 -

2 VOCABULARY

- 2 What 3 Who 4 Why 5 When
6 Which 7 How 8 Whose

3 GRAMMAR

- a** 2 a 3 b 4 b 5 a 6 a 7 b
b b 4 c 3 d 1 e 5 f 7 g 6
c 2 did the movie *Parasite* win
3 do polar bears live
4 painted
5 did Michael Phelps win
6 produces the most bananas
7 invented
8 did World War II end

- d** 2 Who sits next to you in class?
3 How often do you usually go to the movies?
4 Which city in your country has the most beautiful buildings?
5 What do you like watching on TV?
6 How many times a week do you play sports or exercise?
e Students' own answers